W., 10,000—20/9/98.

Croydon Public Libraries.

CENTRAL REFERENCE LIBRARY.

Accession No. 5389 **Class No.** 9942

Besides the class topic, other topics treated of in this book are as follows:—

TOPIC NO.	PAGES.	TOPIC NO.	PAGES.

BROMLEY LIBRARIES

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

HRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

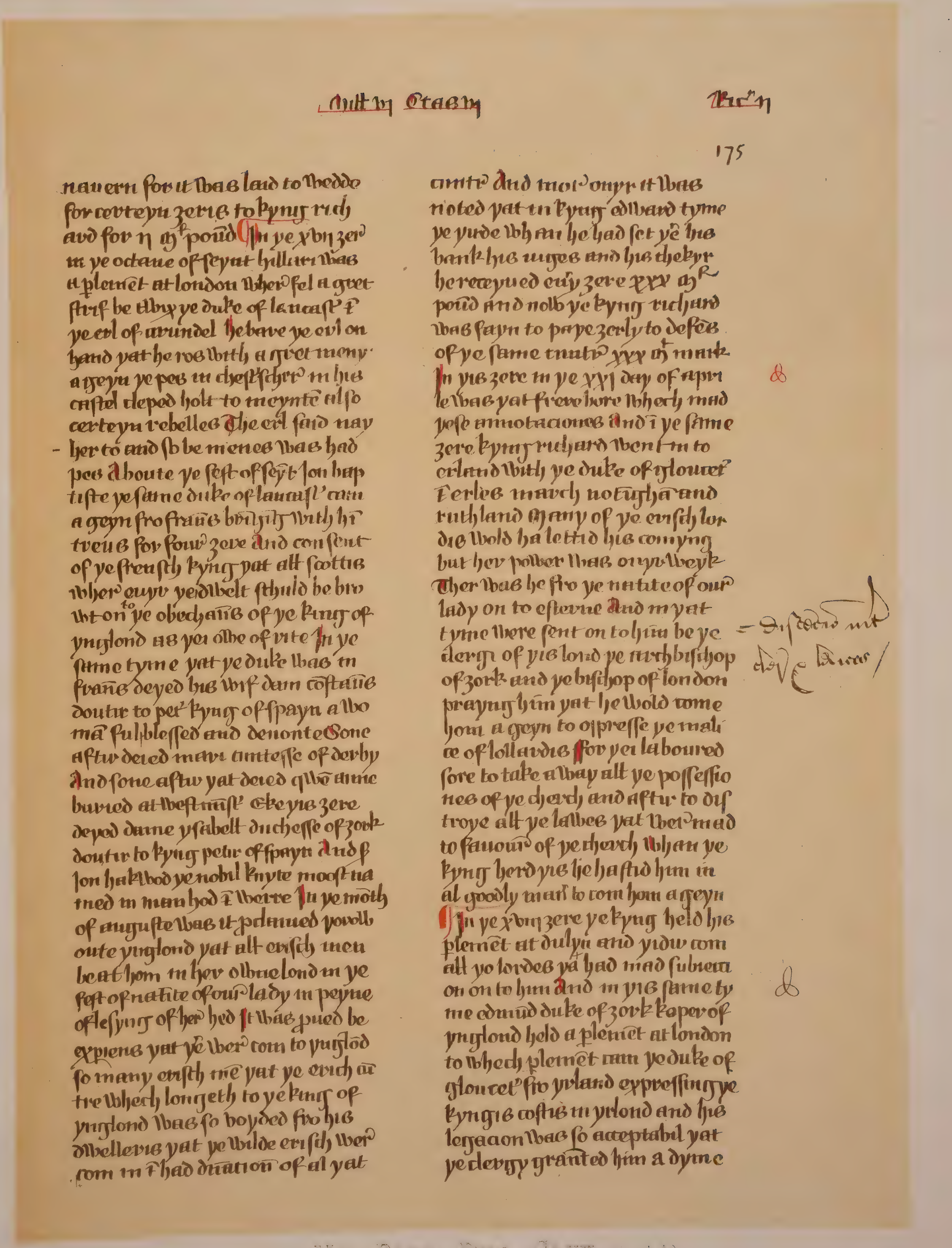
They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

In compliance with the order of the Treasury, the Master of the Rolls has selected for publication for the present year such works as he considered best calculated to fill up the chasms existing in the printed materials of English history; and of these works the present is one.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

CAPGRAVE'S
CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND.

CROY LIC LIBRARIES
NTRAL



Anni Cristi — Ric. ij

175

navern for it was laid to wedde
for certeyn zeres to kyng rich
and for ij m^l pound In ye xvij zer
in ye octaue of seynt hillari was
a parlement at london wher fel a gret
strif be twix ye duke of lancastr &
ye erl of arundel He bare ye erl on
hand yat he rode with a gret meny
ageyn ye pes in chestirschire in his
castel cleped holt to meynte also
certeyn rebelles The erl said nay
her to and so be menes was had
pes Aboute ye fest of seynt Jon bap
tiste ye same duke of lancastr cam
a geyn fro frauns bringing with hi
trewes for four zere And consent
of ye frensch kyng yat all scottis
wher euyr yei dwelt schuld be bou
nd on to ye obediens of ye king of
ynglond as yei owe of rite In ye
same tyme yat ye duke was in
frauns deyed his wif dam Constauns
doutir to petir kyng of spayn a wo
man ful blessed and deuoute Sone
aftir deied mari cuntesse of derby
And sone aftir yat deied quen anne
buried at westminster Eke yis zere
deyed dame ysabell duchesse of zork
doutir to kyng petir of spayn And ser
Jon hakwod ye nobil knyte moost fa
med in manhod & werre In ye moneth
of auguste was it proclamed thorow
oute ynglond yat all erisch men
be at hom in her owne lond in ye
fest of natiuite of our lady in peyne
of lesyng of her hed It was proued be
experiens yat ye wer com to ynglond
so many erisch men yat ye erisch cu
tre whech longeth to ye king of
ynglond was so voyded fro his
dwelleris yat ye wilde erisch wer
com in & had dominacion of al yat

cuntre And moreouyr it was
noted yat in kyng edward tyme
ye yerde whan he had set yer his
bank his wages and his chekyr
he receyued euery zere xxx m^l
pound And now ye kyng richard
was fayn to paye zerly to defens
of ye same cuntre xxx m^l mark
In yis zere in ye xxj day of april
I was yat frere bore whech mad
yese annotaciones And i ye same
zere kyng richard went in to
erland with ye duke of glouceter
& erles march notyngham and
ruthland Many of ye erisch lor
dis wold ha letted his comyng
but her power was ouyr weyk
Ther was he fro ye natiuite of our
lady on to estern And in yat
tyme were sent on to him be ye
clergi of yis lond ye archbischop
of zork and ye bischop of london
praying him yat he wold come
hom a geyn to oppresse ye mali
ce of lollardis For yei laboured
sore to take a way all ye possessio
nes of ye cherch and aftir to dis
troye all ye lawes yat were mad
to fauour of ye cherch Whan ye
kyng herd yis he hastid him in
al goodly maner to com hom ageyn
In ye xviij zere ye kyng held his
parlement at dulyn and yider com
all yo lordes yat had mad subiecci
on on to him And in yis same ty
me edmund duke of zork keper of
ynglond held a parlement at london
to whech parlement cam ye duke of
glouceter fro yrland expressing ye
kyngis costis in yrlond and his
legacion was so acceptabil yat
ye clergy granted him a dyme

&

= [illegible]

&

MS. BIBL. PUB. CANT. Gg. 4. 12.

Day & Son Lith. to the Queen

THE

HRONICLE OF ENGLAND,

BY

JOHN CAPGRAVE.

EDITED

BY

THE REV. FRANCIS CHARLES HINGESTON, B.A.,
OF EXETER COLLEGE, OXFORD.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, LONGMANS, AND ROBERTS.

1858.

l R 5389
l

BROMLEY PUBLIC LIBRARIES
AL
L5
CLASS
L 65
ACC.
02105 6695
[942]

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION :— Page.

Biographical Notices of Capgrave . . . ix

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave . . . xiii

Notices of the Chronicle of England and the other English Works of Capgrave . . xxi

THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND :—

Dedication . . . .

Ætas Prima . . . .

Ætas Secunda 17

Ætas Tertia 27

Ætas Quarta 39

Ætas Quinta 49

Ætas Sexta 59

APPENDICES TO THE INTRODUCTION :—

I. Notices from Bale and Leland . . . 321

II. Extracts from Kennet's Parochial Antiquities 329

III. Of Capgrave's Life of S. Katharine . . 335

IV. Fragment of a Guide to the Antiquities of the City of Rome 355

V. Notices of the Austin Friary, at Lynn . . 367

Glossary 373

General Index 415

INTRODUCTION.

CENTRAL
LIBRARIES

INTRODUCTION.

Biographical Notices of Capgrave.

1. John Capgrave[1] was born, as he himself tells us, at Lynn in Norfolk,[2] on the Twenty-first of April, 1393.[3] Here he appears to have spent his early years in diligent study, excelling all his companions in his zeal for learning and in the great proficiency to which he attained.

2. At an early age he was sent to one of the English Universities, it is not evident to which in the first instance, but it is clear that at a later period of his life he was connected with both. Leland says that he was educated at Cambridge,[4] but he takes

---

[1] *Capgrave.*] Caprave. Vossius. —Capogrevus. Leland.—"De Monumento-pileato," as he himself somewhat curiously Latinises his name in the Prologue to his Exposition of the Creeds.

[2] *at Lynn in Norfolk.*] Not, as some of our authorities say, in Kent. This Capgrave himself tells us at the end of the Prologue to his Life of S. Katharine :—

"If ye wil wete what that I am,
My cuntre is Northfolk, of the
toun of Lynne."

Tanner alludes to this, though he retains Leland's statement. His words are :—"MS. Gresham 168 eum apud Linum, in Norfolcia, natum fuisse asserit."

[3] See "The Chronicle of England ;" page 259 of the present volume.

[4] *Cambridge.*] See Appendix I.

Biographical Notices of Capgrave.

care to tell us that this is merely a conjectural statement. It would certainly seem at least probable that a native of Lynn would be sent to the neighbouring University, rather than to the more distant Oxford, especially in days when travelling was both expensive and difficult. At the same time it must be admitted that all our authorities, with the single exception of Leland, agree in stating that he belonged to Oxford, and there can be little doubt that he took the Degree of Doctor of Divinity at that University. Pamphilus,[1] in his "Chronica Ordinis Fratrum Eremitarum Sancti Augustini," includes him in his List of "Viri qui in publicis Scholis functi sunt docendi munere." His notice is as follows:—"Joannes Capgrave, Anglus, Oxonii publice Divinas Litteras docuit, et Vetus et Novum Testamentum interpretatus est." On the whole it is most likely that he was educated at Cambridge, and afterwards migrated to Oxford, still preserving, however, his connexion with the former University.

3. In his twenty-fourth year he entered the Priesthood. He mentions incidentally in his history of the reign of King Henry the Sixth that his ordination took place between four or five years before the birth of that monarch in 1422. On the latter occasion, he appears to have been in London prosecuting his studies, for he tells us that he could never forget the great joy which was then manifested by all classes, and of which he was a witness.[2]

4. It is probable that he was at this time residing

---

[1] *Pamphilus.*] See fol. 139 of the edition of his works published at Rome in the year 1581.

[2] See his Life of Henry the Sixth of England, in his "*Liber de Illustribus Henricis,*" page 127. "Audivi enim," he says, "cum nota esset Londoniæ nativitas Regis nostri, vocem Ecclesiarum, et strepitum campanarum, quoniam et tunc studens ibi eram, in quarto anno, vel quinto, ex quo ad Sacerdotium promotus sum, et adhuc a memoria non rediit jubilatio illa populorum."

in the Friary at Lynn,[1] in comparative retirement, and devoting his days to the compilation of the numerous commentaries on Holy Scripture and historical works which have rendered his memory famous.

Biographical Notices of Capgrave.

5. Shortly after he had taken the degree of Doctor of Divinity, he was chosen to be Provincial of his Order in England, an office the duties of which, as those of our authorities who mention the circumstance agree in stating, he discharged with the greatest moderation and discretion. We still possess one important record of his proceedings in this capacity, which has been preserved in Kennet's Parochial Antiquities and in the Histor. Antiq. Oxon. of Anthony à Wood.[2]

6. It is probable that during his latter years he presided over the Friary at Lynn, of which he was an inmate so long. We have, indeed, no direct statement to this effect, but it appears from a document referred to in the Note to § 5, that the Provincial of the Order of Friars Hermits in England and the Prior of the Friary at Lynn were one and the same person at a time when it is most likely that Capgrave held the former office.

7. Capgrave tells us but little of himself; the few notices, however, which are scattered through his extant works are of considerable interest. In his English Chronicle, as we have already said, he mentions the year of his birth, even specifying the exact day, and this is the only reference to his personal history which occurs in that work. In his "Liber de Illustribus Henricis" are several allusions of this description. He tells us that on the occasion of the embarkation of

---

[1] *The Friary at Lynn.*] See Appendix V.

[2] See Appendix II. to the present Introduction. In Appendix V. p. 370, *note*, will be found a copy of a document under the seal of the Provincial, which was in all probability executed during the period of Capgrave's office.

Biographical Notices of Capgrave.

the Princess Philippa, the only daughter of King Henry IV., (when she was proceeding to the Court of Eric of Norway, to become his Queen,) he was present when the vessel sailed from the quay at Lynn, and saw the Princess.[1] Again he mentions his personal acquaintance with William Millington, the first Provost of King's College, Cambridge.[2] His allusion to the time of his ordination has been already pointed out. He tells us also, in the dedicatory epistle prefixed to his Commentary on "The Acts of the Apostles," that on the occasion of a visit to Rome he was taken ill, and detained some time in that city in consequence.[3] It was then, in all probability, that he occupied his leisure hours in compiling the Description of the Antiquities of Rome, of which only a small fragment has come down to us.[4]

8. We have already stated that the writings of Capgrave are very numerous; and as in his own day they obtained for him the proud distinction of being esteemed one of the most learned men of the time, so now the few of them which remain to us are his greatest and most enduring monument, and will ever keep alive the memory of his fame, as they amply reflect his character, and almost render unnecessary the

---

[1] Unicam filiam hujus excellentissimi Regis ego vidi in villa de Lenne, ubi navem intravit, cum, Angliam relinquens, ad conjugium Regis Norwegiæ festinavit . . . . . Hæc est quidem regalis progenies, quam ego oculis conspexi." See the *Liber de Illustribus Henricis*, p. 109.

[2] "His autem collegiis duos præfecit valentes Præpositos, quorum unum novi, Magistrum Willielmum Milligton. Ipse enim Cantabrigiensi collegio præsidens, maturis moribus multos antecessores suos præcellit." *Ibid.* p. 133.

[3] Reminiscor, sancte Antistes, quanta pia visitatione vestra in me miserum peregrinum, atque Romæ infirmum, dilectionis exenia tribuistis, et nunc a solicitudine officii mei penitus absolutus, licet tarde veniens, munus possibilitatis meæ vobis decrevi mittendum." See § 24. See also Appendix III. to the Introduction perfixed to the *Liber de Illustribus Henricis*.

[4] See Appendix IV. to the present Introduction.

Biographical Notices of Capgrave.

description of his life which we naturally desire to obtain, but search for in vain in the pages of his contemporaries.

9. The following Catalogue of the works of Capgrave has been compiled from an accurate investigation of the existing remains, the works of Bale, Leland, and others; and is as complete in its details as it is now possible to make it. Nearly all were written in Latin. The few which were written in English are described as such when they occur.[1]

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave.

10. i. A Commentary on the Book of Genesis, in One Book. "Arduum namque et supra vires est."—The only MS. known to be extant is that preserved in the Library of Oriel College, Oxford, and which was known to Pits and Tanner. It is evidently an autograph. At the end is the following note:—"Incepit Frater Johannes Capgrave hoc opus in Translatione Sancti Augustini Doctoris, quæ occurrit mense Octobris, anno Domini M.CCCCXXXVII.; et fecit finem ejusdem in festo Mathei, Apostoli et Evangelistæ, anno Domini M.CCCCXXXVIII." On the flyleaf is the following singularly interesting inscription:—"Cest livre est a moy Humfrey duc de Gloucestre, du don de Frere Johan Capgrave, quy le me fist presenter a mon manoyr de Pensherst le jour de l'an M.CCCCXXXVIII."[2]

---

[1] It has been considered better to give descriptive Titles in English then to forge Latin Titles, as none which are original have come down to us. Those given by Bale, Leland, and others, are of their own invention, and only happen to be in Latin because the works in which their notices of Capgrave are contained are written in that language.

[2] Tanner mentions that this MS. was given to the University of Oxford by Humphrey Duke of Gloucester, and cites Registrum F. f. 67 *b.* See page xiv, §. 17. In Hearne's edition of Leland's Collectanea, iv. 15, the following notice of this work occurs under the heading—*In Biblioth. Augustiniensi Cantabr.*:—Joannes Capgrave forsan, Augustiniensis Frater et Doctor Theol., super Genesin justum Volumen, ad Humfredum Ducem Glocestriæ. *Arduum namque et supra vires.* Leyland. "Erat hic non infeliciter eruditus."

A full account of this interesting MS., and the Dedicatory Letter to the Duke of Gloucester, will be found in the Introduction to Capgrave's *Liber de Illustribus Henricis.*

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave.

11. ii. A Commentary on the Book of Exodus, in One Book. "Quia historiam quam hic prosequi." The commencement of this MS. and those of the twelve following are given from Bale.

12. iii. A Commentary on Leviticus, in One Book. "Occultissimorum mysteriorum sunt."

13. iv. A Commentary on Numbers, in One Book. "Ex Nicolao de Lyra super Libro."

14. v. A Commentary on Deuteronomy, in One Book. "In hoc ultimo Libro Moysi, qui."

15. vi. A Commentary on the Book of Joshua, in One Book.

16. vii. A Commentary on the Books of Judges and Ruth, in Two Books.

17. viii. A Commentary on the Books of the Kings, in Four Books. "Quod in Regnorum Libris jam." Capgrave himself refers to this work in his Liber de Illustribus Henricis:—"Patet hoc in Tertio Regum, quod et manifestius ibi declaravi, nunc autem solam litteralem annotationem tangens." See page 14.[1] Pits says that it was dedicated to Lowe, Bishop of S. Asaph's.

It appears from the Registers of the University of Oxford, (to which Body certain of Capgrave's Works were given by the Duke of Gloucester,) that the Commentary on the Books of the Kings were presented to Humphrey Duke of Gloucester, and possibly the Commentary on the First and Third Books were dedicated to him. The document alluded to is as follows:—

"Hæc indentura facta Oxon. vicesimo quinto die mensis Februarii anno Domini millesimo CCCC. quadragesimo tertio, et regni regis Henrici Sexti post

---

[1] In Hearne's edition of Leland's Collectanea, iv. 15, in the list of books "*in Biblioth. Augustiniensi Cantabr.*," this work is mentioned:—"Corona Joannis Capgravi, (duo justa volumina,) Fratris Augustiniensis, de Lino Norvolgiæ, super Libros Regum. "*Quod in Regnorum Libris.*"

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave.

Conquestum vicesimo secundo, inter serenissimum et illustrissimum Principem et Dominum inclitissimum, Dominum Hunfridum, Regum filium, fratrem, et patrem, Ducem Gloucestriæ, Comitem Pembrochiæ, et Magnum Camerarium Angliæ, ex una parte, ac suam humillimam et perpetuam oratricem Universitatem Oxoniensem, ex altera parte, testatur, Quod dicta Universitas, de summa et magnificentissima liberalitate prædicti inclitissimi Principis, centum et triginta quinque volumina, per dilectos et speciales nuncios suos Magistrum Willielmum Say et Radulphum Drew ad ipsam Universitatem destinata recepit; quorum utique voluminum nomina, cum initiis secundorum foliorum inferius distribuuntur.

* * * * * *
* * * * * *

Item, Capgrave super Regum Primum . . . 2° fo. sint viv.
Item, Capgrave super Regum 3 . . . . 2° fo. fulgorem.
Item, Capgrave super Genesin . . . . 2° fo. arduum.
Item, Capgrave super Exodum . . . 2° fo. et beatitudinem.

* * * * * *
* * * * * *

In quorum omnium fidem et testimonium sigillum commune Universitatis prædictis præsentibus est appensum. Dat. Oxon. in Nostræ Congregationis Domo, die et annis supradictis." *See* Registrum F. f. 67 *b*.

18. ix. A Commentary on the Psalter, in One Book. "Beatus vir qui non abiit in consilio."

19. x. A Commentary on Ecclesiastes, in One Book.[1]

20. xi. A Commentary on Isaiah, in One Book.

21. xii. A Commentary on Daniel, in One Book.

22. xiii. A Commentary on the Twelve Minor Prophets, in Twelve Books.

---

[1] Pamphilus says,—"In Ecclesiasticum," which is evidently a mistake for "Ecclesiastes."

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave.

23. xiv. A Commentary on the Epistles of S. Paul, in Fourteen Books. According to Bale, this work was dedicated to Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester.

24. xv. A Commentary on the Acts of the Apostles, in One Book. "Reminiscor, sancte Antistes." The only MS. of this work known to be extant is that preserved in the Library of Balliol College, Oxford. It is dedicated to William Gray, Bishop of Ely, a great benefactor to Balliol College, to which society it was given by him. It is evidently an autograph.[1]

25. xvi. A Commentary on the Apocalypse, in One Book. This work also appears to have been dedicated to Bishop Gray.

26. xvii. A Manual of Christian Doctrine, in One Book. "Inter cetera otii mei secreta."

27. xviii. On the Canonical Epistles. Seven Books.

28. xix. On the Creeds. "Quoniam Psalmographus ait se." A MS. of this work (not an autograph, but written in a large and careful hand, and corrected in many places in the Author's own handwriting,) is preserved in the Library of Balliol College, Oxford. It was known to Pits and Tanner. This MS. was given to Balliol College by Gray, Bishop of Ely, to whom this work also was dedicated. It is evidently the presentation copy. Another MS., the Author's autograph, is preserved in the Library of All Souls' College, Oxford, Num. xvii.[2]

---

[1] The Dedicatory Epistle, and a full account of this MS., are given in the Introduction to the *Liber de Illustribus Henricis.*

[2] Immediately after the mention of this work in the Catalogue given by Pits, occurs the following, entered as a separate work:—"Epistolam ad Gulielmum Episcopum Eliensem, MS. ibidem." This writer alludes, probably, to the Epistle Dedicatory to the Exposition of the Creeds, which is addressed to William Gray; at all events, there is now no separate MS. in the Library of Balliol College answering to the description given by Pits.

This Epistle, and a full account of the MSS., will be found in the Introduction to the *Liber de Illustribus Henricis.*

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave.

29. xx. The History of Illustrious Men bearing the name of Henry. "Henrico, Dei gratia Regi Angliæ." Two MSS. of this work are extant, one of which is preserved in the Cottonian Collection, the other in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. It is divided into three Parts, the first of which contains biographies of the Emperors Henry, I. to VI. inclusive; the second, of the Kings of England called Henry, I. to VI. inclusive; the third contains brief notices of the lives of twelve illustrious persons[1] bearing the same name. See the Introduction to the printed edition of this work.

30. xxi. Of the Followers of S. Augustine,[2] in One Book. "Testatur Græcorum ille eloquentis."[3]

31. xxii. The Sanctilogium, commonly called "Nova Legenda Angliæ." "Sancti patres qui priscis fuere."[4]

32. xxiii. On the Sentences of Peter Lombard, in Four Books.

33. xxiv. Theological Conclusions, in One Book.

34. xxv. Against Erroneous Positions, in One Book.

35. xxvi. Addresses to the Clergy, in One Book.

36. xxvii. Sermons for a Year, in One Book.

---

[1] Henry, King of the Dacians, (A.D. 1200); Henry I., King of France; Henry, Son of Richard King of the Romans; Henry, Count of Champagne, afterwards King of Jerusalem; Henry, Archbishop of Sens; Henry, Duke of Lancaster; Henry Bohun, Earl of Hereford; Henry de Beaumont; Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich; Henry of Huntingdon; Henry of Ghent; Henry de Urimaria.

[2] See § 37.

[3] In the folio edition of Bale's "Scriptores," vol. i. p. 163, under his notice of Oliverius Malmesburiensis, the following allusion to this work is made:—"Eulogium Historiarum, quod quidam huic Oliverio tribuunt, editum fuit anno Domini 1361, ab alio quodam Malmesburiensi monacho, Eduuardi Tertii, Anglorum Regis, tempore, ut habet Joannes Capgrave, in Libro suo de Sequacibus Augustini, cap. 10." It should be remembered that this is one of the Books of which Bale possessed a MS., and it is included in the list of those which he lost in his flight from Ireland. See page 323, note (3).

[4] See the Introduction to the *Liber de Illustribus Henricis.*

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave.

37. xxviii. Of Illustrious Men of the Order of S. Augustine. This is probably either a continuation of xxi., or identical with it. It is omitted in the Catalogue of Pamphilus.

38. xxix. The Life of Humphrey Duke of Gloucester.

39. xxx. Scholastic Lectures, in One Book.

40. xxxi. Ordinary Disputations, in One Book.

41. xxxii. Letters to Several Persons, in One Book.

42. xxxiii. The Life of Saint Augustine. This work is mentioned by Leland, who adds:—"Ad Joannem Gauterofordiam, Abbatem Fani Joannis, quod Avonæ Mediterraneæ celebre est." No mention is made of this work by Bale, Pits, or Pamphilus.

43. xxxiv. The Life of Saint Gilbert of Sempringham.[1] In English. The only MS. of this work which was extant, was unfortunately consumed, in the year 1731, by the disastrous fire in which so many MSS. of the Cottonian Collection were mutilated or destroyed. All that we now know of its contents is derived from a short notice in MS. Brit. Mus., Harleian, 980, page 231, a volume of notes, chiefly historical, collected by Thomas Gybbons. It is as follows:—"Gilbert (the sonn of a Norman knight that came in with the Con-

---

[1] Bale has an allusion to this MS. at vol. i. page 225 of the "Scriptores." In his account of Gilbert of Sempringham, he says in reference to the founding of his Order,—"Gilbertinorum Sectæ, quam ille primus inchoavit anno Domini 1148, ut auctores sunt Scopus et Capgravus." Tanner gives the following account of this work:—"Transtulit [Johannes Capgrave] in sermonem Anglicum Vitam S. Gilberti, auctoris Ordinis Sempringham. Pr. ded. Domino Nic. Resby, Ordin. Sempr. Magistro.—'Now withinne few dayes was notified.' MS. Norwic. More, XL.; MS. Cotton. Vitellius, D. XV. 4." The reference to the More MS. is probably a mistake. It is the same as that of the Chronicle, which is preserved in the Public Library at Cambridge, while that of the Life of S. Gilbert is not.

See the folio edition of Bale's "Scriptores," p. 172, where a reference is made to Capgrave's "Life of S. Gilbert."

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave.

querour, and of the Lady of Sempringham,) was the first founder of the Gilbertines of the Order of Sempringham. He builded nine monasteries of women, and fower of chanons reguler, in which monasteries he left, at the time of his death, of religious women, 1500, and of men 700. He died anno 1189, and was translated by the command of Innocent III., anno 1201. Vide Joh. Capgrave, in Vita Sti Gilberti, manuscript., ex Museo Roberti Kemp, Militis de Giffing."

44. xxxv. The Life of Saint Katharine, in Two Books. In English. Three MSS. of this work remain in the British Museum, and one in the Bodleian Library.[1]

The following curious reference to this work by a contemporary of Capgrave, is extracted from the prologue to the Life of S. Katharine, by Osbern Bokenham:—[2]

"Moreovyr, alle tho that redyn or here
  Shal this tretyhs, as lowly as I kan,
I beseche no wyse to lokyn here,
  That I shuld telle how she fyrst began
  To be Crystyne, and howe oon clepyd Adryan
Hyr convertyd, and crystnyd in hyr youthe,
For that mater to me is ful unkouthe.

But who so lyste knowleche for to have,
  And in that mater envereyed to be
My fadrys book, Mastyr Joon Capgrave,
  Whych that but newly compylyd he,
  Mote he seke, and he there shall se,
In baladys rymyd ful craftyly,
Alle that for igonorance here now leve I.

But, for as mych as that book is rare,
  And straunge to gete, at myn estymacioun,

---

[1] The Prologue is given in Appendix III.

[2] See MS. Arundel, Brit. Mus. 327, fol. 118. See also pp. 183, 184. of the edition of Bokenham's "Lyvys of Seyntys," printed for the Roxburghe Club in the year 1835.

Catalogue of the Works of Capgrave.

Compendyoüsly of al I wyl declare
  No more, but oonly the passyoun,
  Of Kateryne Howard to gostly consolacyoun,
And to conforte eek of Denstonne Kateryne,
If grace my wyt wyl illumyne."

45. xxxvi. The Chronicle of England. This work forms the subject of the present volume. It is not mentioned by Bale or Leland. Pits included it in his Catalogue, and adds:—"MS. Cantabrigiæ, in Collegio S. Benedicti." Two MSS. of this work are preserved at Cambridge,—one, the Author's autograph, in the Public Library, and which was formerly in the possession of More, Bishop of Norwich; the other in the Library of Corpus Christi College.[1]

46. xxxvii. Guide to the Antiquities and Curiosities of Rome. Of this work only a very small fragment remains, a copy of which will be found in Appeñdix IV. That Capgrave was in Rome is proved, as we have already mentioned, by his own statement in the Dedicatory Epistle prefixed to his Commentary on the Acts of the Apostles.[2]

47. Capgrave's patron and chief friend was Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, to whom he dedicated many of his works. Others were dedicated to Lowe, Bishop of St. Asaph, and to Gray of Ely, his own diocesan; and his two historical works were dedicated in either case to the reigning sovereign,—the "Henries" to King Henry the Sixth; the English Chronicle to King Edward the Fourth.

48. Little can be gathered from Capgrave's works which will enable us to fix the times at which they were written. The Commentary on the Book of

---

[1] Corpus Christi College is also called St. Benet's, from its connection with St. Benet's Church. Pits does not appear to have known of the second MS. Tanner has the following notice of it. In MS. Norwic. More XL. ita.—"Abbreviationes Chronicorum ab orbe condito ad A.D. M.CCCCXVI.(Anglice) Lib. I." See § 54.

[2] See § 7.

Genesis was commenced (as we have already noticed)[1] in the year 1437, and finished in the year 1438. It is only natural to suppose that the Commentaries on the Book of Exodus and the Books of the Kings were written at a later period, and it is certain that they were written before the year 1443, as it appears from the Registers of the University of Oxford that they were presented by the Duke of Gloucester to the University in that year. The "Henries" was, of course, written in the reign of Henry the Sixth; the Chronicle in the second or third of Edward the Fourth, and in all probability it was completed just before the Author's death.

Notices of the Works of Capgrave.

His death.

49. John Capgrave died at Lynn, the place of his birth, on the twelfth day of August A.D. 1464, at the age of seventy years. There is no ground whatever for the statement of Pamphilus (who is followed by Pits) to the effect that he lived till the year 1484. Richard the Third was then on the throne; and it is clear that the dedication of the Chronicle was written just after the accession of Edward the Fourth, and that the progress of the work was abruptly stopped, before its completion, as if it had been hurriedly packed up and sent to the King on the approach of the Author's last illness.

Editions of his Works.

50. Very little indeed of the writings of Capgrave has ever been printed.

51. The "Nova Legenda Angliæ" was printed in London by Wynkyn de Worde, in the year 1516, in black letter, copies of which are very scarce.[2]

52. In 1691, Wharton printed, in the second volume of the collection of Ecclesiastical Documents known as the "Anglia Sacra," the short but interesting sketch of the life of Henry le Spenser, extracted from the Third Part of the "De nobilibus Henricis."

---

[1] See § 10.

[2] Several single lives are printed in Bolland's "Acta Sanctorum."

Editions of the Works of Capgrave.

53. A mere fragment of the life of Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon, derived from the same source, will be found in Tanner's Bibliotheca Britannica," in a note under the notice of the Archdeacon.

54. The Chronicle of England, which constitutes this volume, appears in print for the first time in the present edition.

Notes on the Chronicle of England.

55. The Chronicler, as usual, commences with the Creation, and gives the general history of the world, gradually narrowing the scope of his work, till the accession of Henry the Third, in the year 1216; from this period he confines himself almost entirely to the history of England, which he brings down to the year 1417. The earlier portions of the Chronicle are very scanty, consisting of brief and scattered notices, collected chiefly from the Bible, and from the writings of Isidore, S. Jerome, Eusebius, Methodius, Hugo de Sancto Victore, and others, whom he not unfrequently refers to by name. Every year is entered in a series of consecutive columns, and in his Dedication to King Edward the Fourth, he observes that he has left the "vellum bare" opposite those years to which he had not assigned notices of events, in case any one, who had access to more books of reference than himself, should desire to fill them up. The early history of England appears to be collected in a great measure from the English Chronicle of Brute, from Higden, and his continuator, the Author of the "Vita Regis Ricardi." A few notices occur here and there which seem to have been borrowed from Walsingham. He quotes Beda, Giraldus Cambrensis, and some other of his authorities by name. His account of the reigns of the later Kings is very full and valuable, and contains many original notices. He enters minutely into the events connected with Piers Gaveston, Sir John Oldcastle, the murder of Richard the Second, and the usurpation of Henry the Fourth; and gives some curious notices relating to Lynn, his own town, of little more than local in

Notices of the Chronicle of England.

terest.[1] There is also a remarkable description of the scene at the death-bed of King Henry the Fourth.[2] His early chronology is confused in many places and very far from accurate: from the beginning of the Christian Era to the early part of the thirteenth century, Kings, Emperors, and Popes are often erroneously represented to be contemporaries. His English chronology, however, with a few exceptions which, have been carefully noticed wherever they occur, is on the whole precise and accurate. It is evident, as we have noticed elsewhere, in reference to the period of the Author's death, that this Chronicle was never finished; it ends in the middle of a column, and in a very abrupt way. Probably he was prevented by death from bringing it to completion, as it is dedicated to King Edward the Fourth, who succeeded to the throne but a short time before the year in which Capgrave died. This is the more to be regretted, as we lose much of the Author's contemporary history, which would have been more than ordinarily valuable from the pen of a writer of so much learning and such

---

[1] See page 276, where there is a curious account of the capture of some Scotch shipping by Lynn fishermen, in the year 1400.

Also at page 292, mention is made of the Royal Family visiting Lynn on the occasion of the Princess Philippa's departure from England on her marriage with Eric IX. of Denmark. In his *Liber de Illustribus Henricis* he adds (as we have remarked before) to a similar account, the fact of his having been present and having seen the Princess.

See also page 316, for an account of some children having been stolen at Lynn, and carried to London by beggars, where they afterwards recognised their parents, whom they accidentally saw in the street.

[2] See page 302. It appears that Dr. John Till, his Confessor, exhorted him, when he was dying, to repent specially of three things:—First, for the death of King Richard; secondly, for the death of Archbishop Scrope of York; and lastly, for his usurpation of the crown. The King replied that as to the two first points, he had already satisfied his conscience, having written on the subject to the Pope, who had assigned him penance, which he had fulfilled, and given him absolution; that the third point was one to which he could set no remedy, as his children after him would not suffer the right to the crown to be taken away from them.

Notices of the Chronicle of England.

careful observation. His other historical work "De Illustribus Henricis" will be found to supply the defect to a certain extent, from the accidental circumstance that three sovereigns bearing the name of Henry reigned consecutively at this period.

56. In reviewing the contents of the present Chronicle, it is impossible not to be struck with the singular honesty and straightforwardness of character which must have belonged to the writer; and the conspicuous care and accuracy displayed in the execution of that portion of his task in which he was not compelled to depend wholly on the often conflicting and doubtful authority of others, is no less remarkable. As a zealous and hearty Churchman, he was, of course, deeply imbued with strong religious feelings; and it is only when he dilates upon the shortcomings of the heretics of his time, that he condescends to the use of language which no amount of delinquency on their part could justify. His strongest abuse is reserved for Sir John Oldcastle and John Wicliff. At the same time it is quite clear that in matters of church government in which neither were any heresies involved, nor any Lollards implicated, he was very far from holding extreme views. The appeal of Robert Grosteste, Bishop of Lincoln, (whose name is always associated with the English Reformation, though he died long before the gradual spread of the principles which he maintained had resulted in that great Revolution in the Church,) from the authority of the Pope "to the High King of Heaven," is mentioned without a syllable of disapprobation; on the contrary, the next sentence contains a statement that the Pope died soon after, and a hint that this was a judgment on him for his obstinacy. He also mentions the several instances of attempted aggression by the Pope on the prerogative of the King, and the liberties of English subjects, in the true spirit of an Englishman; and it is impossible to doubt that he heartily approved of the false claims

Notices of the Chronicle of England.

of the See of Rome being disputed, although he does not venture to say so in as many words. The general impression left on the mind, after a careful review of the contents of the Chronicle, is favourable alike to the head and heart of the writer, and calculated to inspire us with the greatest confidence in his accuracy and credibility. We must not, however, omit to mention one particular in which he has allowed circumstances to warp his judgment, and tampered with facts; we allude to that servile mode of addressing and speaking of the reigning Sovereign which has led him, in at least one notable instance, to be guilty of contradicting himself. The "Liber de Illustribus Henricis," dedicated to King Henry the Sixth, contains so glowing an account of the virtues of Henry the Fourth as to leave no doubt on the reader's mind that the Author acknowledged his right to the crown, or at least thought proper, at that time, to do so for his royal patron's sake; whereas, in the Dedication of the present Chronicle to King Edward the Fourth, he says: "He that entered be intrusion was Henry the Fourte. He that entered be Goddis provision is Edward the Fourt. The similitude of the reparacioune is ful lich the werk of the transgression."[1] This, however, is probably the only instance in which such an inconsistency is traceable, and its existence will not injure the credibility of the Chronicler, or prejudice the mind against him, if the peculiar circumstances of the position in which he was placed be taken into consideration.

Notices of the MSS. of the Chronicle.

57. It remains to give a short account of the MSS. which have been used in the present Edition. Two MSS. only of this Chronicle are known to be extant, and these are both preserved at Cambridge.

58. The MS. in the Public Library,[2] which has been adopted for the text, is by far the better of the

---

[1] See page 4.

[2] MS. G. g. 4. 12.

Notices of the MSS. of the Chronicle.

two; indeed there is every reason to suppose that it is an autograph.[1] We have arrived at this conclusion, first, because the style of the writing corresponds very closely with that of those MSS. of Capgrave which are known, by unmistakeable evidence, to have been written by his own hand;[2] and, secondly, because the curious private mark of the author, of which we have given a fac-simile,[3] occurs in it so frequently. It is in medium folio, written upon vellum, and consisting of 204 pages.[4] The whole of the MS. has been carefully revised, and many corrections, and alterations made in it, in most instances apparently by the original scribe.[5] Some rough notes, merely of reference to the facts contained in the text, have been added in the margin.[6] There is no concluding colophon; indeed, as we have already mentioned, the MS. ends very abruptly in the middle of a column, and was evidently left by its Author in an incomplete state. The History is brought down to the year 1417, the latest fact recorded being the assembling of the Council of Basle.

---

[1] This MS. originally belonged to Bp. More, and was given by him to the Cambridge Library. He had been bishop of Norwich before his translation to the see of Ely, and on that account not unlikely to have become possessed of some of the works of the Monk of Lynn.

[2] See the MS. of his Commentary on the Book of Genesis, preserved in Oriel College, and, especially, that of the *Liber de Illustribus Henricis* in the Corpus Christi Collection. Indeed, a comparison of all the extant MSS. leaves no room for doubt as to the identity of the author's handwriting, and which of them are autographs. The interesting facsimile given in the present volume leaves no room for description. It represents page 175 of the MS., and of the present Edition from page 257, line 2 from the bottom,—"Navern," to page 260, line 6,—"dyme." It was selected chiefly on account of the interesting statement it contains of the date of the Author's birth.

[3] See page 4.

[4] Each page is divided into two columns: there are forty-two lines in a page.

[5] Of these the more important have been noticed among the various readings.

[6] The name of John Welshe occurs in a fly-leaf at the end, and also that of John Campynett.

The following curious verses, written on one of the blank leaves of vellum at the end of this MS., may be interesting:—

"TUTA PAUPERTAS.

"Highe towers by strong wyndes full lowe be cast,
Whan the lowe cottages stand sure and fast,
Therefore with surenes yt is better in povertie t'abide,
Thanne hastily to be riche and sodeynly to slyde."

Notices of the MSS. of the Chronicle.

59. But little need be said of the second MS. with which the autograph MS. has been collated for the present Edition, and of which it is evidently a copy. That this is the case, is proved by the fact that the peculiarities, and even the mere mistakes in the spelling of proper names, have been to a great extent servilely imitated.[1] It is preserved in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.[2] It contains 196 pages, and is written upon paper in folio. All the dates are omitted in the early part. The Prologue also is wanting, in consequence of which the MS. has not been generally identified as Capgrave's and is stated to be anonymous in Nasmith's Catalogue of the Corpus Christi College MSS.[3]

---

[1] Some of the corrections, however, are valuable, though many are comparatively unimportant, and occur chiefly in the spelling of the words. The autograph MS. contains numerous traces of the Latin sources from which a considerable portion, at least, of the earlier history was derived, Capgrave having left the proper names in not a few instances in the particular case in which he found them. A curious instance occurs at page 28 :—"In his daies began the kyngdom of the Argyves, undir her first Kyng Imacho, whech was the father of Ysidis." At page 29 we find :—"Foroneus, the son of Ynachi." At page 113 :—"The Cherch of Lateranensis." These peculiarities have always been carefully copied by the writer of the MS. C.C.C.

[2] No. CLXVII., formerly Σ. 6. It is written in one hand throughout, probably at the end of the fifteenth or the beginning of the sixteenth century.

[3] The Editor takes this opportunity of offering his grateful thanks to the Rev. John Fenwick, and the Rev. T. B. Wilkinson, Fellows of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, for the facilities of access to the MSS. in their Library afforded to him by their kindness; a service which, in consequence of the peculiar conditions contained in the Will of Archbishop Parker, the Donor of the MSS. in question, was necessarily attended with much inconvenience to themselves.

The Editor also desires to offer his best thanks to the Reverend the Master of Balliol College, and the Rev. W. H. Fremantle, of All Souls' College, for their kind assistance in enabling him to obtain access to the MSS. of the works of Capgrave which are preserved in the libraries of their respective Colleges.

Capgrave's Life of S. Katharine.

60. Of Capgrave's other English works[1] only one is now extant, the "Life of S. Katharine." Of this at least four copies have been preserved; three, (as we stated in the Catalogue of his Works,) in the Arundel Collection in the British Museum, and one among the Rawlinson MSS. in the Bodleian Library.

61. i. MS. Arundel, 20. Paper, 4to. ff. 70. Written in the fifteenth century by R. Englysh, and originally the property of G. Carew. The "Life of S. Katharine" occupies ff. 1–42, inclusive. It consists of five Books, the first of which begins thus:—

"Sum tyme there was a grete Kyng in Grece,
Off Surry and Cypre both Lord and Syre."

The fifth Book ends thus:—

"And specialle suceur ynn this perlous pylgrymage,
That after this lyve we may cum to thy cage."

This MS. is imperfect. It wants the Prologue which occurs at the beginning of the other three.

62. ii. MS. Arundel, 396. Vellum: small folio. ff. 130. Written in the middle of the fifteenth century, in a neat and good hand. It appears that this MS. formerly belonged to Campseye Priory in the County of Suffolk, by the gift of Dame Katharine Babyngton, Sub-Prioress of that House. The "Life of S. Katharine" occupies ff. 1–117. The text of the Prologue has been printed from this MS., and collated with the two other copies.[2]

63. iii. MS. Arundel, 168. Paper and vellum mixed, ff. 85. This MS. was also written in the fifteenth century. The "Legend of S. Katharine," by Capgrave, in seven-line stanzas, occupies ff. 15–65 inclusive. The remaining folios contain lives of S. Christina, S. Dorothy, and of Cato, the authorship of

---

[1] The MSS. of the Latin works which are still extant are described, and their Prologues printed, in the Appendices to the Introduction to the "*Liber de Illustribus Henricis*."

[2] See Appendix III.

which Tanner claims for Capgrave, but without sufficient evidence.[1]

Capgrave's Life of S. Katharine.

64. iv. MS. Rawl., Poet., 118. Paper, small 8vo. It was probably written at the end of the fifteenth century.[2]

---

[1] His words are :—"In eodem codice datur Vita S. Christinæ, S. Dorotheæ, et Catonis, Anglice ; et nihil impedit, credo, quominus Capgravio nostro eam acceptam referamus."

[2] At the end are written the following words :—"Iste libellus constat Willielmo Gybbe, Capellano." This MS. belonged at one time to Sir Henry Spelman, who has written on the fly-leaf at the beginning a curious introductory notice, which we have printed in the Appendix. The MS. also bears the name of Johannes Kemp.

ERRATA.

In page 119, line 14, *for* "ouleful" *read* "onleful."

" " 173, margin, *for* "in favour of," *read* "against."

THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND.

DEDICATION.[1]

Dedicatory Epistle to Edward IV.

To my Sovereyn Lord, Edward, be the grace of God Kyng of Ynglond and of Frauns, Lord of Yrland, a pore Frere of the Heremites of Seynt Austyn, in the Convent of Lenne, sendith prayer, obediens, subjeccion, and al that evir, be ony deute, a prest schuld offir onto his Kyng.

Reasons for writing the Chronicle.

It is somewhat divulgid in this lond, that I have aftir my possibilite be occupied in wryting, specialy to gader eld exposiciones upon Scripture into o collecion; and thoo that were disparplied in many sundry bokis, my laboure was to bringe hem into o body, that thei which schal com aftir schal not have so mech laboure in sekyng of her processe. Now is age com, and I want ny al that schuld longe to a studier; yet it plesed me, as for a solace, to gader a schort remembrauns of elde stories, that whanne I loke upon hem, and have a schort touch of the writing, I can sone dilate the circumstaunses.

Its extent

This werk send I to ȝow, where ȝe may turne and se schortly touchid the most famous thingis that have be do in the world fro his beginnyng onto the ȝere of oure Lord Crist a M.CCCC. and XVII. If ȝe merveyle whi the ȝeres be set oute as on, too, thre, this is the cause: For the elde bokes in her noumberes, thouȝ thei were mad ful treuly, ȝet be thei viciat be the writeres. Eke the Cronicles of Euseby, Jerom, and othir, have grete dyversite in noumberis of ȝeres. This is the cause whi I sette my noumbiris o rowe.

Chronology.

---

[1] This Dedication is omitted in the MS. C.C.C.

Dedicatory Epistle.

Also if ȝe merveile that in thoo ȝeres fro Adam to the Flood of Noe sumtyme renne a hundred ȝere, or more, where the noumbir stant bare, and no writing therein, this schal be myn excuse; for soth, I coude non fynde, not withstand that I soute with grete diligens. If othir studious men, that have more red than I, or can fynde that I fond not, or have elde bokes whech make more expression of thoo stories that fel fro the creacion of Adam onto the general Flod than I have, the velim lith bare, save the noumbir, redy to receyve that thei wille set in. Whan the tyme of Crist is come, than renne to noumberes togidir; the black servith for the age of the world, the rede servith for the annotacion of Crist. Ther is also anothir thing for to note, that the ȝeres of the Juges of Israel and of the Kingis of Juda, and of the Kingis of Perse, onto the tyme of Grete Alisaundre, evir that ȝere where the Kinge is first sette is the last ȝere of his regne, for swech is the computacion of Ysidir, and fro gret Alisaunder forth that ȝere where the King is sette first is the first ȝere of his regne. For the newe Cronicules use that forme. These reules had in mynde, the reder schal more parfitely undirstand this book.

The author commends his book to the King,

O my benigne Lord, receyve this bok, thouȝ it be simpil; and lat that Gospel com in mynde, where the widow offered so litil, and had so mech thank.

and gives him many counsels.

Now will I make ȝou pryvy what maner opinion I have of ȝoure persone in my pryvy meditaciones. I have a trost in God that ȝoure entre into ȝoure heritage schal, and must be, fortunat, for many causes. First, for ȝe entered in the sexti ȝere of Crist, aftir that a M.CCCC. were complet. This noumbir of sex is amongis writeres mech comendid for that same perfeccion that longith to sex. Whan he riseth be on, the same longith to him whan he is multiplied be ten. The noumbir of sex is applied to a sware ston, whech hath sex pleynes, and viii. corneres. Wherevyr you ley him, or turne him, he lith ferme and stabille. Ye schal undirstand that al the laboure of the world is figured in sex dayes; for the Sunday betoknyth the rest that schal be in Hevene. We pray God that al ȝour laboure in this world may rest on God, whech joyned be the corner ston Crist the to walles of Jewes and Hethen into o Feith. This noumbir eke of sex is praysed for his particuler noumberes, whech be on, too, thre; and these be cleped cote, for in her revolving thei make him evyr hool, as sex sithe on is sex; threes too is sex; twyes thre is sex. This consideracion may ye have in this arsmetrik. Serve o God alle the daies of ȝoure lyve, whech daies, as is seid, be comprehended in the noumbir sex, and there is sex sithis on. Make in ȝoure soule to ternaries, on in feith anothir in love: beleve in God—Fadir, and Son, and Holy Gost: love God in al ȝoure hert, al ȝoure soule, and al ȝoure mynde. Make eke thre binaries. As for the first, think that ȝe be mad of to natures,—body and soule. Loke that ȝoure soule have evyr the sovereynte, and that the bestial mevyng of the body oppresse not the soule. The secunde bynarie is to think that there be to weyes in this world, on to lyf, anothir to deth. That wey that ledith to evyrlastyng lyf, thouȝ it be streite, kepe it. Tho men that renne the large weye clepe hem ageyn be ȝoure power. The third bynarie is love of God, and love of ȝoure neyboure. For evene as it is ȝoure deute to love God with drede, so is it ȝoure offise for to se that men love ȝou with drede. The Apostil, whan he spekith of potestates, "He bereth not his swerd," he seith, "withouten cause."[1] The Romaynes lawe was, "to spare hem that asked grace, and to smyte down the proude."[2]

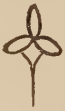
---

[1] Rom. xiii. 4.

[2] "Parcere subjectis et debellare superbos."—*Virg. Æn.* vi. 853.

Dedicatory Epistle.

Ferthermore ȝet fynde I a grete conveniens in ȝoure tytil, that ȝe be cleped Edward the Fourt. He that entered be intrusion was Herry the Fourte. He that entered by Goddis provision is Edward the Fourt. The similitude of the reparacioune is ful lich the werk of the transgression, as the Cherch singith in a Preface,—"Because Adam trespased etyng the frute of a tre, therfor was Crist nayled on a tre." We trew loveres of this lond desire this of oure Lord God, that al the erroure whech was browte in be Herry the Fourte may be redressed be Edward the Fourte. This is the desire of many good men here in erde, and, as I suppose, it is the desire of the everlasting hillis that dwelle above. God, for His mercy, fulfille that He hath begunne; sende oure Kyng Edward good lyf and good governauns; and, aftir his laboure, good reward in the blys of Hevene. Amen.


[1]

Ȝoure Servaunt,
CAPGRAVE.

---

[1] This curious device, evidently the private mark of the Chronicler, occurs also at the end of his *Liber de Illustribus Henricis*, MS. C.C.C. It is not found in the copy preserved in the British Museum. In the present MS., under the year 1394, where he records the day of his birth, and in one or two other places, which will be referred to where they occur, a similar device is found in the margin. It may possibly be a monogram of the initials, J. C.

THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND,

BY

JOHN CAPGRAVE.[1]

[3]B.C. 4004. Creation and fall of man.

ANNO Mundi 1.[2]—The first man Adam was mad on a Friday, withoute modir, withoute fader, in the feld of Damask; and fro that place led into Paradise, to dwell there: after dryvyn oute for synne. Whanne he had lyved nyne hundred ȝere and XXX. he deied, byried in Hebron: his hed was lift with the Flood, and leyd in Golgatha.

Anno 2—11.

Anno 12.—This ȝere Eve bare too childirn at o birth, the man hite Cayn, the woman Calmana, of whech to come Enok, not he that was translate; and Yrad, and Mammael, and Mathusael, and Lamech, that broute in first bigamie; and he killid Cayn.

Anno 13—29.

Birth of Abel and Delbora.

Anno 30.—This ȝere Eve brout forth Abel and Delbora at o birth; and it is seid comounly that at every birth she bare a man and a woman, to multiplicacioun of the world. Abel was the secunde son of Adam, a keeper of scheep, a mayde, a martire, killid of his brothir of pure envy, because our Lord schewid

Death of Abel.

---

[1] The Text is derived from the MS. in the Public Library at Cambridge. This has been collated with that preserved in the Library of Corpus Christi College in the same University.

[2] In the MS. C.C.C. the dates are omitted throughout, with a few exceptions, which will be mentioned when they occur.

[3] In the marginal references for the years Before Christ, the chronology in ordinary use has been adopted.

B.C. 3875. toknes of love to him for his trewe tithing. His sepulture is not spoke of[1] in Scripture; but this is largely divulgid there, that His blood crieth veniauns onto God, whech veniauns was fulfilled in Cayn; for aftir that God had undirtake him of his synne he had a merk, that is to sey a grevous seknes in his hed, til the tyme that Lamech killid him.

Anno 31—59.

Of the children of Adam.

Anno 60.—We rede that Adam begat of his wyf XXX. sones and douteris; but Moyses expressed not but these foure and Seth:[2] for he was long aftir her tyme, and that knowing whech he had was be special revelacioun; so that many thingis were hid fro him.

Anno 61—99.

Adam names all creatures.

Anno Mundi Centesimo.—We rede that Adam in his first beginning named alle bestis and foules upon erde, and that same name that thei have in the Hebrew tonge he gave it to hem. Eke we rede that he prophecied both of the Flood that schuld destroye the world, and eke of the fire, therefor he wrote these prophecies in too pileres, on of brasse, whech schuld not be distroyed with watir, a nothir of tyl, whech schuld not brenne with fyre.

Anno 101—129.

Of the birth of Seth.

Anno 130.—Of this ȝere, a CXXX., be dyvers opiniones amongis these Croniculeris. Moises seith that Adam begat Seth whanne he was of age a C. wynteris.[3] Alle othir Cronicles sey that whanne Seth was bore Adam was of age CC. and XXX. The cause of this dyversite is assigned be studious men, that Moises counted nowt that hundred ȝere in whech Adam ded his penauns. For in this secunde hundred ȝere Adam ded penauns for his sinne, and so ded Eve.

---

[1] *spoke of*] touchyd. C.C.C.

[2] *and Seth.*] These words are in the Margin in the Publ. Libr. MS. They form part of the text in MS. C.C.C.

[3] *a C. wynteris*] a C. wynteris xxx. C.C.C.

Anothir cause is assined of writeris, that aftir tyme Cayn had killid Abel his brothir, thanne Adam mad a vow that he schuld nevir in al his lif comoun with Eve; and his continens kept he a hundred ȝeres, whech ȝeres be not a noumbred of Moises. So aftir that hundred ȝere of continens, be an aungel he was warned that he schuld use the werk of generacioun, to plesauns of God and multiplicacion of frute. B.C. 3875.

Anno 131—199.

Anno Mundi CC.—Thow it be soo that the book whech is clepid "The Penauns of Adam,"[1] be cleped Apocriphum, whech is to sey, whanne the mater is in doute, or ellis whan men knowe not who mad the book, ȝet in veri soth we rede that he ded penauns in a place fast be Ebron; for there is ȝet a vale, clepid "The Vale of Weping."

Of the penance of Adam for his sin.

Anno 201—229.

Anno 230.—This ȝere, aftir the trewer opinion, was Seth born; whech man was of so holy lyf that his childirn were cleped "The Sones of God;" and thei kepte that same reule onto the sevene generacioun. In othir bokes, that be not of so grete auctorite as is the Scripture, is told that Adam schuld a sent Seth onto the gates of Paradyse for the oyle of mercy, and Michael gave him this answere,—That he must abyde V. thousand and to hundred ȝere, and thanne schuld he have that oyle.

B.C. 3874. Birth of Seth.

Anno 231—299.

Anno Mundi CCC.—In this tyme begunne men sore to multiplie. And Cayn, at thoo daies, because he

Cain builds Enoch.

---

[1] "*The Penauns of Adam.*"] See page 16 of the "Codex Pseudepigraphus Veteris Testamenti," of Joh. Albert. Fabricius, published in 1713, at Hamburgh. "Gelasius in Decreto:—'Liber qui appellatur pœnitentia Adæ Apocriphus.'" He also quotes passages from the writings of Syncellus, and Cedrenus, and an "Arabs auctor MS.," which contain allusions to this Apocryphal Book.

B.C. 3874. ded mech wrong, and meynteyned hem that ded wrong, mad a cyte, and named it Enok aftir his son. This Enok was fader to Yrad; and Yrad fader to Mammael; Mammael fader to Matusael; Matusael fader to Lamech; whech Lamech weddid to wyves. On of hem hite Ada, the othir hite Sella. Ada sche broute forth Jabel. He was the first fynder of tentis, in whech schepherdis restid in for to kepe here scheep. And his brothir, be the same woman, hite Jubal: he was fader to alle hem that singe in the orgoun, or in the crowde. Sella, his othir wif, sche broute forth Tubal-Cayn. He wroute first with hambir and stith in alle thoo werkis that longyn to yrun or bras.

His descendants.

Jabel.

The first son, Jabel, departed the flokkis of scheep fro the flokkis of goot: and aftir her qualite, thei that were of o coloure be hem selve, and thei that were of too or dyvers be hem selve: and aftir here age ȝeringis be hem selve, and elder be hem selve.

Jubal.

Jubal, his brothir, he was fynder of musik, not of the very instrumentis whech be used now, for thei were founde long aftir; but this man fond certeyn soundis accordyng, and to this entent that the grete laboure in schepkepyng schuld have sum solace of musik. And that this craft schuld not perch, he ded write it in to pileres, on of marbil, a nothir of tyl, for feer, and for watir.

Tubal-Cain.

The othir man, Tubal-Cayn, that fond first smythis craft, he mad first[1] wepenes of batayle, both invasif, and defensif; and he began first graving in metallis, to plesauns of the sith. And, as it is seid, the forseid Jubal proporcioned his musik aftir the sound of Tubal hamberes; for he ded make hem of dyvers proporciones, sum hevyere, sum liter, aftir his delectacion. He set eke on fire many trees, and the metalle that was in the fire be hete of the fire malt, and ran in certeyn veynes of the erde, and took thereof certeyn figures. Upon this he mad certeyn moldes, and pored the metal new molten in hem, and so made figures aftir his fantasie. The sistir of Tubal-Cayn, cleped Noema, sche fond first spinning, karding, and weving, and swech laboure as longith to making of cloth. B.C. 3874.

---

[1] *first.*] om. C.C.C.

Anno 301—399.

Anno Mundi CCCC.

Anno 401—424.

B.C. 3769. Birth of Enos.

Anno 425.—This ȝere, whan Seth was of age to hundred and V., he begat a son, whech he[1] clepid Enos. This Enos is noted the first that prayed onto God, for Enos in oure langage soundith "A resonable man;" for he drove oute, be reason, that God was his makere, and therefor is it seid, "he was first that called onto God."[2] Summe men suppose that he mad certeyn orisones to the praysing of God. But the Hebrewis sey that he mad certeyn ymages representing God; and thouȝ he[3] erred in swech liknesse, ȝet he excited many hertes to the knolwech of God, and encres of devocioun.

Anno 426—499.

Six causes of the longevity of the Antediluvians.

Anno Mundi D.—Men that be studious meve this questioun, whi men at that tyme lyved so longe. And thei asyne many resones. On is the godness and the clennes of complexion whech was newe gove hem be God. For whanne it was newly take it had more vertu because of the ȝivere.[4] Anothir cause is, that men lyved that tyme with more temperauns than thei do now. The thirde cause[5] may be cleped

---

[1] *he*] was. C.C.C.

[2] Gen. iv. 26.

[3] *and thouȝ he*] for he. C.C.C.

[4] *ȝivere.*] ȝeu. C.C.C.

[5] *The thirde cause*] The third is the cause. C.C.C.

B.C. 3769. the goodnes of thoo metes whech thei ete; for thei ete no thing but swech as growith frely on the erde, neithir flesch ne fisch; and be the Flood, whech cam for the most part oute of the salt se, cleped the occean, the erde was so[1] apeired that it bar nevir so good frutes sithe. The fourte is of the grete sciens whech Adam had, and whech he taute his issew: for he knew the vertue of herbis and sedis bettir thanne evir ded ony erdeli man, save Crist; and he knew the privy werking of hem whech were most able to preserve men in longe lyf. The V. cause is of the good aspecte of sterres, that was over hem at thoo dayes, whech aspecte profiteth mech to the length of lif to man and to best; for this is a comoun proverbe at the philosopheris, that the bodies in erd[2] be mech reuled after the planetis above. The sexte cause is of Goddis ordinacioun, that wold tho men schuld lyve so longe for multiplicacioun of here kynrod, and eke for to have longe experiens of certeyn sciensis.

Anno 501—599.

Anno Mundi DC.

Anno 601—624.

B.C. 3679. Birth of Cainan. Anno 625.—In this ȝere Enos, whan he was of age a hundred ȝere and nynty, he begat a son whom he cleped Caynan; whech Caynan was rich in possessiones, and ful sori at othir mennes tribulaciones, and so sondith his name in the Hebrew tong, "Lamentacion," or "Possession." Thus may men se that at thoo dayes summe were richere than summe, and redier eke to geve elmesse.

Anno 626—699.

Anno Mundi DCC.

Anno 701—795.

B.C. 3609. Birth of Mahalaleel. Anno 796.—In this ȝere Caynan, whanne he was of age a hundred ȝere and sevenety, begat Malaleel, whos name is as mech to sei as "a praisere of God;" for he had litil othir delite in this word[1] but in prayere and praising of God. And here may men note that the kynrod of Cayn were evir bisi for to make armoure and wepin, and the kinrod of Seth bysi to plese and praise God.[2] B.C. 3609.

---

[1] *so.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *in erd*] of the erth. C.C.C.

Anno 797—799.

Anno Mundi DCCC.

Anno 801—899.

Anno Mundi DCCCC.

Anno 901—929.

[B.C. 3074.] Death of Adam, and separation of the children of Seth and Cain.

Anno 930.—In this ȝere deyed Adam, and was biried in Ebron, whech is[3] a cite of Jude, and sumtyme it was cleped Arbe. The geauntes mad it vii ȝere before that the cite clepid Thanis was mad in Egipte. And it was cleped Arbe for the birying of foure patriarkes, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Jacob. It was cleped sumtyme Mambre aftir the name[4] of Abraham frend. And sumtyme it was cleped Cariath-Arbe,—"The cite of Arbe." Metodius seith here that the same ȝere that Adam deyed the generaciones of Seth and Cayn were departed asundir; for Seth led his generacion onto the est side of the world, onto a grete hille that was rite ny onto Paradise, and there he dwellid. Cayn and his kynrod dwelled stille in the same place where he had slayn his brothir, and there he mad a cite, whech he cleped Effrem, as Methodius seith.

Anno 931—959.

B.C. 3544. Birth of Jared.

Anno 960.—This ȝere Malaleel, whanne he was of age a hundred and sexti and v. ȝere, begat Jareth. And Jareth soundith in oure tonge "Coming down," and "Coumforting."

---

[1] *word*] world. C.C.C.

[2] *and praise God*] the prays of God. C.C.C.

[3] *is*] was. C.C.C.

[4] *aftir the name*] aftyr the tyme Mambrer aftyr the name. C.C.C.

B.C. 3544. Se now that the generacion of Seth was disposed to alle vertues, summe to pray, sum to tithe, summe to offir, summe, as this man was, to coumfort hem that were in seknes and distresse.

Anno 961—999.

Anno Mundi M.—In this first thousand ȝere was this world occupied with these sex faderis and patriarkes, Adam, Seth, Enos, Caynan, Malaleel, and Jared. These sex and her childryn cam of the stok of Seth, for the kynrod of Cayn was more multipied[1] than this kynrod. So semeth it that the world had mech puple at that same tyme.

Anno 1001—1099.

Anno Mundi M.C.

Anno 1101—1121.

B.C. 3382. Birth of Enoch.

Anno 1122.—This ȝere Jared, whanne he was of age a hundred ȝere sexti and too, begat Ennok. This Ennok is the sevene person fro Adam, and ȝet he is o lyve, for he was translate be God onto Paradise, and there he is with Helie; whech too shul come, and preche ageyn the errouris of Antecrist,[2] and be mad martires. This Ennok mad a book of prophecie, whech the lawe[3] acoundith among bokis that be clepid Apocripha; of whech I have mech wondir, for in the Epistil of Judas, whech is incorporate to the Bible, the same Apostil makith mynde of this book, and seith thus: "Of this mater prophecied the VII. fro Adam, and thus[4] he seid,—Behold, our Lord schal come[5] with his Seyntis mani thousandis, for to do rithful dome to alle men, and to undirtake wikkid men of here evel werkis in whech thei ded amys."[1] B.C. 3382.

---

[1] *multipied*] multiplied. C.C.C.

[2] *Antecrist.*] Thus spelt in both MSS.

[3] See Concil. (ed. reg.) x. 207.

[4] See "The Book of Enoch," ch. ii.; translated from the Ethiopic MS. in the Bodleian by Richard Laurence, Archbishop of Cashel. Oxford, J. H. Parker, 1838. Also Fabricii Cod. Pseudepigr. pp. 60-223.

[5] *come.*] Added in the margin in a later hand. In the text of C.C.C.

Anno 1123—1141.

Anno 1142.—This ȝere deied Seth, aftir many good dedis. The days of his lyf were nyne hundred and XII.[2] ȝere. [B.C. 2902.] Seth dies.

Anno 1143—1199.

Anno Mundi M.CC.

Anno 1201—1286.

Anno 1287.—In this ȝere Ennok, whan he was of age C. sexti ȝere[3] and V., begat Mathusalem, of whos dayes be many sundry opiniones. Jerom, in his book "De Hebraicis Questionibus," seith thus:[4]—"After the bysi computacion of the Hebrewis, this Methusale schuld a[5] leved XIIII. ȝere after the Flood. For he was LXX. ȝere of age or he begat Lamech, and Lamech was of age a hundred IIII. score and VIII. or he begat Noe. So were the ȝeres of Mathusale on to the tyme that Noe was bore CCC LV., and in the sex hundred ȝere of Noe was the Flod. Be this computacioun he schuld a[5] leved XIIII. ȝere aftir the Flood." But there is erroure in the noumbir; for this is determyned in B.C. 3317. Birth of Methuselah.

---

[1] S. Jude, 14, 15.

[2] *XII.*] XXX. C.C.C.—The XII., however, is written upon an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[3] *of age C. sexti ȝere*] of age sexti ȝere. C.C.C. The 'C.' has been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[4] S. Hieronymi Opera, iii. col. 313, C., fol. Verona, 1735. The original passage is as follows:—"Famosa quæstio et disputatione omnium ecclesiarum ventilata, quod, juxta diligentum supputationem, quatuordecim annos post Diluvium Mathusala vixises referatur. Etenim quum esset Mathusala annorum centum sexaginta septem, genuit Lamech. Rursum Lamech, quum esset annorum centum octoginta octo, genuit Noe. Et fiunt simul usque ad diem nativitatis Noe anni vitæ Mathusalæ trecenti quinquaginta quinque. Sexcentesimo autem anno vitæ Noe Diluvium factum est. Ac per hoc, habita supputatione per partes, nongentesimo quinquagesimo quinto anno Mathusalæ Diluvium fuisse convincitur. Quum autem supra nongentis sexaginta novem annis vixisse sit dictus nulli dubium est quatordecim eum annos vixisse post Diluvium."

[5] *schuld a*] shuld have. C.C.C.

B.C. 3317. certeyn, that he deyid the same ȝere before that the Flood was.[1]

Anno 1288—1299.

Anno Mundi M.CCC.

Anno 1301—1339.

[B.C. 2864.] Death of Enos. Anno 1340.—This ȝere deyid Enos, after he had lyved nyne hundred ȝere and V.

Anno 1341—1399.

Anno Mundi M.CCCC.

Anno 1401—1453.

B.C. 3130. Birth of Lamech, the father of Noah. Anno 1454.—This ȝere Mathusalem, whan he was of age a hundred foure score and VII. ȝere, begat Lamech. And here is for to note that there were too men of this same name, Lamech. On was of the kynrod of Cayn, and he broute in first bigamie: the othir was of the kynrod of Seth, and he was fader to Noe.

Anno 1455—1496.

B.C. 3017. Translation of Enoch. Anno 1497.—This ȝere was Ennok translat in to Paradise, in what maner we have no writyng; but who he schal come is expressed that Helie and[2] he schal come in saccis, and preche at Jerusalem, and werk many wonderes, and be martired be Antecrist.[3]

Anno 1498—1499.

Anno Mundi M.D.

Anno 1501—1534.

[B.C. 2769.] Death of Cainan. Anno 1535.—This ȝere deied Caynan, of age VIII. hundred nynty ȝere and V.

Anno 1536—1599.

Anno Mundi M.DC.

---

[1] *before that the Flood was*] befor the Flood was. C.C.C.

[2] *Helie and.*] These words have been added in the same handwriting, (but afterwards, and probably on revision,) partly in the margin and partly on an erasure. In the MS. C.C.C. they form part of the text.

[3] *and be martired be Antecrist.*] Added on an erasure, but forming part of the text in C.C.C. The word Antichrist is written with an 'e' in both MSS.

Anno 1601—1619. B.C. 3017.

Anno 1620—Moritur Malaleel.[1]

Anno 1621—1639.

Anno 1640.—In this ȝere, as Methodius seith, began mech sinne growe up on erde, so foule and soo abhominabe[2] that it is schame to say. Thanne went the Sones of God, which were cleped the kynrod of Seth, and comouned with the Douteris of men, whech were Cayn douteries; and thei begotin geauntis. And for this and mech other thing, God was wroth with these sinneres, and purposed for to venge Him, as schal be told after.

B.C. 2769. "The Sons of God" and "the Daughters of Men."

Anno 1641.

Anno 1642. +

Anno 1643—1651.

Anno 1652.— + This ȝere[3] Lamech, whan he was a hundred ȝere of age IIII. score and VIII., begat Noe. Noe was a just man and a parfite, the ten persone fro Adam, makere of the schip, and deliverid in the same fro the grete Flood. This man was the first that reysid up auter aftir the Flood, and made offering to God. He lyved nyne hundred ȝere and fourty.

B.C. 2948. Birth of Noah.

Anno 1653—1699.

Anno Mundi M.DCC.

Anno 1701—1799.

Anno Mundi M.DCCC.

Anno 1801—1899.

Anno Mundi M.DCCCC.

Anno 1901—1921.

---

[1] *Moritur Malaleel.*] Added in a later hand in the MS. Pub. Lib., but not found in C.C.C.

[2] *abhominabe.*] Thus written in both MSS.

[3] + *This ȝere*, &c.] It should be observed that a similar cross, affixed to the year 1642 in the column of dates, is intended to signify that this passage should be transferred to that year.

B.C. 2582. Death of Jared.

Anno 1922.—This ȝere deied Jareth. His age was nyne hundred sexti and too ȝere.

Anno 1923—1999.

Anno Mundi duo M.

Anno 2001—2099.

Anno Mundi duo M.C.

Anno 2101—2141.

B.C. 2469. Noah builds the ark.

Anno 2142.—In this ȝere was Noe V. hundred ȝere of age; and than began he for to gete childirn, as it schal be touchid aftirward. And in this same ȝere began he to make his[1] schip, whech was of grete quantite, whan alle manere beestis and foulis were in the same, of summe sevene and sevene, of summe too and to, and alle here mete for a ȝere. This arck,—as Hugo seith De Sancto Victore, that mad a special book therof,—was in length half a mile and XL. passes.[2]

Anno 2143—2199.

Anno Mundi duo M.CC.

Anno 2201—2206.

Anno 2207.—Moritur Lamech.[3]

Anno 2208—2240.

---

[1] *his*] that. C.C.C.

[2] The original passage is as follows:—"Ac per hoc patet quod hæc arca in longitudine sua habuit passus quingentos quadraginta et stadia quatuor, id est, dimidium milliare, et quadraginta passus."—Hugonis de Sancto Victore Opera, vol. ii., fo. 139 E, of the edition printed at Venice in 1588.

[3] *Moritur Lamech.*] Added in a later hand in the MS. Pub. Lib., but not found in C.C.C.

SECUNDA ETAS.[1]

B.C. 2349. Death of Methuselah. The deluge.

Anno 2241.—In this ȝere deyed Mathusale. And in this same ȝere was the Flood that ovyrflew al the world, for it was XV. cubites above the hiest hillis. This Flood in party cam fro the grete se clepid the occean, and in parti fro the grete wateris that ar above.

B.C. 2348. Of the descendants of Noah.

In this same tyme the childirn of Noe took wyves, and entended onto generacion, of whos issew here schal be a declaracioun.

Sem, the eldest son, he begat Arphaxat; and of Cham descendid[2] Chus. Japheth he was fader to Gomer. So of these thre sones grew al mankynde in this world, and be what order here schul ȝe have abreviacioun.

Shem.

Of Sem come V. puples in special of whech Elam was first; and of him were cleped the puple that dwelle in Perse, Elamites. The secunde hite Assur; and of him the Assurianes took her first name. The third was clepid Arphaxat, of whom come thei that dwell in Chalde. The fourt hite Ludi; and of him cam a puple so clepid thanne. The V^th^ hite Aram; and he was fader to that puple that dwelle in Surre. The hed cite is clepid Damask. These be the[3] childir of Elam, son onto Sem: Us, Ul, Geter, and Mer. Us inhabited the cuntre cleped Traconides, of whech cuntre Job was a dweller; for his book begin-

---

[1] *Secunda Etas.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *descendid.*] Added in the margin.

[3] *the.*] Added in a later hand.

B.C. 2348. The descendants of Noah. nit so,—"There was a man in the lond of Us."[1] Of Ul cam thei that dwelle in Armenie. Of Gether cam a puple thei clepid Carmenes. Of Mer cam that puple that dwelle in Ynde. This is[2] the kinrod of Arphaxat: the first Heber, of him com the puple Hebrewis. Jectan, Heber son, he brout forth a puple after his name, dwelling in Ynde. Sale, he was son to Jectan, and of him com thei that be clepid Bactrianes. These be the puples that com of the stok of Sem, and thei inhabited mech of the est side of the world, fro the spring of the sunne on to hem of Fenice.

Ham. Cham had IIII childirn: Chus, of him cam the Ethiopes; Mesram of him com thei of Egipte; Futh, of him come thei of Libi, and eke the Mauritanes, for the flood that rennith by hem at these daies thei clepe it Futh; Canaan, of him come thei of Affrik, and of Phenice, and of him come alle the ten puples that dwelled in the lond of Canane.

Japheth. Japheth, he had VII childyrn. The first was Gomer; of him cam the Frensch puple: Magog; of him cam thei of Scithia, and eke the Gothis: Medai;[3] of him come the Medis: Ione, of him come the Greces, for here see is ȝet clepid Mare Ionicum. Tubal; of him come the Spaynardis. They were sumtyme cleped the Hiberi; and summe men sey, of him come thei of Itayle: Mosok, he was fadir to the Capadoses, for ȝet is there a cite amongis hem whech thei clepe Mosaca; Tiras, of him come the puple of Trace.

Anno 2242—2299.
Anno Mundi iiM.CCC.
Anno 2301—2380.

---

[1] Job, i. 1.

[2] *This is,* &c.] A stray date—iiM.CCC.—is introduced in this place in the MS. C.C.C.

[3] *Medai*] Media. C.C.C.

Anno 2381.—Here is the veri successioun of faderes fro Adam on to Abraam:

B.C. 2348. Generations from Adam to Abraham.

Adam.
Seth.
Enos.
Caynan.
Malaleel.
Jared.
Enok.
Mathusale.
Lamech.
Noe.
Sem.
Arphaxat.
Caynan.
Sale.
Heber.
Phalech.
Ragau.
Saruch.
Nachor.
Thare.[1]
Abraam.

Anno 2382—2399.

Anno Mundi iiM.CCCC.

Anno 2401—2499.

Anno Mundi duo M.D.

Anno 2501—2508.

B.C. 2281. Birth of Eber.

Anno 2509.—In this ȝere Sala begat Heber; and of this Heber, as auctouris sey, cam the puple Hebrak, for Heber was neve onto Sem. This puple is clepid sumtyme Israele, of Israel that was son on to Isaac; his othir name was Jacob. For thei sey that he was named be the aungelle, and al the puple

---

[1] *Thare.*] om. C.C.C.

B.C. 2281. named aftir him. For the XII. Kynrodis cam oute of him. Aftir, whanne thei were departed in Roboam tyme, thanne thei that left aboute Jerusalem were clepid the puple of Juda, and the othir X. tribus, that dwelt in Samarie, kept stille here elde name Israele.

Anno 2510—2591.

Anno 2592.—Moritur Noe.[1]

Anno 2593—2599.

Anno Mundi duo M.DC.

Anno 2601—2632.

B.C. 2247. Birth of Peleg. Anno 2633.—This ȝer Heber begat Phalegh whan he was of age a hundred ȝere and XXIIII.

Building of the Tower of Babel. In this tyme was the Toure of Confusion mad be III. princes, Nembrot, Jectan, and Suffene. This Nembrot, whech was of the kynrod of Sem, herd sei that thei that come of the kynrod of Cham schul first regne amongis the puple. For Noe aftir the Flood begat a son, and he was clepid Ionicus, whech prophecied swech thingis. For this cause this same Nembrot forsook the kynrod of Sem; went and dwellid among the kynrod of Cham. For he was a man of gret stature, in heith of X. cubites; so was he chose Kyng ovyr the kynrod of Cham. And sone aftir Jectan was mad Kyng upon the kynrod of Sem. Thanne thei that were come of Japhet, thei chose Suffene to here Kyng. Thus these III. princes come togidir in the feld of Senar, and there thei determined to make a toure. Thei ded bake erde onto the hardnes of ston, and than had thei tow erde, clepid bitumen; with these too thei made the Toure of Confusion, so clepid because there was the first confusion of tongis.

Anno 2634—2699.

Anno Mundi duo M.DCC.

---

[1] *Moritur Noe.*] Added in a later hand in the MS. Pub. Lib., but not found in C.C.C.

Anno 2701—2762.

Anno 2763.—Phalegh, whan he was a hundred ȝere old and XXX., begat Ragau. B.C. 2217. Birth of Reu.

And in this tyme began the worchiphing of fals ydolis, and in this manere. There were certeyn strong men and rich, makeris of townes, edifieres of citees, in whos name, whan thei were ded, the puple edified ymages to her liknes, that thei mite have sum solace of tho similitudes. But whan this erroure was broute in use, than, be temptacioun of the devel, thei worchiped hem as goddis, and beleved that thoo men whech were worchiped in thoo ymages were translate to Hevene as goddis, and soo spirites ȝove answere in hem, as revelaciones, whech the puple supposed thei com fro Hevene. Introduction of idolatry.

The Jewis sey that Ismael mad first swech maumentes of erde, and compelled Isaac, his brothir, to worchip the same. The hethen men sey that on Prometheus he mad first of erde ymages of men, and of him cam al that craft of maumentrie. And for this cause the poetes feyned that he was the first makere of men; for he mad first swech similitudes. Opinion of the Jews;

The Grekis sey that on Cicrops began this ydolatrie with graving ymages in olyve tre; and Minerve was the first that he mad, whech is goddesse of cunnyng, for in hir name was the cite of Attenes mad. Summe sey he mad first Jupiter, and set him on a autere. of the Greeks;

But the treuhest opinion in this mattere rehersith Fulgens in his Mithologiis. He seith: "There was a rich man in Egipte, whos name was Syrophanes, whech had a son whom he loved ovir wel. This son deied in ȝong age; and, whan he was ded, he lete make a ymage lich him, and set it in his[1] hous, that of Fabius Fulgentius.

---

[1] *his.*] This word has been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. in a later hand, but it forms part of the text in C.C.C.

B.C. 2217. he mite dayly have a newe remembrauns. And the servauntis, for plesauns of her maistir, offered thereto garlondis and lite. And whanne ony of hem had offended grevously, thei fled to the ymage, and there were thei saf. This witnesseth the Poete, where he seith,—

> "Primos[1] in orbe Deos fecit inesse timor."[2]

Thus he meneth,—"The first goddis that were, thei come in be dreed."[3]

Anno 2764—2799.

Anno Mundi duo M.DCCC.

Anno 2801—2894.

B.C. 2185. Birth of Serug.

Anno 2895.—This ȝere was Sarugh bore, the son of Ragau, whan Ragau was of age a hundred ȝere and XXX.

Description of Scythia.

And in this same ȝere began the kyngdam of that puple whech thei clepe Scitas. This was the secund regne, for the first was of Assiriis. Thanaus was the first Kyng of that lond. This puple sprang of Magog, whech was son onto Japhet. It was a grete lond in space. On the est, fro Ynde, and on the north side he was lyand be the grete fennes that ly betwix the flood Danubie and the Grete Se, onto the ende of Germanie. It had mech voide folk; therfor were here feldis bareyn for the most part. Summe of hem were tilmen; many leved be hunting, etyng blod and raw flesch, both of beest and of man. A rich lond men sei it is—but mech thereof is inhabitable—for gold and gemmis be there in habundauns. An[1] for the plente of grifes men dare not goo theretoo. These stones be there in habundauns,—smaragdis, cristalis, and cianeus. He hath eke real flodis: Ascore is on; anothir hite Fasiden; the thirde Araxen.

---

[1] *Primos.*] This word is made to agree with 'Deos' instead of with 'timor' in both MSS.

[2] See p. 676 of the edition of "Titi Petronii Arbitri Fragmenta, cur. Petro Burmanno, Trajecti ad Rhenum, apud Guilielmum Vande Water, M.DCCIX." — See also Stat. Theb. III. 661.

[3] "*There was a rich man . . . . be dreed.*"] The original passage is as follows:—"Diophantus, Lacedæmonum auctor, libros scripsit Antiquitatum XIV. in quibus ait, Syrophanem Ægyptium, familia substantiaque locupletem, filium genuisse, quem . . . . ineffabili ultra quam paternitas exigebat, affectu erga filium deditum. Ipse dum adversis fortunæ incursibus raperetur, patri crudele geminæ orbitatis dereliquit elogium. Denique, doloris angustia . . . . . filii sibi simulacrum in ædibus instituit . . . . . Universa familia, in domini adulatione, aut coronas plectere, aut flores inferre aut odoramenta, simulacro succendere consueverat. Nonnulli etiam servorum culpabiles, domini furiam evitantes, ad simulacrum profugi, veniam merebantur, et quasi salutis certissimo collatori florum atque thuris offerebant munuscula, timoris potius effectu quam amoris affectu. Denique hujus rei non immemor Petronius ait:—'Primus in orbe Deos fecit timor:'"—Vide pp. 28—32 of Muncker's edition of the Mythology of Fabius Fulgentius, published at Amsterdam, by Joan. à Someren, in 1581.

B.C. 2185.

Anno 2896—2899.

Anno Mundi duo M.DCCCC.

Anno 2901—2999.

Anno Mundi tria M.

Anno 3001—3033.

Anno 3034.—In this ȝere Sarugh, whan he was a hundred ȝere old and XXXV. begat Nachor.

B.C. 2155. Birth of Nahor.

And in that same tyme began the kyngdam of Egipte. This lond stant in the south side of the world,[2] where[3] regned first XV. sovereynes cleped Dinastines, as mech to sey as hie potestates; the first of hem hite Nume.[4] Than entered that lond thei of Tebes, tyl XXXVI. dynasties had regned. Thanne regned thei cleped Diapolitani; XVIII. of hem; and thei were clepid[5] Pharaones. So this kyngdam dured onto the

Account of the Kingdom of Egypt.

---

[1] *An*] And. C.C.C.

[2] *world.*] Added in the margin.

[3] *where*] wherein. C.C.C. The latter part of the word has been altered by erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[4] *Nume*] Numicus. C.C.C.

[5] *Diapolitani . . . . clepid.*] om. C.C.C.

B.C. 2155. tyme of Cambises, whech was son to Cirus king of Pers. The fadir of this Cirus gave his son the kyngdam of Assirie, and cleped him Nabugodonosor, whos prince Oloferne wan Egipte. And aftir that tyme had Egipt his owne Kingis onto the tyme that on Ochus, cleped Artaxerses, Kyng of Perse, put out Nectanabȝ, and regned there. So undir iii. Kinges of Perse was it governed onto the tyme of Grete Alisaundre. Thus all the Kyngis of Egipt, fro the first to the last Alisaundre, were CCCC. and IX. Summe of hem were clepid Dinastines, summe Pharaones,[1] summe Lagidi, summe Tholomei.

Anno 3035—3099.

Anno Mundi tria M.C.

Anno 3101—3113.

B.C. 2126. Birth of Terah.

Anno 3114.—In this ȝere Nachor, whan he was of age seventy and nyne, begat a son cleped Thare, fader onto Abraham.

The Kingdom of Assyria.

In his tyme began the kyngdam of the Assiriis and the regne of Sciciniis. The kyngdam of the Assiriis[2] was in the este, undir a Kyng cleped Belus Menpronides or Menprotides. It began in the XXV. ȝere of Sarugh, whech was eld-fader to Abraham, and it had dominacion ny of al Asie, save Ynde. For the forseid Belus beganne it, and Ninus his sone he set it in reule, and wan many londis therto, and mad the grete cite of Nynive aftir his name. Of this Belus summe sey cam al this ydolatrie. For his son ded make an ymage representing his fader, and this ydol was moost[3] general amongis naciones. Therfor had he dyvers names. Summe cleped him Bel; summe Belzebul; summe Belphegor. The kyngdam of the Sciciniis[4] was in the west, in Europe, a grete parte of

---

[1] *summe Pharaones.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *and the regne of . . . Assiriis.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *moost*] most. C.C.C.

[4] *Sciciniis.*] Saciniis. C.C.C.

B.C. 2126. The Kingdom of Assyria.

Grecia, fast by Archadie: this lested be XXX. Kyngis tyme onto the tyme of Zeucippe, that regned in the XXV. ȝere of Hely the preest.

Anno 3115—3183.

B.C. 1996. Birth of Abraham.

Anno 3184.—In this ȝere Thare, when he was LXX. ȝere old,[1] begat Abraham, whech is clepid fadir of oure feith; for, whan he was redi to offer his child to God, he beleved verili that God schuld reise him ageyn to the lif. He receyved first the feith of the Trinite, where he sey thre ymages and worchipid on.

Zoroaster introduces witchcraft.

In this tyme of Thare, Zorastes lyved, whech was fynder of wichcraft, of whom writeth Eusebius,[2] that this Zorastes was Cham, whech lyved onto the dayes of Nynus: For the same Nynus, as is seid before, mad the cite of Ninive the VII. ȝere of Abraham age, and of his regne the fourty ȝere and IX. And eke that Ninus held bataile with Cham, whech was cleped Zoraste, both killid him and brent his bokes. This same Zorastes, desiring for to be held a god, gaf al his entent to loke upon sterres, and with his craft he mad certeyn sparkis fro the eyer to appere up on him; and this mad simple men to studye, supposing that he was a god. But, at the last, that same familiare devel whech he haunted moost[3] with swech sparkis set him on fire. Aftir his deth the puple mad him a grave, as to the frend of God, with a chare of levene and thunder led up onto Hevene. Of this same man thus writeth Seint Augustin in the XXI. book, "De Civitate Dei:"—

---

[1] *LXX. ȝere old*] of age LXX. yere. C.C.C.

[2] *writeth Eusebius.*] The passage alluded to is among the lost portions of the Chronicle of Eusebius. At page 89 of Scaliger's Edition (Amsterdam, 1558) is the following simple statement:—Κατὰ Νίνοι Ζωροαστερ ὁ Μαγος Βακτρίων ἐβασίλευσε.

[3] *moost*] myche. C.C.C.

B.C. 1996. Introduction of witchcraft.

"Zorastes, whan he was bore, low as no child ded but he, and this lawhing[1] was no tokne of good, for it was monstrows, that is to seyn, ageyn course of kynde. For, thou he were fynder of wichcraft, ȝet was he killid in batayle of the kyng of Assiry, his name was Ninus."[2]

Anno 3185—3199.
Anno Mundi tria M.CC.
Anno 3201—3283.

---

[1] *lawhing*] lawhnyng. C.C.C.

[2] "*Zorastes . . . . Ninus.*"] The original passage is as follows:—"Solum quando natus est ferunt risisse Zoroastrem, nec ei boni aliquid monstrosus risus ille protendit. Nam magicarum artium fuisse perhibent inventorem, quæ quidem illi nec ad præsentis vitæ vanam felicitatem contra suos inimicos prodesse potuerunt. A Nino quippe rege Assyriorum . . . bello superatus est." S. Aug. de Civ. Dei, lib. XXI. ch. XIV.

ETAS TERCIA.[1]

Anno 3284.—This ȝere Abraham, whan he was a hundred ȝere of age, begat Ysaac be grete miracle; for his wif Sare had in age nynty ȝere. This man is the XI. fro Noe, XX. fro Adam; that he leved hertly in God, and receyved the Trinite to herborow: with oure Lord God oftin he spak. He was blessid be the handis of Melchisedech after his grete victorie. He begat a child in his age, whom he was redi to sle, and offir to the plesauns of God, had he not be lettid be a aungell.[2] In Chaldea was he bore; in Chanaan a pilgrime ful rich was he, and plesaunt to God. Whan he had lyved a hundred ȝere[3] and sevenety and V. than deyed he, and byried by his childirn in the dobil grave that he bout of Ephron the son of Etheus,[4] fast by the cite of Cariatharbe, that is to sey, Hebron. B.C. 1896. Birth of Isaac.

Anno 3285—3299.

Anno Mundi tria M.CCC.

Anno 3301—3321.

Anno 3322.—In these same dayes regned Melchisedech, of whom we fynde many divers opiniones. Summe sey that he was a aungell; summe sey that he was the Holy Goost; summe sey that he was Sem, the eldest child[5] of Noe. But the very treuth of him tellith the Apostil in the Epistel whech he wrote to the Hebrewis. Thus he seith: "His name is the Kynge of Justise, and than is he clepid Kynge of Salem, that Melchisedec.

---

[1] *Etas Tercia.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *a aungell*] an aungel. C.C.C.

[3] *ȝere.*] Written upon an erasure.

[4] *Etheus.*] Apparently altered from 'Ethe.'—Etheuȝ. C.C.C.

[5] *child*] son. C.C.C.

B.C. 1896. is to sey, King of Pes; withouten[1] fadir, withouten moder, withouten genelogie, neither having beginning of dayes ne ending, likned to the Son of God, he dwellith a prest for ever." [2] The Apostil menith not be this that Melchisedech had no fadir ne no modir, but that Scriptur spekith not of hem; and for he was figure of Crist, that had no fadir in erde.[3] But sikir is this, that he was Kyng of Salem, not of Jerusalem, whech was sumtyme cleped Salem, as Josephus seith,[4] but of Salem,[5] in the lond of Canaan. For it is a town fast by Scicopolin, where his paleis stood. In Seynt Jerom tyme men mith[6] se be ruyne of the wall who grete a lord he was.[7]

Anno 3323—3343.

B.C. 1837. Birth of Esau and Jacob.

Anno 3344.—In this ȝere Ysaac, of age sexti ȝere, begat Esau and Jacob, twynnes. This Ysaac was bore of his modir Sare in the cuntre cleped Geraris, betwix Cades and Seir; named of God befor his birth; circumcidid in the VIII. day, and offered in the figure of oure Lord Jhesus Crist.

Kingdom of the Argives founded.

In his daies began the kyngdam of the Argyves undir her[8] first Kyng Ymacho, whech was the fader of Ysidis, and he regned fifti ȝere. The Secunde Kyng was Phoroneus, whech mad the lawes to the Grekis, of whech lawes aftir schal we touche. And this kyngdam dured fyve hundred wynter and foure and fourty undir XXIIII. Kyngis, onto the last ȝere of Delbora. B.C. 1896.

---

[1] *withouten*] withought. C.C.C.

[2] Hebr. vii. 2, 3.

[3] *erde*] erthe. C.C.C.

[4] *as Josephus seith.*] ἔνθα ὁ τῆς Σόλυμα πόλεως ὑποδέχεται βασιλευς αὐτὸν Μελχισεδέκης . . . . . Σόλυμα ὕστερον ἐκάλεσαν Ιεροσόλυμα. Vide Flavii Josephi Antiquitatum Judaicarum, lib. i. cap. x.

[5] *as Josephus . . . . Salem.*] om. C.C.C.

[6] *mith*] might. C.C.C.

[7] *lord he was.*] "Salem autem non, ut Josephus, et nostri omnes arbitrantur esse Hierusalem, nomen ex Græco Hebraicoque compositum, quod absurdum esse peregrinæ linguæ mixtura demonstrat; sed oppidum juxta Scithopolim, quod usque hodie appellatur Salem, et ostenditur ibi palatium Melchisedec, ex magnitudine ruinarum veteris operis ostendens magnificentiam." S. Hieronymi Epistola ad Evagrium, col. 62, C. of vol. iii. of the Edition of S. Jerome's works, published at Paris in the year 1602.

[8] *her*] i.e. 'their.' In C.C.C. 'ther,' in this and in almost every instance of its use throughout that MS.

Anno 3345—3399.

Anno Mundi tria M.CCCC.

Anno 3401—3443.

Anno 3444.—This ȝere Jacob, whanne he was nynety ȝere of age and on, begat Joseph of fayr Rachel, that was so long bareyn. B.C. 1745. Birth of Joseph.

And in this tyme Foroneus,[1] the secunde Kyng amonges the Argyves, the son of Ynachi, mad notabel lawes. He was the first that mad causes to be pleted before juges. Thoo places in whech juges[2] herd causes he cleped hem, aftir his name, "forum;" that is to sey, "a hopen place," or "a market." About this tyme eke Joseph was sold be his brethern into the lond of Egypt. Phoroneus.

Anno 3445—3490.

Anno 3491.—This ȝere deyed Jacob brothir onto Esau, and, as his modir tawt him, his deceyvoure. For he receyved his fader blessing, nowt knowyn to his fader, but plesauns onto God. This Jacob fadir was onto the XII. tribus of Israel. He sey the ladder that touchid Hevene, and aungellis clymyng up and down, and oure Lorde lenyng upon the ladder. He deyed in Egipt, of age a hundred ȝere fourti and sevene. There was he bawmed with swete gummes; and aftir, be Joseph his son, broute B.C. 1689. Death of Jacob.

---

[1] *Foroneus.*] Partly written on an erasure. The erased word was originally written Phoroneus. The syllable 'Fo' is also set in the margin.

[2] *Thoo places in whech juges.*] om. C.C.C.

B.C. 1689. into the lond of Chanaan, and byried where Abraham, and Sare, and Rebec be byryid.

Anno 3492—3499.

Anno Mundi tria M.D.

Anno 3501—3554.

B.C. 1635. Death of Joseph. Anno 3555.—Here deyed Joseph, of age a hundred ȝere and ten. He was byried in a place thei clepe it Bresith, and anoyntid with swete gummys. His bones, as his comaundment was, were translat aftir be Moises, and broute into the Holi Lond; and in Josue tyme the puple byried hem in Sichem. Sone aftir the deth of Joseph began that wretchid bondage of the Hebrew puple in Egipt; and that bondage lastid a hundred ȝere and fourty and foure.

Atlas. In this tyme lyved Athlaus, that fonde astronomie. The Mount Athlaus stant in the ocean beȝond Affrik, whech mount took his name of this King. For he was mech used to dwell in that hil, for most sikir consideracion of sterris.

Anno 3556—3599.

Anno Mundi tria M.DC.

B.C. 1571. Anno 3601—3609.

Birth of Moses. Anno 3610.—In this ȝere was Moyses bore, the son of Ambry; whech Ambri was the son of Cath, and Cath the son of Levy; whech Levy was son to Jacob. So was Moises the VII. man fro Abraham. Aron was his brothir, and Mari his sister. Moises in Egipt was bore, and thre monthis hid, thanne put in a vessel of wykyris, fillid the joyntis with tow erde, cleped bithumen, and so put in watir. So was he take up be the comaundment of Pharao doutir, and thus norchid onto mannes age. Therfor was his name Moyses, that is to sey, "Lift up fro the watir." Whanne he was growe to mannes age, he sey on of the Egipcianes do wrong to on of the Hebrewis; he halp his brothir, and killid him of Egipte. Wherfore he was fayn to fle into the lond of Madian, and there dwelle with a preest, his[1] name Jethro. There he kept his schep, and weddid on of his dowteres, whos name was Sephora. There appered God onto him with fire in a busch, and the busch onbrent, and mad him his messager to the Kyng of Egipte.

B.C. 1571.

Anno 3611—3659.

Anno 3660.—In this same tyme were letteris and writyng first founde: For the letteris of the Hebrew tonge were first founde be Moises. And the letteris of the Chalde tonge were founde be Abraham: For thei acorde with the Hebrew letteres both in nowmbir and in sownd; but in the maner of writing, and schap of the letteres, thei have grete dyversite. The letteris whech the Egipcianes use were found be Ysis, qween of the same lond, dowtir onto Ynachi, King of Grece. The Latyn letteris a woman that hite Carmentis brout first into Itayle. Sche was cleped Carmentis, for sche used many charmes.

Introduction of letters and writing.

Anno 3661—3699.

Anno Mundi tria M.DC.

Anno 3701—3728.

Anno 3729.—In this ȝere deyed Moises, and no man myte fynde his grave; for, be the comaundment of God, he went up to the hil of Phasga, and there our Lord schewid him all the lond of behest, and saide on to him, "Thou schal se this lond, but thou schal not enter it."[2] So deied he there, and was buried in the vale. He lyved here a C. ȝere and XX. At his deth his eyne were not dym, ne no toth fall fro his heed.

B.C. 1451. Death of Moses.

Anno 3730—3755.

---

[1] *his*] added above the line. In C.C.C. the words 'his name' are omitted.

[2] Deuteron. xxxiv. 1-4.

B.C. 1443. Death of Joshua.

Anno 3756.—This ȝere deied Josue, the son of Nun, servaunt onto Moises; born in Egipte; aftir the deth of his maistir, prince of the puple. This man sent his spies into the cite of Jericho, and wan it with grete miracle. He spak with God seiand swech wordes on to him: "I schal preferr the this day befor al the puple, and make the leder to hem alle."[1] This man led the puple thorow the water cleped Jordan with dry feet. Many townes destroyed he in the cuntre cleped Galgalis, whos dwelleres were blasphemeres of God. At his comaundment the sunne stood stille ageyn the cours of nature til he had vengid him on Goddis enimes. He disposed and distribut the lond of behest to the puple. He lyved a hundred ȝere and ten, byried in Tannath-sare, his owne possession, whech is in the Mount of Effraim.

Anno 3757—3795.

Death of Othniel.

Anno 3796.—This ȝere deied Othoniel, the first Juge of Israel. For, aftir Josue was ded the puple was governed be Juges onto the tyme of Samuel. This Othoniel was brothir on to Caleph, and governed the puple ful vertuously XL. ȝere, distroyed her enimes, killed the Kyng of Surre, his name was Cusanrasathaim.

Pandion reigns at Athens.

In his tyme regned at Attenes her V. Kyng; summe men cleped him Pandion, and summe Neptunus.

Cadmus at Thebes.

And in the cite of Tebes regned thanne Cadmus. Eke the grete musician cleped Linus he leved in thoo dayes.

Anno 3797—3799.

Anno Mundi tria M.DCCC.

Anno 3801—3865.

---

[1] Joshua, iii. 7.

Anno 3866.—In this ȝere deied Ayoth the secunde Juge of Israel, the son of Gera, that used the lift hand for the rite, that is to sey, what grete dede of armes schuld he do, he ded it as weel with the o hand as with the othir. He killid the fat Kyng Eglon, and delyvered Israel of her grete enemy. B.C. 1325. Death of Ehud.

In his tyme regned Hercules, of whos strong dedis is grete fame. The first is, that he destroied III. wilde bestis whech were clepid Arpie. The secunde, that he flay a leon qwik oute of his scyn. The third, that he mad the Centaures for to fle. Centaures were monstres, half best, half man. The IIII., that he bare the appeles of gold fro Athlantis gardeyn, where a dragon was keper. The V., is bynding of Cerberus the hound of helle. The VI., ovircomyng of Diomede the Kynge of Trace. The VII., killyng of the grete serpent cleped Ydres. The VIII., destroying of that best that chaunged himself into so many liknes, his name was Thasis. The IX., is the gret victorie of the beste Achildes, that blewe out fyre at his mowth. The X., killing of Anthe, the geaunt of Libi. The XI., is killing of the grete boor in Archady. The XII., bering up of the firmament, whil Athlas rested. Hercules; his labours.

Anno 3867—3899.

Anno Mundi tria M.DCCCC.

Anno 3901—3915.

Anno 3916.—This ȝere deied Delbora, a woman that, be the auctorite of God, governed Israel many ȝeres. The enemy of Israel hite Cisara,[1] whech had a gret hoost, and nyne hundred cartis dith with hokis of yrun, that oppressed and rent al that cam before hem. This woman, with a prince whech hite Barach, ovyrcam this Sisara,[1] and pursuid him till he was B.C. 1285. Death of Deborah.

---

[1] *Cisara—Sisara.*] Thus in MS.

B.C. 1285. fayn to fle to a womannes house that hite Jael. Sche hid him, and refrechid him with milk, and broute him to rest, and, whan he slepe, with a malle and a nayle sche smet him in the hed, and thus he joyned slep and deth togidir.

Anno 3917—3934.

Apollo. Anno 3935.—In this tyme regned Appollo, whech was fynder of medicines, and eke first maker of the harp. But that manere of mynstralsie was aftir more plenteuously conceyved be Mercurye, as Ysider tellith in the third book[1] of Ethimilogies,[2] where he seith thus:—"Whanne Nylus, the grete ryver, had ovirflowe the cuntre, and aftir descendid into his customable mesure, than were left in the foldis many ded bestis, whose flesch than was wasted and the bones dryed. Thanne certeyn cenewes, fast by the bones, and dryed with the sunne, were left, and whan Mercury cam forby he smet thoo stringis, and party be the bones, party be the leddir, there was a grete sound. And aftir this liknes Mercury ded make an instrument whech he cleped a harp, and this instrument took he to on hite Orphe, whech was ful studious in swech thingis, for with his melodye, as the poetis sey, he mad tame wilde bestis, and stones and trees were solaced by him."[3]

Anno 3936—3955.

---

[1] *book*] bood. MSS.

[2] *Ethimilogies*] Ethimologies. C.C.C.

[3] "*Whanne Nylus . . . by him.*"] The original passage is as follows:—"Cum regrediens Nilus in suos meatus varia in campis reliquisset animalia, relicta etiam testudo est. Quæ cum esset putrefacta, et nervi ejus remansissent extenti inter corium, percussa a Mercurio sonitum dedit, ad cujus speciem Mercurius lyram fecit, et Orpheo tradidit, qui erat hujus rei maxime studiosus. Unde et æstimatur eadem arte non feras solum, sed et saxa atque sylvas cantus modulatione applicuisse." Vide lib. III., cap. XXI. of "Præclarissimum Opus Divi Isidori. . . . quod Ethimologiarum intitulatur." Jehan Petit., Paris, 1509. See also col. 899, 21 of the "Auctores Latinæ Linguæ" of Gothefredus, published at Geneva by Joh. Vignon in the seventeenth century.

Anno 3956.—In this ȝere deied Gedeon, that was Juge to the puple of Israel fourty wyntyr. This man receyved of Good a mervelous tokne. For first was a flees of wolle wette, and al the erde drye: than was al the erde wette, and the flees drie. Aftir this tokne he went to bataile with trumpis, pottis, lampis, and fire; and be the purvyauns of God, had the victorie. He was juge in Israel XL. ȝere.

B.C. 1236. Death of Gideon.

Aftir him,[1] Abimelech III. ȝere. Under him was a parable mad that the trees schuld chese hem a kyng.

Abimelech is made Judge.

Anno 3957—3980.

Anno 3981.—This ȝere deied Thola, that was her juge III. ȝere. He was byried in Samir, in the Mount of Effraim.

B.C. 1210. Death of Tholah.

Anno 3982—3999.

Anno Mundi quatuor M.

Anno 4001—4002.

Anno 4003.—This tyme was [deyed][2] Jayr juge of Israel XXII. ȝere. This man was a Galadite, whech had XXX. sones, good rideres, specialy on asses; and thei were princes of XXX. citees named aftir here names.

B.C. 1188. Death of Jair.

Anno 4004—4008.

Anno 4009.—Jepte moritur, qui rexit VI. annos.[3]

Anno 4010—4015.

Anno 4016.—In this tyme dyed[4] Esebon that[5] was Juge in Israel sevene ȝere. Summe[6] men clepe him Abessem. He had XXX. sones and XXX. douteres.

B.C. 1175. Death of Ibzan.

---

[1] *Aftir him.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *deyed.*] Written above the word "was" in the MS. Pub. Lib., and in a later hand.

[3] *Jepte . . . . annos.*] Added in a later hand in MS. Pub. Lib., but not found in C.C.C.

[4] *tyme dyed.*] om. C.C.C. In the MS. Pub. Lib. the word "dyed" has been added above the line in a later hand.

[5] *that.*] Added at a later period in the MS. Pub. Lib.—om. C.C.C.

[6] *Summe.*] om, C.C.C.

B.C. 1175. Rape of Helen.

+ In this same tyme Alisaundre of Troye raveshed fayre Helene out of Grece, for whech dede began the sege of Troye.[1]

Anno 4017—4031.

Anno 4032. +

Anno 4033.

B.C. 1156. Death of Abdon.

Anno 4034.—In this tyme was [deyed][2] Abdon, or elles Lebdon, a Juge in Israel, and he had XL. sones and XXX. douteres.

[B.C. 1183.] Troy taken.

In his tyme was Troye distroyed.

Time reckoned by Olympiads.

And in this same tyme began the annotacion of Olimpias, as we rede,—'Olimpiade tercio, vel quarto,'—'the third Olimpiade, or the fourte.' And thus it began:—The Grekes, whan thei had the victory of the Troianes, thei ordeyned that every fift ȝere schuld have exercise of al manere games that longyn to power or switnesse,[3] and this same playes were begunne in Macedonie, where the hie hille Olimpe stant, of whech camme this name, for there aboute was the play.

Anno 4035—4043.

B.C. 1117. Death of Samson.

Anno 4044.—This ȝere deied Samson with deceyt of a woman; whech was the Juge of Israel XX. ȝere. His strength passed alle men. He rent a leon. He brak the bondis that he was bound with. The gates of a town, and the postis, he bare hem away. And at the last, be stering of the Holy Goost, he pullid down too postis, where a hous felle, and oppressed him and mech othir puple.

AlbaLonga founded.

In this same tyme Ascanius, the son of Eneas, in the third ȝere aftir Troye was distroyed, biggid a town, Alba,[1] whech stod upon the flood which had the same name, but now it hite Tibir, and that same town is now a part of Rome. B.C. 1117.

---

[1] + *In this . . . sege of Troye.*] A corresponding cross, opposite the year 4032 in the column of dates in the MS. Pub. Lib., indicates that this passage should be transferred to that date.

[2] *deyed.*] Added above the line in MS. Pub. Lib., but not found in C.C.C.

[3] *switnesse*] swiftinesse. C.C.C.

Anno 4045—4083.

Anno 4084.—This ȝere deied Hely, the preest of the tabernacle that was in Silo, undir whom Samuel first was mad a ministir of the same tabernacle. This Heli, for his necligens, that he corrected not his sonnes of her insolens, fel down fro his chayer where he sat in the tabernacle, and, thus punishid with temporal deth, scaped, as we suppose, the deth that is evirlasting. In the tyme of this same Hely was the arke of God take be the Philisteis, to her grete confusion. For whan it was sette in her temple her god Dagon fel down and was al to broken. The puple eke was smet with grevous sores, as the first book of Kynges makith mynde.[2] B.C. 1116. Death of Eli.

In this same Hely tyme, Brute, that was of Eneas, Kyng, cam into this lond, and called it Britayn aftir his name. Whan he deyid he departed his kyngdam to his thre sones. The first hite Loegrius; and to him he gaf the lond fro Dovyr onto Humbyr. The secund son hite Albanactus; and to him gave he al Scotlond onto Humbir. The third hite Camber; and to him gave he alle Walis. The first cuntre was called in thoo dayes Loegria.[3] The secunde Albania. The third Cambria. Brute, the first King of Britain. His triple division of Britain.

Anno 4085—4099.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.C.

Anno 4101—4123.

---

[1] *Alba.*] Added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib., but forming part of the text in C.C.C.

[2] 1 Sam. v. 3, et seq.

[3] *Loegria.*] Written upon an erasure. The erased word was apparently 'Cambria.'

B.C. 1060. Death of Samuel.

Anno 4124.—This ȝere deyed Samuel, whech governed Israel XXII. ȝere, or that tyme that Saul was mad Kyng, and after that tyme lyved Samuel XVIII. ȝere. This Samuel was bore in Ramatha, noumbird amongst the Nazareis, of whech religion Criste was, and eke Jon Baptiste. His modir Anne was long bareyn, and whan sche had a child sche mad that canticle, 'Exultavit cor meum in Domino.'[1] This Samuel anoynted too Kyngis, Saul and David, and sette hem on here setes. He askid reyn fro Hevene, and God sent it him. In grete age he deied, byried in Ramatha. In his tyme he mad certeyn conventes of religious men, whech were seyd prophetes; and that prophecie was not elles but songis to the worchip of God.

Homer flor.

In this tyme lyved the grete poete Omere, that was at the batail of Troye, and the first writer of the same.

Anno 4125—4163.

---

[1] 1 Sam. ii. 1.

ETAS QUARTA.[1]

Anno 4164.—Here deieth David, the son[2] of Jesse He was born of the tribe of Juda, in the cite of Bethlem: fayre in nature; wise in prophecie; both Kyng and prophete. Kyngis he ovyrcam with victorye: Psalmes he sang with melodie: bestis he killid, and Goly the grete geaunt. Evyr he dred God. Cristis nativite, His baptem, His passion, resurreccion, ascension, His comyng to the dome, ful openly in his Psalmes he teld. His fadirs scheep kepte he ful mekly. Aftir that XL. ȝere was Kyng; first VII. ȝere, in Hebron, upon the tribe of Juda; after XXXIII., in Jerusalem, upon al Israel. In grete age he deied, byried at Bethlem, whech is cleped the cite of David. B.C. 1015. Death of King David.

In this tyme the grete cytie Cartago was begunne of a woman thei cleped Dido, VII. ȝere or Rome began. Carthage is founded by Dido.

Undir this Kyng David prophecied these too men, Nathan and Gad.

Anno 4165—4199.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.CC.

Anno 4201—4203.

Anno 4204.—This ȝere deied Salamon the son of David, and Bersabe which was the wyf of Ury. First was he cleped Ydida, and thanne Salamon. Twyes was he anoynted king, be the comaundment of David, be Sadoch the prest; ones at the welle whech thei calle Gion, and thanne in the Temple B.C. 975. Death of Solomon.

---

[1] *Etas Quarta.*] om. C.C.C. | [2] *son.*] om. C.C.C.

B.C. 975. befor al the puple. He asked of God wisdam; and God sent it him so plenteuously, that there was never befor him so wis a man in Jerusalem, for he made proverbis and songis of ful marvelous sentens. Building of the Temple at Jerusalem. He mad the Temple of God, and arayed it with mech richesse. With plesauns of women he was browt into ydolatrie; but at his last ende he repent him, and ded penauns.

Anno 4205—4220.

Rehoboam. Anno 4221.—Roboam, son to Salamon, he regned aftir his fadir, and he forsoke the councelle of elde[1] men, and was counceled be ȝong puple: therefor the ten Tribus forsoke him, an there left with him but too.[2]

Anno 4222, 4223.

B.C. 995. Death of Abijah. Anno 4224.—Here deied Abia, of whom is not mech writyng, but that he regned but III. ȝere, save thei sey that Maacha, Absalon doutir, was his modir.

Anno 4225—4264.

B.C. 914. Death of Asa. Anno 4265.—Here deied Asa, Kyng of Juda, that in his age had sore feet, whech passioune our bokys sey it was podegra, and that seknes thei sey cometh of grete plente of mete and mech rest. This man lyved rithfully, and distroyed mech abhominable lecchery in Jerusalem. He drow his modir fro cursed governauns, for sche was princesse in a ful abhominable place, which they cleped 'Sacra Priapi.' It is not necessari to declare what it was: but this man[3] distroyed hous and auter, ymage and al. He ovyrcam eke Ȝaram, Kyng of Ethiopa, and cam into his lond with grete power.

Anno 4266—4289.

---

[1] *elde*] old. C.C.C.

[2] *too*] too tribes. C.C.C.

[3] *man.*] In the text of C.C.C. Added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib.

B.C. 889. Death of Jehosaphat.

Anno 4290.—Josaphat deieth here, the son of Asa, whech regned in Jerusalem XXV. ȝere. The name of his moder was Azuba. This man folowid his fader steppes in servise of God. In his dayes prophecied Helie, Heliȝe, and Miche, whos comendacion sumwhat will we touch. Helie lyveth ȝet in Paradise, whom Antecrist schal martire in the ende of the world. He reysed fro deth a man thei cleped Jonas. He fasted XL. daies without mete or drynk. He sperd hevene fro reyn III. ȝere and sex monthis. He asked fire fro Hevene. He killed Baal prestis. In a cart al fire was he bore up to Paradise. Heliȝe, whech was his disciple, had dobil the grace whech his maystir had. He went thorw the flood with drye feet; he lift the ex,[1] and mad it flete in the watir. He cured Naaman, the prince of Surre, fro seknesse of lepre. He sinet his covetous servaunt with the same seknes. In Samary deid he, and there was byried.

Miracles of Elijah and Elisha.

Anno 4291—4297.

B.C. 885. Death of Joram.

Anno 4298.—This ȝere deied Joram, whech regned in Jerusalem VIII. ȝere.

Anno 4299.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.CCC.

B.C. 884. Death of Ahaziah.

Anno 4301.—And this ȝere dyed[2] Occhozie, that regned but o ȝere.

Anno 4302—4305.

B.C. 878. Death of Athaliah.

Anno 4306.—And this ȝere regned[3] Athalia VII. ȝere in the tyme of Joiada, that was the hy prest. For the seid Athalia had killed al the Kyngis blod, whech tyme Jozabeth, the Kyngis dowtir Joram, tok Joas the son of Occhozie, and hid him in a privy hous of the Temple, and there was he norchid be consent of this

---

[1] *ex*] exe. C.C.C.

[2] *dyed.*] Added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib., but omitted in C.C.C.

[3] *regned.*] The word 'dyed' is written above the line, over the word 'regned,' in the MS. Pub. Lib., but not in C.C.C.

B.C. 878. prest Joiada. This Joiada lyved a hundred ȝere and XX. We rede that no prest lyved so long aftir the tyme of Moyses. In these dayes was Elie in a firy cart, or chare, lift up to Paradise, and in his goying he threw down his mantil onto Helise, in tokne that the dobil spirite schuld rest upon him.

Anno 4307—4347.

B.C. 839. Death of Joash. Anno 4348—Here deyeth Joas, tha was Kyng in Jerusalem XL. ȝere. The name of his modir was Sebra: sche was bore in Bersabe. This Kyng wroute that was plesauns to God; for he restored the temple, and many houses that longid thereto. For fro the tyme that he was mad Kyng onto the XXIII. ȝere of his regne the prestes spent the offering, and mad no reparacion; and therefor the Kyng comaunded that the offering schuld be put in a comon box, and kept to restauracion of the Temple.

Anno 4349—4374.

B.C. 810. Death of Amaziah. Anno 4375.—Here deieth Amasias, that regned in Jerusalem XXIX. ȝere. The name of his moder Joaden, born in Jerusalem. Whan he was confermed in his regne he mad dew inquisicion of alle hem that were consenting to his fader deth, an, whanne he had hem, condempned hem to the deth, but here issew he harmed not, for it is wrytyn in Moyses lawe, "The child schal not bere the wikkidnes of the fader, ne the fader the wikkidnes of the child; but every man schal be ded in his owne sinne."[1]

Legislation of Lycurgus. In this tyme Ligurgus, Kyng of Lacedomy, mad certeyn lawes, and mad his citeceynes for to swere onto him that thei schuld kepe these lawes til that he come ageyn fro his pilgrimage. This sworne and ratified be seles[2] he went into the ylde of Crete, and there dwelled, and died in exile.

---

[1] Deuteron. xxiv. 16.

[2] *seles*] seeles. C.C.C.

In these dayes a man that hite Silvius Adventinus, the XIII. Kyng of that region cleped Latinorum, died, and was byried in a mount that stant in Rome, and for his biryng the mount hath his name, Mons Adventinus. Whan men go out at Seynt Paule gate, thei go under it, and leve it on the left hand. B.C. 810. Silvius Adventinus.

Anno 4376—4399.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.CCC.

Anno 4401—4426.

Anno 4427.—Here deieth Ozias, that was Kyng of Jerusalem LII. ȝere. This man repayred the wallis of Jerusalem rownd aboute. And in his age, in a grete fest called the Purificacion, he presumed to do upon him the prestis stole, and for sense[1] the auter; and anon he was smet with the sekness of lepre, and, be the lawe, departed fro the puple and fro the governauns, and dwelt in a hous separat fro men. Joathan his sonne he dwelled in the paleys, and governed the puple, and after his fader deth was anoynted. B.C. 758. Death of Uzziah. Jotham begins to reign.

Anno 4428—4442.

Anno 4443.—Here deieth Joathan, that was Kyng in Jerusalem XVI. ȝere. B.C. 742. Death of Jotham.

In his tyme were thoo too childirn bore, Remus and Romulus, beginners of Rome. There was a mayden in Itaile, consecrat to a religion thei cleped Vestal, whech were bownde to perpetuel virginte. This mayde hite Rea, and so it happed that sche was with childe be the god Mars, as sche feyned. The tyme cam, and these too were borne. Sche was byried qwik, and the childir leyd be the side of Tibir, that bests schuld devoure them. Summe say that a wolf norched them, and so is[2] peyntid in Itaile; summe sey that a schepherde, whos name was Birth of Romulus and Remus.

---

[1] *for sense*] for to sense. C.C.C. | [2] *is*] it is. C.C.C.

B.C. 742. Fastulus, fond them, and bare them to his wif Laurens, which woman was cleped wolf in that langage for hir leccherie.

Anno 4444—4458.

B.C. 727. Death of Ahaz. Anno 4459.—Achaz deieth here, that regned in Jerusalem XVI. ȝere. This man was of wikkid gouvernauns, for he forsook God, and worcheped maumentrie, in so mech that he offered his son to the maument, whech thei clepe Tophet, in the Vale of Hennon. Therfore suffered oure Lord God Rasin, the Kyng of Surre, to com to Jerusalem, and distroye the lond, and put the Kyng undir grete tribute. And this was do the fourte ȝere of his regne.

Rezin makes the land of Judah tributary.

Isaiah prophesies. Undir this King prophecied Ysaie, in Jerusalem, a grete prophete and a holy martir. For he tellith in his bok the misteriis of the Cherch, of Cristis Incarnacion and Passion, as pleynly as though he had be present. He sey oure Lord sitte in a hey sete, and Seraphin herd he synge with a clere sound, 'Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus.' His lippes were purgid with hevenly fyre. And in Jerusalem, at the comaundment of the Kyng Manasses, was his body cut a sundir with a sawe of tre.

Anno 4460—4487.

B.C. 698. Death of Hezekiah. Anno 4488.—This ȝere deied Ezechie, that regned in Jerusalem XXIX. ȝere; whech plesid God in his lyvyng. He repayred the Temple and the vesseles that longe therto. He distroyed the serpent of bras that Moyses set up; for the puple at tho dayes forsoke the dew servise of God, and honourid that same serpent. The sunne, at his prayer, for a tokne that he schuld have lenger lif, went bakward in his horologe X. lines, that is to sey,[1] as some wene, X. houres. Fiftene ȝere be the graunt of God were lengthid of lif.

---

[1] *that is to sey.*] C.C.C. "that it to sey."—MS. Pub. Lib.

In his tym, as in Achaz, prophecied Ysaie, whech coumforted the Kyng in his seknes, and gave him a playstir of figgis, and aftirward told him that Senacherib, Kyng of the Assuriis, in no wise schuld noye him. For in a nyte, sodeynly, God smet the oost of the Assiriis, that in the morowning there were found dede foure score thousand and fyve thousand. And whan the Kyng on the morow say[1] this pestilens he fled into Nynyve. B.C. 698. Destruction of Senacherib's army.

Anno 4489—4499.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.D.

Anno 4501—4539.

Anno 4540.—Here deyeth Manasses, that regned in Jerusalem LII. ȝere. He ded mech evel and displesauns to oure Lord. He edified auteres on to fals goddis. He killid prophetes and servauntes of God, that the stretes of Jerusalem were ful of blood. And for this erroure God suffered him for to be take, and led into Babilonie; and aftir grete penauns and weping he was restored to his regne, and with grete devocion amendid his defautes. B.C. 643. Death of Manasseh.

In his tyme lyved Sibille, that was cleped Samia. Auctoures sey here that there were ten Sibilles. On was of Perse: The secunde of Libie. The thirde of Delphis, where Appollo is worchiped, whech made verse put in Omer book. The fourt was cleped Cimerea;[2] sche dwelled in Itaile. The V. was Erithea, that dwelled in Babilonie. The sext was Samia, born in a ylde of the same name. The VII. hite Amalthea, that mad IX. bookes to on cleped Tarquinius Priscus, in whech bokes were wrytyn the lawes of Rome. The VIII. was born fast be Troye; sche was cleped Elesponcia.[3] The IX. was amongst the Frises. The X., The Sibyls.

---

[1] *say*] saw. C.C.C.

[2] *Cimerea*] Cumea. C.C.C.

[3] *sche was cleped Elesponcia.*] om. C.C.C.

B.C. 643. most famous, was at Rome called Tiburtina, for sche prophecied mech of Crist.

Anno 4541—4553.

B.C. 640. Death of Amon. Anno 4554.—Amon endith here, that was Kyng of Jerusalem XIII. ȝere; and he folowid his fadir Manasses in al evil and al onclennes of ydolatrie. Therefor his owne servauntis mordred him in his owne hous. And aftir his deth the puple of the lond ros and killid alle thoo traitoures.

Bizantium founded. In this tyme was edified a cite in the lond of Trace, whech thei cleped Bizans; and aftirward Grete Constantin mad it more and called it Constantinople.

Anno 4555—4575.

B.C. 609. Death of Josiah. Anno 4576.—Josias makith an ende of his lif, whech regned in Jerusalem XXII. ȝere. This man kept the weyes of David, and porged the lond of al ydolatrie. But in batayle he was smet with a arow, and so deied.

Anno 4577—4586.

B.C. 600. Jehoiakim. Anno 4587.—Joachim, whech that is cleped Jeconias, he regned in Jerusalem XI. ȝere.

The Babylonish captivity. This same man was led be Nabugodonosor into Babiloni, and mani prisoneres with him, most specialy the best of the lond, as Thobie and Mardoche, with many othir. Zedekiah is made King of Judah. Than the Kyng of Babilon sette Sedechie, Kyng at Jerusalem, to governe the puple, and pay tribute ȝerly; whech Sedechi rebelled ageyn the Kyng. And therefor the Kyng cam ageyn to Jerusalem, and took this Kyng, put out his eyne, and led him into Babilonie; and thus was the cite and the Temple distroyed. And undir this Captivity prophecied Jeremie, Ezechiel, and Daniel, of whom sumwhat will we write.

Jeremiah. Jeremie was a prophete and a preest, born in Anatoth, hallowid in his modir wombe. He began to prophecie whil he was a child. The ruine of the cite he morned with woful songis, foure distincte be the A. B. C. Nabugodonosor drew him oute of the lake, and sent him into Egipt with othir prisoneres, where, for his prophecie, his owne puple killid him with stones, in a town thei clepe Tafnes, and byried in the same place where Pharao dwelled. B.C. 600.

Ezechiel began to prophecye in the XXX. ȝere of his age, and in the V. ȝere of her captivite. He sey a glorious trone in the firmament. He receyved a book, and ete it. He sey many sites, in whech divers Kynges and puples for synne schuld be distroyed. He sey eke a feld ful of drye bones; and, whil he prophecied onto hem, the senewis and veynes of flesch and scyn entered onto hem, and eke the spirit, that thei stood upon here feet. Ezekiel.

Anno 4588—4599.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.DC.

Anno 4601—4653.

Anno 4654.—Daniel, the son of Abda, prophecied this same tyme, born in Jude, and but ȝong led into Babilonie: a mervelous prophete. For the dremes of Nabugodonosor in the grete ymage and the grete tre, he expouned. And of the foure wyndis fityng in the se, he mervelously touchid who the foure bestis rising with these foure wyndis foutyn ech with othir. A elde[1] Man sei he sitting in majeste, and aboute Him[2] a thousand thousand of ministres. Daniel.

Anno 4655—4680.

Anno 4681.—Captivitas Jerusalem solvitur.[3] End of the Captivity.

Anno 4682—4689.

Anno 4690.—Here regneth Darius upon the Medes, and Cirus upon the Perses; in whose first ȝere the Captivity of the Jewis was relesid be the same Cirus B.C. 521. Darius I. Cyrus.

---

[1] *elde*] old. C.C.C.

[2] *Him.*] Added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib., but in the text of C.C.C.

[3] *Captivitas . . . solvitur.*] Added in a later hand, and omitted in C.C.C.

B.C. 521. Zerubbabel and Jeshua have permission to rebuild Jerusalem.

whech gave Zorobabel, and Jesus, the Grete Preest, leve for to go hom to Jerusalem, and to edifye it. Summe sey that it was in the first ȝere of Cirus, summe sey in the third. And this is cause of the variauns: for thei had leve in the first, but thei were not redy till the third ȝere. And here is for to noten that their is grete variacion amongst auctoures, both of ȝeres and of Kyngis names; for many had dyvers names. Eke this Darius and Cirus destroyed Babilonie, and there sesed the name of that regne.

Susanna.

In this same tyme fel the story of Susanne.

The Seven Sages.

And in this same tyme lyved thoo VII. first Philosopheres that were of so grete fame, whos names be these:—Thales, Pitacus, Solon, Cylon, Piriander,[1] Cleobolus, and Bias.

Anno 4691—4699.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.DCC.

Anno 4701—4736.

---

[1] *Piriander*] Piriandus. C.C.C.

ETAS QUINTA.[1]

Anno 4737.—Here regned Xerses, the V. Kyng of Perse, and he regned there XXIIII. ȝere. This man was so leccherous that he ded crye openly what man coude bring in a new circumstauns of lecchery, he schuld have a grete reward. And whanne he had gadered a gret ost ageyn the Grekis, on seyde,—"The Grekis schul not only be ovyrcome, but thei schal be pressed down with swech a multitude," Demoratus, the Philosofer, answerd,—"There is swech a multitude that thei may not be governed, and therefor is it the more to drede." B.C. 485. Xerxes.

In this tyme lyved these two poetes, Sophocles and Euripides, that were cleped Tragedies. Trajedi is as mech to sey as he that writith eld[2] stories, with ditees hevy and sorowful. Sophocles. Euripides.

Anno 4738—4776.

Anno 4777.—Here regneth Artharxerses, the VI. Kyng in Perse, whech is clepid Nothus; XL. ȝere he regned there. Under whom Esdras repayred the lawe that was brent[3] be hem of Chalde, whech Esdras broute in new maner of wryting of letteres[4] that were more esy for to write, and more esy for to pronounce, and therfor was he called a swift writere. B.C. 464. Artaxerxes Longimanus. Ezra restores the observance of the Law.

---

[1] *Etas Quinta.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *eld*] old. C.C.C.

[3] *brent.*] Inserted above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib., but forming part of the text in C.C.C.

[4] *of letteres.*] Added in the margin of the MS. Pub. Lib.—In the text of C.C.C.

B.C. 464. And it is not grete wondir, thou that Esdras mite with his rememberauns write bokes new ageyn, for we know that there be summe men that can hold in here remembrauns mech thing.

Anno 4778—4795.

B.C. 424. Darius II. Anno 4796.—In this ȝere regneth Darius, the VII. Kyng in Perse, and he regned XIX. ȝere. This man was son of Ydapsis, and on of the VII. governoures of Perse, whech was chosen by the nyhyng of a hors. Undir him was the probleme purposid of the strength of a King, a woman, wyn, and treuth.

Plato. In this tyme was Plato disciple to Socrates, in whos bokes was founde a gret part of that Gospel, "In principio erat Verbum."[1] Whan he was take with soudioures, and broute to Dionisie the tyraunt, he, seing so many aboute the tiraunt, seide onto him, "What hast thou do that thou nedist so many men?" This Plato mad many bokes, and named hem aftir his maystires. Themeus is on; Phedron a othir; the third, Gorgialis; the IIII. Pitharas. And though men feyne mech thing of his deth, he was hald in so gret reverens that thei had doute, whan he was ded, whethir thei schuld a noumbir him among the hie goddis or semigoddes.

Anno 4797—4799.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.DCCC.

Anno 4801—4837.

B.C. 359. Death of Artaxerxes II. Anno 4838.—Here endith[2] Artarxerses, whos regne lested XL. ȝere. Summe sey that his name was Assuerus, to whom Ester was coupled.

Diogenes the Cynic. In this tyme lyved Diogenes, that seld him selve onto bondage, and whan his maystere that boute him profered[1] to on Veniedes[2] for to by him, Veniedes inquired of the Philosophre what craft he coude, and he answered:—"I can," he seith, "though I be bond, be a governoure onto hem that stande in gret fredam." And whan Veniades herd this answere, he merveiled gretly, and seide, "I make the lord of my childirn: do with hem at thi pleysauns." Kyng Alisaundre fond him sitting in a tunne, evyr open to the sunne; and whan Alisaundre comaunde him to aske what he wold, he prayed him for to remeve, and stand no longer in his lite. B.C. 359.

---

[1] S. John i. 1.

[2] *endith.*] Written upon an erasure. The word was originally 'regneth;' and 'deieth' has been written above it in red ink, and afterwards erased.

Anno 4839—4863.

Anno 4864.—Here is the deth[3] of Artarxerses, whech had[4] regned XXVI. ȝere; in whech tyme Demostenes and Aristotoles floured in philosophie. B.C. 338. Death of Artaxerxes III.

Of Demostenes rede we that, whan Alisaundre cam to Attenes, in purpos to distroye the cite, this man was sette withoute the gate, because he had be maistir onto the Kyng. This undirstood Alisaundre, and at the first site swore be Ammon the god, that what so evyr he desired, it schuld not be had. Thanne the Philosophre prayed him, be the vertu of the same Amon, that he schul never leve til he had distroyed the cite. And so the Kyng turnyd fro his purpose, seyng, "Evyr is wisdam above powere." Demosthenes.

Aristotel, at his age of XVIII. ȝere, was disciple to Plato; a man of excellent wit and grete eloquens. He wrote alle the philosophi, and sette it in dew forme. Summe men seide that he was the son of swech a Aristotle.

---

[1] *profered.*] C.C.C.—The word is written "pofered" in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *Veniedes.*] The name of Xeniades is thus written in this place in both MSS.; a few lines below it is written "Veniades."

[3] *deth.*] Written on an erasure.

[4] *had.*] Added above the line in red ink.

B.C. 338. spirit whech thei clepe Incubus, for the lithnes of his body, an[1] the sotilte of his witte.

Anno 4865—4867.

B.C. 336. Death of Arses. Anno 4868.—Here deyed[2] Xerses, that was Kyng[3] IIII. ȝere. He had an othir name, Arsanius.

Xenocrates. In this tyme was Ȝenocrates in Attenis, whos chastite is mech praised. For whan a faire strympet was hired with a great summe, that sche schuld enclyne him to leccherie, boldly sche wente to bed, and lay be him al nyte: and, in the morowning, whanne thei that hired hire asked her mony ageyn, sche answerd that hir covinaunt was to ovircom a man and not a blok.

Anno 4869—4873.

B.C. 331. Death of Darius Codomannus. Anno 4874.—Here deyed[4] Darius, whech was ovyrcom of Alisaundre.

Anno 4875—4878.

B.C. 323. Death of Alexander the Great. Anno 4879.—Here deyed[5] Grete Alisaundre, that regned[6] XII. ȝere; sex ȝere with Darie, and sex ȝere after his deth.

And here leve we the manere of countyng used befor, where we sette evyr the regner in his last ȝere; fro this tyme forward we will set hem in her first ȝere.[7]

---

[1] *an*] and. C.C.C.

[2] *deyed.*] Written upon an erasure. The erased word appears in this, and the two following cases, to have been 'regneth,' as in previous instances; hence the addition of the words 'that was Kyng'—'that regned.'

[3] *that was Kyng.*] Added in the margin.

[4] *deyed.*] Written upon an erasure instead of the word 'regneth.'

[5] *deyed.*] On an erasure.

[6] *that regned.*] Added above the line.

[7] *in her first ȝere.*] The date of the commencement of each King's reign is set in the MS. at the beginning of the account of it, and this order has, of course, been observed in the present edition. The dates of the several years comprehended under each reign are set in a continuous column in the MS., without any reference to the text, and these have been grouped together as in the previous part of the Chronicle, so as to occupy the smallest possible space.

In the sext ȝere of Darie, Alisaundre rejoysed the kyngdam of Babilon, that was thanne, as we seid before, devolute to the kyngdam of Perse, and now to the kyngdam of Macedonie. Thus was Alisaundre brout to that empire, and sette mech good reule in every lond. He visited the Temple in Jerusalem, and relesed hem of her tribute every VII. ȝere. He deyed in Babilonie, poisoned with venim. B.C. 323.

Ptolemæus Soter, King of Egypt.

Anno 4880. — Here beginnith Ptholomeus for to regne, and he was the son of on Lagus, and he regned XL. ȝere. And here is for to note,—Whan Alisaundre deied, foure of his princes occupied al his empire. This Ptholome the south, and dwelled in Egipte. Philippe, Alisaundre brothir, he kept him in the west. Antigonus the north, and Seleucus the est. But this Ptholomeus, whech was cleped Sother, he regned in Egipte. And in his secund ȝere began the kyngdam[1] of Asie. First regned there Antigonus, XVIII. ȝere; and thanne regned Demetrius XVII. ȝere, and that same Demetrius resigned his rite onto Seleucus, king of Surre; and so cesed the kyngdam of Asie. This same Seleucus mad III. grete citees, on hite Antioch; the othir hite Laodicia; the third, Seleuce, after his name.

Anno 4881—4899.

Anno Mundi iiiiM.DCCCC.

Anno 4901—4919.

B.C. 285. Ptolemæus Philadelphus.

Anno 4920.—Here beginnith the regne of Ptholomeus Philadelphus, and he regned XXXVIII. ȝere.

The Septuagint translation made.

Undir this man the LXX. translatouris were in Egipte, and thei translat the Lawe of God out of Hebrew into Grek tonge. For Grete Alisaundre and his successoures studied gretly for to gader many

---

[1] *the kyngdam*] C.C.C. The word "the" is omitted in the MS. Pub. Lib.

B.C. 285. bokes into her tresoure, and specialy lawes and decres to governauns of puple. But this man was most desirous in this mater. For he multiplied so bokes that there were founde in his librarie at Alisaundre LXX. thousand bokes. For he sent to Jerusalem, onto Eleazar, the bischop, for to have the Elde[1] Testament translate out of Hebrew into Greke tonge. And this Eleazar sent him LXX. wel lerned men, whech the Kyng put in sundri houses, and ech of hem translate be him selve. And this miracle fel, that, whan her translacion was broute togidir, there was no discrepauns in sentens, ne variauns in wordes, be vertu, as we fynde, of the Holy Goost.

Anno 4921—4955.

B.C. 247. Ptolemæus Euergetes. Anno 4956.—Here regneth Ptholomeus Euergetes, cleped so, for he browt many ydoles oute of Surre, and mad Egipte rich with hem, for thei were of sylvir and gold.

Jesus, the son of Sirach. In this mannes time lyved Jesus, filius Sirac, that mad a book of the Bible, whech we clepe "Ecclesiasticus," whech book, for the similitude of speech, summe men supposed it had be of Salamones makyng. It is clepid "Ecclesiasticus," that is to sey, "Of the Church," for there is mech thing longing to the observauns and providens of the Cherch.

Anno 4957—4981.

B.C. 222. Ptolemæus Philopator. Anno 4982.—Ptholomeus Philopater,[2] he regned VII. ȝere. He had that name for he was fader of al wrechchidnes; for he left al the good occupacion of knythod, and used ydilnes, leccherie, insolens, manslauth; al nyte occupied with leccherie; al day in glotonye. He weddid his sistir, cleped Erudite: aftir, he killid hir. Than had he ever chaunge of women.

---

[1] *Elde*] olde. C.C.C.

[2] *Philopater.*] Partly written upon an erasure.

And for this cursed lyf Antiochus Magnus tok him and killid him; and alle his strumpettis he hung hem on galowis. B.C. 222.

Anno 4983—4988.

Anno 4989.—Ptholome clepid Epiphanes, he regned in Alisaundre XXXIIII. ȝere; and, for he was but V. ȝere old whanne he began to regne, therfor thei of Alisaundre sent onto the Romaynes for to help here ȝong Kyng ageyn the power of Grete Antiochus. And thanne the Romaynes sent two legatis onto this Antiochus, that he schuld go oute of Egipte, and do no harm to here frendis. And whan this child was growe onto age, he weddid the doutir of the same Antiochus, whech hite Cleopatra. B.C. 205. Ptolemæus Epiphanes.

In this same tyme lyved the eloquent man whech hite Plauctus; and for al his eloquens, he was compelled for to dwel with a baxter, and grinde his corn at a querne; and whanne he had leisere, than wold write tales of ful grete sentens. Plautus.

Anno 4990—4999.

Anno Mundi vM.

Anno 5001—5022.

Anno 5023.—Ptholomeus Philometer regned in Egipt XXXV. ȝere. B.C. 181. Ptolomæus Philometor.

And in his tyme lyved that conquerour at Rome, whom thei clepe Scipio Affricanus. He was cleped so for the grete cōnquestes that he had on Cartage, whech cite stant in Affric. It was he that counceled the Senate, that Cartage schuld not be distroyed. For whanne the Romaynes left werre with Cartage, than be ydilnesse began mech debate in the cite, evele drantes in the puple; covinauntes broken, opyn extorsion; privy therft.[1] Therefor wold this man that Cartage schuld not be distroyed, that drede schuld Scipio Africanus.

---

[1] *therft*] theft. C.C.C.

B.C. 181. oppresse leccherie and bisinesse schuld distroye avarice. This man was byried in straunge lond, and this vers writin on his grave:—"O onkynd cuntre, my bones schal thou not have." In his tyme the Romaynes conqwerd a grete part of Grece.

Judas Maccabæus. And in this same tyme Judas Machabeus and his bretherin conqwered the lond of Inde, killid here enimes, purged the Temple, and had victorie of ful many tyrauntis.

Anno 5024—5057.

B.C. 146. Ptolemæus Euerg. II. Anno 5058.—Ptholome cleped Euergetes the Secunde, regned XXIX. ȝere.

Death of Terence. Under his tyme deied the noble poete Terrencius,[1] that wrote so many trajedies; whos grave was wryten with these vers:—

"Natus in excelsis tectis Cartagenis alte,
Romanis ducibus bellica preda fui.
Descripsi mores hominum, juvenumque senumque;
Quid meretrix, quid leno dolis, quid fingat avarus.
Hec quoque qui legit, sic, puto, cautus erit."

Thus thei mene in Englisch:—

"Born in the toures hi in the cite of Cartage,
To the dukes of Rome pray of bataile was I.
I have descrived the maneris of men, both eld[2] and ȝong;
What gile in woman is, what feyning in covetise.
He that redith al this, the betyr he may bewar."

Anno 5059—5085.

B.C. 117. Ptolemæus Lathyrus. Anno 5086.—Ptholome, cleped Sother, or ellis Phiscon, regned XVII. ȝere first. This man weddid his owne sistir, and aftir, in the first day of the wedding, he killid hir child whech was eyir of the lond. In the XVII. ȝere of his regne his moder Cleopatra be grete power mad him to fle fro his lond and dwelle in the ylde of Cipre. Whan he was there he killid anothir child of his, and put it in a forser, and sent it to his modir and his wif at here fest the same day that the qween was bore. B.C. 117.

---

[1] *Terrencius.*] Added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib., but found in the text in C.C.C.

[2] *eld*] old. C.C.C.

Anno 5087—5099.

Anno Mundi vM.C.

Anno 5101, 5102.

Anno 5103.—Here the qween Cleopatra, aftir Ptholome was exiled, mad her ȝonge son Kyng, whech hite Ptholome Alisaundre. This man grew onto swech cruelnes that he killid his owne moder: therfor the puple ros upon him, exiled him, and called in his brothir oute of Cipre to regne ageyn. B.C. 107. Exile of Ptol. Lathyrus. Ptol. Alexander.

Ptholome Sother, or ellis Phiscon, regneth ageyn VIII. ȝere. B.C. 89. Ptol. Physcon restored.

Anno 5104—5119.

Anno 5120.—Here regneth Ptholome Dionisius, X. ȝere. B.C. 80. Ptolemæus Auletes.

Anno 5121—5129.

Anno 5130.—Here regnith Cleopatra. This woman was doutir onto the forseid Dionisius. And here is diversite in counting of ȝeres. For sum sey that hir regne began here, and summe sey that sche regned to ȝere be hir selve, and thanne under Julius, V. ȝere, and under Octavianus, XV. ȝere. Cleopatra.

Anno 5131—5139.

Anno 5150.—Here goth the regne of Egipt onto the Romaynes. For Julius Cesar conquered Egipt, and put it undir tribute. And in this same tyme was this lond conquered be the same Julius, thorw mediacion of a lord thei cleped Androche, whech was brothir to the Kyng: his name was Cassebelian. B.C. 46. Julius Cæsar.

Anno 5151—5156.

Anno 5157.—Octavian began to regne the ȝere of the world V.[1] thousand a hundred and sevene and B.C. 25. Augustus.

---

[1] *V.*] Written upon an erasure.

B.C. 25. fifty. Before the Nativite of Criste he regned XII. ȝere, and aftir the Nativite of Criste XIIII. ȝere. He was bore in Rome: his fader hite Octavian, a senatoure. His moder was of the kyn of Eneas, a Trojan. Cosyn he was onto Julius Cesar, and, be choys, his son. This man browt al the empire into o monarchi. And ȝet, as worthi as he was, he wanted not vices: for he wold never rest with oute grete noumbir of women and maydenes. The puple of Rome, for his grete beute, prosperity, and pees, wold worchip him as a god. But he wold not receyve it, but asked leiser to gyve hem a answere. Than called he to him sibill Tiburtine, and rehersed onto her the desire of the Senate. Sche asked the space of three dayes avisement, in whech sche, and he, and many mo, fasted and prayed. And at the thre dayes ende, they sey Hevene open, and a grete brithnesse schining upon hem: and thanne sey thei a faire ymage of a mayde upon a auter, and a child in hir armes. And whan he merveled gretly he herd a vois fro Hevene crying in this manere,—"This is the auter of Goddis Son." Than felle he down onto the erde, and reverently worchipid that site. The next day he went onto the Capitol, and told hem al this visione, and refused her profir. This same vision was seyn in the chambir of Octavian, whech is now a Cherch and a Covent of Freres Menouris. It is cleped now "Ara Celi."

Anno 5158—5198.

ETAS VI.[1]

Anno 5199—Cristi 1.—This ȝere was Crist oure Lord born of a mayde, in Bethlem, in the nyte before the Sunday. And, as Bede seith[2] in his Cronicle, it was fro the makyng of Adam onto the birth of Crist ȝeres V. thousand a hundred nynty and nyne, as it is conteyned in these vers:

A.D. 1. Birth of Christ.

'Unum tolle datis ad milia quinque ducentis,
Nascente Domino tot Beda dat prothoplausto.'

This is the sentens:—'Take one fro V. thousand and to hundred; So many ȝeres be fro Adam onto Crist.'

Anno Mundi vM.CC. 2.[3]

Anno 5201—5209. 3–11.

Anno 5210. 12.—This ȝere was Crist founde in the Temple amongis doctores.

Anno 5211. 13.

---

[1] *Etas VI.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *as Bede seith,* &c.] "Anno XV. imperii Tiberii, Dominus post Baptismum, quod prædicavit Johannes, mundo regnum Cœlorum annunciat, peractis a principio mundi secundum Hebræos annis, ut Eusebius in Chronicis suis signat, quatuor millibus, adnotando quod XVI. Tiberii anno principium fuerit LXXXI. Jubelei, secundum Hebræos. Quare autem nostra supputatio undevigenti minus ponendos æstimaverit annos, facile qui superiora libelli hujus legerit, inveniet. Juxta vero chronica eadem quæ Eusebius de vera editione, ut sibi videtur, composuit, anni sunt vM.CCXXVIII." See page 183 of the edition of the works of Beda, printed at Basle in 1563.

[3] The figures in the second column represent the years after Christ, and are distinguished by the use of red ink in the original MS. See the explanation of this given by Capgrave in his Dedication, at page 2.

A.D. 14. Anno 5212. 14.

Tiberius. And Tiberius was mad emperoure the XIIII. ȝere of Crist, and he regned XXIII. ȝere, XVIII. ȝere before the Passion, and V. ȝere aftir.

Death of Ovid. In this same tyme was Ovyde the poete ded in exile.

Pilate Procur. of Judæa. And in this same tyme Pilate was made President of Jude.

Anno 5213—5217. 15–19.

Anno 5218. 20.—In all these ȝeres tyl Crist was XXX. ȝere of age the Gospelle makith no grete declaracion of His dedis; but, with oute ony doute, He lyved a parfit lyf, and ded many miracles, thou thei be not wrytin in bokis.

Anno 5219—5227. 21–29.

A.D. 30. Baptism of Christ. Anno 5228. 30.—In this ȝere was Crist oure Lord baptized, whanne He was XXX. ȝere old. And in this same ȝere He turned water into wyn. And in this seme yere He chase His XII. Apostoles, of whech Peter was first, born in Bethsaida, brothir on to Andrew, whom Crist mad prince to the Apostolis. Sex and XXX. ȝere aftir the Passioune of Crist he was martired at Rome, undir Nero. Poule was not chose be Crist in His lyve; but aftir the Ascencioune, with grete lite and ferful wordes turned to the Feith, whech in honoure is sette next Petir, for his general laboure in preching, and eke for thei both were ded for Crist in o cite, and in o day.

The Apostles chosen.

S. Peter.

[S. Paul.]

S. Andrew. Andrew was brothir onto Petir, that was eke in Achay, and martired on a crosse.

S. James the Great. Jacobus, brothir to Jon Evangelist, the son of Zebede and Salome, prechid in Spayne, and deied in Jerusalem.

S. John, Ev. Jon the Evangelist, his brothir, was exiled to Pathmos, wher he mad the Apocalips; but he deied in Ephese: nothing founde in his grave but manna.

Thomas was he that groped the woundes of Crist. He was slayn with a sper in Ynde. A.D. 30. S. Thomas.

Philippe was eke of Bethsaide. In a cite of Frise, cleped Jeraple, he was put on the cross. S. Philip.

Jacobus, the son of Joseph, first bischop of Jerusalem, was throwe there fro the pinacle of the Temple, and aftir smet with a fulleres bat. S. James the Less.

Bartholome prechid in the region of Armenie; and there in Albanie, here grete cite, he was both flayn and hedid. S. Bartholomew.

Mathew, Apostel and Evangelist, mad his Evangele in Rome; aftir that prechid in Macedonie; was slayn in Persida. S. Matthew, Ev.

Simon, born in the strete of Chana, prechid in Egipt. Aftir bischop of Jerusalem, and martired in the same place. S. Simon.

Judas, whech is clepid Thadeus, was martired in Erico, a cite of Armeni. S. Jude.

Matheu was on of the LXX. disciples, and for Judas chosen. S. Matthias.

Anno 5229, 5230. 31, 32.

Anno 5231. 33.—This ȝere was Crist ded for Savacion[1] of man. For Cristus[2] seith that He was XXXIII. ȝere old whan He deied, and as mech more as was fro His birth onto Pase; and be that counting He deid in the XXXIIII. ȝere of His age. A.D. 33. Crucifixion of Christ.

Anno 5232, 5233. 34, 35.

Anno 5234. 36.—Here seid Petir his first Messe.

Anno 5235. 37.

Anno 5236. 38.—Here is Gayus emperoure. A.D. 38. Caligula.

Anno 5237. 39.—In this ȝere Petir cam to Antioche; and Matheu writeth his Godspel.

Anno 5238, 5239. 40, 41.

Anno 5240. 42.—Here regneth Claudius, that ȝave A.D. 42. Claudius.

---

[1] *savacion*] salvacion. C.C.C. | [2] *Cristus*] Crist. C.C.C.

A.D. 42. His war with the Britons. bataile onto this lond, and killid the Kyng clepid Gwindevyn. Than was Arvigarus, brothir to the forseyd Kyng, whech was acorded to Claudius in this manere, that he schuld wedde the emperoures doutir, and be Kyng undir Claudius. And at her wedding the emperoure ded make a good town, and called it, aftir his name, Kayerglau, that is to seyn the cyte of Gloucestir. Gloucester founded. This emperoure[1] Claudius was so oblivious that, sone aftir he had killid his wyf, he asked why sche came not to soper.

Linus, Bp. of Rome. In this same tyme was Linus Pope, whech ordeyned that women schuld with lynand cure her heer.

Anno 5241—5253. 43–55.

A.D. 55. Nero. Anno 5254. 56.[2]—Nero regned aftir this Claudius, of alle men wrecchidhest, redy to alle maner vices; undir whom Petir and Poule were martired: Petir in a place cleped Vaticanus, in the weye that is called Aurea; and Poule in a strete called Hostiense, in a place that is cleped "Aput Aquas Saluias,"—"At the Scipping Waters." For Poule's hed scippid thries aftir it was fro the body, and at every scip there sprang a welle; therefor is that place clepid soo.

Anno 5255—5267. 57–69.

A.D. 69. Galba. Vespasian. Anno 5268. 70.—Vespasian regned aftir Gabba, whech regned but IX. monthis. He was sent be Nero to Palestyn, for to withstand the rebellion of Jewis, and there the knytis of the hoost chose him to the empire. But of homely kyn was he born; but endewid he was with the best maneres. Summe sey that he was cured of a grevous sekenes of waspis in his nose and cured be sith of the Vernicle. And this cure excited him to venge Cristis deth. He deied of the flux of blood, and whan deth cam he stood rite up, and seide, "It semeth a Kyng for to stand and dey." A.D. 42.

---

[1] *emperoure.*] C.C.C. This word is written "empoure" in the MS., Pub. Lib.

[2] 56.] This, and other deviations from the received chronology which occur in the text, are corrected in the marginal references.

Anno 5269—5278. 71-80.

Anno 5279. 81.—Titus regned III. ȝere. This man, with his fader, destroyed Jerusalem, and all the precious thinges that were there, brout hem to Rome, and sette hem in the Temple of Pes. He was swech a lover of vertue, that he was cleped "The most delicious of alle men." So liberal eke was he, that no man went fro him withoute reward. A.D. 79. Titus.

In this tyme Cletus was Pope[1] XI. ȝere, whech cursed al thoo that lette ony pilgrime[2] to go to Rome. He deyed a martyr, and byried in Vaticano. Cletus, Bp. of Rome.

Anno 5280, 5281. 82, 83.

Anno 5282. 84.—Domician regned XV. ȝere. This man was brothir onto Titus. In his first ȝeres he was resonabely good. And in his last ȝeres al defiled witȝ vices; so fer forth that al the godnes of the fader and the vertu of his brothir be his vice was forgete. He killid many noble senatoures, and comaunded that every man schuld clepe him God; and that his ymages schuld not be mad but of gold or silvyr. He put Jon the Evangelist in a[3] boilyng tunne of oyle, and thanne exiled him. In his tyme Seynt Denise was martired at Paris. A.D. 81. Domitian.

And in the VIII. ȝere of his regne was Clement mad Pope of Rome; whech astat he kept IX. ȝere; for in the tyme of Trajane his body was throw into the se, and aftir broute to Rome. Clement I. Bp. of Rome.

Anno 5283—5298. 85-98.

---

[1] *Pope.*] In this, and in almost every other instance of its use throughout the MS. Pub. Lib., the word "Pope" has been carefully struck out with a pen.

[2] *pilgrime*] pilgrimage. C.C.C.

[3] *Evangelist in a.*] Added in the margin.

A.D. 96. Nerva. Anno 5297. 99.—Nerva was emperoure but o ȝere. This man dampned al that Domician ordeyned; and for that cause Seynt Jon Evangelist was delyveryd fro his exile, and cam to Ephese.

A.D. 98. Trajan. Anno 5298. 100.—Trajane regned in Rome XIX. ȝere. This man mutiplied that empire gretly. For he conquered Asie, Babilonie, and mech of Ynde. This man killid ny the third part of Cristen men, not be his owne malice, but be stering of his Councel. S. Ignatius. Undir him was martired Seint Ignace, bischop of Antioche, disciple of Jon Evangelist. This manne's hert, whanne it was open, thei founde the name of Jesu writin there with letteris of gold. In this tyme was Eustace, his wif, and here issew martired for Crist. Plutarch. And this tyme lyved Plutarc the Philosophre, maistir onto Trajan, that wrot onto him a book, where he counceled him that he schuld sese fro the persecucion of Cristen men; for, as he wrote, there coude be founde no defaute in hem, but that thei worchiped no ydolis, and rysing erly in the morowning and songing[1] ympnis to On thei cleped Crist. And, as it is seide, the emperoure fro that tyme was not so cruel. In his tyme was Simon Cleophas, bischop of Jerusalem, martired, and put on the crosse.

Anacletus, Bp. of Rome. And in the first ȝere of Trajane was Anaclete Pope, a Grek of nacion, IX. ȝere. He ordeyned that prestis schuld no berdis have. He is buried in Vaticano.

Evaristus, Bp. of Rome. The X. ȝere of Trajane was Evaristus Pope, a Jew, bore in Bethlem. He dyvyded the titeles that Cardinalis have; and he ordeyned that VII. deknes schuld kepe a bischop whan he prechid, for drede of enemyes of the Feith. He was Pope X. ȝere, byried in Vaticano.

Anno 5299—5316. 101–118.

---

[1] *songing*] songin. C.C.C.

A.D. 117. Adrian.

Anno 5317. 119.—Adrian regned XXI. ȝere. He went to Jerusalem, and punchid there the Jewis that were rebelles, and repaired the Tempull,[1] put oute Jewis and put in hethen men, and sette there his ymage as a god. He mad eke a precept, that no Jew into Jerusalem schuld entre; but Cristen men he forbade not the entre. Undir him was martired the holy mayde Seraphia, that cam fro Antioche and dwelled with anothir mayde thei cleped Sabine. In this tyme was a Philosophre cleped Secundus, that kept silens al his lif, and answered evyr be writing.

Alexander I., Bp. of Rome.

And in this tyme was Alisaundre Pope, that ordeyned hali water, and that wyn schuld be put in the chalis, and water thereto.[2] In this tyme lyved on Aquila, that translate the Elde[3] Testament out of Hebrew into Grek.

Sixtus I., Bp. of Rome.

In the X. ȝere of Adrian was Sixte the first mad Pope. He ordeyned that 'Sanctus' schuld be sunge at Sacri; and no man schuld handel the chales but ministeris of the auter. He was hedid withoute gate[4] that is cleped Appia and biried in Vaticano.

Thelophorus, Bp. of Rome.

In the XIX. ȝere of Adrian was Thelophorus mad Pope, whech was first a ancorite. He ordeyned there schul no man say masse before that he had seid the Ters, that is to sey, "Legem pone." He ordeyned tho III. masses on Cristmas morow. He deied a martir, biried in Vaticano.

Anno 5318—5337. 120-139.

---

[1] *Tempull.*] C.C.C. The first syllable only of this word occurs in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *And in this . . . . water thereto.*] The whole of this passage is written in the margin of the MS. Pub. Lib. It forms part of the text in C.C.C.

[3] *Elde*] old. C.C.C.

[4] *withoute gate*] without the gate. C.C.C.

A.D. 137. Antoninus Pius. Anno 5338. 140.—Antoni the Meke regned XXIII. ȝere with his sones. He was cleped so for he mad many men of pite for to forgyve here det. And eke he was good to Cristen men, for he suffered hem to dwelle in pes in her owne places; not for to by ne selle with no othir men.

Galen. In his tyme was lyvyng the gret leche, cleped Galiene, at Rome, that had first studied at Alisaundre and in Rodis. He mad many bokis of this craft, whos names be these, Almagest, Prospectif, Centilogie, and othir. Summe sey that Ptolome Kyng of Egipt mad this Almagest.[1] Peraventure this man mored it, or set it in othir forme. And sum sey that the same Galiene hite Ptholome. He was of mene stature, white of coloure, sone wroth, litil eter, swete of onde, his clothing white.

Hyginus, Pope. In the VIII. ȝere of Antoni was Pope of Rome Yginus, born in Atenes. He ordeyned that every child both in Baptem and Confirmacion schuld have Godfadir and Godmodyr. He was biried in the Cherch of Seynt Petir.

Pius I., Pope. And aftir him was Pius, born in Itaile; in whos tyme Hermes wrot a book that Estern day schuld evyr be solempnyzed on a Sunday: For a aungelle appered to the same Hermes, and comaunded the same. And Pollicarpe, that was disciple to Seyn John Evangeliste, cam onto Rome, for to reforme all the bischoppis of Asie to the same reule. For thei alle, onto that tyme, were used in the ceremonie of Jewis for to hold Pase day evere in the myd monthe; that is to sey, the XV. day.

Anno 5339—5360. 141–162.

---

[1] *Almagest.*] The Almagest of Claudius Ptolemæus Pelusiensis was printed at Venice by Pet. Liechtenstein, in 1815. There is an edition "Almagestum Latina donatum lingua a G. Trapezuntio, per Luc. Gauricum recognitum." Ven. Luc. Ant. Junta, 1528.

A.D. 161. Antoninus Philosophus.

Anno 5361. 163.—Marcus Antonin the trewe, with Lucye, his brother Lucy,[1] regned XIX. ȝere. In this ȝere began at Rome to regne to emperoures. This man was good in governauns, and, aftir his name, trew in his dedis; but, for al that, was there grete persecucion ageyn Cristen men in his tyme. And in these dayes was the good old man Pollicarp, disciple to Jon the Evangelist, martired for Crist, and XII. worthi men with him, of the cite cleped Philadelphia: this was in Asia. And in Frauns was killid Seynt Justus, bischop of Mamert, and Seynt Forcius, bischop of Lugdunensis, with many othir martires.

Hegesippus flor.

In this tyme lyved the notable writer of stories of the Cherch, whech thei cleped Egecippus. And in this tyme leved Praxede, that, with hir sistir Potencian, byryed many a martir.

Anicetus, Pope.

In the first ȝere of this Antonie was Pope at Rome Anicetus. He mad a statute in the Cherch, that there schuld no bischop be consecrate but of III. bischoppes at the leest. He was biried in the cymytery of Kalixt.

Soter, Pope.

And in the X. ȝere of this Antonie was Sother Pope. He ordeyned that there schuld no nunne handeled the corporas, ne cast none encense in the Cherch. He ordeyned eke that there schuld no man use his wif, but if thei were first offered be here frendis, and blessid be the prest. He was byried in Vaticano.

Eleutherus, Pope. He sends missionaries to Britain.

In the XIX. ȝere of Antoni was Eleutheri Pope,[2] a Grek of nacion. He receyved a letter fro the Kyng of Grete Britayn, cleped Lucius, that he schuld send summe prestes to this lond to baptize him, and his puple. And the Pope sent hedir Fugan and Damian, whech performed this dede. Summe Cronicles sey this was in ȝere of oure Lord 165.

Anno 5362—5379. 163–181.

---

[1] *Lucye, his brother Lucy.*] Thus written, and with the same variety in the spelling, in both MSS.

[2] *Pope.*] Pope of Rome. C.C.C.

A.D. 193. Pertinax. Anno 5380. 182.—Helius Pertinax[1] regned XVIII. ȝere. In his tyme lyved the fourt translatour of the Bibil, cleped Simachus. And Narcissus was bischop of Jerusalem, a man full of vertue. Tertulian, eke a grete writer, was that tyme. And Origene taute thanne at Alisaundre, whos wryting passeth al othir. This Helius Pertinax was a wel agid man, rithful in al manere thing; nevyr took he giftes of man. He regned but VI. monthes, and al the othir tyme occupied Severus, whech was a man evyr reydy to batayl, weel lerned in bokes, and liberal in giftis. He began the V. persecucion ageyn Cristen men, and killid many martires. On of hem was called Leontius, fader onto Origene: and than was Origene left of ȝong age, with his moder and VII. bretherin, whech with his teching of gramer susteyned hem alle. Yreneus, a grete clerk, bischop of Lugdune, was martired that tyme.

Septimius Severus.

Victor, Pope. And in this tyme was Victor Pope of Rome. He gadered a councille in Alisaundre, that stant in Palestin, and there he mad a lawe, that Pase day schuld be on Sunday evyr betwix the XIIII. day of the month and the XXI. He ordeyned that every man that wold be Cristen mite be baptized for nede in every watir, flood, welle, or strem, so that he mad confession of the Feith. He was martired, and byried in Vaticano.

Anno 5381—5397. 183–199.

A.D. 211. Caracalla. Anno 5398. 200.—Antonius Caracalla regned VII. ȝere. He was clepid Caracalla for a certeyn manere of clothing that he was first finder. This man was defiled with alle wikkidnes. In his dayes[2] was

---

[1] *Helius Pertinax.*] The name of the Emperor Commodus is here omitted, and his date assigned to Pertinax. This causes an error in the dates of ten years, more or less, which is not remedied till the reign of Theodosius Magnus, A.D. 379. The true dates will be found in the margin throughout, as there is not unfrequently an error in the MS. in this early History.

[2] *dayes*] time. C.C.C.

A.D. 211.

found the V. translacion of the Elde Lawe; but who mad it is in doute. This Antonie was so leccherous that he weddid his owne fader wyf. He held batail ageyn the Perses; and there he deied, biried in Edissa.

Zephyrinus, Pope.

In his tyme was Zepherinus Pope. He ordeyned that everi Cristen man schuld receyve the blessed Sacrament on Pase day.

Anno 5399. 201.

Anno Mundi vM.CCCC. [Christi 202.]

Anno 5401—5404. 203-206.

A.D. 217. Macrinus.

Anno 5405. 207.—Macrinus regned but o ȝere. Before his empire he was a prefecte of the Court, and for envye he lost his heed.

A.D. 218. Elagabalus.

Anno 5406. 208.—Antonius Aurelius regned IIII. ȝere. In his tyme ros the heresie of Sabelly. He was before a prest of a temple cleped Eliogabelum. He left no memorie aftir him, but evel exaumple of hordam, leccherie, and sweche stinking synne. Therfor the knytes risin ageyn him, and killid him, and his modir eke.

Calixtus I., Pope.

In these dayes was Kalixtus Pope, whech mad the cherch of Oure Lady in Transtibir, where the welles runne oyle and wyn on that day that Crist was bore. He ordeyned eke the fastyng on the Ymbir dayes. He mad the Cymyteri Via Appia, undir the Chirch of Sebastian, and there was he biried aftir his martirdam.

Anno 5407—5409. 209–211.

A.D. 222. Alexander Severus.

Anno 5410. 212.—Alexander Mammeas regned XIII. ȝere. He was cleped Mammeas, for it was his modir name. This man governed knythod on the best manere, and lawe he norched in the best wise. For Vulpinianus, a gret maker of lawes, was gretly norched be him. He was killid in Mens at a grete trouble and rising of knytes.

Origen flor

In his tyme Origene was in his floures, and most

A.D. 222. honourable in the Cherch in sciens, eloquens, and witte; for than mad he bokes of grete sentens. For he had, beside othir writeres, VII. maydenes and VII. ȝong men, that wrytyn dyvers bokes, which he endited and reported on to hem, and that of dyvers materes. For, as Seynt Jerom seith,[1] he red of his making sex thousand volumes, beside Episteles and many other werkis. Ther went a proverb of him in that lond,—"His doctrine was lich his lyf." Upon bed he lay nevyr; hosen and schon wered he nowt; he ete nevyr flesch, ne drank nevyr wyn. With his writyng Mammea the emperoure moder was Cristen; and sche mad hir son more esy, and sesed mech his persecucion.

Urban Pope. In this tyme was Urbane Pope VIII. ȝere. He converted Valerian, the spouse of Cicile, and baptized him and his brothir. In this tyme began the Cherch to have possession of lond and hous, but not so largely as it had in the tyme of Silvester. And with this possession Urban hered[2] notaries to write treuly the lyf of martires.

Anno 5411—5422. 213-224.

A.D. 235. Maximinus. Anno 5423. 225.—Maximiane regned III. ȝere, a grete enimy to Cristen men.

Anno 5424, 5425. 226, 227.

A.D. 239. Gordian. Anno 5426. 228.—Gordian regned VI. ȝere, that had grete victorie up the Perses, and[3] in his comyng hom was slayn be treson.

---

[1] *as Seynt Jerom seith.*] Capgrave is mistaken in his quotation. S. Jerome contradicts the statement contained in the text. His words are:—"Sex millia Origenis tomos non poterat quisquam legere, quos ille non scripsit: faciliusque credo testem hujus sermonis quam auctorem esse mentitum." S. Hieron. ad Theophilum, adversus Joan. Hierosol.

[2] *hered*] hyred. C.C.C.

[3] *and*] C.C.C. Written 'ad' in the MS. Pub. Lib.

A.D. 239. Pontianus, Pope.

In this tyme was Poncian Pope, that was exiled and dyed a martir.

Cyriacus.

And than was Cyriacus Pope, but for he resyne, and went with XI. thousand maydnes, he is not put in the Cateloge of Popes.

Anterus, Pope.

Next him was Anteros Pope: he was a Grek.

Fabianus, Pope.

And than was Fabian Pope; and he was chosen be a wite dowe lityng on his hed. He ordeyned that every ȝere, on Schere or Maunde Thursday, the Pope schuld consecrate crisme. He dyvyded Rome on to VII. regiones, and to every region prefered he a decon to write treuly the lyf of holy martires.

Anno 5427—5431. 229–233.

A.D. 244. Philip.

Anno 5432. 234.—Philippicus, with his son Philip, regned VII. ȝere. This was the first Cristen emperoure. And in the first ȝere of his empire was evene a thousand ȝere sith the cyte of Rome was begunne. And for this cause thei of Rome mad a ful grete solempnite, whech lested III. dayes and III. nytes. This emperoure was baptized of Seynt Pontian in the cite cleped Provynce. And both the fadere and the son were killid; the fadir at Rome, the son at Veron. This son was sobir[1] of chere, that there mite no myrth make him lawh.[2] These[3] too emperoures in here deth beqwathe al her ricchesse to the Cherch and Seynt Sixte; for whech Seynt Laurens aftirwar was, in the tyme of Decius, put to the deth.

Anno 5433—5438. 235–240.

A.D. 249. Decius.

Anno 5439. 241.—Decius regned II. ȝere, a cursed veniabil man onto Cristen men. For undir him were killid so many, that his tyme was clepid the VII. Persecucion.

---

[1] *was sobir*] was so sober. C.C.C.

[2] *lawh*] lawghe. C.C.C.

[3] *These.*] C.C.C. Written "Theso" in the MS. Pub. Lib.

A.D. 249. Cornelius, Pope. In his tyme was Cornelius Pope. He lift up the bones of Petir and Paule fro the place cleped Catacumbis, and Seynt Lucy, a widow, receyved the bones of Paule, and sette hem in hir possession in the strete cleped Hostiensis. The bonis of Petir sette Cornely in Vatican, that was sumtyme Nero paleys.

Anno 5440. 242.

A.D. 251. Gallus and Volusian. Anno 5441. 243.—Gallus and Volucianus regned II. ȝere, and of her tyme is litil writing. Cyprian flor. In these dayes lyved that famous clerk and martir cleped Cipriane, whech was bischop of Cartage.

Lucius, Pope. And in this tyme was Lucius Pope. He ordeyned that too prestis and III. deknes schuld evyr be present with a bischop. He deied a martir undir Valerian.

Anno 5442. 244.

A.D. 253. Valerian. Anno 5443. 245.—Valerian, with his son Galiene, regned XV. ȝere. This man held batayl in Jerusalem and Mesopotamy ageyn Sapor, Kyng of Pers; and that same Kyng Sapor ovyrcam him to a schameful service, that, as long as the Kyng of Pers lyved, he schuld stand on his bak, and Valerian ly, and so schuld he take his hors. This man spilt mech Cristen blod, for undir him were martired Lucius the Pope, and Cipriane the bischop.

A.D. 260. Gallienus. Galiene in his beginning was just and good to the covinaunte; aftir that ful dissolute in many vices. Therfor God suffered him to be killid with deceyte of on Aurely, a duke. Undir this same Valeriane were martired both Sixte and Laurens be on Decius that was no emperoure, but a meyhir, and therefor he cleped Decius Minor. It is seid that Seynt Sixte went fro Rome to Spayn, and thens he browt to fayre ȝong men, Laurens and Vincent, cosynes of blod and vertuous of manere. These brout he onto Rome. Laurens abod stille there; Vincent turned ageyn to Spayn, and was martired undir Diocleciah.

In the third ȝere of Valerian was Stevene Pope. He ordeined that prestes and deknes schuld not were here vestmentis but in the Cherch. He was killid at Messe, and lith befor the auter in the Cherch of Seynt Sebastian. A.D. 260. Stephen I., Pope.

And in the VI. ȝere of Valerian was Sixtus Pope. He ordeyned that Messe schuld be said upon a auter. He was martired with many mo, and after him III. daies was Laurens rosted on a grate. Sixtus II., Pope.

And in the X. ȝere of this Valerian was Dionise Pope. He departed the cite of Rome into divers parches, and ordeyned cherchis, and cymeteries, and prestis for to serve; made lawe eke that every preste schuld kepe his own cure, and non medel with othir. Dionysius, Pope.

Anno 5444—5457. 246–259.

Anno 5458. 260.—Claudius regned to ȝere, and mad grete conquest upon the Gothis, upon Macedonie, and a cuntre is clepit Illiricum; and whan he had ovyrcome mech of Almayn he deied, thei sei, of pestilens. A.D. 268. Flavius Claudius.

In his tyme was Euticianus Pope, and before him Felix. Felix ordeyned that Messes schuld be songe up martires graves. Eutician gadered the bodies of martires, and mad auteres upon here graves. He was biried in Kalixte cymiteri. Felix and Eutychianus, Popes.

Anno 5459. 261.

Anno 5460. 262.—Aurelianus regned V. ȝere. This man mad gret persecucion onto Cristen men, and therfor was he smet with a levene and thundir, but not ded. This man was the first that arayed his diademe with gold and gemmes. He walled eke the cite with strenger walles. A cite that stant in Frauns, whech hite sum tyme Genabun, he restored it, and called it, aftir his name, Aurelianensis; we clepe it Orgliauns. A.D. 270. Aurelian.

Anno 5461—5464. 263-266.

Anno 5465. 267.—Probus regned VI. ȝere. He ovyrcam in batayl too grete kyngis. A.D. 276. Probus.

A.D. 276. Caius, Pope. And in his tyme was Gayus, born in Dalmacie, cosyn to Dioclecian. He ordeyned that the Ordres schuld be thus disposed in the Cherch, that he that schuld be mad a bischop schuld first be a benet, in whech is included too or III. offices; and than a colet; and than subdiacone, diacone, and prest. He deied martir, byried in the cymiteri of Kalixt. He ordeyned eke that in every grete cyte schuld be a bischop; and that alle grete causes schuld be determined at Rome.

The Manichean Heresy. In this tyme began the heresy of Manichees.

Ther was a man in Perse, that hite Manes, scharp of witte, whech ymaged[1] a fals opinion ageyn the Feith. He put too Begynninges, and the Feith but on. He seid the devele was eterne, as God is. He seid the body of oure Lord Jesu Crist was no very body; and mech othir thing. His disciples that he gadered cleped him Manichene.

Anno 5466—5470. 268–272.

Florianus. Anno 5471. 273.—Floriane regned II. ȝere. He deyed with cuttyng of his veynes. He left no thing of his lyf that was worthi to be writin.

Anno 5472. 274.

A.D. 282. Carus. Carinus. Numerian. Anno 5473. 275.—Karus, with his too sones, Karine and Numerian, regne too ȝere. This man was wikkid in al manere thing; therefor he was dronchin in a smal watir. And his childern sone aftir were killid. In his tyme were martired too glorious seyntis, whech on was a man, Crisantus; the othir a woman, Daria.

Anno 5474. 276.

A.D. 284. Dioclesian and Maximinian. Anno 5475. 277.—Dioclecian and Maximian regned XX. ȝere. This Dioclecian was but of pore birth, but a grete enimy to Cristen Feith. For this practik he used to destruccion of the Feith that alle the bokes he mite gete that spoke of Crist he brent hem withoute dispensacion. And this persecucion lestid X. ȝere thorw oute the world. This was the first emperoure that wered gemmes in his clothing and in his hosen. For alle the princes before him were content to were purpil alone. He sent Maximiane into Frawns to fite ageyn a grete puple whech disobeyed the lordchip of Rome. And in that same jornay was Seynt Maurice martired, and with him a hool legioune, whech thei cleped Thebees. The persecucion of Dioclecian in the Est, and Maximiane in the West, was of swech cruelte, that withinne XXX. dayes XX. thousand men and women were slayn for Crist; bokes brent, cherches distroyed, prelatis killid. In that persecucion were slayn Sebastian, Gervase, Prothase, Gorgony, Quintine, Grisogonus, Cosmas, Damiane, Anastase, Agnes, Agas, Lucy, Katerine. And in Britayne the more part of[1] Cristen men were ny distroyed. A.D. 284.

---

[1] *ymaged*] ymagined. C.C.C.

In this tyme, aftir the deth of Gayus, was Marcelline mad Pope; and for very dred he obeyed onto the precept of Dioclecian, worchipid and encensed the ydoles. But aftir that he ded penauns, and in the Councele desired that thei schuld asine him more penauns. And thei sayde, "Thi maystir Petir denyed Crist, and so ded you. Whech of the Aposteles was so bold for to gyve him penauns? Therfor do thi self what thou lest. We have no power ovyr the." So he comaunded hem that aftir his deth thei schuld not byry him. And streite he went to Dioclecian, and offered him self for a Cristen man, and lost his hed: XXX. dayes lay his body onburied, til Seynt Petir appered to Marcelle the pope, and bad him bery it be the body of Seynt Petir. Marcellinus, Pope.

Aftir him was Marcelle Pope V. ȝere. He ordeyned XV. Cardinales in Rome for to baptize men, and Marcellus, Pope.

---

[1] *part of.*] Added above the line.

A.D. 284. byry hem. For he wold not[1] obey Maximiane, and thurifie, he sette him in a cherch whech stant in a strete cleped Via Lata, and mad him in the same cherch for to kepe bestes, as in a stabil; and there was he ded, byried in the cymiteri cleped Priscille.

Eusebius, Pope. Eusebius cam aftir him, a Grek.

Melchiades, Pope. And than Melchiades, born in Affrik. He ordeyned that no Cristen man schuld fast neythir Sunday, ne Thursday; for tho to dayes were solemply fasted among the hethen men.

Anno 5476—5494. 278–296.

A.D. 303. Galerius. Anno 5495. 297.—Galerius regned too ȝere with Constantine and Lucinie. This Constantine conquered al Spayn; and aftir that cam into Britayn, and compelled the lond to pay her old tribute to Rome: wedded here a mayden thei cleped Heleyn, the Kyng douter of Colchester; and of this woman and of him cam Grete Constantine, that ded mech for the Cherch. Than deid this Constantyn in Britayn, and was byried at York, and left his son, Grete Constantin, the empire of Frauns and of Spayn, with othir cuntres.

Constantius Chlorus visits Britain and marries Helena.

Death of Constantius.

Maxentius. In this tyme was Maxencius chosen emperoure at Rome, and he grew to swech insolens and cruelty that[2] the puple of Rome sent for this Constantine; and, aftir he had killid Maxens, thei mad him emperoure.

Anno 5496. 298.

A.D. 306. Constantine the Great. Anno 5497. 299.—Constantine the Grete regned XXXI. ȝere. He was first cruel onto Cristen men: aftir was he smet with the seknes of leper, and so be miracle baptized, and cured be the Pope Silvestir. And aftir his baptem he gaf leve to alle Cristen men frely to bigge[3] cherches, and openly to here

His conversion.

---

[1] *not*] nat. C.C.C.

[2] *that.*] C.C.C. Written 'tha' in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[3] *bigge*] byld. C.C.C.

Masses, and prechyngis in the name of oure Lord Jesu Crist. A.D. 306.

Arian heresy.

In his dayes began the wikkid heresy of Arry; the secte is clepid Arrianes. And ageyn that heresy were gadered in Grece, in a cite cleped Nicene, thre hundred and XVIII. bischoppis in the presens of Constantine, and there was Seint Nicholas the bischop. The Donatistes heresy eke began in this tyme, be on thei called Donat. The Arrianes said that Crist was lesse than His Fadir, not only in His Manhod, as we sey, but in His Godhed, as we sey not. The Donatistes sey that the trewe Feith is nowhere but with hem; and thoo that schuld come to her secte must be rebaptized. This Constantin ded make the Cherch of the Salvatoure, and the Cherch of Petir and Poule, and the Cherch of Seynt Laurens, and many othir werkis. Summe sey of him that he erred fro the Feith in his ende, and was rebaptized of on Eusebie, bischop of Nichomedi: but this opinion is not trew; for it was his son, that hite Constans. For Seynt Gregorie,[1] in his Register, and Ambrose[2] up on the XIII. Psalme, and Ysidre[3] in his Cronicles, sey that he deied a holy man. And

Council of Nice.

Donatist heresy.

---

[1] *Seynt Gregorie.*] Vide S. Gregorii Registr. Epist. Lib. IX., Epist. LX. "Constantinus, piissimus Imperator, etc."

[2] *Ambrose.*] "Cui licet baptismatis gratia in ultimis constituto omnia peccata dimiserit, tamen quod primus imperatorum credidit, et post se hereditatem fidei principibus dereliquit, magni meriti locum reperit cujus temporibus completum est illud propheticum: In illo die erit quod supra frenum equi sanctum Domino omnipotenti.—Zach. xiv. 20." Vide. S. Ambr. Opera., vol. ii., col. 1209 C.,—Benedict. Ed., Paris. 1690.

[3] *Ysidre.*] Isidore says just the contrary: "Constantinus autem in extremo vitæ suæ ab Eusebio Nicomediensi Episcopo baptizatus, in Arrianum dogma convertitur. Heu; pro dolor, bono usus principio et fine malo." The "Nota Doctoris Garciæ de Loaisa" on this passage, given in the Edition of Isidore's Works published at Cologne is as follows: "Hanc sententiam docte refellit Cedrenus in compendio Hist. in vita Constantini."

A.D. 306. the Grekis hold of him a solempne fest the XXI. day of May.

Sylvester, Pope. In this mannes tyme was Silvestre Pope XXXI. ȝere and X. monthes, born in Rome. He mad this grete Councel to be gadered at Nicene of CCC. bischoppes and XVIII., where the Cred was mad whech we sey in oure Messe. This Pope went down into the erde a hundred grecis and fifty, and bond a dragon that had slayn thousands with the wynd of his mouth.

Anno 5498, 5499. 300, 301.

Anno Mundi vM.vC. Christi 302.

Anno 5501—5527. 303–329.

A.D. 337. Constantine, Constantius, and Constans. Anno 5528. 330.—Constantine, this mannes son, with his too bretherin Constant and Constancius, regned XXIIII. ȝere. These III. were sones of Grete Constantine. First regned the eldest al alone; and whanne he was ded, be the councelle of his brothir Constans, than regned the same Constauns, and was turned be a fals prest to the heresie of the Arianes. He pursewed alle the Cristen bischoppis and prestis thorow the world: summe he exiled, summe he put oute here rite eyne, and namely the worthi man Athasius,[1] whech mad "Quicunque vult," pursewed so fervently, that he durst not appere openly VII. ȝere. Success of the Arian heresy. S. Athanasius. And al this persecucion was for on Arrian, whech deyed at Constantinople ful schamefully. For as he went to cherch, with his clientis and mech pride, there fell upon him a appetite for to go to a sege; and with his issew went alle the guttis oute of his wombe down in to the gong. And this was kept ful grete councelle fro the emperoure, seyng that he deyed in a cothe.[2]

---

[1] *Athasius.*] Written thus in both MSS.

[2] *cothe*] coth. C.C.C.

A.D. 337. Lucius, Pope.

In these dayes Lucius was Pope, that mad a lawe that there schuld no clerk answere to no cause but in the cherche. In his dayes lyved these men, Athanasius, Pafnucius, Eusebius, Nicholaus, Hillarius, Victorius, Hillarion, Epiphanius, Johannes Crisostomus.

Liberius, Pope. Schism between Liberius and Felix.

In these dayes was Liberi Pope. He was exiled be the emperoure, and on Felix chosen, and than Liberius ageyn; and so began a scisme in the Cherch. For VII. ȝere this Liberius kept Seynt Petir Cherch and Seynt Laurens with fors of armes. So was Felix—for he seid that the emperoure and the Pope were heretikes—martired, and on Eusebius sperd in a litil hous, in whech he deyd for hungir. In this tyme was Donat the grete gramarion, that taute Seyn[1] Jerom Gramer. And the grete heremite Antoni lyved in this tyme. The bones eke of Seynt Andrew and Luk were brout to Constantinople. In this tyme Julianus Apostate was mad a monk: For this emperoure Constans killid the brothir of[2] Julian, and therefor he fledde; for he cam of the imperial blood. Grete Constantine brothir was his fader: and thus Julianus walkid[3] dyvers provinces, drawing evir to nigromanceres and wicchis,[4] inquiring diligently if evir he schuld be emperoure. And at the last he mad feith to a devel, that he schuld forsake his Cristendam; and whan he had do this, he told him that with in a fewe dayes he schuld regne in the empire.

S. Anthony.

Julian the Apostate.

Anno 5529—5551. 331-353.

A.D. 361. Julian is made Emperor.

Anno 5552. 354.—This Julian regned too ȝere and ten monthis. He was apostata, as is seid before, and weel lerned in alle the seculere sciens; but he left the study of Divinity, and entended al to nigromancie,

---

[1] *Seyn*] Seynt. C.C.C.

[2] *the brothir of.*] Added in the margin.

[3] *walkid*] warked. C.C.C.

[4] *wicchis.*] The last two letters are added above the line. 'Whiches.' C.C.C.

A.D. 361. and familiarite of spirites. He porsewed Cristen men ful grevously, pryved hem of her worchip to this entent, for to bringe hem to ydolatrie. Undir him were many martires, specialy Paule and Jon, keperis of the Chaumbir of Constantin dowtir. He gave leve to the Jewis to bygge[1] ageyn the Temple at Jerusalem; but the erdequaves[2] come so often, thei were fayn to fle fro the Temple and fro the cite. As he went to fite with the Perses, whan he cam to Cesarie, that stant in Capadoce, he thrett Basile, the bischop, that whan he cam agyn victoure, he schuld distroy the cite. Upon this the bischop comaunded the puple to pray God that he schuld lette the cursed mannes appetite; and withinne a fewe dayes a knite, whech hite Mercurie, that Julius had martired for Crist, at the comaundyng of oure Lady, ros oute of his grave, and with his spere killid this Julian, and in his deying he cried, "Thou hast ovir come, Thou Galile:" for so cleped he Crist, and no othir name.

Unsuccessful attempt to rebuild the Temple of Jerusalem.

Anno 5553, 5554. 355, 356.

A.D. 364. Jovian.

Anno 5555. 357.—Joviniane regned but o ȝere. He was first a knyte with the Kyng of Perse, cleped Sapor; and, whan Julian was ded, he byried him worchipfully; and thanne was he chosen emperoure. Alle the biscoppis that were exiled in Constans tyme he cleped hem hom to her cherches: among hem was Athanase clepid hom to Alisaundre. He spered the templis of ydolis, and opened Cristen Cherchis. He was ded in a certeyn hous, that was new waschid with lym, and clos fro the eyir, strangillid with the hete.

Damasus, Pope.

In this tyme was Damasus Pope, a excellent man in versifying. He ordeyned, at the praier of Seint Jerom, that in the ende of every Psalm the Cherch schul sey

---

[1] *bygge*] byld. C.C.C.

[2] *erdequaves*] erthquaves. C.C.C

'Gloria Patri.' He ordeyned the maner of singing in the qwere, that half schuld singe on the o side, and half on the othir. In this tyme was Josaphat, a Kingis son, mad a hermyte be the exortacion of on Barlaam. A.D. 364.

In this tyme Seint Ambrose, bischop of Melan, mad many ympnes, whech be sunge in the Cherch; and be his preching mani of Itaile were converted to Crist. In this tyme lyved Basilius, bischop of Cesarea, and his brothir Gregorius Nazanzene, Dedimus of Alisaundre, and Jerom at Bethlem, Seint Martyn, and the too Macharies, Ysidre, and many othir. S. Ambrose flor.

Anno 5556. 358.—Valentinian, with his brothir Valent, regned XI. ȝere. He dwelt before with Juliane the emperoure, whom Julian put in choys whethir he wold forsake his knythod or his Cristendam, and he forsok his knythod. Therfor oure Lord exalted him onto the empire. He deied of the flix of blood. He was trew of condicion, fayre of visage, sotille of witte, fayre-spokyn; but he spak but seldam. In his tyme was Ambrose mad bischop of Melan, that wrot many notabel bokes and episteles. A.D. 364. Valentinian, Emperor of the West.

Anno 5557—5566. 359-368.

Anno 5567. 369.—Valens, with Gracian and Valentinian, regned IIII. ȝere. This Valens was a Arrian, and ded mech harm onto good Cristen men; but God suffered him to be killid in a batail whech he had with the Gothis. He mad a lawe, that munkys schuld fite and go to batayle, or ellis men schuld compelle hem with battis. A.D. 364. Valens, Emp. of the East.

Anno 5568—5570. 370-372.

Anno 5571. 373.—Gracian, with his bretherin Valentinian and Theodosie, regned VI. ȝere. This man was trewe in his feith, and devoute onto the Cherch. For onto his tyme the heresi of Arrianes was gretly meynteyned in Itaile. And he with good councel destroyed it finaly, and broute the cuntre to the rith byleve. He was resonabily wel lettered; smal eter; A.D. 375. Gratian, Emp. of the West.

A.D. 375. measured in drynk; schort slepir; ovircomer of lustis; fulfillid with vertues at the best.

Siricius, Pope. In this tyme was Ciricus Pope. He gadered a Councelle at Constantinople of CCC. and L. biscoppis. He condempned the heresi of Maniche, and exiled hem, and forbad alle Cristen men her felauchip. He ordeyned eke that non of hem schuld be receyved but to evyrlesting penauns. In this tyme Paula and Eustochium went oute of Rome to Bethlem, to dwelle with Seint Jerom. In this tyme a child was born at Emaus that fro the nowil upward had too bodies and too hedis; and whan on ete, the othir slept: be the nethir part he had but to hepis and to leggis.

Orosius. Orosius was also in this tyme, that was messager betwix Jerom and Augustin, whech mad a book onto Seynt Augustin: it is clepid "Ormesta Mundi."[1]

Anno 5572—5576. 374–378.

A.D. 379. Theodosius Magnus, Emp. of the East. Anno 5577. 379.—Theodosius regned XII. ȝere. In his tyme felle a grete debate betwix Jewis and hethen, whech sect[2] was of most perfeccioun;[3] but this man mad this strif to cese, for he distroyed alle the temples of ydolis, and put the Jewis undir tribute.

Conversion of S. Augustin. In this tyme was Augustin converted fro his erroure onto the Feith be the prayere of his modir, be the preching of Seynt Ambrose, and be the exortacion of Simpliciane. For, as it may be gadered of Cronicles, he was bore in the ȝere of oure Lord CCC. and LX., and converted in the ȝere[4] CCC. and XC. He deied in CCCC. and XXX. He mad many bokes; convicte many herisies. For his grete laboure he is cleped the

---

[1] See page 61, vol. ix. of "Bibliotheca Veterum Patrum, cura Andr. Gallandii." Venice, 1773.

[2] *sect.*] 'Stat' has been expuncted, and 'secte' written over it in red. Secte, C.C.C.

[3] *was of most perfeccioun*] was most of perfeccione. C.C.C. In the MS. Pub. Lib. the word 'of' has been added above the line.

[4] *ȝere.*] C.C.C. The word is written "ȝe" in the MS. Pub. Lib.

Floure of Doctouris. This Cristen emperoure that we speke of ovyrcam his enimes more with orison than with swerd. He deied at Melan, and is byried at Constantinople.

A.D. 379.

In this tyme was Anastasius Pope. He ordeyned that there schuld no man be receyved to the Holy Ordres of the Cherch but he had his membris of his body hole. He ordeyned eke that whan the Gospel is red every man schuld stande.

Anastasius, Pope.

Anno 5578—5588. 380–390.

Anno 5589. 391.—Arcadius and Honorius regned XIII. ȝere. In his tyme was a bischop in a town thei cleped Pire; his name was Donate, whech kyllid a grete dragoune with the breth of his mouth. VIII. yoke of oxen myte scarsly drawe the dragon to the place there he schuld be brent. In this same tyme the bodies of Abacuch and Miche were founde and translat.

A.D. 395. Arcadius, Emp. of the East.

In these dayes sprong tho too heresies, the Priscillianistes and Pelagianes. The first saide that Criste was no veri man. The secunde saide than[1] men may of her owne nature do good dedis withoute mediacion of the grace of God. These heresies were beten and knokked be the myty hambir of God, whech was called Augustin, that thei wasted oute of mennes soules.

Priscillianist and Pelagian heresies arise.

In these dayes Albericus, Kyng of Gothis, entered Ytaile, and cam to Rome, wastid the cite with swerd and fire, ȝeving first this precept there schuld man do no harm to no Cherch, ne to no persone that fled to the Cherch. And whanne the cite brent, thei that were not of Cristen feith blasphemed Crist, and seide that this mischef cam upon hem because thei had lefte the servyse of her olde goddis, and were turned to

Alaric plunders Rome.

---

[1] *than*] for "*that.*" Thus written in both MSS.

A.D. 395. Crist. And this blasphemie was cause that Augustin mad that solemp book whech is cleped "De Civitate Dei."

Innocent I., Pope. In these dayes was Innocent Pope, whech ordeyned that men schuld fast on Satyrday, for that day lay Crist in the sepulcre. He mad a constitucion eke that the child whech was born of a Cristen woman schuld be baptized. Pelagius seid the revers. He ordeyned eke the consecracion of oyle,[1] with whech men be anoynted at here ende.

Anno 5590—5599. 392–401.

Anno Mundi 5600. [Christi 402.]

Anno 5601. 403.

Honorius, Emp. of the West. Anno 5602. 404.—Honorius, with Theodosie the Younger, regned XV. ȝere.

Council at Carthage. In this tyme were gadered CCC. bischoppis and XIII. at Cartage ageyn the heresi of Pelagius, that deneyed Cristis grace.

S. Cyril of Alexandria. Death of S. Jerome. And in these dayes lyved Cirille, bischop of Alisaundre. And Seynt Jerom deyed at Bethlem the ȝere of his age foure score and on; whos soule apered onto Augustin, at Ypon, with grete lite and swete savoure, with wordis eke of comfort, swech as Seint Augustin wold nevir write. This Honorius was lich his fader in the trewe religion of Crist. He deied at Rome, biried by Seynt Petir Cherch.

Zosimus, Pope. In these dayes was Zoȝime Pope, a Grek. He ordeyned that no bonde-man schuld be mad a clerk, and that the Pascale schuld be blessed at Pase.

Boniface I., Pope. Aftir him was Boniface Pope. He comaunded that there schuld no woman wasch the corporas, ne touche it.

Celestine I., Pope. And aftir him was Celestinus Primus. He ordeyned prestis schuld sei "Judica me, Deus," befor Messe.

---

[1] *of oyle.*] Added above the line.

A.D. 393
Mission of S. Patrick into Ireland.
Council of Ephesus.

He sent Seint Patrik, the son of Concha, whech was Seynt Martin sistir, into Erlond, for here convercion. He gadered the grete Councelle at Ephese, in whech was condempned Nestorius, that seide there be to persones in oure Lord Jesu Crist.

Anno 5603—5616. 405–418.

A.D. 408.
Theodosius Junior, Emp. of the East.

Anno 5617. 419.—Theodosius the Secunde regned XXVII. ȝere, with Valentiniane his neve. In his tyme the devel appered in Crete, in the liknes of Moises, promising to the Jewis that he schuld lede hem ovir the se to Jerusalem with drye feet. And many of hem that followed him he killid; thei that scaped were turned to Crist, and baptized. In this same tyme was the fest of the bondis of Seynt Petir[1] begunne. And Totila, in these dayes Kyng of Hungri, cam with mech puple to distroye the empire of Rome; but at the prayer of Seint Leon, the Pope, he left his purpos. The VII. sleperis, that had slept to hundred ȝere, in this emperoures time risen in testimoni of the general resurreccion, whech many heretikes that tyme denyed.

Sixtus III., Pope.

In these dayes was Sixtus Pope. He was the III. of that name. He bylid[2] the Cherch of Seynt Mari Major. Othir men write that on Johannes Patricius schul a mad this Cherch in tyme of Liberi the Pope. Perhap[3] this Pope mored it, or arayed it, as he ded many othir. He is biried be the bodi of Seynt Laurens, Via Tiburtina.

Leo the Great, Pope.
Council of Chalcedon.

Aftir him was Leon Pope XXI. ȝere. He held the grete Councelle at Calcidony ageyn Euticem the heretik. It happed on a Pase day he hoseled a certeyn woman, and sche kissid his hand, aftir whech kissing he had swech temptacion, that for vexacion he ded smyte of that hand. Thanne was there mech grucching in the

---

[1] August 1.

[2] *bylid*] bylyd. C.C.C.

[3] *Perhap*] Up hap. C.C.C.

A.D. 408. puple whi he sang no Messe. Tho was he fayn to pray oure Lady Mary of help; and sche appered onto him, and restored his hand. He wrote eke a Epistel[1] ageyn the heretikes Fabian and Euticen, and leid the lettir upon Seint Petir auter, praying to Seynt Petir, that if ony thing were wrong writen, Seint Petir schuld amend it. And aftir III. dayes he found it rased, and amended aftir the plesauns of God. He is byried in Seynt Petir Cherch.

Anno 5618—5643. 420–445.

A.D. 450. Marcian, Emp. of the East. Theodoric, King of the Ostrogoths, conquers Spain.

Anno 5644. 446.—Marcianus and Valentinus regned VII. ȝere. In his tyme on Theodoricus Kyng of Gothis went into Spayn with a great hoost, and conquered al that lond. Aftir that he killid this Marcian at Constantinople. In this tyme was Seynt Genofepha at Paris, a holy woman, whech had this special grace, that whom sche anoynted with Holy Oyle he was hol.

Anno 5645—5650. 447–452.

A.D. 457. Leo I., Emp. of the East.

Anno 5651. 453.—Leo the First regned XVII. ȝere, in whech tyme mech of Egipte, and al Alisaunder, was infecte with the heresi of on Dioscorus, that held this opinion, that there is but o nature in Crist. The Feith is, that in oure Lord Jesu Crist is o persone, and too natures. With this same heresi was this emperoure infect; and with othir, insomech that alle the ymages whech mite be founde at Rome of ony Seyntis, he caried them to Constantinople, and there he brent hem. In his dayes the body of Heliȝe was translate to Alisaundre, and the body of Mark onto Venys. And in these dayes lyved Seint Mamert, that ordeyned the III. dayes of Rogacion before Ascencion.

---

[1] See "Leonis Magni, Romani Pontificis, Opera." col. 529. B.—Paris, 1614.

In these daies lyved on Prosper, notarie onto Leon, the Pope; a holy man, that mad a grete book of the Lif Contemplatif.[1] A.D. 457. Prosper.

In these dayes was Hillari Pope. He ordeyned there schuld no biscop asigne his successoure. He is biried be Seint Laurens. Hilary, Pope.

Aftir him was Simplicius Pope. This man edified a cherch of oure Lady and Seint Viviane, and there lith he, with IIII. thousand martires, CCLXX., beside women and childirn. Simplicius, Pope.

In these dayes was Arthure Kyng of Bretayn, that with his manhod conqwered Flaunderes, Frauns, Norwey, and Denmark; and, aftir he was gretely wounded, he went into a ylde cleped Avallone, and there deyed. The olde Britones suppose that he is o lyve. Arthur, King of Britain: his conquests and death.

Anno 5652—5667. 454–469.

Anno 5668. 470.—Zenon regned XVII. ȝere. This man mad many lawes, and among al bysinesse he laboured for to kille Leon, the forseid emperoure son. But the moder hid the child, and presented on onto the emperoure that was lich the child. And he ded him make a clerk, whech lyved so onto the tyme of Justin the emperoure. In that tyme was founde[2] the body of Seynt Barnabe[3] the Apostel; and with him the Gospel of Seint Mathew, writin with his owne hond. In this tyme the Kyng of Affric was mad a Arriane; and he of malice exiled CCC. bischoppis, sperd here cherchis, and sent hem into a ylde is cleped Sardinia. A.D. 474. Zeno, Emperor of the East.

In this tyme was Felix Pope. He ordeyned that, whan a man was accused, he schuld have avysement of answere, and that his juges schuld not be suspecte. Felix II., Pope.

---

[1] *Lif Contemplatif.*] See the Benedictine Edition of the works of Prosper. Paris, 1711.

[2] *was founde.*] Added above the line.

[3] *Barnabe.*] Written on an erasure.

A.D. 491. Anno 5669—5684. 471–486.

Anastasius, Emp. of the East. Anno 5685. 487.—Anastasius regned XXVI. ȝere. In his tyme Transmunde, Kyng of Wandalis sperd alle the cherchis in Afrik that were not consenting to Arrius. In that same tyme a bischop at Cartage, whos name was Olimpius, in a bath, as he blasphemed the Blessed Trinite, for he was a Arian, sodeynly with III. firi dartis a aungel smet him to the deth. A othir bischop, of the same secte, his name was Barabas, he baptized a man in this forme, "Barabas baptizeth the be the Son, in the name of the Fadir, and the Holy Gost." Sodeynly the watyr vanisched awey, and he that schuld a be baptized went and was baptized as the forme of the Sacrament requirith.

Gelasius, Pope. In these dayes was Gelasius Pope VIII. ȝere. He mad many orisones, and tractes, and ympnes, and mad that comoune Preface,—'Dignum et justum est, equum, et salutare.'

Anastasius II., Pope. Aftir him was the secund Anastasius Pope II. ȝere. He ordeyned that every clerk schuld treuly sey his servyse, and not leve it for no cause.

Symmachus, Pope. Aftir him was Simachus XV. ȝere. He ordeyned the[1] 'Gloria in excelsis' schuld be songe at Messe, for he mad this ympne, save the beginning, whech was made be aungelle.

Schism between Symmachus and Laurentius. In his[2] tyme was a scisme betwix him and on Laurens, which had eleccion of many. Simachus kept the paleys Lateranensis, and Laurens kept Seynt Mari Major. But in a grete Councelle at Ravenne, Symmachus confirmed as Pope. present the Kyng of Itaile, Theodorik, Simachus was confermed, and Laurens rejecte. But aftirward the Pope gave him a bischoprich whech is clepid Micherius.

Boëthius exiled. In this tyme was Boys exiled fro Rome to Pavye, and there mad he is bokes, as is supposed; for this is sikir, there is he byried. In this tyme was Seynt Remigius. A.D. 491.

---

[1] *the.*] C.C.C.—The word is written 'tha' in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *his*] this. C.C.C.

Anno 5686—5699. 488–501.

Anno Mundi vM.viiC. [Christi 502.]

Anno 5701—5710. 503–512.

Anno 5711. 513.—Justine was emperoure IX. ȝere. He was ful bisi to destroye the heresi of the Arrianes. For there he was at Constantinople; he sperd here cherchis, and suffered hem not to teche. Therfor was the King of Itaile wroth, and wold a killid the bischoppis of Itaile, but that he dred indignacion of the emperoure. Therfor he sent the Pope and othir worthy men onto Justine, that the Arrianes schuld be restored to her cherchis, or ellis he wold kille the bischoppis of Itaile. And whil thei were oute he killid Boys, and many othir. And whan the Pope cam hom to Itaile, and brout the Kyng graunt of his wille, ȝet he put the Pope in prison, where he deyed, and withinne a little tyme aftir that the Kyng deied sodeynly, whos soule a holy man sey whan it was put in a boiling pot in helle. A.D. 518. Justin, Emp. of the East.

In this tyme was Hormisda Pope. He mad a grete bem[1] of silvyr before Seynt Petir, whech weyed a thousand pound and XL. Hormisdas, Pope.

Aftir him was Jon Pope, in whos tyme Frauns was converted. He deied at Ravenne, in prison, and biried is at Rome in Seint Petir Cherch. John I., Pope. France becomes Christian.

Anno 5712—5719. 514–521.

Anno 5720. 522.—Justiniane the First, he[2] regned XXXVIII. ȝere. This man was in a grete erroure whech began in Antioche; but he was converted, and reformed to the Feith by Agapitus the Pope. This emperoure mad many lawes, both the Digest and the A.D. 527. Justinian I. Emp. of the East.

---

[1] *bem*] beme. C.C.C.

[2] *he.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 527. Code, whech are the Grounde of Cyvyle.[1] He had a lord undir him, that kepte his batailes: his name was Besibarius.[2] He ovircam hem of Perse; and mech of Affrik he put undir tribute. Than cam he to Rome, and fond it besegid. He distroyed the sege, and gat him mech worchip, for he took the Kyng of Gothis, and led him to Constantinople, to the emperoure.

Arator. In this tyme leved a Cristen poet, Arator was his name. He mad a solempne werk in vers upon the book whech thei clepe "Actus Apostolorum."[3]

Priscian. And Precian, the gramarion, was in this tyme.[4]

Cassiodorus. And Cassiodorus, a senatoure of Ravenne, was at this tyme, first a senatoure, and thanne a monk; whech mad a nobel werk upon the Sauter, folowyng mech the steppes of Seynt Augustin.[5] In this tyme Jewis and Sarasinos, gadered togidir at Cesare, in Palestine, killid the most part of Cristen men in that cyte. And whan this cam to the emperoure knowlech, he vengid here blood with myty powere. This Justiniane mad a mervelous and costful temple in Constantinople, whech was cleped Seint Sophie, and there is he byried.

The Church of S. Sophia built.

Felix III., Pope. In his tyme was Felix the IIII. Pope IIII. ȝere. He ordeyned that men schuld be anoynted with holy oyle or thei deye.

Boniface II., Pope. Aftir him was Boniface the Secunde II. ȝere. He ordeyned that clerkis schuld stand be hem self, and the puple be hem self in the tyme of Dyvyne servyse.

---

[1] *the Grounde of Cyvyle.*] "Corpus Juris Civilis."—Beck, Lips. 1836.

[2] *Besibarius*] Besiliarius. C.C.C.

[3] See "Poetæ Christiani Veteres." Ald. Ed. 1501.

[4] For the works of Priscian still extant, see the edition published by Krehl., Lips. 1820.

[5] See "Magni Aurel. Cassiodori Opera;" D. Garet, Rouen, 1679; reprinted in 1729 at Venice.

A.D. 527. John II., Pope.

And than was Jon the Secunde Pope II. ȝere. In his tyme lyved Maurus, that was disciple to Seyn Benet.

Agapetus I., Pope.

And aftir him was the first Agapitus I. ȝere. He ordeyned that men schuld go on procession on Sundayes.

Sylverius, Pope.

Thanne was Silvery Pope III. ȝere. And for he cursed a byschop, thei clepid Anthemius, for heresie, therefor the emperoure, at instans of his wif, exiled and killid him[1] in a ylde thei clepe Ponciane.

Vigilius, Pope.

And than was Vigilius Pope XVII. yere. He ordeyned that auteres schuld stand into the Est. In that tyme was in Cicile a clerk thei clepid Theophilus, whech denyed Crist, and took him to the devel body and soule; but aftir he was take to mercy be mediacion of oure Lady.

Pelagius, Pope.

And in these dayes was Pelagius Pope IIII. ȝere. He ordeyned that heretikes and scismatikes schuld have no privilege of the Cherch, but thei schuld be punchid be secular power. In this tyme was Seynt Brandane levyng in Scotland. And in this tyme the bones of Seynt Stevene were browt to Rome, and leide be Laurens.

Anno 5721—5757. 523–559.

A.D. 565. Justin II., Emp. of the East.

Anno 5758. 560.—Justiniane the Secunde regned XI. ȝere. In that tyme a lord, cleped Narses, for fer of Sophie the emperesse, fled to the Longbardis, whech dwelled not thanne in Itaile, brout hem with fors into Itaile. Before that tyme the puple of Longobardis dwelled in Panonie; and this same Narses had dwelled with the Kyng, whech hite Aburre, and aftir that with his successoure Rotharie; and there mad thei covenaunt who the kingdam of Itaile myte come to her dominacion, and broute fro Justinian, that

---

[1] *him.*] Added above the line.

A.D. 565. dwelt at Constantinople. And thus, be mediacion of Narses, the Longobardis were brout into Itaile, and dwelle there onto this tyme. And so aftir Narses was go fro Justiniane, he had nevir rest, but evir vexid with bataile.

John III., Pope. In this tyme was Jon the Third Pope, that in his dayes was a grete repayrer of cimiteries, there martires were biried. He mad in Rome a Cherch of Philip and Jacob; but he is biried at Seint Petir Cherch. He was Pope XII. ȝere.

Anno 5759—5768. 561–570.

A.D. 578. TiberiusII., Emp. of the East. Anno 5769. 571.—Tiberius the Secund regned VII. ȝere, a Cristen emperoure; to pore men a veri fader; for the tresoure of his paleis he departed among the pore. And whanne[1] the emperesse undirtook him[2] for his wasting of the comoune good, he wold sey onto hir,—"Dame, I beleve verili if we be bisi for to gete us tresoure in Hevene, God schal send us sufficiens in erde." Happid aftir that he went by on of his places, and sei in the ground a tabel of marbil, on whech was a crosse. He comaunded the table schuld be remeved; for it was not goodly, as he seyde, that men schuld trede on the crosse. Whan that was ceysid, thei fond a othir lich it, and than the thirde, and undir that there fond thei a grete tresoure.

Benedict I., Pope. In his tyme was Bendictus the First Pope IIII. ȝere. In his tyme the Longobardis conquerid al Itaile; befor thei had but Melan, and the cuntre about: and aftir that conquest folowid a grete hungir.

Pelagius II., Pope. Than was Pelagius the Secund Pope X. ȝere. In his tyme felle swech reynes that the watir of Tibir ros as hey as Rome wallis, drenchid the houses: dragones and serpentis cam down in the watir, and othir bestes dede, of whech was swech a stynk that it caused gret pestilens in Rome.

---

[1] *whanne.*] Added in the margin. | [2] *him.*] Added in the margin.

A.D. 578.

Anno 5770—5775. 572–577.

Anno 5776. 578.—Mauricius regned XX. ȝere. He kepte the trewe Cristen wey, and he was ful strong and wis in batayle. He ovyrcam many puples in batail, the Perses, the Armenes, be a noble man that was his werrioure.

A.D. 582. Mauricius, Emp. of the East.

In his dayes was Gregorie mad Pope, and he confermed that eleccioune with his imperial letteris.

Gregory the Great, Pope.

In the thirtene ȝere of Maurice, Gregori sent Austin and his felaues to the conversion of the Saxones, whech were newe come into the lond be strength, and had dryvyn[1] oute be strength the very eyers into Walis. In these dayes Gregorie, bischop of Antioche, and Thebea, bischop of Jerusalem, fond the unsowid cote of oure Lord Crist in Sephath, a litil fro Jerusalem. Than fel a stauns betwix the emperoure and the Pope Gregori, in so mech that the emperoure seid mech evel of the Pope, and seide he schuld be ded. And thanne was seyn oft tyme at Rome a man goyng in a monkis habite, with a nakid swerd in his hand, and criying loude that Maurice schal be ded this ȝere. And whan the emperoure herd this noyse, he repent him of his trespas, and ded penauns and prayed oure Lord that this sentens schuld be chaunged: but within a few ȝeres on Focas, a knyte of his, killid him.

S. Augustine sent into England, A.D. 596.

Anno 5777—5595. 579–597.

Anno 5796. 598.—Focas regned VIII. ȝere. This man with sedicious knytis was sublimat in the empire; and he, for more sikirnesse, killid the emperoure, and many of his lordis. This man graunted Bonefas, the Pope, leve to consecrate the temple

A.D. 602. Phocas, Emp. of the East.

Consecration of the Pantheon at Rome.

---

[1] *dryvyn*] drevyn. C.C.C.

A.D. 602.

cleped Pantheon to the worchep of oure Lady and Alle Seyntis.

Sabinianus, Pope.

In his tyme were III. Popes: Savinian, he ordeyned ringyng of bells to the servise of God.

Boniface III., Pope.

And than Bonefas the III. He ordeyned white past for the Sacrament.

Boniface IV., Pope.

And then Bonefas the IIII. He consecrate Pantheon, and ordeyned the Fest of Alle Halow.[1]

Anno 5497—5799. 599–601.

Anno Mundi vM.viiiC. [Christi 602.]

Anno 5801—5803. 603-605.

A.D. 610. Heraclius, Emp. of the East.

Anno 5804. 606.—Eraclius, with his son Constantin, regned XXXI. ȝere. The third ȝere of his regne Cosdre, the Kyng of Pers, cam to Jerusalem, and took the Patriarck Zacari, and the Holy Crosse, and ledde hem both into Perse. And in the XII. ȝere of this Eraclius, the same Eraclius went into Pers, and killid the Kyng Cosdre, and brout the Holy Crosse ageyn to Jerusalem.

Mahomet.

In this tyme began that cursed Machomet, the prophete of the Sarasines. He was a wich, and he had eke the falling evele; and whan he fel so, he feyned that Gabriel the aungelle appered than onto him, and for the clernesse that he sey, he myte not stand, but fel down as ded. He began first with theft, and was a prince of theves. Aftirward he wedded a lady, and was a gret lord. His book, whech thei clepe Alcoran, was mad be the councelle of a munk[2] that was dampned at Rome for heresie, and exiled fro the cite. His name was Sergius.

Feast of the Exaltat. of the Cross.

In the tyme of this emperoure was ordeyned that fest, whech is cleped Exaltacion of the Cros,[3] whan the emperoure broute hom the cros, schuld be halowid of[1] the puple. A.D. 610.

---

[1] November 1.

[2] *of a munk*] C.C.C. The word "of" is omitted in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[3] September 14.

In his tyme were sevene Popes. The first hite Deus Dedit, III. ȝere. He kissid a mysel, and sodeynly the mysel was hol. Deodatus, Pope.

The secund was Bonefas the Fifte. He ordeyned that robberis of cherchis schuld be cursed openly. Boniface V., Pope.

The thirde was Honorius Primus, XIII. ȝere. He ordeyned that every Satirday prestis schuld go with the Letanie to Seint Petir Cherch. This man mad the Cherch of Seynt Agnes, and there he lith. Honorius I., Pope.

The fourt, Severinus, o ȝere. He was a grete gyver of elmesse. He is biried in Seint Petir Cherch. Severinus, Pope.

The fifte was[2] Jon the Fourt, II. ȝere. He took grete tresoure oute of the Cherch for redempcion of Cristen men, whech Saracines had take. John IV., Pope.

The sexte was Theodorus the First. He was Pope sex ȝere. He mad a book whech is cleped "Penitencial," where confessoures may lerne what penauns thei schal gyve. Theodore I., Pope.

The VII. Pope hite Martin the First. He began in the last ȝere of Eraclius, and kept that office VI. ȝere. A swier of the emperoure had in comaundment to kille this Pope as he stod at Messe in the Cherch of Seint Mari Major; but oure Lord mad him blynd, that he myte not se the Pope. This Pope was exiled, for he condempned Paule the Patriarke of Constantinople for heresie. Martin I., Pope.

Anno 5805—5834. 607–636.

Anno 5835. 637.—Constantin the Third, with Yradone, his brothir, regned than XXVII. ȝere. This Constantin was son onto Eraclius, and he was killid A.D. 641. Constantine III., Emp. of the East.

---

[1] *schuld be halowid of.*] Written upon an erasure.

[2] *was.*] C.C.C. This word is written 'wan' by mistake in the MS. Pub. Lib.

A.D. 641. Heresy of Heraclius. The Monothelites.

in Scicile for his wikkid lif. Mech of his lordchip was consumed be the Sarasines, for he was not the servaunt of God. First killid he Martine the Pope; and thanne cam he to Rome, and spoiled the cite, and al the precious thingis whech he fond there he bare hem into Scicile. Many good Cristen prestis and othir he flagellid and aftir exiled, for thei wold not consent to his heresie, whech thei clepid Monalechites; for thei held that there was but o nature in Crist. And because he was odious to hem that dwelled at Constantinople, therefor he took his jornay on to Itaile, purposing to dryve the Longobardis oute of the cuntre. But whan he cam to the cuntre cleped Benevent, the duke of that cuntre, Grimvaldus, put him of with myty powere, and hurt mech of his hoost. Than went he to Rome, and robbed it ageyn, and fro thens into Scicile, where his owne men killid him in a bath.

Eugenius I., Pope.

In these dayes was Eugenius Primus Pope III. ȝere; a holy man, beloved of alle men.

Vitalianus, Pope.

And aftir him was Vitalianus XIIII. ȝere. He ordeined song and orgones in the Cherch.

Theodore of Canterbury.

He mad on Theodore, that was a Grek, bischop of Canterburi.

Adeodatus, Pope.

Aftir him was Deodatus IIII. ȝere. He was of swech gentilnesse, that no man asked him ony peticion and went awey desolat. In his tyme was the body of Seynt Benet translate fro the Mount of Cassine on to the monasteri clepid Floriacense.

Domnus I. Pope.

Than was Donus Pope IIII. ȝere. He mad the fayre place betwix the strete and the dores of Seyn Petir Cherch; thei clepe that place now "Paradisus Sancti Petri."

Anno 5836—5861. 638-663.

A.D. 668. Constantine IV., Emp. of the East.

Anno 5862. 664.—Constantinus IIII. regned XVII. ȝere. In his tyme the sexte Councelle is hold at Constantinople of bischoppis to hundred IIII. score and VIII. ageyn Gregori the Patriark, whech meynteyned the same heresi of Crist in whech his fader and his ayle was infecte. An[1] in that Councelle was determined that in the persone of oure Lord Crist be not only to kyndis but to willis. This emperoure, of good providens, took trews with the Arabes that dwelled in Damasc, and with the Bulgaris. He repayred many cherches, whech were destroied be heretikes.

A.D. 668. Sixth Gen. Council held at Constantinople.

Truce with the Arabians and Bulgarians.

In the secunde ȝere of his regne was Agaton Pope II. ȝere. He kissid eke a misel, and mad him hool.

Agatho, Pope.

Aftir him was Leo II. Pope X. ȝere. He ordeyned that the prest schuld kis the pax, and thanne send it to the puple. He was eloquent both in the Latyn tonge and in the Grek.

Leo II., Pope.

Thanne was Benedictus Secundus Pope I. ȝere, whech repaired many cherches.

Benedictus II., Pope.

And than Johannes Quintus but o ȝere.

John V., Pope.

And than Zeno not fully o ȝere.

Conon, Pope.

Aftir him was Sergius ny X. ȝere. He ordeyned that "Agnus Dei" schuld be songen thries whil the preste reseyved the Sacrament. This man, be a special revelacion, fond in the sacrarie of Seynt Petir Cherch, in a desolat place, a forser of silvir, so old that it loked lich no silvir: and whan he had ondo it, he fond there a grete porcion of oure Lordis Crosse, arayed with gemmis.

Sergius, Pope.

Anno 5863—5878. 665–680.

Anno 5879. 681.—Justinianus Secundus regned X. ȝere. He took trews with the Sarasines for X. ȝere, both be lond and be se. This man, with his wisdam and largenesse encresed the empire, and broute it to

A.D. 685. Justinian II., Emp. of the East.

---

[1] *An*] and. C.C.C.

A.D. 685.

Leo, false Pope.

mech worchip. He mad eke many lawes, and ded grete reverens to the Cherch. And in X.[1] ȝere of his empire on Leo Patricius ovyrcam him in batail, put oute his eyne, and cut of his nose, and exiled him onto a place thei clepe Tersone. And in this Justiniane tyme was a Rome[2] a Pope thei cleped Leon, whech is not put in the Cathologe of Popes, for he entired nowt be eleccion, but by fors of seculere hand.

Anno 5880—5888. 682-690.

A.D. 695. Leontius. Emp. of the East.

Anno 5889. 691.—Leo the Secund regned III. ȝere. For on Tiberius put him fro the empire, cut of his nose, and exiled him to the same place there Justinian was.

John VI., Pope.

And in the first ȝere was Jon the Sexte Pope of Rome, whech was a martire, and biried in catacumbis.

Anno 5890, 5891. 692, 693.

A.D. 698. Tiberius III., Emp. of the East.

Justinian recovers the Empire.

Anno 5592. 694.—Tiberius regned VII. ȝere. In his tyme Justiniane was in exile in Tersone, as we seid. He noysed himself openly that[3] he schuld be emperoure ageyn. Upon these wordis the puple there ros ageyn him, and, for love of Tiberi, purposed for to kille him. And whanne he had aspied this, he fled to the prince of Turkis, and weddid his sistir; and with that princes socoure he conquered both Leon and Tibery, and killid hem, and recured ageyn the empire. Aftir that he vengid him so uttirly on his enemies, that whan any drope of flewme felle fro his nose, anon he comaunded of his enimes on schuld be slayn.

John VII., Pope.

In these dayes was Pope Johannes VII. II. ȝere, a cunnyng man and a eloquent. He mad a oratori in Seint Petir Church of Moises[4] werk, depeynted in worchip of oure Lady, where he lith byried.

---

[1] *And in X.*] And in the X. C.C.C.

[2] *a Rome*] at Rome. C.C.C.

[3] *that*] C.C.C. 'tha' in MS. Pub. Lib.

[4] *Moises.*] Thus in both MSS.

A.D. 698. Sisinnius, Pope.

Aftir him was on Sisinius, but XX. daies.

Constantine, Pope.

And than was[1] Constantine VII. ȝere.

Anno 5893—5898. 695–700.

Justinian II.

Anno 5899. 701.—Justinian the Secund regned now ageyn VI. ȝere. He was first preved of his empire; and now, aftir the resumpcion, he regned ageyn VI. ȝere. For aftir the tyme he was so restored he served Crist devoutly, and sent aftir Constantin the Pope to Constantinople, and there was he hoseled[2] of his hand. In that tyme Constantine was Pope VII. ȝere. He cursed Philip the emperoure for the cause that he distroyed ymages.

And undir this Pope too Kyngis of Ynglond went to Rome, and were mad there monkis; and this was aftir the Brutes blood was oute of the lond, for than was the lond divided in to VII. kyngdammes.

The Heptarchy in England. A.D. 455.

And ye schal undirstand[3] that this division began in the first coming of Saxones, whech was in the ȝere of oure Lord 455. And here we will expresse the VII. regiones, who[5] thei were departed in this lond.

Kent.

The first kyngdam was in Kent, where the first Kyng was Hengist; the secund, Esk; the third, Occa; the IIII. Emericus; the V. Ethelbert: he was baptized be Seint Austin, bischop of Cantirbiry.

Sussex.

The secunde kygndam was in Southsex, whech

---

[1] *And than was.*] C.C.C.—And was. MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *hoseled*] oseled. C.C.C. The 'h,' however, in the MS. Pub. Lib. appears to have been a later insertion.

[3] *And ye schal undirstand*, &c.] In the margin, opposite the beginning of this paragraph, occurs Capgrave's private mark: see page 4. In this instance it wants the lower portion.

[4] A.D. 455.] The leading dates have no connection with English History until the accession of Henry the Third. The marginal references for the dates of the English Kings or events before the year 1216 have, accordingly, been placed under the name by way of distinguishing them from those which form the regular chronology of the MS.

[5] *who.*] Altered above the line into "Whov" by a late hand.

A.D. 698. hath Kent on the est side; on the south side the se; on the west Hamptschire, on the north Suthrey. The first Kyng was Elle; and than his III. sones. The V. was Ethelwold; and he was converted be Byryn, bischop of Dorsete.

Essex. The third kyngdam was Estsex: on the est side is the se; on the west side the cuntre of London; on the south side Temse; on the north side Suffolk. The first Kyng was Erkynwyn; the secunde, Neda; the III., Sibertus; the IIII. Sebertus;[1] the V. Sigbertus. He was convertid be Melite bischop of London.

East Anglia. The IIII. kyngdam was Est Ynglond, that is to sey, Norfolk and Suffolk. On the est side and north side is the se: on the west side Cambrigschire, and Seint Edmund Fosse. The first Kyng was Offa; the secund, Titilmus; the III., Rodwaldus; the IIII., Erwaldus; the V., Sigebertus: he was converted be Felice, biscop of Donwich.

Wessex. The V. regne was Westsex, havyng on the est side Southsex; Temse on the north side; in the west side and the south the se ocean. The first Kyng was Kredicus; the secund, Kynricus; the III., Cheulingus; the IIII., Chelricus; the V., Helwolphus; the VI., Kyngilis: he was convertid and baptized be Seint Birine.

Mercia. The sext kyngdam was cleped Merceorum, the grettest cuntre of alle. On the west side was the watir thei clepe Dee, that rennyth be Leicester, and the flood cleped Sabrine, that rennith be Schrouysbyry onto Bristow; on the south side the Temse; on the north side the watir of Humbir. The first Kyng was Aella; the II., Cuda; the III.,

---

[1] *the IIII. Sebertus.*] C.C.C. Omitted in the MS. Pub. Lib.

Tinla; the IIII., Ceorlus; the V. Penda; he was baptized be the handis of Fynian, biscop. A.D. 698.

The VII. kyngdam was Northumbirland: on the est side and the west side it hath the se; on the south side, the flood of Humbir, whech goth up be the herldam of Notingham and Derbi; on the north side the Scotisch se. The first Kyng was Ida; the secunde, Aella; third Athelford; the IV., Edwyne; he was baptized be Pauline, bischop of Ȝork. Northumbria.

Anno Mundi vM.ixC. [Christi 702.]

Anno 5901—5904. 703-706.

Anno 5905. 707.—Philip the Secunde regned but o ȝere and sex monthis. This man distroyed in cherchis alle ymages and pictures; and for this cause tho ymages of oure Lady that Luce depeynted, the Romaynes hid hem til he was ded; and for that cause Constantyn the Pope cursed him; and so he deied. A.D. 711. Philip II., Emp. of the East.

Anno 5906. 708.—Anastasius Secundus regned III. ȝere. He took the forseid Philip, and put oute his eyne. But this same Anastasius was so wikkid, that the puple ros, and mad a new emperoure, was cleped Theodosius Tercius; and thei mad Anastasius a prest. A.D. 713. Anastasius II., Emp. of the East. Theodosius III., succeeds to the throne.

In this tyme was Gregorius Secundus Pope. Gregory II., Pope.

And in these dayes began Karolus Magnus his gret conquestis. Charlemagne.

Anno 5907, 5908. 709, 710.

Anno 5909. 711. Theodosius Tercius regned but o ȝere; a blessid man and a benigne; but on Leon put him oute with fors; and he paciently was mad a clerk, and continued so in holy lyf. A.D. 716.

Anno 5910. 712.—Leo Tercius, with Constantyn his son, regned XXV. ȝere. In his tyme Sarasines come to Constantinople, and beseged it too ȝere, and spoiled it, and bare awey mech richesse. In the same tyme Luidbrando, Kyng of Lumbardis, hering that Sarasines had distroyed Sardini, where Seynt A.D. 718. Leo III., Emp. of the East.

A.D. 718. Augstin[1] body was leid, whan it was broute fro Ypone, he sent thidir solempne legates, and boute[2] that body of the Sarasines, and thei broute it to Gene, where the Kyng met it with gret reverens, and led it on to Papie, and set it there in a Cherch of Seint Petir, whech he cleped "Celum Aureum."

Zachary, Pope. In this tyme was Pope Zacharie, X. ȝere. He mad pes with the Longobardis. And the bokes of Dialoges he transalet[3] fro Grew into Latyn. To this Pope cam the monkis of Cassinensis with on Grete Charlys, desiring that the body of Seynt Benet schuld come ageyn to her Monasteri, whech the monkis Floriacensis had, as thei seide untrewly, bore fro hem. The Pope graunted her entent; but whan thei cam to the bodi, thei were smet with blyndnes and fer, that thei failed of here desire.

Anno 5911—5934. 713–736.

A.D. 741. Constantine V., Emp. of the East. Anno 5935. 737.—Constantinus Quintus, the son of the seid Leon, regned eke XXV. ȝere. He was a folower of his fader steppes alle the dayes of his lyf. He studied alle in wichcraft, in nigromancie. He was occupied in leccherie and glotonie, that many men, both in the clergy and in the lay fe be him were hurt in her feith. He had consenting onto him a grete fautoure to his erroure, on Anastase, fals Patriark of Constantinople.

Council (against images) at Constantinople. This Constantin did clepe a gret Councel at Constantinople, in whech he comaunded that alle the ymages in the Cherch schuld be pullid down, both of Crist, and of oure Lady, and othir Payntes. And in this mater he mad as gret persecucion as evir ded Dioclecian.

---

[1] *Augstin*] Augustin. C.C.C.

[2] *boute.*] This word has been altered into 'boughte' by a late hand.

[3] *transalet*] translate. C.C.C.—The word was originally 'transale' in the MS. Pub. Lib., the final 't' having been added above the line at a later period.

In this tyme was Stephanus II. Pope, whech, for the grete hate and persecucion of Arstulf Kyng of Lumbardi, fled into Frauns and there he anoynted Pipine Kyng of Frauns.[1] Thre myle, thei sey, the Kyng went on fote, and led the Pope bridil the same space, til he had broute him to his paleys. This, Pope, in the last ȝere of his office, translate the empire fro the Grekis onto the Frensch tong onto the Grete Charlis. A.D. 741. Stephen II., Pope.

In these dayes was Paule Pope. He ordeyned that in Lenten alle the Dyvyne Service, save "Completori," schuld be seyd befor non. He translate the body of Seynt Pernel, and set on hir grave the titil that Seint Petir mad,—"Of golden Pernel, oure best beloved doutir, this is the memorial." This Pope, with his trosti servauntis nowt many, used[2] for to go o nites[3] to prisoneris, and bed-red folk, and visite hem with elmesse. He deied at Seint Paule, and beried at Seint Petir Cherch. Paul I., Pope.

Anno 5936—5959. 738-761.

Anno 5960. 762.—Leo the IIII. regned V. ȝere. He was a passing covetous man; whatsover he sey, he desired it. So happed him come to a cherch, where he sey a precious crowne ful of charbunculis. He took it fro the cherch, and were it on his hed; and sone aftir he caute a fevyr and deied thereof. A.D. 775. Leo IV., Emp. of the East.

In this tyme Constantinus II. was Pope, that entered the office with grete slaundre; therefor God suffered othir men to put oute his eyne, and eke owt of the Cherch. Constantine II., Pope.

---

[1] *and there . . . Kyng of Frauns.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *used.*] Added above the line.

[3] *nites.*] Altered into 'nightes' by a later hand.

A.D. 775. Stephen III., Pope. Council at Nice.

Aftir him was Stephanus Pope. He called a Councel of al Itail and Fraunce, in whech he dampned al that the othir Pope had doo, save baptem and crisme; and he deposed alle thoo persones that took ony orderes of him.

Adrian I., Pope. Conquests of Charlemagne in Lombardy.

Than was Adrianus Primus Pope XXIII. ȝere, be whos menes and prayeres the Grete Charlis besegid the Lombardis in Papie, where he took Desideri, the Kyng, and the qwen, and sent hem prisoneris into Frauns, and went forth to Rome, and fulfillid al thing that Pipine his fader[1] had ȝove to Seynt Petir. He mored it eke with his owne devocioune, ȝiving to the Cherch the ducheries of Spolet and Beneventane. He restored the Cherch of Seint Anastace at "The Skipping[2] Watiris,"—so be thei cleped, for the hed of Seint Paule skippit[2] thries aftir it was of; and there be III. wellis. In the same place eke is the chapel that is cleped 'Scala Celi.' He repaired eke the wallis of Rome,[3] and mad the dores of bras at Seynt Peteres.

Alcuin flor.

In this tyme lyved he that is clepid Albinus, of Englisch nacioune, whech was maister onto Charles in al these seculer sciens; and he broute the forme of study fro Rome onto Parys.

Anno 5961—5964. 763–766.

A.D. 802. Nicephorus, Emp. of the East.

Anno 5965. 767.—Nicheforus regned in Constantinople IX. ȝere. In his tyme that empire wasted and went[4] to nowt. In that tyme was stille Adrian[5] Pope at Rome. He repaired many cherches both withinne the walles, and eke withoute.

---

[1] *his fader.*] Added above the line.

[2] *Skipping . . . . skippit.*] These words were originally written 'Scipping' and 'Scippit,' the 'c' having been in both cases altered into a 'k.'

[3] *Rome.*] Added in the margin.

[4] *went.*] Added in the margin.

[5] *stille Adrian*] Adrian stille. C.C.C. The word "Adrian" is added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib.

Anno 5966—5973. 7687–75.

A.D. 811. Michæl, Emperor.

Anno 5974. 776.—Michael regned to ȝere, a god man, redy for to releve pore men;[1] for alle tho that were depauperat and spoiled be his predecessoure, he releved with his owne good, and alle enmyes of the Feith he was evyr redy to distroye.

Anno 5975. 777.

[A.D. 800.] Charles I., Emp. of the West.

Anno 5976. 778.—Karolis the First regned XIIII. ȝere. This man was Kyng of Frauns or he was emperoure; and, be the instauns of Adriane Pope, he was cleped into Ytail, and besegid the Kyng of Lumbardi, took him, and sent him into Frauns, as is seid before. Charles had in his tyme a myty[2] felawchip, of whech Rowland and Olivere were captaynes, for thei kyllid many Sarasines in Spayn; but at the last thei were deceyved be fals treson of an erle, thei clepid him Gaverion.[3] This Charlis, as it is writin, mad a brigg ovyr the Rene,—summe men sey to,—and that was at Coleyn: now is non. He had a berd, as thei sey, a fote long. In mete and in drink he was ful temperat. His sones anon as thei were of age were lerned to ride, and to exercise hemself in dedis of armes. His dowteres he sette ful bisily to the occupacion of wolle. Whan he cam to Rome he went on his feet, and visit al the cherchis, kissid every holy auter, and every relik. Thanne visite he Jerusalem, and there he had a glorious victorie on Cristis enmies. Than cam he hom be Constantinople, where the emperoure wold a gove him gold, silvir, and precious stones; but he refused al, and desired no thing but relikes of Crist and of Seyntes. Than fasted thei that were with him, and prayed God that this donacion schuld be acceptable

Victories of the Emperor at Jerusalem.

---

[1] *redy . . . pore men.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *myty.*] Altered by a later hand into 'myghty.'

[3] *Gaverion*] Ganerion. C.C.C.

A.D. 800. to His Majeste. There the emperoure gave him a part of Jesu crowne, that flowred there in here[1] site, and a nayle, with whech oure Lord was nayled to the tre; and a part of oure Lordis Crosse; the sudarie of oure Lord; the smok of oure Ladi; the arme of Seynt Simeon. Alle these relikes broute[2] he to Acon, and set hem there in a Cherch of oure Lady, whech he ded make.

Leo III., Pope. In this tyme deied Adrian the Pope; and Leon the IIII.[3] was Pope aftir him XX. ȝere. This Pope, as he went on Ascencion Even with the Letaine and procession, sodeynly com his enimes, and took him be the body, led him to a place where thei put oute his eyne, cut oute his tunge: but oure blessed Lord gaf him both site and speche. Tho went he to Charles, Kyng of Frauns, and compleyned of this wrong; and he receyved him with grete worchip, took veniauns on his enimes, and there the Pope porged himself of certeyn crimes that were purposed ageyn him.

A.D. 814. Anno 5977—5989. 779–791.

Louis I., le Débonnaire. Anno 5990. 792.—Lodwicus, with Lothari his son, regned XXV. ȝere. This was the son of Gret Charlis; and he had to bretherin; on that was regent of Teutonye, a othir that was regent of Spayn. He had also III. sones, Lothari, Pipine, and Lodewik. The first mad he governoure of al Itaile, the secund Kyng of Gyane, the thirde mad he Kyng to the Bavaris and the Germanes. In this tyme the legates of Michael, emperoure of Constantinople, broute onto[4] this Lode-

---

[1] *here*] their. C.C.C.

[2] *broute.*] Altered by a later hand into 'broughte.'

[3] *Leon the IIII.*] So in both MSS. for "Leo the Third." Capgrave appears to have included among the Popes of this name "Leon, which is not put in the Cathologe of Popes." Vide page 98.

[4] *-to.*] Added above the line in a later hand.

A.D. 814.

wik the bokes of Seyn Dyonise, whech he took with ful grete joye.

Rabanus Maurus.

In this tyme was Rabanus, a munk of Wiltens, a grete poete, and in Divinity ful wel lerned. He mad a boke to the same Lodewik "Of nature of al thing,"[1] not only with litteral teching, but with many mysti exposiciones: and for his reward Lodewik mad him bischop of Mense.

Stephen IV., Pope.

In this tyme was Stephanus Quartus Pope III. ȝere. He went into Frauns onto the emperoure Lodewik, and there was he receyved ful gloriously. And be the wey he boute many prisoneris, and payed her raunson.

Paschal I, Pope.

Aftir him was Pascale VII. ȝere; to whom Seint Cicile appered, and bad him take up the bodies of Tiburce, Valerian, and Urban, and biry hem in hir Cherch. This man repaired the Cherch of Seynt Praxede, and set in monkis of Grece, and biried there iiM. bodies of martires, whech he gadered in dyvers places. He ded eke mech cost in Seynt Sabyn Cherch, for that was his titel whan he was Cardinal.

Eugenius II., Pope.
Valentine, Pope.

Aftir him was Eugenius Secundus III. ȝere.
And than Valentinus XL. dayes.
Anno 5991—5999. 793–801.
Anno Mundi viM. [Christi 802.]
Anno 6001—6014. 803–816.

A.D. 840.
Lothiare I., Emp. of the West.

Anno 6015. 817.—Lotharius Primus regned X. ȝere. In his dayes Sarasines destroyed the Cherchis of Petir and Paule, and ny al the cuntre aboute Rome. Aftir that, as thei went hom to Affrik, fro whens thei cam, thei were dronchin in the depe see. Now began the eldest of these thre bretherin to take

---

[1] "*Of nature of al thing.*"] "Rabanus Mauus de Universo;"—see his works, "a Jacobo Pamelio Collecta." Cologne, 1626.

A.D. 840. upon him to regne al alone. Upon this the othir to bretherin rise ageyn him; and there was swech batail, and swech morder of men, was never swech in al Frauns.

Anno 6016—6024. 818–826.

Louis II. reigns with his father. Anno 6025. 827.—Aftir this the same Lothari, with his son Lodewik, regned V. ȝere; and so[1] in the XV. ȝere of his regne he departed his lond betwix his sones, and took a monkis habite, and deied so, and mad a holy ende. For his soule, whan he was ded, was gret strif betwix angellis and develes, whech of hem schuld have it, in so mech that the monkis sey the bodi be pullid too and fro; but aftir devoute prayer of hem the develes fled, and aungelis prevailed. Translation of the Empress Helena. In the IX. ȝere of his empire the body of Seynt Heleyn, Constantin modir, was translat fro Rome into Frauns.

Gregory IV., Pope. And in this tyme was Gregorius Quartus Pope XVI. ȝere. He destroyed the Cherch of Seynt Martin in Montibus, and aftirward mad it al newe. In this tyme eke was a gret troubel amongst Cristen men; The Saracens ravage Tuscany. for summe men of wikkid condicioune went oute of Rome onto the Soudan, praying him that he wold come thidir; and he cam with swech a multitude, that the cite Leonyne was besegid, and take; and[2] of Seynt Petir Cherch thei mad a stabil, alle Tussie eke was clene distroyed. Thanne, at the prayer of the Pope, Marchio Gy with the Lumbardis, and Lodewik with the Frenschmen, put oute the Sarasines, with mech hurt onto Cristen men.

A.D. 855. Anno 6026—6029. 828–831.

Louis II., Emperor. Anno 6030. 832.—Lodewik the Secunde regned

---

[1] *regned V. ȝere; and so.*] These words have been added, partly on an erasure, and partly in the margin.

[2] *and.*] om. C.C.C.

XXI. ȝere. In his tyme the bodies of Seynt Urbane and Tiburce were translat, and broute to the Cherch of Seint Germyn. A.D. 855.

In this tyme the Danes aryved into Ynglond, with too cursed captaynes, Hingwar and Hubba. Thei distroyed the cuntre, and killid the glorious Kyng Edmund, first with schot of arowis, and than smet of his heed.

The Danes invade England.

In this tyme was Jon clepid the Scot, a excellent man in study of Scripture. He, at the praier of this Kyng, translated the bokis of Seynt Dionise oute of Grew into Latyn. The same man, aftir that, be his malicious disciples, was punchid to the deth with poyntelis.

John Scotus Erigena.

That same tyme was Sergius Secundus Pope. His name was before Swynmouth; therefore was ordeyned a statute of the Cherch that fro this tyme forward the Pope schuld chese him a new name.

Sergius II., Pope.

In this tyme the VII. regiones of Ynglond sesed, and the lond was broute into o monarchie, and that was the ȝere of oure Lord D.CCC. and VIII. Than began Egbrite for to regne, and he regned XXXVII. ȝere.

Dissolution of the Heptarchy.

Egbert, King of the English, A.D. 823.

And in the ȝere of oure Lord D.CCC. and XLV. regned Adelwolf, Egbrite son. In the XIX. ȝere of his regne went he to Rome, cause of devocion, and before Leon the Pope offered that tribute whech is cleped 'Romescot,' of every hous a peny. He was first a munk of Wynchester; and, whan his fader was ded, the Pope dispensid with him, and made him wedde the doutir of Charles, whech was clepid Calvus, and be hir had he IIII. sones. The first Ethelwold, the secunde Ethebrite, the third Ethelthrede, the fourte Alurede.

Ethelwulf, A.D. 836.

The tribute 'Romescot.'

Ethelwulf marries the daughter of Chas. the Bald.

This Pope Leon mad for hem of Napeles, whanne thei faute in the se ageyn the Sarasines, this orison,—"Deus, Cujus dextera beatum Petrum ambulantem," et

Leo IV., Pope.

A.D. 836. cetera. And aftir tyme[1] that he mad the wallis of the cite Leonine, thanne mad he this orison, "Deus, Qui beato Petro collatis clavibus regni celestis."

The Story of Pope Joan. Aftir this Leon, was Pope of Rome on that hite Jon, of Englisch nacion, as sum sey; and sum sey sche was bore in Mens. Pope sche was III. ȝere. The process is told thus; that in hir ȝong age sche went lich a man, with a clerk, to Attenes, and there sche lerned the liberal sciens, that sche had there no felaw. Aftir this sche cam to Rome, and red there solemply, and was there in swech opinion that sche had grete maistires to hir scoleres. And whan the Popes sete was vacaunt, for hir cunnyng and hir fame thei chose hir Pope. So happed him that led hir to Attenes be homely with hir as he was wone to be, and God wold no longer suffir that erroure to be secret: so fel sche with childe, and sche went onknowyng[2] hir tyme fro Seynt Petirs onto Lateran. Hir cothis[3] fel upon hir betwix the Collise and Seynt Clement Cherch, and there sche deied, and there was byryed. And at this tyme the Pope goth not that way.

Benedict III., Pope. Aftir hir deth was Benedictus Tercius Pope III. ȝere. He mad the gate of Rome that goth to Seynt Paules, and that gate eke that goth to Seynt Laurens.

Nicholas I., Pope. Than was Nicholaus Primus Pope IX. ȝere. Aftir Seynt Gregory there was no swech many day. In his tyme Seint Cirille, a holy man amongst the puple of Slavis oute of the se broute the body of Seynt Clement onto Rome.

Anno 6031—6050. 833–852.

A.D. 875. Charles II., King of France. Anno 6051. 853.—Charles the Secund regned ny foure ȝere. He went to Rome, and, with favoure of the Pope, and giftis that he gave sundri lordis, was mad emperoure. This thing herd his brothir Lodwik, and reisid a gret puple ageyn him, and faute with him; but he was stille emperoure. This man, both in Frauns and in Itaile, repaired many cherchis. In his tyme was not Flaundres[1] so rich, ne so grete named as it is now, for it had no othir governouris but the Fosteres of the Kyng of Frauns. A.D. 875.

---

[1] *aftir tyme*] after that tyme. C.C.C.

[2] *onknowyng*] unknowyng. C.C.C.

[3] *cothis*] cothys. C.C.C.

In these dayes was Adrianus Secundus V. ȝere. To this man cam Lotharie, the Kyng of Frauns, whom Nicholas had cursed because he held a mannes wif beside his qwcen, desiring of him absolucion. And the Pope mad him and othir to swere on the Sacrament, whethir he was gilty or nowt; and thei swore fals, and were hoseled upon her oth. And in the same ȝere, as is seid, alle thei deied. Adrian II., Pope.

Than was Johannes Octavus X. ȝere. Undir him was the V. Councelle holdyn at Constantinoble of CCC.LXXX. bischoppis, where Petir Cardinal was President, joyned with him Paule, bischop of Antioche, and Eugeni, bischop of Hostiensis. John VIII., Pope. Council at Constantinople.

Anno 6052—6054. 854–856.

Anno 6055. 857.—Charles the Thirde, whech is clepid Grossus, regned XII. ȝere. In his dayes was a gret hungir thorw oute Ytaile. This man had Frauns and Germaine in pees; an[2] in the secunde ȝere of his empire he was crowned of Jon the Pope. A.D. 880. Charles III., Emperor.

In these dayes was a gret conflicte betwix Frensch men and Normannes, in which V. thousand Normannes were slayn. Than the Normannes, with help of Dannes,[3] distroyed Frauns and Lotharinge with fire and yrun, and many citees thei distroyed. Than was War with the Normans and Danes.

---

[1] *was not Flaundres*] was Flaunders not. C.C.C.

[2] *an*] and. C.C.C.

[3] *Dannes*] Danes. C.C.C.

A.D. 880. mad pes on this manere, that the Kyng of the Normanne[1] schuld be baptized, and the Kyng of Frauns schuld be his Godfader; than schuld he wedde the Kyng of Frauns doutir, and he and his puple schuld frely rejoyce alle the lond of the othir side of Seyne.

The Dukes of Normandy. The first duke of Normandie was Robert: the secund, William: the third, Richard: the fourt, Richard: the fifte, Robert Guychardy: the sexte, William, cleped Notus.

Martin II., Pope. In this tyme was Pope Martinus Secundus o ȝere and V. monthis.

Adrian III., Pope. And than Adrian the Thirde, I. ȝere.

Stephen V., Pope. And than Stevene the V., VI. ȝere.

Formosus, Pope. And than Formosus V. ȝere, whech was disgraded be Jon the Pope fro all the ordres of the Cherch onto lay astat; and aftir that he was restored by Martin the Pope; of whech mater was grete altercacion in the Cherch.

Anno 6056—6066. 858–868.

A.D. 887. Arnulphus, Emperor. Anno 6067. 869.—Arnulphus was emperoure XII. ȝere. He faute ageyn the Normaundes, that had destroyed Frauns, Lotharinge, and Dardani, and dwellid there. Aftir that he fel in a grete seknes, that there myte no medycyne help him ne delyvir him fro the multitude of lys whech fret him onto the deth. He had a son; but he cam nevyr onto the crowne. For here was ende of that empire that longid to the posterity of Charles.

Boniface VI., Pope. In this tyme were at Rome these Popes,—Bonefacius the Sexte XV. dayes.

Stephen VI., Pope. Stephanus the Sexte o ȝere. He was a grete enmye to the Pope Formose.

Romanus, Pope. Than was Romanus III. monthes.

---

[1] *the Normanne*] the Normannes. C.C.C.

And than Theodorus IX. dayes. A.D. 887. Theodore II., Pope.

And than Johannes Nonus II. ȝere. He was frend to Formose. John IX., Pope.

Thanne Benedictus Quartus thre monthis. Benedict IV., Pope.

And than Leo Quintus fourty dayes. For on Cristofer deposed him,[1] and was Pope aftir him.[2] Leo V., Pope.

Cristofer was Pope VII. monthis, and he was eject fro the Cherch, and mad a munk. Christopher, Pope.

Than was Sergius the Thirde VII. ȝere, monthes foure. In his tyme the Cherch of Lateranensis fel down, and he mad it newe. This Sergius was a dekne undir the Pope Formose; and the Pope Formose put him oute of the Cherche, and he fled into Frauns; but, aftir, he was mad Pope, and than he comaunded the body of that same Formose whech exiled him to be drawe oute of the grave, and arayed lich a bischop, and than the hed smet of, and the body throw into Tibir. But fischereres fond the body, and brout it ageyn to Seint Petir Cherch; and thei seid certeyn ymages that were there ded worchip to the body. Sergius III., Pope.

In this tyme regned Alured in Ynglond, the fourt son of Adelwold. He began to regn in the ȝere of our Lord DCCCLXXII. This man, be the councelle of Seint Ned, mad an open Scole of divers sciens at Oxenford. He had[3] many batailes with Danes; and, aftir many conflictes in which he had the wers, at the last he ovircam hem; and be his trety Godrus, here Kyng, was baptized, and went hom with his puple. XXVIII. ȝere he regned, and deied the servaunt of God. Alfred the Great, A.D. 871. University of Oxford founded. Guthred, King of the Danes, baptized, A.D. 878.

Anno 6068—6078. 870–880.

Anno 6079. 881.—Lodewik the Thirde regned VI. ȝere. At this tyme the empire went fro Frauns onto A.D. 899. Louis III., Emperor.

---

[1] *deposed him.*] Added above the line.

[2] *and was Pope aftir him.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *had*] mad. C.C.C.

A.D. 899. Ytaile, aftir the prophecye whech was among the Romanes. Thei saide because the Frenchmen wold not socoure hem ageyn the Lumbardis, thei schuld not be worthi to be clepid emperoures of Rome. And fro this tyme forward summe regned in Itaile, and summe in Almayn, til the tyme of Octo the First. This Lodewik mad Berengarie, that regned than in Itaile, for to fle that lond; and whan he had conquered, as he supposed, al Itaile, sodeynly at Verone his enmyes took him, put oute his eyne, and sette Berengari ageyn in his dignite.

Anastasius III., Pope. In this tyme was Pope Anastasius Tercius II. ȝere.

Lando, Pope. And thanne Lando II. monthis.

John X., Pope. And than Johannes Decimus XIII. ȝere. He entered wrongfully into that astate; therefor knytis of an erle thei clepid Gy, tok him, put him in prison, leyd a pelow on his mouth, and so strangild him.

Leo VI., Pope. Leo the Sext was aftir him[1] but V. monthis.

Anno 6080—6083. 882–885.

A.D. 905. Berenger, Emperor. Anno 6084. 887.—Berengarius Primus regned IIII. ȝere. He was wise in dedis of armes, and had many batailes with the Romanes. And in his tyme was the Abbey of Cloyne nobely foundid be on William that was the first prince of Burgundie.

Stephen VII., Pope. And in this tyme was Stephanus Septimus Pope II. ȝere.

Anno 6085—6087. 888–890.

A.D. 911. Conrad I. Anno 6089. 891.[2]—Conrardus, a Alemane, regned VII. ȝere: but he is not a noumbered among the emperoures, because he regned not upon Itaile; therefor wanted he the benediccion imperial. Whan

---

[1] *was aftir him*] was Pope after him. C.C.C.

[2] 891.] The column of dates 891–897, and also 898–905, had been originally written, by mistake, 991–997, and 998–1005, respectively. These have been erased by the Scribe, and the correct dates supplied in the margin.

A.D. 911.

he deyed, he assigned to be his eyer Henry, the son of the duke of Saxone.

Leo VII., Pope. Stephen VIII., Pope.

In this tyme[1] was Pope Leon the VII. thre ȝere. And thanne Stevene the VIII. othir III. ȝere.

Anno 6090—6095. 892-897.

A.D. 914. Berenger II., Emp. Martin III., Pope.

Anno 6096. 898.[2]—Berengarius the Secunde regned VIII. ȝere in Itaile; in whech tyme the Pope was Martinus Tercius, III. yer.

Agapetus II., Pope. Death of S. Odo of Cluni.

And aftir him Agapitus VII. ȝere. In this tyme deied Odo, Abbot of Cloyne. And aftir him was abbot there Adamarius; and aftir him Majolus, a grete beginner of religion. Of this Ode[3] have I sey dyvers werkes. On upon the Sauter; and a gret book of Omelies.[4]

Edward the Elder. A.D. 901. His conquests. Death of Ethelfleda, [A.D. 922.]

In these dayes regned in Englond Edward the son onto Alured. His othir name was Senior. He mored his kyngdam in many thingis; mad newe borowes; thoo that were falle reysid hem ageyn. He conqwered the Scottis, the Walsch men; the kyngdammes of Est Ynglond, of Essex, and of Merce, he took fro the Danis. In his dayes deied a nobil lady cleped Ethelfled, doutir onto Edred, Kyng of Merce. Sche bilid[5] many townes, Bronbury, Tamworth, Bronbruggen, Stafford, and Warwick. This same Kyng is biried at Wynchester.

Anno 6097—6103. 899-905.

A.D. 918. Henry I. of Germany.

Anno 6104. 906.[6]—Henricus, the emperoure, regned in Almayn XVIII. ȝere; in Alemane, and not in Itaile; therefor is not he acountid among the emperoures. In this tyme Spigrenus, duke of Bem, was

---

[1] *In this tyme*, &c.] Pope John XI. is passed over in both MSS.

[2] See footnote (²), page 114.

[3] *Ode*] Odo. C.C.C.

[4] See the "Bibliotheca Cluniacensis," of Marrier and Quercetanus; col. 13—265. Paris, 1614.

[5] *bilid*] byldyd. C.C.C.

[6] 906.] The column of dates 906-922, had been originally written, by mistake, 1006-1022. These have been erased by the Scribe, and the correct dates supplied in the margin.

A.D. 918. converted to the Feith, and lyved aftir that a ful blessed lif. Necenlaus, his son, folowid his fader steppes; and for envye his brothir killid him. And CCC. aftir his passioun he appered to Kyng Herri, King of Danis, and told him that he schuld deye in the same manere whech he deyed; praying him that, in the honoure of Nycenlaus, he schuld make a monasteri. The Kyng, whan he was awakid, called his servauntis, and inqwired what this Nycenlaus was. They answerd him,—A prince of the lond of Bem, wrongfully slayn be his brothir. And anon he ded mak a monasteri of the Cistewis, and leide the body there undir.

Appearance in a vision of Wenceslas.

John XII., Pope.

This tyme was Johannes XII. Pope XII. ȝere. This man had a fader thei cleped Albert, a myty man of good. He cleped the men that myte moost doo in the eleccion, gave hem grete giftis, and mad hem for to swere that whan Agapitus was ded thei schuld promote his son Constantine on that same astat. And so was he Pope, and called Johannes XII. He was vicious of lyvyng, a hunter outeragious, a lecchoure withouten[1] schame. For he held women openly, and that dyvers, to grete slandir of the Cherch. For this cause many of the Cardinales writyn onto Octo, prince of the Saxones, that he schuld come and help to remeve this erroure and this vileny of the Cherch.

Anno 6105—6121. 907–923.

Berenger III.

Anno 6122. 924.—Berengarius Tercius regned VIII. ȝere.

Benedict V., Pope.

In his tyme was Pope Benedictus V. He entered into that astate be violens of the Romanes; for Leon was chose before him; and he thus broute in be violens. But the emperoure Octo cam to Rome, and deposed this Benedicte, and sette in Leo, that was rithfully chosen. He made a statute ageyn the

Leo VIII., Pope.

---

[1] *withouten*] without. C.C.C.

pride of Romanes, that there schuld no Pope be intronized withoute consent of the emperoure. A.D. 918.

In this tyme regned Athelstane, the son of Edward. He fawte ageyn Anlaf, Kyng of Erlond, and ageyn Constantyn kyng of Scottis, at Banborow, where, thorow the prayeres of Seynt Ode, a swerd fel fro Hevene into his schaberk. He maried on of his douteris onto the emperoure Octo; and that same emperoure sent him the swerd whech Constantine fawt with: in the handelyng thereof was closed on of thoo IIII.[1] nayles that were in Christis handis and feet. He sent him eke the spere of Constantyn, the hed thereof was in Cristis side; and mech more othir thing. In his tyme was Seynt Birstane, bischop of Wynchester, that every dey sang Messe of Requiem. And on a tyme, as he walkid about a cymyteri seying his 'Dirige,' and endid thus, 'Requiescant in pace,' he herde out of the erde innoumbred voyses sey, 'Amen.' He regned XVI. ȝere. Athelstan, A.D. 924.

Anno 6123—6129. 925–931.

Anno 6130. 932.—Lotharius the Secunde regne[2] to ȝere. In his tyme the sunne appered lich blood; and withinne few dayes aftir that there were grete batayles, and many men dede. A.D. 945. Lothaire II.

Anno 6131. 933.

Anno 6132. 934.—Berengary the Fourte, with Albert his son, regned XI. ȝere. This Berengari was comorows to the puple, and he tok Lothari wif,—sche hite Dalvida,—and put hir in prison. But Octo the emperoure cam into Ytaile, and tok the woman oute of prison, and weddid hir, put Berengari fro the regne. And he was the last that regned in Ytaile, born of that cuntre. Thanne went Octo to Rome, and receyved the imperial crowne. A.D. 950. Berenger IV. Otho the Great receives the Imperial Crown at Rome.

In these dayes regned in Ynglond, Edmund, the brothir of Athelstan, IX. ȝere. He begat of his Edmund I., A.D. 941.

---

[1] *IIII.*] III. C.C.C.

[2] *regne*] regned. C.C.C.

A.D. 950. qwene, Elgive, to sones, Edmunde and Edgare. He recured fro the Danes V. citees, Lyncolnne, and Leicetir, Staunford, Notingham, and Derby. In tho dayes William Longswerd, duke of Normandie, was killid be deceyte of Lodewik, Kyng of Frauns. Thanne the cheveteynes of Normandie tok the Kyng of Frauns in Rome, and streited him so there tyl he graunted that Richard, the son of the forsaid Wiliam, schuld frely holde al Normandy. And fro this tyme forward in every collocucion of the Kyng and the duk, it schuld be lefful to the duke to be girt with his swerd; and the Kyng neythir have swerd ne knyf. This Edmund was killid at a feste on Seyn Austyn day,[1] of a man that he sey sitte at mete. The Kyng was busy to pulle him fro the bord; and the othir, in his pulling, gorid the kyng, and scaped withoute harm.

Edmund killed. [A.D. 946.]

Anno 6133—6142. 935–944.

A.D. 963. Otho I., the Great, Emperor.

Anno 6143. 945.—Octo the first regned XII. ȝere. He was the first that regned both in Itaile and in Alemayne. For fro this day[2] forward the empire hath be among the Almanes. This Octo, aftir he had regned many ȝeres in Almayne, the Cardinales of Rome sent for him for the insolens of Jon the Pope, and he rod thithir with his wyf. And whan he had mad pes thorw oute al Ytaile, he rod ageyn into Saxon, and there he begat a child to be his successoure, lich him both in condicion and in name. Ofte in his lyf went he to Rome, and hom ageyn for to se good governauns in the Cherch; and in last[3] ende he mad a real monastery at Maydenborow, in his owne cuntre, and there is he biried.

John XIII., Pope.

In this tyme was Johannes Decimus Tercius[4] Pope, whech was exiled be Peter, meyir of Rome. First was

---

[1] May 26.

[2] *day.*] Added above the line.

[3] *in last*] in his last. C.C.C.

[4] *Decimus Tercius.*] Erroneously XIIII. in C.C.C.

A.D. 963.

he prisoned in the Castel of Aungel, and than exiled into Campanie. But aftir X. monthes, be the help of Octo, emperoure, he cam to Rome, and took veniauns of his enmies, and dured VIII. ȝere.

Benedict VI., Pope.

Aftir him was[1] Benedictus VI. but o ȝere, for he was strangeled in the Castel[2] Aungel.

Edred, A.D. 946.

In this tyme was Edred Kyng in[3] Ingland, the son of Adelstan, brothir to the forseid Edmund. He regned VIII. ȝere.

Edwin, A.D. 955.

And aftir him was Edwyn. He was crowned of Odo, archbischop of Cantirbiry, at Kingeston, fast be London; but aftir, whan Dunstan was bischop, the first day that the King had take his crowne, fel in ouleful lecherie beside his wyf: and whan Dunstan undirtook of his sinne, he exiled Dunstane. But the King was deposed within V. ȝere.

Anno 6144—6154. 946—956.

A.D. 973. Otho II., the Bloody.

Anno 6155. 957.—Octo the Secund, with Octo his son, regned XX. ȝere. This man, as he pursewid the Grekis in Calabir, onwisely lost his knytes; and so he fled fro her handis. Than gadered he a host, and besegid Benevent. Whanne he had take the cite, he took the bones of Seynt Bartholome, and broute hem to Rome, and leyd hem there in a ylde that is in Tibir, purposing to carry hem into his cuntre. But he deied sone, and the tresor left there. This man went with his qween onto Rome, and there was he receyved of Benedict the VII. with mech joye, and crowned with his qween. Than cam ageyn him into Calabir many naciones, in whech batail he was fayn to fle, and seid he was on of the emperoure men. And whan he was schippid, the schipmen supposed verily he was emperoure, and seide in Grew, that thei wold lede him to Constantinople to the empe-

Benevento is besieged.

Otho escapes.

---

[1] *Aftir him was*, &c.] Domnus II. is omitted here, and placed later, after Benedict VI., in both MSS.

[2] *Castel*] Castel of. C.C.C.

[3] *in*] of. C.C.C.

A.D. 973. roure. This undirstode he, and seide onto hem that in the ilde of Scicile he had gret tresoure hid; prayhem thei would aryve there, and thei schuld have part. And whan thei cam to the brynk, he sey a bischop of his knowlech, and with his help thus he scaped.

Domnus II., Pope. In this tyme was Donus Pope I. ȝere.

Boniface VII., Pope. And thanne[1] Bonefacius the Sext[2] III. ȝere.

Gilbert, Pope. And than Gilbert, a nigromancer, that deied at Messe, for he was dymembered be his owne comaundment, for his sinne, in a chapel at Seint Cruce; thei clepe it Jerusalem.

Edgar, A.D. 959. In these dayes was Edgare Kyng in Inglond VII. ȝere. He cleped Seynt Dunstan hom oute of exile. He mad a very unite of all the VII. kyngdammes. He was cleped Pesibel Edgare.[3] In the V. ȝere of his regne Ethelwold bischop of Wynchester put chanones seculer, and othir seculer, oute of the monasterie, and set in munkis. This Edgare founded these Abeyes,—Glasconbury, Abyngdon, Borow, Staunforth,[4] and Thorney.

Edward the Martyr, A.D. 975. Aftir him was his son Kyng, whech is a martir, killid be the fraud of Alfrik, his stepmodir; but aftir that sche ded penauns. Sche translat him onto Schaftisbyry, and too monasteries of women ded sche make: on at Werwelle, where sche lith; a othir at Ambrisbury fast by Salisbury.

A.D. 983. Anno 6156—6174. 958–976.

Otho III. Anno 6175. 977.—Octo the Thirde regned XIX. ȝere. This man was crowned at Rome of Gregori the V. He browt the body of Pauline, the bischop, to Rome. He besegid on Cresens, that mad mech debate in Rome, specialy in eleccion of the Pope. He besegid him, as we saide, took him, and smet of his hed. He began to make a paleys, and the Romanes letted him; and aftir mech vexacioune of hem he deied. Thus regned these III. Octones, ech aftir othir. A.D 983.

---

[1] *And thanne*, &c.] Boniface VII. was Pope before Domnus II.

[2] *Sext.*] This mistake for "Seventh" occurs in both MSS.

[3] *Edgare*] Edgarie. C.C.C.

[4] *Staunforth*] Stamford. C.C.C.

And aftir here deth the empire went no lenger be succession, but be eleccion. The institucioune was mad thus, that VII. persones schul chese the emperoure. III. Chaunceleris: Bischop of Mensis, Chauncelere of Germani; Bischop of Trevere, Chauncelere of Frauns; Bischop of Coloyne, Chaunceler of Ytaile: the Markeys of Branburgensis, Chambirleyn; the Duke of Ostrych, Marchale; the Duke of Saxon, Berer of the Swerd; the Kyng of Bem, Butlere.

Mode of election to the Empire after the death of Otho III.

In this tyme[1] was Gregori the V. Pope.

Gregory V., Pope.

And thanne Jon the XVII.

John XVII., Pope.

And than Silvester the Secund, that was a nigromancer, as we saide before, and deied at Seint Cruce. Ther is his hert; his bones ly at Lataranensis. His bones clater, as thei sei, and his grave swetith, before the deth of a Pope. In this tyme lyved Fulbert, bischop of Carnotensis, that mad thoo Respones of oure Lady, 'Stirps Jesse' et 'Solem Justicie,' and that ympne, 'Chorus nove Jerusalem.'

Silvester II., Pope.

Anno 6176—6193. 978–995.

Anno 6194. 996.—Herry the First regned XII. ȝere. He is clepid I.,[2] for he was first of the empire. The othir Herry was nevyr crowned emperoure; and the same reule is undirstand of the Conrardis. This Herry had a wif thei cleped[3] Chymegundis, and thei both be on asent kept hem virgines al her lyf. Thei ly both byried in the Cherch cleped Banbergense, doying many miracles. He was, befor the empire, duke of Bem, and for his manhod thei chose him emperoure, and aftir many batailes he and his qwen chose a solitari lif, and mad a blessed ende.[4]

A.D. 1002. Henry I. [II.], the Lame.

---

[1] *In this tyme*, &c.] John XIV., John XV., and John XVI., are omitted here in both MSS. John XII. and John XIV. occur later. There is an evident confusion in the arrangement here, and in that of some of the subsequent Popes.

[2] *I.*] Primus. C.C.C.

[3] *thei cleped.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *ende.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1002. John XII., Pope. John XV., Pope. Robert, King of France.

In this tyme was Pope Johannes XII., V. monthis. And thanne Johannes XIIII., V. ȝere. In his tyme was Robert Kyng of Frauns, whech was so devout, that, in every grete feste he wold be in summe monasteri at every servise,[1] and stand himselve in a cope of silk, and governe the qwer. So it happed that he besegid a castel, and the feste of Seynt Aviane fel in the same tyme. He left sege, went to cherch, and, as he kneled at 'Agnus Dei,' at Messe, the castelle wallis felle down. He mad that Sequens, "Sancti Spiritus assit nobis gratia."

Ethelred the Unready. A.D. 978.

In Ynglond regned this tyme Ethelthredus, the brothir of Edward martir. He was so acomered with Danes that he,[2] be the councel of the bischop of Caunterbury,[3] he[2] acorded with them to pay hem ȝerly X. thousand pound, and the secund ȝere XVI. thousand; and so thei reised him to XL. thousand. In the XXIV. ȝere of his regne he wedded Emme, cleped "The broche of Normandie," the douter of Richard the Secund, duke of the same. And than sodenly he sent letteris privyly that alle the Danes schuld be killid on o day. But it availed not; for on the nyte be for Seynt Bryce day[4] the Danes destroyed Excetre, Wilton, Salesbury, Norwich, and Thetforth. And sone aftir cam Swayn and Anlaf, to whom Utred, duke of Northumbirland, and alle Lyndesey, mad subjeccion, and receyved him as her Kyng. Ethelthredus fled into Normandye. Than sent many of the lond onto him, and sed, If he wold be more gentil onto hem than he was before, he schuld be welkom. So cam he, and distroyed mech of Lyndisey, but he caute not Knowt that dwelt there. Than mad Swayn a grete comminacion to the town of Seynt Edmund, that he schuld distroye it. Ferthermore, he said vilens wordis ageyn the Seint; and sone aftir, in the town of

Ethelred marries the daughter of the Duke of Normandy. A.D. 1002.

Exeter, Wilton, and Salisbury sacked, A.D. 1003. Norwich and Thetford, A.D. 1004. Northumbria ravaged, A.D. 1013. Ethelred flies into Normandy.

---

[1] *servise.*] Added in the margin.

[2] *he.*] This word is thus repeated in both MSS.

[3] *of Caunterbury.*] Added in the margin on revision.

[4] November 12.

Gaynysborow, Seint Edmund appered onto him, and killid him with a spere.

A.D. 1002. Death of Sweyn, A.D. 1314.

Anno 6195—6199. 997–1001.

Anno Mundi viM.CC. [Christi 1002.]

Anno 6201—6206. 1003–1008.

Anno 6207. [1009.]—Imperium vacat II. annis.[1]

A.D. 1024. Conrad I. [II.], the Salique.

Anno 6208. 1010.—Conrardus Primus[2] regned XX. ȝere. He loved pes above al thing; and therefor he mad a lawe, that who that brekith pes betwix ony princes, he schuld lese his hed.

Story of Count Leopold.

Than was a erle in his lond thei clepid Lupold. He was accused to the emperoure that he had broke this statute. Wherfor he fled into a wildirnesse, and lyved as a heremit with wif and childirn. No man wist where he was. And happed aftirward the Kyng huntid in the same forest, lost his meny; nyte felle on, and for very nede was loggid with this heremite. And that same nyte the cuntesse had childe; and a voys herd the emperoure that this same child schuld be his successoure. And the emperoure had scorne that so pore a child schul regne aftir him, comaunded his servauntes to bere the child into the wod, sle him, and bring him the hert. Thei thoute of pite thei myte not fulfille this: thei leide the child in the levys, and broute him the hert of a hare. A duke thei cleped Herri fond the child, bare it to his hous, and, because his wif was bareyn, thei feyned it was her. Whan the child was growe, the emperoure dyned with this duke. The child stood before him, and he gan remembre the face of that child whech he comaunded to be slayn, desired him of the Duk, led him forth, sent him to the emperesse with swech a lettir, "That day that ye receyve this child, ordeyn for him that he be ded." So happed the child for to slepe in a prestes hous be the weye, and the prest red the lettir: of pite he rased the clause, and chaunged

---

[1] *Imperium vacat II. annis.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *Conrardus Primus.*] See page 121, sub Anno Mundi 6194, line 4.

A.D. 1024. Story of Count Leopold.

it into this sentens, "That day ȝe receyve this child, in moost goodly hast wedde him to oure doutir." Whan the emperoure cam hom, and sey that Goddis ordinauns wold not be broke, he took it more at ese; specialy whan he knewe what man was his fader.

Benedict VIII., Pope. John XX., Pope. Benedict IX., Pope.

In these dayes of Herry and Conrard were at Rome thus many Popes,—Benedictus VIII., Johannes XX., Benedictus IX. In his tyme was mech scisme. And he appered to a holy man aftir his deth in straunge liknesse, his hed and his tayl lych a asse, al the body lich a bere.

Sergius IV., Pope.

Than was Sergius IIII., a man of good conversacion.

Gregory VI., Pope.

And than Gregorius VI. In his tyme the Cherch was spoiled, pilgrimes robbed, the offerings of the auteres take with violens. First this man cursed hem that used these dedis. Aftir, he distroyed hem with strong hand. Therfor whan he schuld deye, the Cardinales saide he was not worthi to be biried in Seynt Petir Cherch, for the habundauns of blood whech he had spilt. And he answerd ful sobirly, "Put my body, whan I am ded, upon a bere, and set it before Seint Petir dore, shette hem, and as ȝe se, so do." Whan it was set there sodeynly there cam a wind, and brast the dores ope with swech a violens that thei stoyned on the walle, and than thei biried him worchipfully.

Clement II., Pope. Damasus II., Pope.

Than was Clement the Secund.

And thanne Damasus the Secund. These to entered not wel, and therefor thei lyved not long; the on but XIX. monthis, the othir XXIII. daies.

Leo IX., Pope. Victor II., Pope. Council at Florence.

Than was Leo Decimus[1] V. ȝere, a holy man.

Than Victor Secundus. He held a Councel at Florens, where he deposed many bischopis for symony and fornicacion.

Stephen IX., Pope.

Than was Stephanus IX.

In this tyme was Kyng in Inglond Edmunde, cleped Yrunside. He had many batayles, specialy with

---

[1] *Decimus.*] A mistake for "Nonus." It occurs in both MSS.

A.D. 1024.
Edmund Ironside, A.D. 1016.
War with Canute.
Canute and Edmund reconciled.
Death of Edmund.
Canute is made King. A.D. 1017.
Edric is slain.

Knowt. And, aftir many conflictes, thei were acorded that thei to schuld fite alone; and in her strif Knowt aspied the grete courage of Edmund, and seyed, "Sese." And than thus, "Brothir myne, Edmund," he seith, "we wil no more fite; lete us fro this tyme lyve as brethirin. Half Denmark schal be thin; half Inglond schalle be myn." And thus thei left bataile, and kissid, and frendis for evyr. Alle the puple that was there wept for joye. But sone aftir was he slayn be the councel of Edrede, the duke; for he mad his son for to hide him undir a sege, where the King schuld voide, and sodeynly with a scharp basulard he smet the Kyng among the boweles, and killid him. The duke cam to Knowt, and seide on this wise, 'Heil Kyng alone.' And whan the Kynge had undirstand the manere of Edmundis deth, he seid onto the duke, 'And I schal sette the hiest of ony lord in Inglond.' So he ded smite of his hed, and sette it on the hiest toure in London. This Edmund is biried at Glascunbury.

Anno 6209—6227. 1011–1029.

Anno 6228—6230. 1030–1032.—The empire voyde III. ȝere.

A.D. 1039.
Henry II. [III.], the Black.

Anno 6231. 1038.—Herry the Secund regned XVII. ȝere. In his tyme was founde at Rome a body of a geaunt not roten. The wownde that he deyed of was foure feet of length. The body of him was as hy as ony wal. A lanterne at his hed brennyng was founde that myte not be qwenchid with lycoure ne with wynd: but anon as thei had mad a hole that the eyre myte entre, the lite was oute. Thei sey Turnus killid this geaunt: for his epitafi was wretin thus:—

"Filius Evandri Pallas, quem lancea Turni
Militis occidit more suo,[1] jacet hic."

---

[1] *more suo.*] A mistake for "mole sua" according to Martinus Polonus, who quotes these lines in his Chronicle.

A.D. 1039.

"The son of Evander, Pallas, whech the spere of Turnus the knyte killid on his manere, here he lith."

Legend.

In this tyme was in Naples a ymage of marbil, with a sercle of bras; in whech was wrytyn thus,—"In the Kalendis of May, whan the sun schynyth in his uprysyng, I schal have a hed of gold." And be wit of a Sarasine thei merked the schadow of his hed the same houre, diggid there, end founde mech gold.

Berenger.

In this tyme was there grete scisme in the Cherch of Frauns be on Berengarie, that held this heresie, that the Sacrament of the Auter is not very Cristis body and His blood, but figure of His body and His blood. And agayn this heresy Nicholas the Pope gadered a hundred bischoppis and XIII., and mad him to revoke this heresie; and this revocacion is put in[1] the book whech thei clepe 'Decrees, De Con.,' Di.[2] II. "Ego Berengarius."

Benedict X., Pope.

In these dayes were these Popes:—Benedictus Decimus, X. monthes.

Nicholas II., Pope.

And Nicholaus Secundus, II. ȝere.

Alexander II., Pope.

And than Alexandre Secundus, XI. ȝere. In this tyme regned in Ynglond Alured the first begote son of Ethelthrede. Than was a sly man duke of Kent; his name was Godwin. He had a fayre doutir; thei cleped hir Ydanie: and, for he supposed that this Kyng wold not wedde hir, he procured sotily the deth of this man, that he mite wedde hir to Edward, the ȝonger brothir, whech aftir him schuld be Kyng. Be this manere he deceyved the puple. "This King," he seith, "is a Norman o the moderes side; and now hath he broute in Normannes with him, to distroye this Englisch puple." So be his councelle thei met the Normannes at Gildeforth, and bonde hem, killid evyr IX.,

Alfred, son of Ethelred, is killed by Godwin, Duke of Kent. A.D. 1036.

---

[1] *in.*] C.C.C. Omitted by mistake in MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *Di.*] om. C.C.C.—See Mansi's "Conciliorum Nova Collectio," published at Venice in 1774, vol. xix., col. 900, A.

and saved the X. The Kyng thei took, put oute his eyne, and brout him to Hely, where he deied within few dayes. A.D. 1039.

Than cam Edward into this lond, but with few persones, and was crowned at Wynchester on Pas Day.[1] In the XI. ȝere of his regne deyed his modir Emme, the duke doutir of Normandie. It is the same Edward that lith at Westmester.[2]

Edward the Confessor crowned, A.D. 1042.

Anno 6232—6247. 1034–1049.

Anno 6248. 1050.—Herry the Third regned XLIX. ȝere. In his tyme was mech hungir and pestilens, ny thorow oute the world. In that tyme Hildebrande, a cardinal, whech was Pope aftir, whil he was a legate in Frauns, in a Councelle whech was gadered ageyn the Simonianes, saide onto a bischop that entred be Symonie, that he schuld sey "Gloria Patri, et Filio, et Spiritui Sancto." He coude nevir sey "Spiritui Sancto," tyl he was deposed; and than he seid it.

A.D. 1056. Henry III. [IV.], Emperor.

Proceedings of Hildebrand in France.

In his tyme were these Popes:—Gregorius Septimus. He was a man of good conversacion; and ȝet a false meyhir of Rome, thei cleped Censius, took him at Messe on Cristmesse morow, and prisoned him. But the Romanes distroyed the prison, and delyvered him. He cursed the emperoure Herry for the scisme he set in the Cherch, and compelled him to com bare in frost and snow, and ask his absolucion.

Gregory VII., Hildebrand, Pope.

Aftir him was Victor Tercius o ȝere.

Victor III., Pope.

And than Urbanus Secundus XI. ȝere. In his dayes a duk then cleped Beamunde recured the sepulcur of Crist. He held a Councelle at Claremount, in whech was ordeyned that Mateynes and Houres of oure Lady schuld be seid every day; and on Satirday hir hool servyse.

Urban II., Pope.

Council at Clermont.

---

[1] Easter Day fell on April 11 in the year 1042.

[2] *Westmester*] Westminster. C.C.C.

A.D. 1056. This Pope gadered a Councel in Frauns, where many princes thorw his stering went into the Holy Lond;[1] and be revelacion thei fond there Cristis spere; and there thei conqwered Acon, Antioch, Tripolim, and ny al the lond, and Jerusalem.

First crusade, A.D. 1095.

Paschal II., Pope. Aftir him was Paschasius XVIII. ȝere.

S. Bernard. In this tyme entred Seynt Bernard the order of the Sistewys, undir the abbot Stevene; he but XII. ȝere old. In this tyme eke began the Order of Premonstracenses.

Gelasius II., Pope. Than was Gelasius the Secund Pope o ȝere.

CalixtusII., Pope. And than Kalixtus Secundus V. ȝere.

William of Normandy invades England, A.D. 1066.

Claim of William to the Crown.

In these dayes, that is to sey, the ȝere of our Lord M.LXVI., William Bastard, duke of Normandie, cam into Ynglond. And what rite he had for to regne here I wil write onto ȝou. Harald occupied the crowne, and had no rite thereto, for he was son to that fals tretour Godwyn, whos doutir King Edward weddid; thei clepid hir Ydani, of whom is seid, "As a thorn bringith forth a rose, so sprang Ydani of Godwyn." This Godwin killid Edward brothir, and was tretoure to Edward. So happed it on a tyme he sat at mete with Kyng Edward, and the Kyng rehersed onto him his eld treson, and the suspecion that men had to him of new treson. And than Godwyn took a pece of bred in his hand, and seid thus, "Mi Sovereyn Lord, if evyr I ment treson onto ȝou, I pray God that this o mussel[2] strangil me." Thus he seid, and thus it was. His son was Haraldus, whom Kyng Edward cleped before his deth, and sent him into Normandye to duk William, for to telle him that the Kyng asined him his successoure, both be testament, and eke as nexte of kyn. And there

Edward the Confessor leaves the kingdom to William.

---

[1] *Into the Holy Lond.*] Written in the margin in a later hand. In the MS. C.C.C. these words are inserted after "and be revelacion."

[2] *mussel*] mussell. C.C.C.

the same Harald swore to duke William that he schuld be to him trew ligeman, and ded or mad onto him homage. The same feith mad he to Kyng Edward. But whan Edward was ded, he took upon him the regalie, and was crowned Kyng. Than went duke William to Alisaunder, the Pope, and expressed onto him the rite whech he had to the crowne of Ynglond: and the Pope comaunded him on his blessing, that he schuld porsewe his rite. Tho cam he into Inglond, and londid at Hastingis; and ageyn him was Harald, with grete powere. It is told that there were certeyn knytes XX. on Wiliam side, that swore thei schuld not leve til thei broke the hoost, and cam to Haraldis standard. And thouȝ it were hard for to do, ȝet it was doo. So had William the victori, and rod forth to London, and at Westminster was he crowned in Cristmesse of Aldred bischop of Ȝork. This bataile was on Seynt Kalixte day.[1] And in the same feld where it was he ded make a abbey; it is clepid at this houre, "The Abbey of Batayle."

A.D. 1056.

Harold seizes the throne.

William appeals to Alexander II., at Rome.

Battle of Hastings.

Battle Abbey.

The secunde ȝere of his regne William went into Normandy, and led with him the bischop of Cauntirbyri, whos name was Stigand, and many othir lordis. He mad Leftenaunt of this lond his own brothir bischop of Bathe; his name was Odo. And a litil before wynter he cam ageyn with his wif Maute; and in his comyng he distroyed Excetre, for thei rebelled.

William goes into Normandy, A.D. 1067.

Odo has charge of the kingdom.

Sone afitir was the qwene crowned. And that ȝere he founded the castel of Nottingham, and the castel of Ȝork.

The Queen crowned, A.D. 1068.

In the V. ȝere of William, Baldewyn, the abbot of Byry, purchased of Alisaundre the Pope to singe as a bischop; and the Pope gave him a ryng and a superaltarie of porphiri ston, whech he had hallowid and blessid.

A.D. 1070.

---

[1] October 14.

A.D. 1070. Council at Winchester. Stigand is deposed.

In this Kyngis dayes was hald a Councel at Wynchester in the presens of to Cardinales, where Stigandus, Archbischop of Cauntirbury, was deposed for III. causes. On was, for he kept the chirch of Cauntirbury and the cherch of Wynchester both in his handis of dyvers ȝeres. A othir cause, for, lyvyng his predecessoure Robert, he usurped his office, in so mech that he used the palle. The thirde cause, for the palle that he took whan he was mad bischop, he took of Benedicte, whech was a antepope, and stood acursed. Thus was he deposed, and put in prison, and there he seide he had not a peny in the world: so was he susteyned at the Kyngis cost ful porely. But, whan he was ded, thei fonde a keye aboute his nek that broute hem to mech tresor hid.

Lanfranc is made Archbishop in his room.

Aftir he was deposed, Lamfrank was bischop of Cauntirbury, a monk and prioure of Bek, born in Itaile; a gret clerk; and that is schewid in many thingis, specialy in a book whech he mad ageyn Berengary. And at Ȝork the Kyng mad a bischop, thei cleped him Thomas: he was born in Bayou. Ther was gret strif betwix Lamfrank and him for subjeccion; but at the last thei were acorded that the Archbischop of Ȝork owith subjeccion to him at Cantirbury.

Thomas of Bayeux is made Abp. of York. Contention for the primacy.

Malcolm of Scotland does homage to William I.

This Kyng William rod into Scotlond, and took homage there of Malcolyn the Kyng. Whan he had regned XXII. ȝere, he mad his testament, and beqwathe the kyngdam of Ynglond to his son clepid William Rede; and to Robert, clepid Curthose, the duchi of Normandie; and to Herri, cleped Clerk, al his tresore: and so he deied and is biried at Kame.

Death of William I.

William II. A.D. 1087.

William the Rede was crowned in the ȝere of oure Lord M.LXXXVI., and streit he rod to Wynchester, to departe his faderes tresore. Ther fond thei LX. thousand pound, beside gret jewellis. Robert herd sey that his fader was ded, and cam into Inglond to

Robert challenges the Crown.

chalenge the crowne. He aryved at Hampton; and thanne William his brothir sent onto him swech letteres,—That he knew wel it was rite he schuld be Kyng, and he kept the crowne to no othir entent but to regne undir him, knowyng wel that he was worthier and elder; and, if it plesed him, that he myte regne thus undir him, he wold gyve him every ȝere III. thousand mark, and who overlyved othir to have al. And so duk Robert went hom ageyn, bering rith nowt with him but fayre promisses.

A.D. 1070. Conference at Hampton.

In the X. ȝere of this William was Ancel mad bischop of Cauntirbury. He was eke born at Ytaile, and lerned at Bek under Lamfrank. Betwix him and the Kyng felle gret distauns, for fro the tyme that he was Kyng myte he nevir hold no sene ne use no correccioune; for the Kyng reised so many tributes to make the wallis of the Toure of London, and the grete Halle at Westminster, and eke the Kyngis meny used mech raveyn. In this tyme Herbert Losinga, sumtyme abbot of Ramsey, but thanne bischop of Thetforth, sowyd a gret seed of Symonie in Ynglond, for he boute his benefice of the Kyng William for a grete summe. But whan his ȝong dayes were go, he went to Rome, and gat licens to remeve his sete to Norwich, where that he foundid a worchipful monasteri of his owne gode at Norwich,[1] and a othir of the Order of Clyone at Thetforth. He was wone[2] to sey, "I entred evel; but with the grace of God I schal wel go owte." And that word of Jerom wold he ofte reherse, "We erred whan we[3] were ȝong: lete us amende it in oure age."[4]

Anselm made Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 1096.

The See of Thetford removed to Norwich, A.D. 1092.

---

[1] *at Norwich.*] Apparently expuncted in the MS. Om. C.C.C.

[2] *wone*] won. C.C.C.

[3] *we.*] C.C.C. Omitted in MS.

[4] "*We erred . . . age.*"] "Erravimus juvenes; emendemur senes." S. Hieron. contra Ruffinum. Vol. ii. col. 539.—Venice, 1735.

I 2

A.D. 1092. Westminster Hall built, This William mad[1] Westminster Halle: and, whan he sei it first, he seide it was not half mech inow.

A.D. 1097. Death of William II. A.D. 1100. In the XIII. ȝere of his regne he deyed on this manere. He schuld hunte in the Newe Forest: and, in the nyte before, he lay in a Personage, and there thei assayed her arowes. The Kyng had on in his hand, and the Person stood before him with a new schave crowne. The Kyng took a arow, and threw it at the prestis crowne, and hurt him, and seid, "This is a fayre site." On Water Tyrel stood beside, and asked that arow for his fe: and the nexte day, as he wold a smet a hert, he smet the Kyng to the hert.

Anno 6249—6296. 1051–1098.

A.D. 1106. Henry IV. [V.], Emperor. Anno 6297. 1099.—Herry the Fourt regned XV. ȝere. He anon as he was emperoure, he took his fader, and set him in prison til he deyed.

In his tyme, when Pascale the Pope was ded, the Cherch chese on Jon, the Pope's Chauncelere, and clepid him Gelasius.[2] Gelasius II., Pope. The emperoure was not consenting to that eleccion; and therfor the emperoure with his clientis chase a Spaynard: his name was Burdine. Calixtus II., Pope. Than deied Gelase, for he was Pope but o ȝere; and the cardinales chose Kalixt[2] the Secund. He, with his councelle, cursed Herry the emperoure; and the Romanes took Burdine, and sette him on a asse, the taile in his hand: so rode he before the Pope to Rome. In this tyme Kalixt mad the bischop of Compostel a archbischop for reverens of Seyn Jame. This Herri, be the rithful dome of God, deied withoute ony eyer; for he was so cruel to his fadir.

Henry I. of England, A.D. 1100. In these dayes regned in Inglond Herry the First, whech was named Herry Clerk, the third son of William Bastard. Summe men writyn he began to regne in the ʒere of oure Lord a M. and a C. He was crowned at Londonne of Maurice, bischop of London. Than weddid the Kyng Maute, doutir to the Kyng of Scottis, whech hite Malcolym. In his first ʒere cam his brothir Robert Curthose, with his wif, whech he had weddid in Scicile, for to chalenge the crowne of Inglond, whech he preferred before the crowne of Jerusalem; for that was profered him, and he forsoke it; therefor had he nevir prosperite aftir that.

---

[1] *This William mad,* &c.] This appears to have been originally written "He mad, &c." 'This' has been added in the margin, and 'William' written on an erasure.

[2] *Gelasius—Kalixt.*] This is mere repetition from page 128.

A.D. 1100.

Henry marries Maud, daughter of Malcolm of Scotland.

Robert returns from the Crusades.

In the XIX. ʒere of his regne was a grete bataile betwix him and the Kyng of Frauns, Lodewik, where a knyte cleped William Crisping, on the French side, hitte Herry the kyng on the hed twyes; and because the basnet was strong and inpenetrabel, the strok bent it to the Kyng hed, that the blood ran oute. The Kyng smet him ageyn with swech corage, that thei felle to grownd both hors and man.

War with the French, A.D. 1118.

Sone aftir this bataile deied Maute, the good qween, of whos curtesie, and humilite, scilens, and othir good maneris, the Englisch poetes at tho dayes mad ful notabel vers.

Death of Queen Maud, A.D. 1117.

In the ʒere of oure Lord a M.CXX. Kyng Herry cam hom ageyn into Inglond. And in the se too of the Kyngis sones, William and Richard, and the Kyngis doutir, and his nece, and many worthi folk, chaumbirleynes, and butleres, and Richard, schreve of Chester, alle these were dronch in o schip, in noumbir a CXL., non saved save a boistoys carl that was among hem. Thei were grete slaundered in the synne of Sodomye. The next day men fond on the brynkis mech tresore, but body was non founde.

Henry returns to England, A.D. 1120.

Sone aftir this the King Herri wedded a new wif, doutyr to the duke of Lotharinge: the wedding was at Wyndesore. Sche hite, as thei sei, Adelida. Of hir beute was mech spech and mech wryting.

He marries Adelais of Louvain, A.D. 1121.

In the XXIV. ʒere of Herri cam to this lond Jon Cremensis, a cardinal, at gret cost of bischopis and

A.D. 1123.

A.D. 1123. Council at London, A.D. 1125. abbottis. In the Nativity of oure Lady[1] he held a grete Councelle at Londonne, in whech was determined that prestes schuld in no wise have no wyves: but he was that same day detect that a strumpet was in his chaunbir.

Maud, the King's daughter, marries Hen. IV. [V.] of Germany, A.D. 1110. In this Herry dayes was his dowtir Maute wedded to Herri the emperoure, whech Herri, as we seide, was the fourt emperoure that was cleped Herri. Summe sey he deied befor the secund[2] wedding. Sume sey he was mad[3] a munk at Chestir. But who it be of that, his wif the emperesse cam into Ynglond to hir fader, and broute with hir the hand of Seynt Jame the Apostil, not corrupt, and the crowne imperial. And for joye of this hand the kyng foundid a nobil monasterie of munkys at Redynge.

A.D. 1127. Maud marries Geoffry of Anjou. And sone aftir was this Maute emperesse weddid to Geffrey Plauntgenet, erle of Angoye.

The Nobles swear fealty to Maud. Sone aftir, the Kyng held a Parlement at London, where he mad al his lordis to swere that aftir his deth thei schuld be trew lige to the emperesse, hir doutir, and to the eyeres born of hir body. At whech swering Stevene erl of Boloyn, or of Blesens, as othir wryte, was principal; and he mad the forme and the manere of swering.

A.D. 1126. In the XXVII. ȝere of this Kyng he mad the knytes throw the lond to cut here heer; for thei went with as long heer as women. Sone aftir apered onto this Kyng mervelous visiones. First, he sey in his slep a gret multitude of plowmen, with swech instrumentis as thei use, com ageyn him as ȝouȝ thei wold kille him. Than sey he a multitude of armed men, with speres and dartis ageyn him. In the third vision cam prelatis, with here crosses and

---

[1] September 8.

[2] *secund.*] Added in the margin. In the text of C.C.C.

[3] *he was mad.*] Added in the margin. In the text of C.C.C.

A.D. 1126.

croses,[1] sore[2] thretyng him. The Kyng wook, ros, and took his swerd in his hand, wenyng al had be soth. This same vision was schewid to a lech; thei clepid him Grimbald; and he warned the King, as Daniel ded Nabugodonosor, to redeme his sinnes with elmesse.

Henry goes into Normandy, A.D. 1133.

Death of Henry I.

Sone aftir this he went into Normandy, for to wite[3] if his doutir were with child. And as he cam fro hunting, he desired gretly to ete a lamprey; for that mete loved he wel, and evir it ded him harme. This mete caused him a fevyr, of whech he deied. He regned XXXV. ȝere.

Anno 6298—6311. 1100-1113.

A.D. 1125. Lothaire IV., Emp.

Anno 6312. 1114.—Lotharius the Fourt regned XI. ȝere. In his tyme was gret hungir thorw Itaile.

Honorius II., Pope.

Innocent II., Pope.

The Emperor quells a rebellion in Naples.

In the beginning of his empire he gadered a grete host with Archbischopis and bischopis, and set Pope Innocent the Secunde in his sete at Lateranensi; for on cleped the son of Petir Leon had put this Pope oute of Rome. Thus was he broute ageyn be the emperoure Lotharie, and there he crowned the emperoure. This Innocent was Pope XIII. ȝere; and before him was Honorius the Secund V. ȝere. This Lotharie rod with the Pope into Naples ageyn on Roger, that usurped to be lord of that lond. He mad him to fle oute of the lond, and set there a governoure thei cleped Raymund. In this tyme was at Paris a notable clerk thei clepid Hugo De Sancto Victore, of the Chanones Ordre. He mad many fructuous bokes, drawyng mech oute of Seynt Austen werkis.

Anno 6313—6322. 1115-1124.

A.D. 1138. Conrad II.

Anno 6323. 1125.—Conrard the Secund regned XV. ȝere. In his dayes deied a knyte, thei clepid him Jon of the Tymes, whech lyved, as thei sey, CCC. ȝere LXI.; for he was a werrioure in the tyme of

---

[1] *croses*] croyses. C.C.C.

[2] *sore*] for. C.C.C.

[3] *wite*] wete. C.C.C.

A.D. 1138. Gret Charles. This Conrard took the caracte of the Cros of Seint Bernard hand, for to go to the Holy Lond, and fite ageyn the enimes of Crist. And in this pilgrimage he had many felawys, summe of Lotharinge, summe of Frauns, of Inglond, and of Flaundres: too hundred schippis were occupied with hem. Whan thei cam in the Holy Lond, there met the Kyng of Frauns with hem. Ther had thei many batailes, and wonne many townes, as the Cronicle makith mencioune.

Stephen, King of England, A.D. 1135.

And in this same tyme was Stevene Kyng of Yngland, neve to the King Herri, for he was his sisteris son. Anon as he herd sey the king was ded, he cam into Ynglond and chalenged the crowne, notwithstandyng his oth that he had mad. He was crowned of Wiliam, bischop of Cauntirbury, and had prosperity in his first ȝeres, but in his last ȝeres mech adversite. For he, trosting in his gret powere, went ovyr into Frauns, for he purposed for to fite with Gefrey Plauntgenet, dreding that he schuld begete ony child, whech schuld forbarre him his rite. This Gefrey was war of this, and with as myty powere mad resistans, and drove the Kyng Stevene ageyn into Ynglond. And, as summe men write, Herri the Secund was bore that tyme. So grew this child, and was norchid til the fifte ȝere of Stevene.

Maud and Robert of Gloucester come to England, A.D. 1139. Stephen besieged at Lincoln, captured, and imprisoned at Bristol, A.D. 1141.

Than cam the modir with hir child, and with hir frendis, whech were Robert hir brothir, begoten of bast, than erl of Gloucetir, and Ranulf, erl of Chestir, and many mo, and besegid Kyng Stevene in the cyte of Lyncoln. That day that the Kyng schuld fite, he herd Masse, and offered a candel, whech brak on peces in the offering. And sone aftir the elevacion the lyne brak, and the pix fel on the auter. These toknes men thoute were not gode. Thei faute that day, and the Kyng was take, and led onto Bristow,—there the emperesse was,—and kept in prison in the castel many dayes.

A.D. 1141.
Henry acknowleged heir to the throne.
A.D. 1153.

Many conflictes were betwix the emperesse and the Kyng: but at the last thei were thus acorded, be consent of al the lond, that Kyng Stevene schuld have the regal possession whil he lyved, and aftir his deth duke Herry schul entyr. This was permitted be alle the lordis, and a solempne charter mad thereon.

Popes:—
Celestine II.
Lucius II.,
Eugenius III.,
Anastasius IV.
Adrian IV.

In this tyme were these Popes:—
Celestinus II., V. monthes.
Lucius II., XI. monthis.
Eugenius III., VIII. ȝere.
Anastasius IIII., o ȝere.

Than Adrianus Secundus[1] a Englischman, IIII. ȝere. As the fame seith, he was bore at Seint Albones, and natif to the same Monasteri. He desired to be a munk there, and thei refused him. So the man gaf him to lerning, and first was mad a bischop, than a cardinal, and legate into a nacion thei clepe Wormancie, where he converted the puple to God, and aftir was he mad Pope.

Pope Adrian permits Henry II. to conquer Ireland.
[A.D. 1155].

It was he that graunted Kyng Herri the Secunde to go in to Yrlond, and turn hem to the Feith; and to that entent he mad him lord of the lond on this condicion, that every hous schuld pay ȝerli a Petir peny to Rome. This Pope eke graunted grete privilegis to the hous of Seint Albones.

Death of Stephen.

Stevene the Kyng dyed the VIII. Kalend of April,[2] byried at Feversham, whech hous he mad.

Anno 6324—6337. 1126–1139.

A.D. 1152.
Frederic I., Barbarossa.

Anno 6338. 1140.—Frederik the First regned XXXVII. ȝere. He was crowned in the Cherch of Seint Petir at Rome a large man and bold, faire of tunge.

The Saracens take Edessa.

In his tyme a Kyng of the Sarasines tok the cyte cleped Edissa, whech in the first bok of Moises is clepid Arath. Alle the Cristen men whech were

---

[1] *Adrianus Secundus.*] This mistake for "Adrianus Quartus" occurs in both MSS.

[2] March 25.—According to Henry of Huntingdon, Brompton, and Dieceto, on October 25.

A.D. 1152. there he made hem for to reneye here Feith, or ellis to lese here hedis. This is the same cite in whech Abgarus was Kyng, that sent letter onto oure Lord Criste, that He schuld come to him, for to cure him. And oure Lord sent him answere, that as now He myte not come, but aftir His deth He schuld send him on of His disciples, and he schulde cure him. And that was Thade. This Kyng was not content with that epistil of Crist, onto the tyme that Crist sent him his ymage depeynted in a fayre lynand cloth. In this tyme was the sepulcre of oure Lord take, and the holy Crosse, of the Soudan, and many othir Cristen places.

Legend of Abgarus and the letter of Christ.

Abbot Joachim.

In this tyme was abbot Joachim[1] in Calabir, that wrote many thingis upon the Apocalipse; but he erred in many thingis; first in a mater concernyng the Holy Trynyte. For the Cherch hath determined his opinion fals, in the beginning of the Decretales Ca. Dampnamus; and Mayster Pers, the Lumbard, that mad the IIII. bokes of Sentens, aftir bischop of Paris, mad mech thing ageyn this abbot Joachim. This same abbot mad also a othir book "De Seminibus Literarum," where be gret craft he drove oute the ȝear in whech the day of dome schuld falle. But he failed foule, and erred in his counting.

Henry II., King of England, A.D. 1154.

Queen Eleanor.

In this tyme regned in Ynglond Herry the Secunde, son to Gefrey Plaungenet and Maute the emperesse. Or that he regned he weddid a woman that was qwen of Frauns, hir name was Helianore. There fel gret strif betwix the Kyng of Fraunce[2] and hir, and therefor the qwen laboured to have a divors betwix hir and hir husband, pretendyng that sche was of his kyn; but hir principal cause was as is seid, for sche desired gretly to be wyf to the Duke of Normandy. But in dede the divors was had, and

---

[1] *Joachim.*] The works of Joachim were published in 1516–19, at Venice, by Lazar. de Soardis, and Simon de Luere.

[2] *of Fraunce.*] Added in the margin. In the text of C.C.C.

A.D. 1154.

the mariage mad; and be hir he was a grete lord, for sche was doutir and eyir to the duke of Gyan. So was he than duk of Normandie, erl of Angoye and Cenoman, and duke of Gyan. Alle these londes had he in possession whil Kyng Stevene lyved; and, aftir his deth, he cam into Ynglond, and was crowned of Theobald, bischop than of Cauntirbury.

Coronation of Hen. II.

His descent.

And here, as we fynde wrytyn, we will declare his genelogie.[1] The fader of Gefrey[2] Plauntgenet wedded a wyf only for beute. He wist not fro whens sche cam, ne of what kynrod sche was. Seldom wold sche com to cherch, but nevyr abyde the Sacre. And whan this was noted of hir husbond, he mad foure knytes on a day to hold hir stille at the Masse; and so they ded: but a lytil befor the Sacri, as thei held hir be the mantal, sche fley fro hem oute at a wyndowe, and to childir that were on hir left hand sche bare with hir; othir to that were on the rite hand she left behynde hir. Kyng Richard of Ynglond was one[3] to telle that it was no merveile thouȝ thei that cam of swech kynrod ech of hem was contrari to othir, for thei cam fro the Devel, and to the Devel schul goo. It is eke reported that Seint Bernard schuld sey the same of this King Herry, noting her by who that Gefrey, this mans fader, ded gelde Gerard, the bischop Sagiensis, and prophecying of the grete wrong that this man schuld do to Seynt Thomas.[4] Ferthermore, this Gefrey Plauntgenet warned Herry his sone that he schuld in no wise wedde Helianore the qwen of Frauns, for he told him in very treuth that whan

---

[1] *his genelogie.*] Added in the margin, apparently on revision.

[2] *The fader of Gefrey*, &c.] Here in the margin have been written at a later period, the words "De Galfrido Plantagenet."

[3] *one*] wone. C.C.C. The word has originally been 'wone' in the MS. Pub. Lib., but the first letter has been erased.

[4] *Seynt Thomas.*] These words have been struck out with a pen in the MS. C.C.C., and the words "a knave" written above.

A.D. 1154. he was Steward of Frauns, and dwelled with the Kyng, he had comounde with the same qwen ofte tyme. This Helianore had be Kyng Herry sex childirn,—III. sones, Herry, Rychard, and Jon, and III. douteris; Maut, sche was weddid to the duke of Saxone; Helianore, and sche was weddid to the Kyng of Spayn; and Jone, sche was weddid to the Kyng of Scicile.

His children by Queen Eleanor.

Marriage of Prince Henry with Margaret of France, A.D. 1159.

In the sext ȝere of his regne, as he cam fro Tollouse, he maried his son of seven ȝere old onto Margarete, thre ȝere old, doutir to the Kyng of Frauns.

Death of Theobald, A.D. 1160. Becket is made Abp. of Canterbury, A.D. 1161. Exile and murder of Becket, A.D. 1170.

In the VII. ȝere of Herry deied Theobald bischop of Cauntirbury; and Thomas, the Kyngis Chaunceler, entred into that benefice. Aftir that fel gret strif betwix him and the Kyng for liberty of the Cherch; for whech first was the bischop exiled, and many wrongis do to him and to his kyn. Thanne cam he hom ageyn, and was killid, as alle the nacion knowith; and this was in the ȝere of oure Lord a M.CLXX,—

'Annus milenus centenus septuagenus
Anglorum Primas corruit ense Thomas.'[1]

King Arthur's body found at Glastonbury.

In these dayes was Arthures body founde in the cherch ȝerd at Glaskinbury[2] in a hol hok, a crosse of led leyd to a ston, and the letteris hid betwyx the ston and the led. This was the wryting, as Giraldus seith, whech red it:[3]—"Here lith the nobil

---

[1] *and Thomas . . . . corruit ense Thomas.*] In the MS. C.C.C. the whole of this passage has been carefully erased with a pen. In the MS. Pub. Lib., the words "De Sancto Thoma, martire," written in the margin in an old hand, but not in the same hand as the text, have been struck out in the same manner. These lines occur in the following form in Hoveden's "Annales:"

"Annus millenus, centenus, septuagenus,
Primus erat Primas quo ruit ense Thomas."
(See Savile's Script. post Bedam, page 522.)

[2] *at Glaskinbury.*] Added above the line. In the text of C.C.C.

[3] *whech red it.*] "Quam nos quoque vidimus." Girald. Cambr.

Kyng Arthure, with his secunde wyf, Veneraca, in the ylde cleped Avallone."[1] His bones, whan thei were founde, passed the mesure of othir men. A.D. 1170.

Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, visits England. A.D. 1184.

In XXXI. ȝere of Herry cam into this lond Eraclius, Patriark of Jerusalem, with letteris of the Pope Lucius, and prayed the Kyng to strength hem ageyn the Sarasines. He excused him be the werre that he had with Frauns. With his good, he seid, he wold help; with his body he myte not. Than the Patriark seide, "Alle the partes of the world send us money; we seke a prince, and not money." The Kyng folowid him onto Dover, and plesed him with fayre wordis. But the Patriark seide onto him on this wise, "Thou at this tyme forsakest the laboure for thi Lord. Before this tyme thou hast regned in gret joye: fro this tyme schal thou regne in gret misery. To the Kyng of Frauns hast thou be fals. Seynt Thomas[2] hast thou killid; and now to forsake the proteccion of alle Cristen men!" But whan the Patriarch aspied that the Kyng was wroth, for he wex pale for angir, he bowed his hed and his nek, and seide, "Do with me, as thou ded to Seynt Thomas.[2] I had as lef be killid of the in Inglond, as of a Sarasine in Surre; for I hold the wers than ony Sarasine." The Kyng seide, "And alle my men had o body and o mouth, thei durst not sey that thou seist." And he answerd, "Thei folow the pray, and not the man:" and so thei departed.

Legend.

Sone aftir Crist appered in the eyir, visibly hanging on the Crosse, at Dunstable, fro myd day tyl even: whech signe was undirstand, that oure Lord was wroth with thoo men that wold not venge His cause.

---

[1] *Here lith, &c.*] "Hic jacet sepultus inclytus Rex Arthurus cum Wennevereia uxore sua secunda in insula Avalonia." See Girald. Cambr. "De Instructione Principum." 8vo. Lond., 1846.

[2] *Seynt Thomas.*] These words have been struck out with a pen in the MS. C.C.C., and the words 'a knave' written over them.

A.D. 1184. TheChurch at Norwich burnt.

In this tyme, that is to sey, the ȝere of oure Lord 1172, was the Cherch of munkys in Norwich brent be the malys of the cite, as men sey, and the cyte therefor lost grete privyleges. And the next ȝere folowand was Mary the sistir of Seynt Thomas[1] mad abbes of Berkyng.

Lucius III., Pope.

In this tyme were these Popes:[2]—Lucius III.,[3] foure ȝere. In his tyme Maister Pers, called Comestor, mad that book that is clepid "Historia Scolastica," where the Bybil is abreggid, and many othir stories put in therto.

Urban III., Pope.

Aftir him was Urbanus Tercius o ȝere; for whan he herd Jerusalem was take, he deied for hevynesse.

Gregory VIII., Pope.

And than was Gregorius VIII. He sent many bulles to Cristen princes to go to Jerusalem.

Clement III., Pope.

And than was Clement the Thirde. He mad the cloystir at Seynt Laurens oute of the wallis; and the Paleis Lateranensis he mad newe.

Anno 6339—6374. 1141–1176.

A.D. 1190. Henry V., [VI.] Emperor,

Anno 6375. 1177.—Herry the V. regned VIII. ȝere. He was crowned in Rome, and the same monthe went he into Naples, for to conqwere it: and in the fourt ȝere of his regne he had conclusion of his conquest.

Celestine III., Pope.

In this tyme was Celestinus III. Pope VI. ȝere. He corowned this Herry.

Innocent III., Pope.

And than was[4] Innocencius III., XXIII ȝere. He mad the gret hospital in Rome of Seynt Spirit, and renewyed the Cherch of Seynte Sixte. He mad many Decretales, many sermones, and a book whech is clepid "Of the wrecchid kynde of man."[5] In this tyme the

---

[1] *Seynt Thomas.*] Struck out with a pen in C.C.C.

[2] *these Popes.*] Alexander III., Pope from A.D. 1161—1180, is here omitted in both MSS.

[3] *Lucius III.*] The word 'Papa' is written in the margin by the original Scribe opposite the name of this and the five succeeding Popes.

[4] *And than was, &c.*] The word Papa is written in the margin in the same hand as the text.

[5] "*Of the wrecchid kynde of man.*"] "De contemptu mundi, sive de Miseria humanæ conditionis, Libri tres." See page 421 of vol. i. of the works of Pope Innocent III.—fol. Cologne, 1575.

Frenschmen took Constantinople, and the Venecianes holp hem gretly. The cuntre merveiled gretly for the strength of the wallis, and for the prophecye that was thereof, that it schuld nevyr be take but be an aungelle: and happed so that thei broke the wal at a certeyn place, where an aungel was depeynted. In this tyme was Almaricus dampned, that held many straunge heresies at Parise.

A.D. 1190. TheFrench take Constantinople.

Anno 6376—6382. 1178–1184.

Anno 6383. 1185.[1]—Octo the Fourte, of the nacion of Saxones, regned IIII. ȝere. And he was corowned of Pope Innocent in Seint Petir Cherch. But he was not gretly honoured for his malicious condiciones. He faute with the Romanes, and went into Naples ageyn the Popes comaundment, and took awey that kyngdam fro Frederik that was Kyng of Scicile. Therfor the Pope cursed him. And in the fourt ȝere of his regne was Frederik the Secund chosen; and he rod into Almayn, and ovyrcam this Octo.

A.D. 1208. Otho IV., Emperor.

Anno 6384—6386. 1186–1188.

Anno 6387. 1189.—Frederik the Secunde was crowned of Honory, the Pope, in Seint Petir Cherch, and regned XXIII. ȝere. This man, fro his ȝong age was be the Cherch supported, and broute to this dignite; and he, aftir his promocion, was ful onkind onto the Cherch; therefor the same Pope that corowned him, considering his rebellioune, cursed him, and asoiled[2] al his barones fro that feith whech thei had mad to him.

A.D. 1212. Frederic II., Emperor.

In these dayes[3] began the too Ordres of Prechoures and of Menoures. The Prechoures Order began Seynt Dominicus in Tholous the ȝere of oure Lord

Institution and confirmation of certain religious Orders:

---

[1] 1185.] The Chronicler here loses ten years in his calculation of dates, by neglecting to account for the Interregnum of Philip of Suabia.

[2] *asoiled*] assoyled. C.C.C.

[3] *In these dayes*, &c.] Here is written in the margin, in an old hand, "De institutione Fratrum Predicatorum et Minorum in tempore Honorii II., Papæ."

A.D. 1212. Preachers, Minorites, Augustinians, Carmelites.

a M.CCIII. The Order of Menoures began Seint Frraunceys fast be the cite of Assise, whech covent is clepid Seynt Mary of Aungeles, III. ȝear aftir Dominic. The othir too Ordres Heremites of Seint Austin, and Heremites of the Mount Carmele, were longe befor; but thei were not confermed of the Cherch tyl Honorius was Pope. And in the tyme of Innocent this same Ordir of Seynt Austyn had a place pryvyleged be that Pope or the Prechoures were confermed.[1] The place is biggid in the worchip of Seynt Antony, in the cuntre cleped Ardyngnete, whech stant in the provynce of Senys.

Death of Hen. II., of England. A.D. 1189. Coronation of Richard I.

In these dayes deyed Kyng Herry the Secunde; and whan he was ded, Richard, his brothir[2] was crowned of Baldewyn bischop of Cauntirbyry, the IX. day of September, whech day is hald suspect of supersticious men, and onto the Jewys it was not esy. For than dwelled thei in this reme; and at the Kyngis coronacion thei drew to London, in hope for to have grace of the Kyng, that thei schuld pay lesse tribute than thei ded before. The Kyng comaunded that there schuld no Jew com in the Cherch in tyme of his coronacion, ne in the Halle at tyme of mete. Summe of them were malapert, and entred into the Halle; and happed a man to smite a Jew, and seid on to him that he brak the Kyngis comaundement.

Great massacre of Jews in London.

The puple that stod there, supposyng it was the Kyngis wil that the Jewis schuld be served soo, and with stonis and staffis soute the Jewis thorw London, beet hem, and robbed hem, and be this exaumple thus were they served thorw oute the rem, and thus voided they the rem.

Richard raises money for the Crusade.

The Kyng, for he purposed to go to the Holy Lond, and must make chevesauns for mech money, he sent

---

[1] *were confermed.*] Added in the margin probably on revision.

[2] *his brothir.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1189.
The Castles of Roxburgh and Berwick sold to the King of Scotland.

aftir the Kyng of Scottis, and, aftir he had do his homage, he seld him the Castelles of Berwyk and Rokisborow for ten thousand mark. Thanne was there at Dorham a bischop, a old man and rich: to him seld the Kyng the Province of Dorham, for his lyve, for a gret summe of good. And than wold the Kyng sumtyme in merth sei,—"I am a crafty workman; for I can make of a elde bischop a ȝong erl."[1]

Richard and Philip I. of France proceed to the Holy Land.
A.D. 1190.
Troubles with the 'Griffons' at Messina.

In the secund ȝere of his regne Philip, the Kyng of Frauns, and he took here jornay into the Holy Lond; Richard be lond, and Philip be the se; where the Kyng of Frauns in face schewid himself a lomb, and in work a leon. Then cam both into the yld of Scicile, and to the cyte of Messane. Philip lay in the cyte, and Richard in a hospital withoute. On Cristmesse day many of Richard men com into towne to buy vitaile, and the Frenschmen, coupled with a nacion thei clepe Griphones, bet and killid many of Richard men. The same day Richard leid sege to the cite, and thei sperd the gates, and kept the wallis; but Richard power was so strong that the Kyng of Frauns asked him forgifnesse, and profered gret amendis; for he had a castel of tre, whech he cleped Mategrifon, to whech men myte make no resistens. And with that same he took the cyte of Acon, in the Holy Lond: summe men clepe it Acris.

Richard proceeds to Cyprus,
A.D. 1191.
where he dethrones Isaac, King of the island.

Fro Cicile as thei went in the se, a grete wynd blew hem into Ciper, where that schip that his modir was in, and his wif, was al broke; and thei of the cuntre cam, and spoiled it, and treted the ladies onmanerly. Richard sent to the Kyng of the ild, that amendis schuld be mad; and he wold not. Wherfor Richard pursewid him fro town to town, til he be-

---

[1] *erl.*] This word was omitted in the text of the MS. C.C.C., but it has been inserted above the line in a late hand.

A.D. 1191. segid him; and the Kyng graunted to make amendis o that condicion, that Richard schuld not put him in no fetteris of yrun. He graunted his peticion: but whan he had him, he put him in fetteris of sylvyr. So kept he the Kyng, and disposed al the ylde at his pleasuns.

Taking of Acre. A.D. 1193.

In the ȝere of oure Lord[1] M.CXCIII. was the cite of Acris take.[2] Sum men, as we seid, clepe it Acon; and in elde[3] tyme was it cleped Tholomaide. At whech takyng the duk of Ostrich folowid the Kyng Richard, desiring for to have part both of his worchip, and eke of swech tresoure as schuld be take. And who it happed, whethir be chaunce, or elles of purpos, the dukes standard was trod undir fote: whech vilony the duke peisid ful hevyly; and hom he went with his hoost, purposing in this matere to be vengid. The Kyng Richard had there alle the worchip. And thei too, Philip and Richard, departed the tresore of the cite, and eke the prisoneres. Philip sold his prisoneres: Richard hung his.

Richard is betrayed by the Duke of Austria. A.D. 1192.

But as Kyng Richard cam homward, he was aspied be the duke of Ostrich men, and the duke took him prisonere, and seld him to the emperoure Frederik[4] for a hundred thousand marc and XL. thousand. Too bischoppis were leyd for him in pleggis,[5] and he cam hom to purveye this mony; and, as is seid, the jewelis of cherchis were molten, chalis and crosses, gold and silver on ymages feet, an[6] all for to pay his raunson. The Pope cursed this Duke of Ostriche; and he, aftir mech sorow and tribulacion, deied so acursed. But, for al that, the mony was payed.

---

[1] *Lord.*] C.C.C.—This word is omitted by mistake in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *take.*] C.C.C.—Written 'tale' by mistake in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[3] *elde*] old. C.C.C.

[4] *Frederik.*] This mistake occurs in both MSS. Frederic Barbarossa died in 1190, when he was succeeded by Henry VI.

[5] *in pleggis*] to plege. C.C.C.

[6] *an*] and. C.C.C.

Aftir this doo Kyng Richard sat at mete at Westminster, and tydyngges cam onto him that Kyng Philip was entred into Normandie, to take that cuntre fro him. Then saide the Kyng, "Treuly and I schal nevyr turne my face fro him ward onto the tyme that I mete with him." And anon he mad breke the wal of the hous that he sat in, and streyt went to the se. There faute he with the Kyng, and drof him out of Normandie.

A.D. 1194. Liberation of King Richard. He proceeds to Normandy against K. Philip, and defeats him.

Aftirward, at besegyng of a castelle, (the name is Castel of Chalomes,) he was hit with a arblast, of whech wounde he deyed. And in his testament he asigned his brothir son, whech hite Arthure, for to be Kyng aftir him. For Jon, his brothir, was so fals onto him, and odious to the puple, that no man desired him. And because Jon soute occasiones for to kil this Arthure, therefor the moder of Arthure, cleped Constauns, put hir son to dwelle with the Kyng of Frauns. But Jon sowte him oute, and killid him, and took his sistir Helianore, and put hir undir the kepyng of foure men, that there schuld no frute growe of hir wombe.

Richard is slain while besieging the Castle of Chalus Chabrol. A.D. 1199. John succeeds to the throne. Murder of Prince Arthur. [A.D. 1202.]

Than pursewed he a dyvors betwix him and his wif, whech was doutyr to the erle of Glouceter, because thei were cosynes in the thirde degre; and weddid a fayre lady, thei clepid hir Blanc, doutyr to the erle of Engelysyn.

John divorces his wife. A.D. 1200.

Than felle in this lond a gret strif for eleccion of the bischop of Cauntyrbyry. For summe of the munkes chose the sup-prioure of the same place, and summe chose the bischop of Norwich, aftir the Kyngis wil.

Dispute as to the election to the See of Canterbury. A.D. 1205.

Whan these elecciones cam to the Pope, he anulled the eleccion of the bischop for insufficiens, and the eleccion of the sup-prioure, for the Kyng hated hym; and so he assyned hem to bischop Maister Stevene Langdon. And whanne the Kyng

Stephen Langton appointed by Pope Innocent III.

A.D. 1205. herd that the munkys consentid thereto, he banechid hem alle oute of the monastery.

England is placed under an interdict. A.D. 1208. For this inobediens, and many myschevous dedis whech he ded in manslauth, gloteny, and lecchery, and specialy robbyng and spoilyng of monasteries, the Pope cursed the Kyng, and assoiled alle his lich[1] men fro his obediauns. The lond eke was enterdited ny sevene ȝere.

The King is received by Pandulph. A.D. 1213. And than cam fro Rome a legate and Stevene Langdon; and aftir the Kyngis repentauns and promisses, he assoiled him, and losed the enterdite.

Death of John. A.D. 1216. The ende of the Kyng was lich his lif, for, as thei sey, he deyed of poyson at Swyneshede. He was caried forther o lyve, but there was he servyd.

Legend. In tho dayes was founde a bok in Spayn in a town thei clepe it Tollete. A Jewe brak a bank of ston, for to make more space to his vine, and fond there a grete ston, in whech ston, whan it was broke, thei fond a book with leves as thik as a bord, whech was wrytyn with Hebrew and Latyn. As mech lettir was therein as in a Sauter. The general sentens of the bok was of the tripartite world that schuld be fro Adam to Antecrist.[2] There he expressed the properte of men, what dyvers condicion thei schuld have that schuld leve in the dyvers worldis. The first begynyng of the thirde world schuld be Crist. For it was wrytyn thus:—"In the third world schal the Son of God be bore of a mayde Mari, and deye for the helth of man." And whan the Jew herd this he was baptized, and all his house.

Anno 6388—6399. 1190-1201.

Anno Mundi viM.CCCC. [Christi] 1202.

Anno 6401—6409. 1203-1211.

---

[1] *lich*] lege. C.C.C.

[2] *Antecrist.*] The word is so written in both MSS.

A.D. 1216.

Change of the Annotation of this Chronicle.

Anno 6410—6413. 1212–1215.—These IIII. ȝeres be the last ȝeres[1] of the regne of Kyng Jon. And ye schal undirstand[2] that fro this tyme forward oure annotacion[3] schal be aftir the regne of the Kyngis of Ynglond: for the empire, in maner, sesed here; and on this maner. For aftir that tyme that Frederik was deposed, the eleccion was dyvyded, and this division lastid many ȝeres. Summe of hem chose the Kyng of Castel, in Spayn: and summe chose the erl of Cornwayle, Richard, brothir to the Kyng of Ynglond, whech mad the Abbey of Hayles, and there is he byryed.

Henry III. is crowned at Gloucester.

Anno 6414—6468. 1216–1270.—Herry the Third, Kyng of Ynglond, regned LV. ȝere. Whan he was but IX. ȝere old he was crowned at Glouceter be the hand of Guallo, a legat, sent into this lond to make pees in this lond.[4] For Lodewik, the Kyngis son of Frauns, was com into this lond at request of the lordes in Kyng Jones tyme. And what titil he had to the crowne thei telle: for he weddid Arthure sistir, whech Arthure was very eyir. This was the cause whi Herri was crowned at Glouceter; for thei durst not go to London, for the powere of Lodewik. Eke in his crownyng thei sette on his hed but a chapelet, that thei schuld do no prejudise to the Cherch of Cantirbyry, to whom longith to crowne the Kyng. Than mad thei crye thorw the reme, that no man in that month folowyng schuld go oute at his dore, ne no woman, but thei had a chapelet on her hed.

---

[1] *be the last ȝeres.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *And ye schal undirstand.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *Oure annotacion,* &c.] From this point the chronological arrangement is no longer confused, and false dates are comparatively few and unimportant. The extreme years of the several columns of dates are now grouped at the beginning, instead of at the end, of each King's reign. The confused blending of foreign with English history had rendered such an arrangement impossible till this change in the "annotacion" occurred.

[4] *to make pecs in this lond.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1217. TheFrench besiege Lincoln. They are repulsed by the King's army.

In the second ȝere of this Herry, Lodewik cam fro London, and besegid the cyte of Lyncoln, for his Councel gided him that he schuld have the principal townis and possession; and than he schuld conqwere sone the lond. So he cam on the south side; and the Kyngis hoost on the north side. And because thei had the hille, thei put Lodewik to a gret rebuke, for he fled and went onto London.

Peace is made at Kingston-upon-Thames. Louis returns to France.

Sone aftir that, be mediacion of the legat Guallo, the parties were gadered in a wood fast be Kyngston upon Temse, and there was a trety of pes. And, aftir mech thing rehersid, Lodewyk was bownde be his oth that alle the londis whech the Kyng of Ynglond had sumtymme in his possession, as Normandie, Gyan, and swech othir, schuld be restored ageyn to Kyng Herry, and that he schuld laboure to hir[1] fader that he schuld consent thereto. Thus were thei acorded; and Lodewyk went hom into Frauns. The cite of London lent him vM. pound to his costis. In that same ȝere was the translacion of Seynt Swithine.[2]

A.D. 1218. Henry is again crowned at Westminster.

In the third ȝere of his regne he was crowned ageyn at Westminster of Stevene Langdon, bischop of Cauntirbyry, for certyn causes whech we rehersed before. And in that same ȝere the Blake Munkys had her first Chaptre at Oxeforth for reformacion of the Ordyr.

A.D. 1219. Westminster Abbey rebuilt.

In his IIII. ȝere was the new Cherch at Westminster begunne. And in that same ȝere was the translacion of Seynt Thomas.[3]

A.D. 1220. The Friars Preachers come into England.

In his V. ȝere deyed Seint Dominic. And in that same ȝere the Frere Prechouris cam into Ynglond, undir proteccion of the bischop of Wynchester, his name was Petrus de Rupibus. There cam of hem in noumbir XIII., with here prioure, clepid Gilbertus de Fraxineto. Here mansion was first at Oxenford, in the parish of Seynt Edward: sith were thei remeved to the place where thei be now. A.D. 1220.

---

[1] *hir*] his. C.C.C.

[2] July 15.

[3] July 7.

In the sext ȝere Stevene bischop of Cauntirbiry held a Councel at Osney, where a dekne was accused, that for love he had to a ȝong woman, doutyr to a Jew, he suffered him to circuncide him, and reneyed Crist and his baptem, and took the Sacrament of the Auter, and broute it to the Jewis; and for these enormes was he brent. There was accused eke a carl that procured men to nayle him on a crosse; for in handis and feet were seyn the woundes of the nayles, and in his side a wound eke; and in his fonnednesse he wold sey that he was so arayed for savacion of the world. He was put in prison for evyr, and nevyr to have othir repast but bread and watir.

A.D. 1221. Abp. Langton holds a Council at Osney Abbey.

In his VII. ȝere the Pope Honorius sent down to the Kyng and the Parlement, that thei schuld graunt him this liberte in the Cherch of Ynglond, that he schuld gyve o benefice in every cathedral cherch, and in every monasteri that is wel endewid. It was answered in this maner, that this mater myte not be sped withoute consent of the patrones, and consent eke of the General Councelle. So was the mater fayre put o side.

A.D. 1222. Honorius III. claims Church patronage in England.

In the X. ȝere[1] of Herry deyed the Pope Honorius, that was Pope X. ȝere and VII. monthis. He mad grete reperacion in Rome, both in wallis and in cherchis.

A.D. 1225. Death of Honorius III.

And aftir him[2] was Gregorius IX., XIIII. ȝere. With him dwelled a Frere Prechoure cleped Raymund. He was Penytauncere undir the Pope; and be his comaundment the frere gadered oute of many bokes that book whech thei clepe 'Decretales.'[3] And the Pope wrot to alle Doctoures of Lawe, that thei schuld in Scole use this compilyng.

Gregory IX., Pope.

---

[1] *In the X. ȝere*, &c.] The word 'Papa' occurs in the margin in the writing of the original Scribe.

[2] *And aftir him*, &c.] 'Papa' in the margin.

[3] *Decretales.*] In the margin.

A.D. 1226.
Death of Stephen Langton.

In the XI. ȝere of Herry deied Stevene Langdon, bischop of Cauntirbury, that was a grete clerk in his dayes in making of many bokes, specialy upon Scripture. For his werk upon the XII. Prophetys[1] have I seyn.

A.D. 1227.
The Gascons invite K. Henry into France.

In his XII. ȝere cam into Ynglond the archbishop of Burdews, and many of the best of Gyan and Normandie, desiring of the Kyng that he schuld come into that cuntre, and thei wold help him with al her power. But this mater was dilayed be on Fulco of Borow, a justice; and thei went hom frustrate of her purpos.

A.D. 1228.
Great storm at London.

In the XIII. ȝere of Herry fel a mervelous thing at London. For evene as the bischop was at Masse at Seynt Poules there felle a thundir, and a wedyr so dirk and so lowd, that men supposed the Cherch should falle. Alle that were there runne awey for fere: with the bischop at the auter abod no man but a dekyn. Ther was eke swech stynk, no man myte suffir it.

Earl Richard marries the widow of the Earl of Gloucester.

In that same ȝere Richard, the Kyngis brothir, weddid the lady Ysabelle, that was wyf to Gilbert Herl of Gloucester. That same Gilbert was ryth affectuous onto the Heremites of Seynt Austin; for, as it is seid, he was aqweyntid with Doctour Gilis in Frauns; and at his request Gylis was meved to make that bok of Governauns of Princes. But never the lasse he entitelid it to Philip, dauphin of Frauns. It is saide among us comounly, that this Gilbert graunted on to Gylis that he schuld make a Hous of oure Ordre in Ynglond. And because Gilbert deied or it was doo, Richard his son fulfillid his fader desire;

---

[1] *upon the XII. Prophetys.*] MS. Oriel Coll. Oxon. LIII. ff. 88—218. MS. Trin. Coll. Oxon. LXVI. There are also MSS. in the Public Library at Cambridge, and in the Library of Corpus Christi College in the same University, Num. XXXI.

for, in the ȝere of oure Lord 1230, Alisaunder the Pope gaf us leve for to edifie coventis in these places, Surek, Clayanger, Clare, and Sidingborn, and othir: but there tok no place but Clare and Wodous, which was than clepid Bica, or ellis Vilentynge. Than had this Ordre leve for to entyr, and bigge. But thei biggid not gretly onto the ȝere of oure Lord 1248. A.D. 1228.

In the XVI. ȝere of Herry felle a new contraversie at Cauntirbury: for summe chose the prioure of the Trinite Cherch, and summe chose Maystir[1] Jon Blundy. Whan this eleccion cam to the Pope, he cassed it; and than the prioure of the Trinite resined his ryte; and the Pope refused Maister Jon Blundy, because the bischop of Wynchester wrot onto the emperoure for his promocioune. This cause was alleggid ageyn him, that he had too benefices, with cure of soule, withoute leve of the Cort. Than were the munkis at her lyberte to have a new eleccion; and thei chose Maistir Edmund Abyngdon, a holy man, whech was thanne tresorer of Salisbury.

A.D. 1231. Disputes as to the succession to the See of Canterbury.

Election of Edmund Abyngton.

In the XVIII. ȝere of Herry deied Maistir Hewewelle, bischop of Lyncolnne. And thei chose to her bischop Maister Robert Grostede, whech man we clepe in Scole "Lincolnensis." For he wrot mech thing upon Philosophye; he mad eke a noble book thei clepe his Dictes.[2]

A.D. 1233. Robert Grosteste made Bp. of Lincoln.

---

[1] *Mayster.*] This word is repeated in the MS. Pub. Lib., and written "Maister" in the second instance. It is not repeated in the MS. C.C.C.

[2] *his Dictes.*] There is a MS. of this work at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, Num. CCLVII. There are also several MSS. in the College Libraries at Oxford: Merton, x. 2; Oriel, xx. 1; Magd. xcviii. 1, and ccii. 2. Capgrave tells us that Grosteste bequeathed all his books to the Minorites of Oxford; indeed, no less than seventy-six MSS. of his works are preserved in the College Libraries there. See page 156, sub A.D. 1251.

Henry marries Eleanor of Provence. [A.D. 1236.]

In that same ȝere King Herry weddid Helianore, douter to the erl of Province. The wedding was in the fest of Fabian and Sebastian,[1] at Westminster.

The Jews accused of murder at Norwich.

In the same ȝere the Jewys of Norwych were convicte before the Kyng, that thei had stole a child, whos name was William; and thei circumcided him, and kept him in secrete place many dayes, and, as it is comonly said at Norwich, thei put him on a crosse, and so he deyed.

A.D. 1234. Attempt of a madman to kill the King.

In the XIX. ȝere of the Kyng, at Wodstok, cam in a clerk, whech feyned him a prophete, and sumtyme feyned him frentik, whech had upon him to scharp knyves, with whech he had slayn the Kyng, had not a holy woman sent him warnyng. So was he taken and sent to Coventre, there drawen and hanged. Men sey that he was sent be on William Marys that was outelawed, and dwelled in a ylde betwix Cornwayle and Wales. Thei that dwelle there clepe it Lundy.

A.D. 1237. Prince Edward born.

In XXII. ȝere of Herry was Edward the First born in the feste of Seynt Bothulp.[2] And he was baptized of Otho, legat, and confermed be Seint Edmund, then bischop of Cauntirbury. The modir of this Edward was Helianore, as we seide, doutir to Raymund, erl of Provynce, whech had a othir doutyr cleped Margarete; sche was maried to the Kyng of Frauns.

The Bishop of Hereford resigns his see.

In this same ȝere Maystir Richard Maydeston, bischop of Hertforth, resigned his bischoprich, and took the habite of Frere Menouris, at Oxenforth.

And in this tyme was Hewe,[3] a cardinal of the Order of Prechoures, that postiled al the Bible. He was eke the first begynner of the Concordauns, whech is a tabil onto the Bibil.

---

[1] January 20.

[2] June 17.

[3] *Hewe.*] Hugo de Sancto Victore. See his works, published at Venice, fol., 1588.

In the XXIIII. ȝere of this Kyng the legat Otho went oute of Ynglond; and, thouȝ he went straunge weyes, ȝet was he aspied of the emperoure meny, take, and robbid of al that he had gote in Ynglond; and thereto[1] put in prison. A.D. 1239. Otho, the Legate, leaves England.

In the XXVI. ȝere of Herry the Kyng gaf to Edward his son al the cuntre of Gascon. A.D. 1241. Henry gives the Gascon towns to Prince Edward.

And in the same ȝere deyed Celestin the Fourte; and Innocent the IIII. was mad Pope. This Innocent canonized Seynt Petir of Melan. Innocent IV., Pope.

In the XXX. ȝere of his regne he let make a new money of gold, whech we clepe now a ferthing of gold: than thei cleped it a peny of gold; for this was the cry thorw the lond, that no man refuse a peny of gold, but take it in stede of XXđ. A.D. 1245. Introduction of new coinage.

In the XXXII. ȝere Herry was merkyd with the tokne of the Holy Crosse, for to go to Jerusalem. For the Pope wrote down to alle the foure Orderes that alle the prechouris whech schuld sey sermones schuld excite the puple onto this holy viage. A.D. 1247. Henry assumes the Cross.

In the next ȝere was the Kyng of Frauns take prisonere be the Soudan, and raunsond to a horibil summe. For aftir tyme he had wunne a grete cyte, he was bold, and faute with the Soudan in the feld. Heraudis seid that the Soudan had but litil pupil; but in the myddis of the batail come Sarasines innoumbirabel, and distroyed the Kyngis host, and took him prisonere. A.D. 1248. Louis IX., King of France, taken prisoner by the Sultan.

In this same time[2] risin in Frauns many thousand of carlis, pretending alle that thei were schippardes. The leder of hem seid he had a revelacion be oure Lord Jesus, that swech maner meny schuld have victori of the Sarasines, and wynn the Holy Lond. A.D. 1251. Rising of Shepherds in France.

---

[1] *thereto*] other to. C.C.C.

[2] *time.*] This word has been inserted above the line by a later hand in the MS. Pub. Lib.—tyme; C.C.C.

A.D. 1251. The lordes were aferd of swech maner puple so sodeynly up, and with the powere of hem that were redy to the viage of Jerusalem faute with hem, and distroyed hem. And, whan her maistir was take, he was a knowe that al his felauchip was infect with heresie.

A.D. 1250. The Cistercians.

In the 35 ȝere the munkis of the Ordir of Sistewis entred here monastery at Hayles, whech edified Richard, duk of Cornwaile, the Kyngis brothir, and aftir chosen emperoure. Thei entred in the Assumpcion of oure Lady.[1]

A.D. 1251. Death of Robert Grosteste.

In the XXXVI. ȝere of hir[2] regne deied Robert Grostede, born in Suffolk, and bischop of Lincolne. He beqwathe al his bokes to the Frere Menouris of Oxenforth. He had be at Rome, and pleted for the rite of the Cherch of Ynglond undir the Pope Innocent. For that same Pope[3] reised many new thingis of this lond, and gaf the benefices withoute consent of the Kyng, or patrones, or ony othir. And this same bischop Robert wrot and seid ageyn the Pope; and at Rome, in his presens, appeled fro him to the hy Kinge[4] of Hevene. So cam he hom, and deied. And in his deth he appered to the Pope, and smet him on the side with the pike of his crosse staf, and seid thus: "Rise, wrech, and come to the dom." This wordis herd the cubiculeris, and the strok was seyn in his side, for he deyed anon aftir that.

A.D. 1252. Simon de Montfort recalled from Bordeaux.

In the XXXVII. ȝere he put fro his office Simund Mountforth, for he was seneschal of Burdews; and sent in his stede on Stevene Longspere.[5] This Sy-

---

[1] August 15.

[2] *hir*] his. C.C.C.

[3] *Pope.*] Added above the line in a later hand in the MS. Pub. Lib., but forming part of the text in C.C.C.

[4] *Kinge.*] C.C.C.—Written 'inge,' by mistake, in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[5] *Longspere.*] This word was originally written 'Lonspere.' The 'n' has been altered into a 'd,' and the mark of contraction added, at a later period.

A.D. 1252.

mund was eke erle of Leyceter, and whan he wist he schuld oute of his office, he delyveryd to the Frenschmen thre good castelles, and he went and dwelled in Frauns. On of the casteles hite Frunsak, the secunde Revanges, the third Reglan.

A.D. 1253. Prince Edward marries Eleanor of Castile.

In the XXXVIII. ȝere went Edward into Spayn, and browt hom Helianore his wyf. Sum sey sche was the Kyngis doutir of Castille; summe sey sche was his sistir. The Kynge eke took Edward a chartor seled with gold, in whech he relesed al the rite that he had to Gyan and Gascon. For he schewid there that Herry the Secund had gove him tho londis, and Richard and Jon had confirmed that gift, and al his rite he relesid at that mariage.

A.D. 1254. Convents built at Ludlow and Leicester.

In XXXIX. was Seynt Clare canonized, whech was of the Ordir of Seyn Fraunceys and Seynt Damian. And in that same ȝere were biggid too coventis in Ynglond of Austines:[1] on at Ludlow, a othir at Leyceter.

A.D. 1255. Great scarcity in England.

And in the next ȝere was a grete hungir. And that ȝere was biggid the Covent of Schrouysbury of the same Ordir.

Legend of S. Augustine. His Orders permitted to dwell in towns.

In the same tyme Seynt Austen appered onto Alisaundre[2] the Pope with a grete hed and a lytil body; and the Pope[3] inquired whi he appered soo. Augustine[4] seid, for his succession were not called to dwelle in cites and townes, as were the Prechoures and the Menoures. And anon the Pope mad a bulle, in which we had leve to dwelle in citees, and gyve ensaumple of good lyf.

---

[1] *of Austines.*] Added in the margin.

[2] *Alisaundre.*] The word 'Papa' is written in the margin by the original Scribe.

[3] *Pope.*] C.C.C.—In the MS. Pub. Lib., there are only the letters 'Po,' written upon an erasure.

[4] *Augustine.*] C.C.C.—In the MS. Pub. Lib., 'Augus,' written upon an erasure. Both in this case and the previous one there was not room to write the entire word.

A.D. 1259. Great scarcity. In XLIIII. ȝere was a grete hungir, that men and bestis deied for defaut of mete.

The Provisions of Oxford. In the same ȝere was a Parlement hald at Oxenforth, where the Kyng was swore that he schuld kepe the statutes were mad there. On was that he schuld exile alle alienes, specialy his bretherin on the modir side, and eke Richard his brothir, whech was chose emperoure, no thing with worchip, for he payed to the electoure grete summes of god[1] for to have her voyses. Ther were chose eke XXIIII. lordis, whech schuld governe the kyngdam, and herto was the Kyng swore.

Simony at Norwich. In that same tyme the monkis of Norwich chose to her bischop a man that hite Simon, because he lent hem CCC. mark; of whech eleccion were mad these vers:—

"Trecente marce, Simon, si pontificent te,
Per numisma teres, fit Simon Simonis heres."

This is the Englisch:—

"Thre hundred mark, Simon, if thei make the bischop.
With mony thou tredis thi trace, so Simond Simon eyer he was.'

Alexander IV. condemns certain heretical writings. In this tyme were condempned be the Pope Alisaundre too cursed bokes. On seid that all religious men, thou thei preche the Word of God, if it be soo that thei be of swech Order as begge, thei shal nevyr be saved. The othir seyde that the Gospel whech Crist prechid bryngith no man to perfeccion; and that same Gospel schuld be a voided in the ȝere of oure Lord M.CCLX., and that same ȝere schuld beginne the doctrine of Joachim, whech doctrine the makere of the book clepid "The everlasting Gospelle."

---

[1] *god*] good. C.C.C.

A.D. 1261. Convention between the Kings of England and France.

In the ȝere of Henry 46 was convencion mad betwix the Kyng of Frauns and him, that the Kyng of Frauns schuld have Angoye, Rone, Cenomaine, and Picardie; so that the same Kyng of Frauns schuld pay XXV. thousand marc be ȝere; and many othir covenauntes were betwix hem, so the Kyng of Ynglond schuld do homage to the Kyng of Frauns.

A.D. 1262. Chapter of the Friars Preachers at London.

In the XLVII ȝere of Herry was the General Chapiter of the Prechoures Ordre at London, with gret cost and gret solempnite.

The King and Barons appeal to the King of France. [A.D. 1263.] Council at Amiens.

And in that same ȝere the grete debate betwix the Kyng and his barnes was compromitted to the dom of the Kyng of Frauns, that whatsoevyr he dempt, they schuld observe. So mette thei alle at Amyas; and there the Kyng of Frauns gave sentens directly ageyn the barnes.

Civil war in England. Battle of Northampton.

Than began mech werre and many batayles, betwix the Kyng and the barnes. The first batail was at Northampton, where the Kyng beseged Simund Mountforth and his felauchip. And the Kyng brak the wallis, and entred upon hem. And there were take Simon Mountforth,[1] the ȝonger son to the forsaid Symon, that was erle of Leycester. Ther were take with him Baldewyn Wake, Raf Basset, Petir Mountforth, and ny a hundred knytes.

A.D. 1264. Battle of Lewes.

In the XLIX. ȝere had the Kyng, with the lordes, anothir batayle, fast be Lews. On the Kingis party was Richard, emperoure of Almayn, and Prince Edward. But in that batail the Kyng was take; and Edward was plegge for his fader; and Richard emperoure was take in a mylle, and led to the Toure of London.

Henry is taken prisoner.

Battle of Evesham.

Than had thei the third batail at Evesham. There was Simon taken, and schamfully ded; for thei smet

---

Simon Mountforth.] The MSS. C.C.C. here adds the words,—"and his felawschip."

A.D. 1264. Death of Simon de Montfort.

of first his hed; and than his armes, and than leggis: and so lay the body lich a stok.

A.D. 1265. Siege of London.

In the L. ȝere of this Kyng he besegid London; for thei were with the barnes ageyn the King. Ther the Kyng tok the principalis of London, and sette hem in prison at Wyndesore. So the cyte was fayn to bye here liberte of the Kyng for xxM. marc. And than was Gilbert, erle of Glouceter, acordid to the Kyng in this maner, that the erle schuld ask the Kyng forgevenesse of alle trespas. And so he ded ful mekly; and the Kyng took him to grace. Thanne was set a peyne, if evyr he trespased more, he schuld pay to the Kyng xM. marc.

A.D. 1266.

In the LI. ȝere Octobon, a legate, cam into Ynglond, and mad ful good Constituciones for pes of the Cherch; and he confermed the Constitucion mad before be Otho.

Prince Edward assumes the Cross.

In that ȝere Edward was merkid with the Holy Crosse for to go to Surry with the Kyng of Frauns.

Death of Pope Clement IV.

In this same ȝere deied Clemens IIII. He was first a weddid man, and a advocat to the Kyng of Frauns; and, aftir deth of his wif, for his sobirnesse and good lyvyng thei chose him Pope. It is seid of him that he wold nevir graunt pluralite of benefices.

A.D. 1267. Louis IX., of France, proceeds on the Crusade.

In the LII. ȝere of Kyng Herri, Kyng Lodewik of Frauns went into the Holy Lond. Prince Edward and Gilbert, erl of Glouceter, folowid him. Kyng Lodewik deyed there, and mad a full holy ende. Than cam Charlys his son, and continued the devocion of his fader. Ther faute thei with the Sarasines. And that cuntre is passing ful of drye sond; and the Saracenes went up onto a hille,[1] and reised the sond, for to blynde the Cristen men. But God of Hevene sent his servauntes swech a reyn, that the dust greved

---

[1] *a hille*] a dry hille. C.C.C.

A.D. 1267.

hem not. Than treted the Sarasines with the Cristen men, that there schuld be pes betwix hem upon certeyn condiciones, that alle Cristen men whech were prisoneres schuld frely go withoute raunson; and alle Cristen prestis, or freris, schuld frely go thorw the lond, and preche the feithe, and baptize alle that would receyve it. Eke that alle cherchis whech were used with Cristen men, and alle monasteriis, schuld be restored to the elde possessuris.

A.D. 1268. Henry, son of the King of the Romans, is killed at Viterbo, [A.D. 1271.]

In the LIII. ȝere of this Kyng deied Herry son to Richard emperoure of Alymayn. He deied at Viterb; but he was caried into Ynglond: his hert was biried at Westminster, and his body at Hayles.

In this same ȝere the Prince Edward, with his nave, cam into the ilde of Cipir, and there was he weel receyved: there he stored him with vitaile; and went to Acon, where Cristen were besegid of the Sarasines. Thei had grete coumfort of his comyng; for had he not come, the cyte had be ȝoldyn.

Gregory X., Pope.

In this ȝere was Gregory X. chose[1] Pope. He was with Edward in his expedicionne; and the Cardinales gadered at Viterbe chose him Pope. He was Pope IIII. ȝere.

Death of Richard, King of the Romans.

And in this ȝere Richard emperoure of Almayn deied in this maner.[2] He was let blede for the agu whech he had; and that blod last smet him in paralise, and aftir that he deyed, and lith at Hailes.

A.D. 1269. Attempt to murder Prince Edward at Acre. [A.D. 1271.]

In the LIIII. ȝere of Herry, the Soudon sent a sotil spie onto Edward while he was in Acon, pretending that the Soudon wold a slayn him for favoure which he schewid to Cristen men. So was he homly in Edward hous, and men begun to trust him. At the last he said he wold telle the Prince a pryvy councelle whech schuld be to his availe. Thei to went

---

[1] *chose.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *maner.*] Written upon an erasure.

A.D. 1269. into a chambir al be her one, and the Sarasine sperd the dore, and than took oute a knyf alayed with venym, and smet the Prince twies. The Prince, so hurte, took the knyf fro him, and anon mad an ende of him. Thei that stood withoute wondred of noyse. Thei broke up the dore, and founde the Prince bledying, and the Sarasine ded. Thanne were lechis broute onto him; and, with myracle more than with nature, he was mad hool.

Monastery burnt at Norwich. In that same ȝere certeyn men of Norwich brent the monastery and the place of munkis; with whech dede the Kyng was gretly offendid. For he kam to Norwich, and alle thoo malefactores were punchid with III. maner peynis; for thei were first drawe, than hange, and last brent.

A.D. 1271. King Henry dies. In the LV. ȝere of his regne, this Kyng deied, in the fest of Seint Edmund, Archbishop,[1]—his age was LX. and VI.,—and was byried at Westminster; whech werk he reisid, and biggid oute of the ground.

The Barons swear fealty to Prince Edward. The lordes gadered hem togidir, and swore thei schuld be trewe lige men onto Edward the Prince, whech was than in Acon, sumtyme cleped Tholomayda. The principal stereris to this oth was Sere Gilbert, of Glouceter erl, and Jon, count of Warenne. Tho thei mad a new seal to the Kyng, new officeres, and new justises.

Anno 6469, 6470. 1271, 1272.—These to ȝere are betwix the deth of Henry and coronation of Edward.

Anno 6471—6499. 1273–1301.

Anno Mundi viM.D. [Christi 1302.]

A.D. 1272. Edward I. Anno 6501—6505. 1303–1307.—Edward the First began[2] to regne in the ȝere of oure Lord 1273.

---

[1] November 16.

[2] *Edward the First began*] Edwardus began. C.C.C.

A.D. 1272. Edward returns through Rome and Paris.

For anon as he had tidyndis[1] of his fader deth, he took his viage to Rome. There was he weel receyved of the Pope.[2] Than cam he down to Parys, and there mad his homage[3] for the londes whech he held of the Kyng of Frauns.

He proceeds into Guienne against Gaston de Bearn.

Fro thens he went into Gyan ageyn a grete enmy of his, thei cleped him the Gaske of Bierne. Edward folowid him at many a straunge passage.

A.D. 1274. Edward and Eleanor are crowned.

Than cam he hom, and was coroned, at Westmister, of Robert, bischop of Cauntirbury: and with him was corowned[4] Helianore doutir to the Kyng of Spayn.

Expedition into Guienne.

Than sent he V. sundri lordis into Gian, to fite[5] with this Gascon of Bierne: for he had accused the Kyng of Ynglond befor the Kyng of Frauns of treson. And tho V. lordis profered for to fite[5] with him that his accusacion was fals. And more, thei profered that he shuld chese with whech of hem he wold fite.[5] Tho he forsok his apel, and put him in the disposicion of the Kyng of Frauns. Than the Kyng gave this dom, that this Gask schuld nevyr have o fote[6] of lond in his possession til he was reconciled to the Kyng of Ynglond, and in partie to stand to his justise.

Illness of the King.

In that same tyme the woundes that were hurt in Surre broke oute ageyn, of whech Edward was sore aferd; but with prayeris and medicines he was sone holpen.

A.D. 1274. An earthquake in the South of England.

In the third ʒere of his regne there was a gret erdqwave at London, Cauntirbury, and Wynchester,

---

[1] *tidyndis*] tydyngis. C.C.C.

[2] *of the Pope*] of the Pope Honorius.—C.C.C. In the MS. Pub. Lib. the word "Honorius" has been written in the margin opposite this line, but in a later hand than the text.

[3] *homage.*] Originally written "omage," but altered in a comparatively late hand into 'homage,' above the line.

[4] *corowned.*] Altered by a later hand, by the insertion of an 'r' into 'crorowned.'

[5] *fite.*] Thus written originally in both MSS. In the MS. Pub. Lib. the word has been altered into fiʒte.

[6] *o fote*] no fote. C.C.C.

A.D. 1274. and other place,[1] and dede there grete harm; and specialy a gret cherch of Seynt Michael, whech stood on a hil fast by Glasconbury, the erdqwave threw it fer awey, and left the ground pleyn.

Penal measures taken against the Jews. In the same tyme were the Jewis inhibite, that thei schul no more lende no silver to no Cristen man: for it was aspied that with her usure thei encresed hemselve to grete richesse, and made many a Cristen man pore. Thei were also accused of clipping of money: for the Kyngis coyne thorw oute the lond weied lesse than it dede at his makyng be the third part; and therefor there was in this matere streith inquisicion, and doutles thei were founde gilty, and summe of the goldsmythis. And for this cause were hangid at London III. goldsmythes: summe men thoute[2] ovyr fewe, for many mo were gilty: but of the Jewis were hanged CC. and XIII.

Innocent V., Pope. In the same tyme was Innocent the V. Pope but V. monthis: he was a Frere Prechoure.

Adrian V., Pope. And thanne Adrian the V. but o month and X. dayes. He was Octobone, that was in Ynglond to make pes betwix the King and the barnes.[3]

John XXI., Pope. Than was Jon the XXI., VIII. monthis.

Nicholas III., Pope. And than Nicholas the Fourt,[4] IIII. ȝere.

A.D. 1275. Edward enters Wales. In the IIII. ȝere of Edward, this Kyng went into Walis; and there sought[5] he aftir Levlyne[6] the Prins: and for hillis and wodis he coude not cach him; and at the last he smet down a gret wood, and than caut him, and browt him to London.

---

[1] *and other place.*] Om. C.C.C. Inserted in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib., but in a late hand.

[2] *thoute.*] Altered by a late hand into 'thoughte' in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[3] *barnes.*] This word has been altered into "barones," by a late hand.

[4] *Nicholas the Fourt.*] Thus in both MSS.—It should be Nicholas the Third according to the usual arrangement. See page 167, under the year 1286.

[5] *sought.*] Written upon an erasure, apparently by the same hand that altered the word "barnes."

[6] *Levlyne*] Lewlyne. C.C.C.

Aftir than[1] the Kyng and he were thus acorded, that Levlyne schuld be clepid Prince of Walis; and because a Prince must have summe lordis undir his dominacioune, he assined him V. baronies, that schuld hald speciali of the Prince: alle othir baronies schuld hald of the Kyng. Eke thei were acorded, the Kyng and Prince Levlyne, that the Prince schuld have Angliseye in ful possessioune; and, at the entre thereof, he schuld paye to the Kyng vM. marc, and every ʒere aftir, in the fest of Seint Michael, iM. marc.

A.D. 1276. Llweleyn is styled "Prince of Wales."

Than weddid Levlyne the doutir of Symund Mountforth, erle of Leicetir, and called evyr aftir the Prince of Wales.

His marriage.

In this tyme William, bischop of Norwich, aftir tyme that he had biggid the Cherch ageyn, desired that the Kyng schuld com to the dedicacion. The King cam and the qween, and many othir lordis and ladies, and there was gret solempnyte.

Edward attends the consecration of the new Church at Norwich.

In the V. ʒere Edward went in to Frauns, and took seson in his wyves heritage: for hir moder was Cuntesse of Pounteys. There entred he that same counte, with al the favoure that the Kyng of Frauns myte do, and these lordchipis, Ageny, Lemonica, Petrigoricum, Sanctone, and othir.

A.D. 1276. Edward goes into France.

In that ʒere mad he chaunge of his coyne, and distroyed al that was clipped. He ded make ferthyngis and halfpenies, whech were not used before: and there was the prophecye of Merlyn fulfillid, that seith, "Dimidium rotundi erit;" that is to sey, "There shal be half of the round."

Farthings and halfpence coined.

In the IX. ʒere of Edward, Levlyne, Prince of Walis, began to rebelle, payed not his tribute, distroyed pore men. The Kyng went into the Marches,

A.D. 1280. Rebellion of Llewelyn.

---

[1] *than*] that. C.C.C. The last letter is written upon an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib., and has apparently been an 'n.'

A.D. 1220. and with him the bischop of Cauntirbury. Because Levlyne wold not come to the Kingis presens, therefor the Kyng sent the bischop onto him, to trete him to pes. But he fond him ontretable; for whech cause the bischop cursid him: and so[1] the Kyng left that jornai for that tyme.

The King invades Wales.

In the ten ȝere of his regne he entyr into Snowdon;[2] and whil the Kyng was there, thei faute togidir, the Englischmen and the Walchmen. Mech harm was do on both sides. So happed Edmund Mortimere for to ransake the ded bodies, and amongst dyvers hedis that were there, he fond Levlyn hed, whech he brout to the Kyng. The Kyng sent it to London, and mad it be set on the Toure.

Death of Llewellyn.

A.D. 1282. David, his brother, is taken prisoner, and is executed at Shrewsbury.

In the next ȝere folowand, the Kyng took Davy, Levlyne brothir, and put him in prison. Than had he disposicion of al Wales at his plesauns. Sone aftir he sette a Parlement at Schrouisbury; and there was Davy, Levlyne brothir, drawen, hangid, and quartered, and his quarteres sent to dyvers places of Ynglond.

Martin IV., Pope.

In this tyme was Martyn the Fourt Pope. He was first a senatoure. And in his first ȝere was take a fisch in the se, lich a leon:[3] it was broute to the Pope's presens; and many a man went thidir for to se it. He had row here lych a leon; feet and tayl in the same similitude; hed, eres, mouth, teeth, tunge, and alle maner membris. Thei seide that fischid him that in his takyng he mad a horibel and woful noyse.

The Sicilians rebel against the French.

Sone aftir thei that were dwelleres of Scicile risen ageyn the Frenschmen, whech had the governauns there undir Philip Kyng of Frauns. These same Scicilianes,—summe men clepe hem Panormitanes,—killid alle the Frenschmen; and women of the same cuntre, whech had conceyved of the Frenschmen, thei slitte her wombes, and distroyed the childyrn. A.D. 1282.

---

[1] *so.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *into Snowdon*] into the Snowdon. C.C.C.

[3] *leon*] lyon. C.C.C.

In the XV. ȝere of this Kyng, aftir tyme the Kyng of Frauns was slayn in batayle, whech he held ageyn Petir King of Aragoyne, than the Kyngis son sent aftir Edward, that he schuld come and helpe him to venge his fader deth. The cause of the strif betwix these to Kyngis was, that the Kyng of Frauns chalenged servyse and subjeccion of this Kyng of Aragon; and he deneyed it, and saide he aute not but to the Kyng of Spayn. A.D. 1286. Death of King of France.

Thus is Edward forth in his viage: God spede him. Edward assumes the Cross.

In that same ȝere, a Frere Prechoure, cleped Richard Crapwelle, was cleped be the archbischop for to answere to certeyn simpil opiniones whech he held; and whan he cam to answere, he coude not redily defende his part. Wherefor his articles were condempned. There was the Provincial of the Ordre alegging for him here exempcion, who thei were immediatly undir the Pope: wherfore he appeled fro the bischop; but withinne few dayes the mater was put to silens. A Friar is acccused of heresy.

In these dayes were alle the Jewys of Ynglond, man, woman, and child, arested, and put in prison, onto the tyme thei had payed the Kyng xM. libras. Oppression of the Jews.

In this tyme[1] was Pope, Nicholace, of the Menoures Ordre, IIII. ȝere. He declared the Frere Menoures reule at her instauns. Nicolas IV., Pope.

In the XVI. ȝere of Kyng Edward was a grete feyer at Boston: and sodeynly the feyer and the town was set on fyre. Men seide that malicious men ded it to this entent, that, whil men were bysy to save her housyng, theves schuld stele her good. A.D. 1287. Great fire at Boston.

---

[1] *In this tyme,* &c.] Honorius the Fourth, who was Pope from the year 1285 to 1288, is here passed over in both MSS.

A.D. 1287. Dispute between the University of Oxford and the Bp. of Lincoln.

In this same tyme the Universite of Oxforth chose a Chauncelere, Maister William Kyngeston. Thei sent on[1] the bischop of Lincoln for his confirmacion: the bischop seide it was his[2] deute to com himselve. Thei answerd that this was her elde privylege; and this wold thei kepe. The bischop was inflexibil, and thei were obdurat. And so of malice thei left her redyng, and here teching. Many scoleres went away; thei that abode were evel occupied. But at the last the bischop condescended to her elde custome.

A.D. 1288. Destructive storm.

In the XVII. ȝere, in the nyte of Seint Margarete,[3] was swech reyn, thundir, and levene, that it distroyed al the corn; for a buschel of whete, that was beforn but at III. pens, was aftir this tempest worth ii s̃.: and this same derth lastid ni XL. ȝere.

Joan of Acre marries Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester.

In this ȝere dame Jone Acris, the Kyngis doutir, born in Acon, in the Holy Lond, was weddid onto Gilbert, herl of Glouceter; whech was a ful holy woman. For sche was biried in the Frere Austines, at Clare, and aftir hir biriing LII. ȝere, at the desire of dame Ysabel of Borow, sche mad hir bare, and sche was[4] found hol in alle membris; her tetis, whan thei were pressid with handis, the flesch ros up ageyn; hir eyeledes, left up, fel down ageyn.[5] The clothis that were aboute hir, whech were dipped in wax and rosyn, thoo were roten; but the lynand cloth whech was next hir, that was dite with no craft, that was found clene and hool.

A.D. 1291. The Normans possess the sea.

In the XX. ȝere of this Kyng, be the precept of Charles, brothir to the Kyng of Frauns, thei of Normandie kept the se, and no Englischman myte passe, but thei toke him. And whan they had take him, thei ledde him to the se bank on the Frensch side, and there thei hung him. For that same Charlis had mad galowis at every town on the se side for the same veniauns. A.D. 1291

---

[1] *on*] onte. C.C.C.

[2] *his.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] July 20.

[4] *and sche was.*] These words are written upon an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[5] *her eyeledes . . . . ageyn.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1292. They are defeated by the English.

Than thei of Ynglond ordeyned grete schippis too hundred and XX., and manly went into the see, faut there with Normaundes, and took of hem to hundred and XXVIII. schippis. Thei bored[1] and drenchid hem.

A.D. 1293. Celestine V., Pope.

In the XXII.[2] ȝere was Celestinus the Fifte, Pope, take fro his hous, for he was a ankir. And whan he was Pope he ordeyned a statute, that every Pope myte resigne if he wold: and anon as the statute was mad, he resined, and went ageyn to his elde lyf.

His resignation.

Boniface VIII. is chosen in his room.

Than must thei chese a new Pope; and, for thei myte not acorde, thei compromitted to this man that was Pope, that he schuld chese IIII. cardinales, whech he wold; and as the foure chose, thei alle schuld assent. Tho named he a cardinal, hite Benedicte, and othir thre: and the othir thre chose that Benedict; and he was cleped Bonefacius VIII. All this mater was do be that Bonefacius for to make himselve Pope. For anon as he was entered, he annulled that statute, that the Pope schuld have liberte to resigne. Therfor that man that he deceyved so, for to be Pope himselve, he prophecied thus of him:—"Thou hast entered as a fox; thou hast lyved as a leon; thou schal deye as a dogge." His entering was sly, so sotily to promote him. His lif was cruel; for too cardinalis, that were of the progenie of the Columpnes, he put fro her dignite. And to the Kyng of Frauns he was grete enmye, for

---

[1] *bored*] bored them. C.C.C.

[2] *In the XXII.*, &c.] The word "Papa" is written in the margin, apparently by the original Scribe, and it has been struck out by a late hand.

A.D. 1293. he wroute ageyn him al that he myte, in so mech he wold a deposed him. Therfor with power of the Kyng and of the cardinales, thei toke this Pope, and sette him on a hors withoute sadille, and the tayl in his hand: and so thei mad hym ryde thorw oute Rome; and, aftir, thei infamyde him for hungir. This same Boniface in his tyme mad the Sexte Book of Decretales.

A.D. 1294. Edward sends ambassadors to the King of France.

In the XXIII. ȝere the marchaundis of this lond compleyned to the Kyng that the Normauntes spoiled hem, so that thei myte kepe no market. Wherfor thei praied the Kyng of sum remedye: and the Kyng anon sent Ser[1] Herry Lacy, than erl of Lyncoln, embassiatoure onto the Kyng of Frauns. There was he long taried, and, whilis he was there, too hundred schippis oute of Normaundye sailed into Burdews, and ded all the harm thei myte do onto Englisch men. Ther were thei laden, and com hom ageyn. In her comyng sexti Englisch shippis met with hem, and took schip, good, and man, save thei that scaped in botys, and brout it into Ynglond. Thei of Frauns were astoyned and wroth with this dede, and mad her Kyng to write into Ynglond to oure Kyng, that he schulde se these schippis and the godes be dylyvered onto the owneris. The Kyng Edward wrot ageyn, that his Court was his owne, and therefor he wold that the marchaundis of Frauns schuld com into Ynglond, and make here compleynt, and here what schuld be aleggid ageyn of merchaundis here; and the Kyng schuld se justise schuld be had on both partyes.

Capture of a French ship.

Philip IV. summons King Edward to appear at Paris.

This answere plesed not the Frensch Kyng, and therfor he ded make somonounis in a cyte of Gyan, that the Kyng of Ynglond schuld appere before the Kyng of Frauns at Paris upon a gret peyne. A.D. 1294. The Kyng of Ynglond cam not; and therefor the Frenchmen ridyn into Gian, and occupied mech of the Kyngis lond. That tyme was in that cuntre Edmund, the erle of Cornwaile, to whom Edward wrote, for he was his brothir, that he schuld asay to trete the Kyng of Frauns to a resonabil mene. He coud no spede that matere; and, as he was homward, the to qweenes sent aftir him, purposing to fynde menys of pes. These too qweenes, on was the wif to the Kyng of Frauns; the othir was to his fader, and now weddid to this Edmund. But to tho covinauntis that were mad betwix Edmund and the qweenes, the Kyng of Frauns wold not consent.

---

[1] *Ser*] for. C.C.C.

Wherfor Edward, with his nave, sailed streit into Geround, and there took he Borow, Bloys, Burdeus, and Bayon. The cuntre was glad of his comyng: the capitanes were sent in to Ynglond. The English take Bordeaux.

In the XXIV. ȝere of his regne had Edward grete conflicte with the Scottis; for Jon, here Kyng, wrote onto Edward that he awte him no subjeccion, but he was annexed and swore to the Kyng of Frauns. The Kyng gadered his men; and first he took Berwik fro the Scottis. A.D. 1295. War with Scotland. Taking of Berwick.

Than had thei a batail at Dunbair, where the Kyng took of the Scottis part III. erles and VI. barnes, and sent hem in to Ynglond. The Scots are defeated at Dunbar.

Than took he many casteles and strengthis, so fer forth that the Kyng of Scottis was compelled to excuse him that his rebellion was be councelle of his barnes; in whech letter he mad a new obeiauns to the Kyng, and alle the barnes of the lond wrote a lettir of the same sentens. Balliol surrenders.

Than sent Edward a lettir onto the Kyng of Frauns, in whech he desired that alle Englischmen whech were prisoneres in Frauns schuld be dylyvered, and the Frenschmen that were prisoneres in Inglond Negotiations with France.

A.D. 1295. schuld go hom to Frauns. The Kyng of Frauns wrot ageyn, that he wold graunt it with that condicioune, that Jon Kyng of Scottis schuld be on of hem that schuld be delyvered. To that peticion this was the answere, that he longed not to the Kyng of Frauns, ne he was not takyn as a prisonere of Frauns, but as a rebelle to the Kyng of Ynglond.

Marriage of Edward. In the 26 ȝere, the Kyng Edward weddid Margarete, the sistir of the Kyng of Frauns.

A.D. 1297. Pope interferes on behalf of Scotland. And in that same tyme Pope Boneface wrote onto the Kyng Edward, of the kyngdam of Scotlond, exhorting him that he schuld cese of his werre, for it longid immediatly to the Cherch of Rome; in whech letter swech suasiones were mad, that in the letteris of Herri, Edward fader, was conteyned that Alisaunder, Kyng of Scottis, did nevyr no servise to Kyng Herri of dewti, but of curtesi and of benyvolens. Eke, whan that same Alexander went to the coronacioune of Herri, it was for gentilnes, and not of dewte. So the Pope concluded that he regned nevyr but be strength and violens over the Kyng of Scotland.

The King asserts his right. Edward wrot ageyn, and prayed him that his Holy Fatherhod schuld not beleve ovyr sone swech feyned suggestiones: for in treuth alle the Kyngis of Ynglond, fro the tyme of Arthure, whech was a Britoune, had dominacioune ovyr the kyngdam of Scotlond: where he rehersed be rowe the rite of Edgare, of Edward the Martir, of Edmund Yrunside, William Conqweroure, Richard, and many mo. The barnes eke of the lond writin letteris of the same sentens: and, moreovir, thei saide who thei were swore with body and good to stand be the Kyng in his rite; whech oth thei wold not breke.

Philip IV. opposes the Pope. In this same tyme the Kyng of Frauns appeled fro the Pope onto a General Councelle, puttyng upon the Pope, that he was both a heretik and a scismatik.

A.D. 1299.
Benedict XI., Pope.
[A.D. 1303.]

In the XXVIII. ȝere[1] was a Frere Prechoure chose Pope, and levyd but o ȝere. Of him mad a writer too vers:—

> "Oro, nomen habe,—Benedic, Benefac, Benedice:
> Aut rem perverte,—Malefac, Maledic, Maledice."

Thus is it in Englisch,—

> "I pray ye have this name,—Say wel, Do wel, and Be good;
> Or ellis turn thi fame, Say evel, Do evele, Be cursed and wood."

A.D. 1303.
Rebellion of Wallace in favour of the English King.

In the XXXII. ȝere there was a man thei cleped Wiliam Waleys, that was in Scotland, and reised the puple, and mad al the cuntre rebel to Edward the Kyng. But he was take and broute onto London, hanged, and draw, and quartered; his hed sette on London brigge; his body dyvyded in IIII. quarteres, and sent to foure townes of Scotland.

Clement V., Pope.

In this tyme,[2] aftir Benedict, was Clemens Quintus Pope. He was before archbischop of Bordews. Moost besynesse he had to gader richesse, and make casteles and strengthis. He mad the VII. Book of Decretal; but thei were not publisced til the tyme of Jon the XXII. This Clement translate the Courte fro Rome to Avinionne.

The Papal See removed to Avignon,
[A.D. 1305.]

A.D. 1305.
Robert Bruce is crowned at Scone.

In the XXXIIII. ȝere was a man of Scotlond thei cleped Robert Brusse. He took upon him to be King of the lond, and went to the Abbey of Scone for to be crowned. Than the Cuntesse of Bowan stal fro hir lord alle his grete hors, and, with swech men as sche trostid, cam to that same Abbey, and there sche sette the crowne upon Robardis hed. Sche was take

---

[1] *In the XXVIII. ȝere*, &c.] In the margin, opposite this sentence is the word 'Papa,' written apparently by the same hand as the text.

[1] *In this tyme.*] The word "Papa" is written in the margin.

A.D. 1305. aftir of Englischmen, and presentid to the Kyng Edward. He comaunded sche schuld not be ded, but that there schuld be mad a hous al of tymbir upon the wallis of Berwyk, and there schuld sche be tyl sche deyed.

Aymer de Valence drives Bruce into the Isles.

Aftir this the Kyng dubbid his son knyte, and many other ȝong men with him, and sent hem to Scotlond. And aftir hem folowid Aymere of Valens, the erl of Pembrok, Robert Giffard, Herry Percy, and many othir; and thei mad that same Robert Brusse to fle into the ferthest yle of Scotlond.

A.D. 1307. Death of Edward I.

In the XXXV. ȝere of his regne he deied, in the Translacion of Seynt Thomas,[1] and biried is at Westminster.

Edward II. The King is crowned at Westminster.

Anno 6506—6524. 1308–1326.—Edward the Secund regned XIX. ȝere. He was crowned at Westminster the sext kalend of March,[2] and his wif Ysabel, the Kingis doutyr of Frauns, be the bischop of Wynchester, whech had special commission of the bischop of Cauntirbury: for he was not in this lond.

Troubles on the recall of Piers Gaveston.

In the same tyme was grete tretyng betwix the lordis for pes of the lond, and for on Petir Gaverston, whech was exiled fro the lond in his fader tyme; and this Edward had clepid him hom ageyn: therefor the barnes thoute to lette the Kyngis coronacioune. This aspied, the Kyng hite hem in good feith, that at the next Parlement he schuld fulfil here desire. Aftir the coronacion, the King is wont that certeyn officeres schul bere certeyn relikes of Seynt Edward befor him into the Paleys; and he took hem to othir men, that is to seye, the chalis of Seynt Edward, the crosse, the sceptre, the spores, and swech othir; and the corowne of Seynt Edward bare that same

---

[1] *Seynt Thomas.*] These words have been struck out with a pen in C.C.C.

[2] February 24.

A.D. 1307.

Petir befor the Kyng; of whech thing ros grete indignacion, both in the lordis and in the clergy. Not long aftir this the same Petir mad a gret torneament fast by Wallingford, where he had gadered many justeres alienes; and thei bore down in justis many Englishmen, that is to sey, Thomas, erl of Lancastir, Humfrey of Herforth, Eymer of Pembrok, Johan Warenne, and many othir; for whech he had gret indignacion. In this same ȝere, Gilbert, erl of Glouceter, wedded the erle doutir of Wolinster in Erland.

A.D. 1308. A Parliament is summoned against Gaveston.

In the same tyme, the secund ȝere of Edward, the lordes,—considering that there was no thing do but aftir councel of this Petir, and he gadered mech richesse, and evir sent it ovyr the se,—thei cam to the Kyng, desiryng that the gouvernauns of the reme schuld be directed aftir the councel of his barnes. The Kyng mad difficulte, supposing evir that thei wold purpose sum articule ageyn Petir, whech he loved. Upon this was sette a Parlement at London, that alle men schuld come thedir, whech where wone of dewte to be at the Parlement.[1] Where was grete instauns mad to the Kyng that he schuld suffir the barnes to purpos certeyn articules whech schuld be worchip to God, an[2] profit to the reme. The Kyng graunted his consent, and swore, what evir thei ordeyned, he schuld consent and conferme. Than the barones gadered onto here councell certeyn bischoppis, to make here party more strong.

A.D. 1309. A second Parliament is held at London.

In the third ȝere of his regne he held anothir Parlement at London, aftir the tyme that he had mad that oth to the barnes: than he renewid the same oth befor alle the lordes. And thanne the

---

[1] *at London . . . . . Parlement.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *an*] and. C.C.C.

A.D. 1339. bischop of Cauntyrbury, Maister Robert Wynchilseye, with alle his suffraganes, cursed alle hem that schuld lette the entent of the barones. Than in the Cherch of Seynt Poule at London, in the presens of the Kyng, and lordes, and comownes, were red certeyn articles, among whech was red the Grete Chartere, and othir thingis; and that he schuld conferme that his fader comaunded, for to put aliens fro his Court, and that alle thing that schuld be do schuld be aftir the councel of the barnes; ne he schuld not begynne no werre withoute the same councelle; and eke, that he schuld exile the forseid Petir into Erlond. Aftir the Parlement the Kyng was very sory for the exile of Petir, and comoned with his Privy Councelle what remedy myte be had in this mater. Thei avised him that he schuld wedde the sister of the erl of Gloucester, that be swech mene he myte purchace the love of many lordes. Than the Kyng sent for him in to Erlond, and maried him on to this woman. Than was Petir prouder thanne before, gadered gret good, and sent it to marchaundes handis. The Kyng wex so pore, that he had not to fynde his houshold. The qween eke wrote to hir fader, Kyng of Frauns, compleyned of grete poverte. So the Kyng, compelled on o party be nede, on the othir party be instauns of the lordes, compelled this Petir for to swere that he schuld in hast go oute of the lond, and nevir his live dwelle in no soile longing to the Kyng of Ynglond; and, if he ded the contrari, he schuld lese his hed. He went oute of this lond into Frauns, where the Kyng of Frauns comaunded al his officeres that, if thei mite take him, thei schuld keep him in hold, that he schuld com no more in Ynglond. Fro thens than went he into Flaundres; there was he not welkom. Mani places soute he; but, at the last, he cam ageyn to Ynglond. And whan the King sey

Magna Charta confirmed.

Gaveston is condemned to exile.

He marries Margaret de Clare.

He is driven into France, but finally returns to England.

him, alle othis and covenauntes were forgoten, and he was welkom.

A.D. 1309.

Fifty-four Templars are burned at Paris.

In this same ȝere were brent at Parys, be the jugement of Philip, Kyng of Frauns, LIIII. men of the Ordir of Templaries: for that same ȝere were thei condempned in the Councel at Vienne. For this Kyng of Frauns purposed to make on of his bretherin[1] King of Jerusalem; and therefor, as it is seid, he procured the distruccion of Templaries, that thoo godis schuld be gove to the same kingdam.

Charges against the Order.

It was deposed ageyn hem, that whan on schuld be receyved onto that Ordir, thei schuld go alle to a pryvy place, and he schuld be al naked; and than on of the felawis schuld rise and kisse him behinde. And thanne schuld thei clothe him,[2] and gird him with a girdill of cambace. Than schuld Crist Crucified be broute before him, and it schuld be seid onto him that Crist is no God, but a fals prophet, Whech deceyved the world, killid of Jewis for His fals lyvyng. Than schould thei throw down the crosse, and trede it undir fote, and thries spitte thereon. Than schuld thei schewe him a hed of a ydol, to whech they ded every day ful grete honoure. Thei were eke infect gretly with the vice of Sodomye.

A.D. 1311.

Thomas Earl of Lancaster demands the banishment of Gaveston.

In the V. ȝere of Edward, whan Petir was come ageyn, the qween and alle the lordis were gretly meved; specialy Thomas of Lancaster, whech was son to Edmund, the son of the First Edward, and be succession and heritage he cam to possession of V. erldammes:—Lancaster, and Leyceter, and Ferreris; than, aftir decese of Herry Lacy, erl of Lincolnne and Salisbury; be mariage of his doutir, he entered into

---

[1] *bretherin.*] C.C.C.—This word is written "bethirin" in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *And thanne schuld thei clothe him.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1311.

tho to erldames. And whan this Herry schuld dye, he cleped Thomas to him, and comaund him to stand[1] with the rite of the reme, and that he schuld be governed be the councel of Gy, erl of Warwik.

The Barons follow the King to Newcastle.

Gaveston takes refuge in Scarborough Castle, but is captured.

Death of Gaveston.

Aftir his deth, Thomas, at the prayer of the lordes, wrote to the Kyng that this Petir schuld be a voyded; and rode to the Kyng, whech was thanne at New Castelle. Whan the Kyng had sey that the lordes com with swech strength, he fled onto Tynmouth, and be the se led Petir to the Castelle of Scarborow, and there left him, comaunding the cuntre that thei stuf the Castel with vitail and with men. But, schort to seye, the lordes took this man,[2] and he[3] prayed hem of no grace but on, that he myte speke with the Kyng or he deied. Thei wold a loggid him in a town fast by Warwic thei clepe Dodington, but the erl of Warwik cam with strength, and led him to his Castel. And whan thei were in grete doute what thei schuld do with him, whether thei schuld lede him to the Kyng or not, a grete wittid man sayd thus:—"Many day have ye huntid, and failed of youre game: now have ye caute your prai. If he scape youre handis ye gete him not litely." Sone was he led oute, and his hed smet of. He called Gy of Warwik no othir name but "The Black Dog of Arderne;" and in Gyis lordchip his hed was bityn fro the body. The careyn was buried amongst the Prechouris of Oxenforth; his tresore and alle his jeweles thei sent to the Kyng.

Birth of Edward III.

This same ȝere Isabelle, the qween, broute forth Edward the Thirde. Many Frensch lordis, that were aboute hir, wold a clepid him Philippe, aftir the Kyng of Frauns: the Englisch lordes wold have him Edward. The Kyng had so grete joye of this child new born, that his hevinesse for Petir cesed sone. A.D. 1311.

---

[1] *him to stand.*] These words have been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib., apparently by the original Scribe, on revision.

[2] *this man*] him. C.C.C.

[3] *man, and he.*] Not in C.C.C. Added in the margin of the MS. Pub. Lib.

In the VI. ȝere of his regne were many fals tongis with the Kyng. Thei seid it was derogacion to swech a state that he schuld rite nowt do withoute councelle; and so, with swech suggestiones, thei encresed grete rancoure betwix the Kyng and the lordes. A.D. 1312. The Parliament assembles in London.

Than was there gadered a Parlement at London, in whech the Kyng mad a gret compleynt ageyn the barones, that at New Castelle in despite of him come thedir armed, and who thei pursewid Petir his frend, and thereto killid him. The barnes answered ageyn, that thei ded that dede to Goddis worchip, for thei killid non but a fals tretoure, banished fro Ynglond and fro Frauns; and thei had spent here good and here laboure to profite of the rem, "and the Kyng dryvyth oure materes withoute ony effect. But these thingis purposed we wil se amendid, or ellis we will lyve and dey in the matere." The King disputes with the barons.

Than the qween, with certeyn prelatis, treted betwix the Kyng and hem, that thei schuld in Westminster Halle ask the King forgifnesse of alle here furfetis, and the Kyng schuld take hem to grace, and graunt alle her peticiones that were resonable, and nevir venge the deth of Petir Gavestoune. The King and the barons are reconciled.

In the VII.[1] ȝere deied Pope Clement that was sumtyme bischop of Burdews. Too ȝere was the sete voyd; and thanne was chose Johannes XXII. A.D. 1313. Death of Pope Clement V.

The same ȝere cam the Kyng to Seint Albones, and there he offered a crosse, with grete relikes, and gaf hem a hundred mark to makyng of her Cherch, and the profit of a manere tyl it was mad. The Mun- The King visits S. Albans and Ely.

---

[1] *In the VII.*, &c.] The word 'Papa' is written in the margin in the same hand as the text.

A.D. 1313. day aftir Palme Sunday[1] he tok his jornay to Hely, and there was he al the Pase tyme. As he loked aboute on dyyers thingis, he fond there wrytyng, that the body of Seynt Albon schuld be there. He clepid the bischop onto him, and seide he "wold wete in[2] certeyn where Seynt Albon was; for thei of Seynt Albone sey thei have him; and here at Hely thei sey thei have him. Therfor we wil se the toumbe withinne, what relik is here of him." Whan it was ondo, thei founde a grete tabard of wrecchid cloth, and al ful of fresch blood, as though it had be the same day spilt.[3] Thanne undirstod thei wel that same habite had Albone of his maistir Amphibalus whan he went to the juge. Than sayde the King:—"Now knowe we to what thing we schal do worchip; to the body at Seynt Albones, and to the cloth at Hely."

He proceeds into Scotland, and is defeated at Stirling.

Fro thens he went to Lyncolnne, and than to York, and forth to Berwik. Ther was the batayl of Stryvelyn, where Englischmen[4] were put to grete rebuk undir Robert Brus, the Kyng of Scottis. Ther wer ded and take on the Englisch part, of lordes, barnes, and knytes, CLIIII.

Death of Philip IV. Accession of Louis X.

This ȝere deied Philip the Kyng of Frauns; and Lodewik his son regned for him.

A.D. 1314. Parliament meets in London. The tariff owered.

In the VIII. ȝere of the Kyng was a Parlement at London, where was a gret ordinauns to chepe vitaile, and it avayled not. It was ordeyned that a oxe fed with gresse schuld be seld for XVIš.; a fatte oxe for XXIIIIš.; a fatte cow for XIIš.;[5] a good swyn, to ȝere old, for XLđ.; a shep withouten wolle for XIIIIđ.; a fat schep with wolle XXđ.; a fat

---

[1] April 9. Palm Sunday fell on April 8 in the year 1313.

[2] *wete in.*] Added above the line.

[3] *spilt.*] Added in the margin.

[4] *men.*] Added above the line.

[5] *a fatte cow for XIIs.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1314.

goos, IIoƀ; a capon, IIđ.; a henne, Iđ.; IIII. dowes, Iđ. And if ony man seld ony othir pris, the vitail be forfete to the Kyng.

Great scarcity in England.

That same ȝere fel swech a derth that vitaile coude not be founde. So that statute was abrogat, and no lenger kept.

The Scots ravage the north.

Eke that same ȝere the King of Scottys entered at Karlile, and wasted alle the cuntre onto York.

Edward Bruce invades Ireland.

And, aftir that, the Kyng Robert Brus sent his brothir Edward into Erland, to occupie alle the londes there that longid to the crowne of Ynglond.

The crops are destroyed by heavy rains.

In this ȝere were swech reynes in hervest that baxteres dryed here corn in ovenes or thei myte grynde it; and the bred that was mad thereof had no vertu; for as sone as men had ete thei hungered ageyn: wherof fel mech mischef. Summe deied for hungir; thei that were put oute of houshold went into the cuntre, and robbid pore men. So mech hungir grew in the lond, that foure peniworth of bred was not sufficient to feed a man o day.

John XXII., Pope.

In this ȝere, aftir the deth of Clement the Pope, the sete was voyde to ȝere, and than thei chose Jon the XXII., whech was before bischop of Avynioune. This man was ful gracious to alle men, and specialy to the Order of the Heremites of Seynt Augustin.

The King of Bohemia introduces Austin Friars at Pavia.

For by his auctorite the Kyng of Bem broute in the same Heremites to dwelle at Pavye with the Chanones, and there to kepe the o side of the qwer, and the Chanones the othir.

A.D. 1315. The King at Clarendon.

In the IX. ȝere of his regne Kyng Edward held his Estern at Claringdoune; where a woman cam in rydyng as joguloure, and leyd a lettyr on the Kyngis bord. The sentens was, that the Kyng norchid hem, and avaunsed that nevyr were in werre ne in distresse for profite of the lond; and thei that had spent her good, and bled her blod, wer in no reputacion, ne had no reward. The woman was pursewid and

A.D. 1315. taken, compelled eke to telle be whos councelle sche ded this dede; and sche accused a certeyn knyte, whech cam to the Kyng and avowid every word; for whech constauns he was gretly alowed, and wel rewardid.

Rising in the north against the Scots.

In this same ȝere thei in the north risin ageyn the Scottis; for the Kyng, ne the lordis, holpe hem nowt; and whan thei were gadered, for lak of vitaile, thei robbed the cuntre, and took awey ox, schep, corn, mony. And this robry continued ny foure ȝere.

The Pope endeavours to re-establish peace.

In that same tyme, at prayere of the Kyng, com into Ynglond to legatis; on Gauceline, the Pope's chauncelere, and Lucas de Flisco, to reforme pees betwix Ynglond and Scotlond, with bulles of Jon the XXII., in whech he cursed the Kyng of Scottis for brekyng of his treuth, whech he had mad to the Englisch Kyng. The othir cause of her comying was to sette pes betwix the Kyng and Thomas erl of Lancastir.

The legates conduct Louis Beaumont to Durham to make him bishop.

At Darlington they are surprised by Gilbert de Myddleton and Walter Selby, and Beaumont is taken prisoner.

And, as the maner of Romanes is, thei ride with grete solempnite into the North cuntre, for to make Lodewik Beaumont bischop of Dorham, ageyn the eleccion of the munkis, whech had chose a othir. And though thei were warned that thei schuld not com there, yet thei ride till thei come ny at Derlyngton, and sodeynly oute of a vale,[1] rise a gret puple, Capteynes Gilbert, of Mydilton, and Walter Selby; thei leid hand upon hem, and robbed hem of al her tresoure: and Lodewik, whech thei entended to make bischop, thei led to a town thei clepe Morpath, compellyng him to a grete raunson. In that affray eke was take Herry Beamount, with al his hors and tresoure, and led to the Castel of Mithforth, wher he was kept, tyl he had payed a grete summe of mony.

---

[1] *a vale*] a walle. C.C.C.

A.D. 1315.

The cardynales turned ageyn to York, and whan thei were come thidir, thei cursed alle thoo robberis with horible sentens, and sent the copies thorw the rewme. So were thei restored to the most part of here losse, but not to alle. Than com thei to London, and there asked thei of the clergye VIIIđ. of the mark. Thei were answerd that thei gave hem no councelle for to go so ferr north; but IIIIđ. of the mark, whech was graunted before, that had thei.

A.D. 1316. The power the Earl of of Lancaster broken.

In the X. ȝere, the Kyng[1] held[2] a Councelle at London of the harm whech the Kyng of Scottis had do to him: at whech councelle Thomas of Lancaster cam not; wherfor he was named tretoure in the Kyngis hous. Than mad the cardinales pees betwix the Kyng and Thomas; but it lestid not longe.

Discovery of a conspiracy against the Earl of Lancaster.

Sone aftir this was a knyte taken at Pounfrecte, and presented to the erl Thomas, with letteris fro the Kyng on to the Kyng of Scottis, both the grete targe and the privy sel, that the Kyng of Scottis schuld be sum trayn kille this Thomas, as he wold do plesauns to the Kyng of Ynglond, whech knyte the erle did hange and drawe, because he was of his houshold before.

In this same ȝere Gilbert of Mydilton was take be a trayne, layd in yrunnes, and led to Londonne, and there hanged and drawen, in the site of the cardinales whech he had robbed.

Acts of Pope John XXII.

In this same ȝere Pope Jon puplisched that book whech thei clepe "The Clementins," mad be Clement, his predecessoure. He confermed eke the fest of Crist, whech is cleped "Corporis Cristi," whech fest was mad before be the Pope Urbane.

The Court at Westminster but thinly attended.

In this same ȝere the Kyng held his Cristmasse at Westminster, where cam but few lordis, for the debate that was betwix hem and the Kyng.

---

[1] *the Kyng*] of the Kyng. C.C.C. | [2] *held*] was held. C.C.C.

A.D. 1316. The Scots ravage the northern counties.

Ther was grete compleint of Scottis; for thei had distroyed the cuntre onto York on o side, and onto Lancaster on the othir side. Wherfor the to legatis, with othir bischoppis, prayed the Kyng that certeyn articles, whech the barnes desired, schuld be graunted; and thanne schuld the Kyng be the more strong ageyn the Scottis. The Kyng graunted that on Seynt Jon Baptiste day[1] next folowand, at Leyceter, schuld this mater be concluded. The legatis took her leve, as though thei had sped a grete matere, and turned ageyn to the court; but the Kingis graunt was but a fraude.

The King marches to York, where his army is broken up.

The same ȝere, at Myhilmesse, ther was a Parlement at London, where was graunted that every good town of Ynglond schuld sende the Kyng certeyn men to fite with the Scottis;—London, iiC. armed men; Cauntirbury, XL.; and so forth: but whan this hoost cam to York, for certeyn debate betwix hem self, the hoost was departed, and every man cam hom.

Death of Edward Bruce.

In that same ȝere Edward Brusse, brothir to the Kyng of Scottis, whech was sent into Yrland, to occupie the Englisch lordschippis there, and he himself had crowned him Kyng of his owne auctorite, was slayn be the Kyngis frendis that were in Yrland.

A.D. 1317. Parliament meets at Beverly.

In the XI. ȝere of his regne he held his Cristmasse at Bevirle with many lordes and prelatis, and there was mad a provision who this lond schuld be defensed ageyn the cruelte of Scottis.

Berwick is betrayed to the Scots.

In the same tyme a cursed man, cleped Petir of Spalding, whech was keper of Berwyk, seld the same town onto the Scottis, and lete hem entyr and kepe it: whech matere grevyd the Kyng sore.

Siege of Berwick.

And thanne he gadered a gret hoost, and besegid Berwik. And whil he was at the sege, XX. thousand

---

[1] June 24.

A.D. 1317.

of the Scottis come in be anothir weye, purposing to take the qwen, whech lay in that cuntre. But sche was warned, and fled to more siker place. The Kyng lay stille at the sege; and happed for[1] to sey a word, whech was confusion of that jornay. "Treuly," he seide, "whan we have wonne this town, we will make Ser Hewe Spensere keeper of the Castelle, and Roger Tamary captayn of the town."

Withdrawal of the Earl of Lancaster.

But whanne Ser Thomas of Lancaster herd this, he withdrow him with al his power; wherfor thei cleped him there openly tretoure. For sekirly and he had abedyn, as thei sey, the town had be wonne.

The Scots defeat the Yorkshire-men at the river Swale.

In this same tyme thei of York gadered X. thousand men for to fite with the Scottis, whech lay thanne be the flood cleped Swale, and there had the Scottis victory. In that batail were killid many men, among whech were many prestis and religious men, as was seid. This cam to the Kyngis ere; and he left the sege of Berwik, purposing to mete with the Scottis homward: but he failed, for thei went anothir weye, levyng cursed toknes of cruelnesse in every towne, manslawth, brennyng, and robbing.

A truce is concluded for two years.

So was the Kyng fayn to take trews with them for to ȝere; and thei were glad; for thei were rich be robbing, and wery of bataile.

Murrain among cattle.

In that same ȝere was grete moreyn of bestis, whech began in Estsex, and aftir it spred thorw the lond. It regned most in oxen; and whan the bestes were ded, dogges wold not ete of the flesch.

A.D. 1318. A Pretender at Oxford.

In the XII ȝere cam a ȝong man to Oxenforth, and there he prechid openly that he was son to Kyng Edward the First, and very eyre of Ynglond. Eke he noysed that this Edward the Secund was not the

---

[1] *for.*] Om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1318. He is executed at Northampton. Kyngis son, but a carter child sotily[1] broute into the qween. The Meyhir of Oxenforth took this man, and sent him to the Kyng, that lay thanne at Northampton, where he was hangged and drawe and qwartered.

The Scots again ravage Yorkshire. In this same ȝere Scottis come evene to York walles, brent the subarbes, and took prisonere Sere Jon Bretayne, erl of Richmund, notwithstandyng the trews that was take.

And in this same ȝere the Mysseles thorow oute Cristendam were slaundered that thei had mad covenaunt with Sarasines for to poison alle Cristen men, to put venym in wellis, and alle maner vesseles that long to mannes use; of whech malice mony of hem were convicte, and brent, and many Jewes that gave hem councel and coumfort.

A.D. 1319. Disputes among certain barons in the Marches of Wales. In the XIII. ȝere of Edward felle a grete distauns betwix many lordis: and this was the cause. There was a knyte thei cleped Ser William Brews, a gret wastoure of good, whech had a baronye in the March of Wales; thei clepe it Gowere Londis. He seld this baronie to dyvers lordis, and took his mony. First to Humfrey Bown, erl of Herford; next seld he the same to to lordes, both hite Roger and eke Mortimere: the on was uncle on the othir cosin.[2] Thanne was there anothir lord thei cleped[3] Sere Jon Mounbray. He had weddid the doutyr of this William Brews, whech was sole eyir onto him: wherfor he chalenged this lond be heritage. Last of alle, and werst, Hugo[4] Spenser the younger, he desired these londes, and boute hem; and, because he was the Kyngis chambirleyn, that sale was moost alowed and

---

[1] *sotily.*] Om. C.C.C.

[2] *cosin.*] This word has been added above the line.

[3] *thei cleped*] thei cleped him. C.C.C.

[4] *Hugo.*] Hewe. C.C.C.

A.D. 1319.

Unpopularity of Hugh le Despenser, the King's favorite.

approved; in so mech that he entered the londis. At this dede the othir lordes had gret indignacion. The erle of Hereforth, whech was the first biere, compleyned onto Thomas of Lancastir; and thei gadered many barones to lyve and deye on thoo tretoures that were about the Kyng, specialy on the too Spenseris, the fadir and the son, for thei reuled the Kyng as thei wold; and there was no barn ne bischop schuld stand in the Kyngis grace, but if thei wolde. So Thomas of Lancastir gadered the barnes togidir at Schirborne, and there were thei swore to pursewe this conclusioune, come hem lyf, or come hem deth. But aftirward alle went bak, and ȝold hem to the Kyng, save Thomas of Lancastir and Humfrey Bown: alle the othir barnes consented wel that certeyn articles schuld be mad, and pursewid to be had; but thei felle sone fro her purpos.

The barons assemble at Sherborne, but fail to effect their purpose.

In this tyme was a knyte in Norfolk thei cleped Robert Walkfare. He, with certeyn malefactoures, cam to Seynt Albones, and robbed the Abbot chambir, and kept it as his in. He hatid the Abbot, for[1] he had deposed the prioure of Bynham, and put him in prison for evel governauns, and wasting of the godes of the Monastery.

Sir Robert Walkfare pillages S. Albans.

In the same tyme the barnes were gadered at Seynt Albones; and fro thens thei sent onto the Kyng these V. bischoppis, London, Salisbury, Hely, and Herforth, and Chichester, desyring of the Kyng that Hugo Spenser the elder, and Hew the younger,[2] schuld be banchid the rewme, as tretoures; and that al this rysing of the barnes schuld be pardoned, because thei ded it for the comon profite. The Kyng answered that these too

The barons demand the banishment of the Despensers.

---

[1] *for.*] C.C.C.—"fo" in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *and Hew the younger.*] The last two words are written on an erasure. In the margin, opposite this sentence, is Capgrave's private mark, see p. 4.

A.D. 1319. The King takes their part.

Spenseris had offered hemself often-tyme to answere to here accuseris, and to make amendis to ony forfet that myte be seid ageyn hem; and it was no lawe that men schuld be condempned withoute answere. Ferthirmore, on of hem was ovyr the se, on the Kyngis message; the othir was in the see, for the defens of the V. portes. Whan the barnes had this answere, thei cam down to Londonne with her hoost, and occupied the subarbes of the cite. But, be mediacion of the qween and prelates, the Kyng was induced to condescend to her peticiones. And so, in Westminster Halle, Hew the elder, be the cry of Humfrey Bown, was proclaimed a tretoure.

The barons besiege London, but the King yields.

The Queen is refused admission at Leeds Castle.

In the same ȝere fel a case, whech was cause of mech angir. The qween went on pilgrimage to Cauntirbyry, purposing be the wey to rest in the Castelle of Ledis, whech Castelle the Kyng had gove, in exchaunge for othir londis, to a knyte thei cleped Bartholomew Batilesmere, whil he was the Kyngis steward; where his wif was and his childyrn, and alle his[1] tresore, for he was with the barnes in her bysinesse. The qwenes purvyouris cam thedir; but thei myte not entre. So thei herborowed hir in othir place; there myte sche no logging have.

The King revenges himself on the Castellan and spoils the Castle.

The qween, whan sche cam hom, compleyned to the Kyng; and he with a grete multitude of puple, specialy of Londonne, rod thidir. He asked entre; and thei denyed it. At the last thei ȝolde for defaut of vitaile: Thomas Colpepir, keper of the Castelle, was hang and drawe.[2] The othir men that were there were slayn in dyvers maner. The women were sent to the Toure of London. The tresoure went to the Kyngis houshold.

---

[1] *childyrn, and alle his.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *drawe.*] Added in the margin.

A.D. 1319. The King demands soldiers from the shires.

In this same tyme Hewe Spensir the yonger cam onto the Kyng, be whos councelle the Kyng sent writtis to alle the schryves in Ynglond, that thei schuld ordeyne him sufficient puple to fite with the barnes whech conspired ageyn him.

A.D. 1320. The King collects an army against the barons.

In the XIIII. ȝere of this Kyng he gadered a grete hoost, purposing to be vengid on the barnes. That herd the too Mortimeres, and come and ȝold hem to the Kyng: but thei fel not in swech grace as thei supposed; for the Kyng comaunded hem to the Tour tyl the tyme he schuld be avysed what he schuld do with hem. Than took the Kyng Sere Hewe Haudle the elder, and Sere Mauris Berkle, and sent hem to the Castelle of Walyngforth. Othir lordis he cacchid, or caute, with fayre wordes, and sent hem to dyvers holdis.

The Earl of Lancaster comes to meet him, but is compelled to retreat.

This herd the erl of Herforth, and with his hoost rood into Glouceterschure.[1] Than Thomas Lancastir and he gadered a grete hoost, and cam to Burton up o Trent. The Kyng wold a go ovyr the watir there; but thei letted him. Fro thens thei fled the Kyng, seyng his grete powere, tyl thei cam at Borouhbrigge.

The barons are defeated at Boroughbridge.

And there met thei a grete strength comyng fro the North ageyn hem; the keper of York, Sere Symund Warde, and keper of Karlhille, Sere Andrew Herkle. There was Humfrey Bown slayn; as he rod ovyr the brigge, on was beneth, and with a spere gored him. Ther was Sere Thomas of Lancastir take, and Ser Roger Clifforth, Ser Jon Mounbray, Sere Waryn of the Ylde, and many mo, and broute to the Kyngis presens at Pountfreite, where he was

---

[1] *Glouceterschure.*] Gloucestershyr. C.C.C.

A.D. 1320. with the too Spenseres. The third day aftir sat upon hem these lordes, Hewe Spenser, erl of Wynchester; Aymere, erl of Penbrok; John Wareyn, erl of Suthreye; Edmund, erl of Arundelle; where Thomas was juged to drawying, hanging, an[1] hedyng. But the Kyng, of special grace, dispensid with him of the too first peynes.

The Earl of Lancaster and others are executed at Pontefract.

There wer slayn eke that tyme Waryn of the Ylde, Thomas Maudut, Herry Bradborne, William Williamson, William Cheny; these were ded with Thomas. Aftir that were slayn Roger Clifforth, Jon Mounbray, Goselyne of Muylla, Herry Tyes, Bartholome Batlismere.

The King invades Scotland without success.

Than was the Kyng ful glad of this chauns, and gadered a grete hoost, for to goo into Scotlond: but whan he cam into that lond, the Scottis fled onto wodes, and marices, and othir straunge place. So fond he there no resistens, ne no vitaile; wherfor he cam ageyn into this lond, and many of his puple deyed for hungir.

Death of Philip V.

In this ȝere deyed Philip Kyng of Fraunce.

A.D. 1321. Execution of one of the Earl of Lancaster's adherents.

In the XV. ȝere was take a man of the houshold of Thomas Lancastir, whech was grete of his councelle. Anon he was condempned to be drawe, hangen, and qwartered. Thei that were about the Kyng prayed that he myte have his lif; and the Kyng in gret angir said onto hem, "Fals and fikil flatereres; for the lyf of a fals knave ȝe make gret instauns, but for Thomas of Lancastir, my cousyn, whech myte have had lyf, and gove us good councelle, wold ȝe nevyr speke word." And anon he comaunded execucion to be do on this man.

The King is summoned to do homage

In this same tyme cam embassiatouris fro the King of Frauns cytyng the Kyng of Ynglond to come and do homage to the new Kyng Charles for the londis of Gian. The embassiatoures in this mater were the lord Beoville and Ser Andrew of Florens; and, though thei were counceled be Hewe Spenser, and Robert Baldok, Chauncelere, that thei schuld not notifie this to the Kyng, ȝet this knyte, Andrew Florens, because he was a notarie, he mad upon this a open instrument.

---

[1] *an*] and. C.C.C.

A.D. 1320. for Guienne to Chas. IV.

In this same ȝere the Kyng of Scottis sent embassiatouris to the Court of Rome, for to have reles of the curs and the enterditing whech thei were falle in for contumacye ageyn the Pope and rebellyon ageyn the Kyng of Ynglond. And there were thei so answerd but be a simpil clerk of Ynglond, that thei sped not in her matere.

The Pope refuses to release the Scots from the interdict.

In this same ȝere on Andrew Hercle, whech took Thomas of Lancastir, and broute him to the Kyng, and whom the Kyng had rewarded gretly, and mad erl of Carlyle, ros ageyn the Spenseres. And whanne he say it myte not availe, thei were so wallid with the Kyngis grace, he rebelled openly, and drow to the Scottis, and favoured her part ageyn the Kyng. Thanne was there a nobil knyte in that cuntre, cleped Sir Anthony Lucy. He, supposing to stand the bettir in the Kyngis grace, sodeynly fel upon this tyraunt at Karlhil, took him, put him in yrunnes, and brout him to London to the Kyng, and there was he schamefully deposed of alle worchip, and deed as a tretoure.

Rebellion of Sir Andrew Harcla.

He is executed in London.

In this same ȝere Robert Brus, the Kyng of Scottis, wrote to the Kyng of Ynglond, that trews schuld be had betwix both londis for XIII. ȝere; and this was grauntid.

A thirteen years' truce with Scotland.

In the XVII. ȝere of his regne he held a Parlement at London, for to wete if he schuld go into Frauns to do homage, or nowt. And this was the decre of the Parlement, that the King schuld not go, but he schuld send solempne embassiatoures to prove

A.D. 1323. Parliament meets at London. The King refuses to go to France.

A.D. 1323. if he myte be excused so, or elles for to dilaye the matere til he myte come.

Parliament refuses to pay the ransom money of the Earl of Richmond.

In this same Parlement was offered a peticion both to the clergy and to the lay fe, for the rauson of Ser Jon of Bretayn, erl of Richmund. And this was the answere,—"That for the Kyng or the qween in swech maner men schuld be leyd to a certeyn contribucion, but for no othir."

The Bishop of Hereford is accused of treason, and appeals to the Abp. of Canterbury.

In this Parlement was arested Adam, bischop of Herforth, of treson: and he stood and seid he schuld not answere in this maner but to the bischop of Cauntirbyri, whech was his juge immediatly undir the Pope. At this word alle the bischoppes rise up, and chalenged him as a membir of the Cherch; and so was he comittid to the keping of the bischop of Cauntirbury tyl the tyme that he schuld answere to thoo objecciones that schuld be aleggid ageyn him. Not many days aftir he was cyted to come before the juges. Ther went with him the erchbischop and othir ten bischoppis, with the Crosse of Cauntyrbury, and there thei cursed alle thoo that schuld ley ony hand in violens of this Adam, bischop. This say the Kyng, and mad a qwest for to be assigned: and thei, dredying more the Kyng than God, endited the bischop of alle thoo poyntes in whech he was accused, and, as sad men supposed, not gilty. This plesid the Kyng wel, and he comaunded alle his temporal good to be achetid; his body was kept undir tuycioune of the bischop of Cauntirbiry.

He is condemned, and deprived of his liberty.

Ambassadors are sent to the French Court to excuse the King from doing homage.

In this same Parlement were chose too embassiatores, Edmunde of Wodstok, brothir to the Kyng, and eke erle of Kent, and with him the bischop of Dorham, to go into Frauns, for to excuse the Kyng that he cam not to make his homage. There were thei receyved worchipfully; but thei sped not, for a certeyn offens whech a knyte of Ynglond had do ageyn the plesauns of the King of Frauns,—thei cleped

A.D. 1323.

him Raf Basset. The erl Edmund wold he schuld be punchid aftir the lawes of Frauns: the bischop wold not consent thereto. So sent thei hom to the King Edward to wite his wille. And he sent letteris, that al that evir the knyte had do was do in the Kyngis rite: wherfore he alowed all that was doo.

Mortimer escapes from the Tower to France.

In these dayes Roger Mortimer the younger gaf swech a drynk to the keperis of the Toure, that he scaped oute of alle the wardes, and met with a boot at his consent; and, aftir, in a schip, seiled into Frauns, where he had frendis, and leved merily. Roger, his unkil, deid there in prison.

Ambassadors are sent into France to treat for peace, but without success.

Many embassiatouris were sent into Frauns to procure pees; but it availed not. Than were the Frenschmen in this lond had in gret despite: thei that dwelled with the qween fled into Frauns. The lyflode of the qween was take fro hir: thei sent hir fro the Kyngis coferes what thei wold.

A second embassy.

In that same tyme were sent to the King of Frauns these III. embassiatoures, the bischop of Wynchestir, bischop of Norwich, and the erle of Richemund, to trete of pes.

The Queen undertakes to mediate with the King of France.

Than thei that were aboute the Kyng seyde that it was convenient that the qween schuld go, supposing that the mater schuld spede the betir. Sche graunted to this jornay ful mekly; and thei of the Kyngis councel sent hir to Frauns ful porely, but with o barne, Ser Jon Krownwelle,[1] and IIII. knytis. With the mediacion of the qween thus were thei accorded, that the Kyng Edward schuld gyve Edward his son the duchy of Gian, and the erldom of Pounte. And upon this sent the Kyng his patent letteris, that, if the Kyng wold com, or sende, thei schuld com saf, and goo, to

The King transfers his French possessions to Prince Edward.

---

[1] *Krownwelle*] Kromwell. C.C.C.

A.D. 1323. performe this mater and mech othir thing. And in this mater were had many councellis, that the Kyng schuld go. But the too Spenseres letted that, for thei durst not go to Frauns, for her enmies there; and thei durst not abide in Ynglond, in[1] the Kyngis absens, for here enemes here. But thei counceled the Kyng that the Kyngis son schuld goo; and that same councel turned otherwise than thei supposed. Than mad the Kyng a chartor to the Prince, and enfessed[2] him in the londes of Normannie and Gian, to him and to his eyres. But if it happed him to deye or his fader, the londes schuld returne to his fader. And eke he wrote, that the Kyng of Frauns schuld not marie him, ne assigne him no tutoure. So went he forth with certeyn lordes, and mad homage to his uncle, King of Frauns, and then entered his londis.

The Prince does homage to the King of France.

A.D. 1324. The Queen refuses to return to England.

In the XVIII. ȝere of his regne Kyng Edward sent into Frauns to the qween and the prince, that thei schuld com hom. They sent hom many of her houshold, but thei abode stille. For the qween wold not com hom, as was seid, but sche myte bringge with hire alle thoo that were banchid oute of Ynglond, and specialy Sere Roger Mortimere. Than the Kyng, be the councelle of these too Spenseres, mad cry in Londonne that the qween and hir sone, as rebelles, schuld be banchid. And thanne[3] procured he privily, be letteris writin to Ser Jon of Bretayn, erl of Richemund, that the qween and the prince schuld be slayn. But this treson was bewreyed; and the qween, with the prince, fled onto the erle of Hennow, and there was sche reverently receyved and worchipfully.

She takes refuge with the Count of Hainault.

Prince Edward marries Philippa of Hainault.

In that same tyme, be procuracion of the qween, was made a mariage betwix Edward the Prince and Philip doutir to the erl of Hennow.

---

[1] *in*] for. C.C.C.
[2] *enfessed*] enfeffed. C.C.C.
[3] *thanne.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1324.

The Queen invades England, and is joined by many of the barons.

She marches against London.

Sone aftir the qween cam into Ynglond, with power of hir son Edward, XIIII. ȝere old, and Edward Wodstok erl of Kent, and brothir to the Kyng, and many moo. Sche londed in the havene of Herwich. And anon there drow onto hir the erl Marchale,—for sche londed on his ground,—and the erl of Leycetir, with many barones and knytes. There met hir eke certeyn bischoppis, Lincoln, Herforth, Dorham, and Hely. And William, bischop of Cauntirbury sent hir grete tresoure. The Kyng was at London whan sche entred, and axed of the cyte help for to make resistens ageyn the qween. Thei answerd that the qween and the prince schuld be receyved as good zelatores of the rem. Othir, that were proved tretoures, schuld not be receyved there. And as for hem of the cite, thei wold kepe her old privylege, that thei schuld go no ferther to fite, but that thei myte com hom the same day.

The King leaves London in the charge of John of Eltham.

This herd the Kyng, and stuffid the Toure with vitaile and armoure, and set there his yonger son, Jon Eltham, and his nece, weddid to Hew Spenser the yonger. And he rod onto the West partyes, to reyse puple ageyn the qween. He ded crye in London, that alle men schuld rise, and distroye the qweenes power; but thei schuld save the lyves of hir and hir son, and his brothir Edmund: and he that bringeth the hed of Roger Mortimere to the Kyng schal have a thousand pound. On the qween side was cried,—"No man take the valew of III. đ. but if he pay, up peyn of lesing of a fynger; ne the valew of VI. đ. up peyn of lesing of his hand; ne the valew of XII. đ. up peyn of his hed. And who bryng the hed of Hew Spenser the yonger schuld have II. thousand pound."

The King flies into Wales.

Thus fled the Kyng first to Gloucester, and than to Strogoil. He sent Hugo Spenser, the fader, to kepe the town and the castel of Bristow; and the Kyng,

A.D. 1324.

with Hugo Spenser the yonger, and on Robert Baldok, entered the see. The qween, with hir hoost, folowid evir.

Murder of Walter de Stapelton, Bishop of Exeter. [A.D. 1327.]

And thei of London in this tyme killid hem that were not favorable to the qween. First a citeceyn thei cleped Jon Marchale, and thanne Maystir Watere Stapilton, bischop of Excetir; for he was noted for a grete enmye ageyn the libertes of London. The qween jornayed forth to Glouceter, be Berkle, and there sche restored the castelle to Ser Thomas Berkle, that was eir; whech Sir Hewe Spenser the yonger had wrongfully kept fro him. Than cam the qween to Bristow, and besegid it; and it was sone yolden onto hir. And in the next day was Hewe Spenser the elder hangid in his owne cote armoure upon the comown galowis for thevys.

The Queen besieges Bristol. Execution of the elder De Spenser.

A.D. 1325. The barons propose conditions to the King.

In the XIX. ȝere were mad open cryes thorwoute the reme that the Kyng schuld com hom, and take the reule of his puple, on that condicioune, that he schuld be reuled by his owne lawes.

A.D. 1326. On his resistance, Prince Edward made "Keeper of England."

But because he wold not come, therefor the lordes of the lond mad a Councel at Herforth in Walis, in whech Edward, duk of Gyan, was mad keper of Ynglond be her comoun asent. The bischop of Norwich Chauncellor was mad there, and the bischop of Wynchester Tresorer.

The Queen enters Wales and carries the King a prisoner to Kenilworth.

In this mene tyme sent the qween into Wales Herri erl of Lancastir, and William lord Souch, and Maistir Keson Uphowel, into Wales; for thei had londis there, and were weel beloved; where, with helpe of Walsch men, thei took the Kyng, and Ser Hewe Spenser the yonger, and Robert Baldoc, and Simon Redyng, witȝ[1] othir mo.[2] This jornay was on Seynt Edmund day, the archbischop.[3] The Kyng

---

[1] *witȝ*] with. C.C.C.

[2] *mo*] moo. C.C.C.

[3] November 16.

A.D. 1326.

was broute onto Kenelworth, where he lay al that wynter. The othir thre were browt onto the qween; and thei that took hem were treuly payed too thousand pound. Hewe the Spenser was drawen at Herforth, and than hanged of[1] a galow that was fifty fote in heith. In his cote armoure was writin,—"Quid gloriaris in malicia, qui potens es in iniquitate?" Simon Reding was hangid on the same trees ten fete lowere. Robert Baldok was sent to London, and there, in grete despite and miserie, deyed in Newgate. The qween held a real[2] Cristmasse aftir at Walingford; and there were these prelatis, archbischop of Cauntirburi and of York; bischop of Wynchester, tresorere; bischop of Norwich, Chauncelere; with othir,—bischop of Lyncolnne, Hely, Coventre, and Herforth.

The younger De Spenser is executed at Hereford.

A.D. 1327.

Sone aftir the feest thei went to Londonne; and there begunne a Parlement the next day aftir the Ephiphanie,[3] where was concluded be alle the lordes, that the Kyng was insufficient to governe the puple. Wherfor thei chose the Prince to be Kyng, and proclamed it openly in the Halle of Westminster; and alle the puple consented therto. Whan the qween herd of this, sche semed as sche schuld dey for sorrow: and than Edward, hir son, mad his avow to God that he schuld nevir take the crowne with oute his fader consent.

Parliament meets in London: the King deposed and the Prince chosen in his room.

The Prince refuses the Crown.

Than, be the decre of the Parlement, thei sent to the Kyng II. bischoppis, II. herlis, II. abbotes, IIII. barones, and of every schire of Ynglond III. knytes, with burgeis of othir townes, to notifie to the Kyng the sentens of the Parlement; who that he was deposed, and his son Edward chosen. Whan the Kyng herd this he wept ful sore that his governauns had be swech that his puple disobeyed him:

A deputation is sent to the King to announce this decision.

---

[1] *of*] on. C.C.C.

[2] *real*] ryall. C.C.C.

[3] January 7.

A.D. 1327. but yet he thankid God specialy that thei chose his son for to be her Kyng.

Anno 6524—6574. 1327–1376.—Edward the Thirde regned L. ȝere.

Edward III. is crowned at Westminster, A.D. 1327.

In his first ȝere he wrote lettyres to alle the schiris in Ynglond, that his fader had resigned, and he was chose bi the comenaunte[1] of the reme for to be Kyng. He was crowned in the Convercion of Seynt Paule,[2] at Westminster be the handis of Waltere, bischop of Cauntirbury. In that same tyme was assigned to the qween, his modir, a dowarye, that men had no mende of swech assignament. For the Kyng had ful scarcely the third part of his lyflod.

Disturbances at Bury.

In that same ȝere the dwelleres of Bury risen ageyn the monkys, and in the myd day broke the gates, robbed the place of joweles,[3] vestimentis, bokes, and speciali of dedis of maneres and of londes. Thei wold rith nowt restore ageyn onto the tyme that the Abbot had graunted onto hem here peticiones, whech were ful onresonable.

Disturbances at S. Albans.

In this same ȝere thei of Seynt Albones rysyn in the same maner ageyn the Monastery.

Edward II. is imprisoned in Berkeley Castle.

That tyme the old Edward was led privyli to many places: but at the last was he broute to the Castel of Berkley. And there Ser Thomas Berkley had the kepyng of him o month, and treted him ful worchipfully; and Ser Jon Mauntravers had the keping of him the othir month, and treted him ful ongentyly. The qween sent him plesaunt giftes, and clothis ful precious; but sche wold not se him. Sche pretendid that the lordis wold not suffir hir. The old Edward had every month to his expensis a hundred mark.

In this same ȝere was this old Edward slayn with a hoot spete[4] put into his body, whech coude not be

---

[1] *comenaunte*] comenmaute. C.C.C.

[2] January 24.

[3] *joweles*] jewelis. C.C.C.

[4] *hoot spete*] hote spite. C.C.C.

A.D. 1327.

He is murdered by Sir John Maltravers.

aspied whan he was ded; for thei put a horne in his tewhel, and the spete[1] thorw the horn, that there schuld no brennyng appere outeward. This was be the ordenauns, as was seid, of Ser Jon Mauntreveres and Thomas Gurnay, whech leyd a grete dore upon him whil thei ded this work. And whan this dede was doo, thei fled both into straunge cuntre. But Thomas Gurnay, thre ȝere aftir that, was take in Marcyle, and sent into Ynglond; but thei that broute him killid him in the se for dreed, that he schuld not accuse[2] persones of hier degre.

A.D. 1328.

A council is held in London by the Abp. of Canterbury.

In the secunde ȝere, Simon, Archbishop of Cauntirbury, held a grete Councel at Londonne; where was ordeyned that Good Friday and Soulemasse day schuld be holy fro al maner servyle werkis. In that same councel thei cursed alle tho men that killid Maistir Walter Stapilton, bischop of Excetir, or leid ony handis of violens upon him. In that same Councel was ordeyned that the Concepcion of oure Ladi[3] schuld be a solempne fest.

The King goes into France to do homage for his possessions.

That same tyme Kyng Edward went in to Frauns to make his homage to the Kyng of Frauns for the duchy of Gian and the erldam of Pounte. He left Edmund his brothir, erle of Cornwaile, keper of the lond for the mene tyme.

Parliament at Salisbury.

Whan he was come hom he held a Parlement at Salesbury, where he mad thre erles,—Ser Jon Eltham, his yonger brothir, erl of Cornwayle; Ser Roger Mortimere, erl of March; and anothir, erl of Ormund.

A.D. 1329.

Parliament at Winchester.

In the third ȝere was a Parlement at Wynchester; where, be procuracion of the qween, Roger Mortimere was mad erl of Kent. The Kyngis uncle, Sere Edmund Woodstok, was hedid there for certeyn con-

---

[1] *spete*] spite. C.C.C.

[2] *for dreed, that he schuld not accuse*] for drede that he should accuse. C.C.C.

[3] December 8.

A.D. 1329. Execution of Sir Edmund Woodstock.

fessiones of himself, and certeyn letteris found wyth him, in whech thingis, as summe sayde, was conteyned no treson, ne no cause for whech a man schuld deye. But this was feyned on him,—that he, and othir moo, had conspired to rere the elde Kyng Edward to his dignite; and that was fals. Othir men were accused of the same, and thei were put in dyvers prisonis undir pleggis. Thus was the erl ded for hem alle. And he was the lasse compleyned; for his meny were of evel governauns, speciali in taking of vitail, and not paying.

A.D. 1330. Parliament at Nottingham.

In the IIII. ȝere was a Parlement at Notyngham; where Roger Mortimere was take be nyte in the qween chambir behinde a corteyn. It is seid comounly that there is a weye fro the hous of Lenton onto the castel of Notyngham, undir the ground: and this wey cam thei in that took him, of whech the principales were too Ufforthis. The qween was loggid in the castelle, and this Mortimere next hire, and the Kyng forth in the court. The keyes were in the keping of Mortimere. So these knytes, whan thei were com into the castelle, thei cleped up the Kyng, and told him who Mortimere had ymaged his deth, that he myte be Kyng: thei told him eke who he mysused his moder the qween, and then thei broke up the dore, and fond him behinde the curteyn, as we saide, and sent him to London, and there was he ded.

Mortimer is executed.

The charges against him.

These causes were alleggid ageyn him. That he was gilty of old Edwardes deth. The secund, that Kyng Edward that now is, was not sped ne worchipid at the batayl of Stanpark; but he gaf favoure to the Scottis, and not to the Kyng. The thirde cause, that he recevyed of the Scottis, that tyme, XX. thousand pound, and procured a wrecchid marriage betwix the Kyngis son of Scotlond and the Kyngis sistir of Ynglond. The fourte, that he had consumed the

A.D. 1330.

Kyngis tresoure, and the qweenis liflod, and the tresoure that Ser Hewe Spenser left, so that he was rich, and othir pore. The V. cause, that he had alle the wardes, alle the mariages; and, last of alle, that he was ovyr homeli with the qween.

Birth of the Black Prince.

In this same ȝere was the Prince Edward born the XVII. kalend of June.[1]

A.D. 1331. Edward Baliol claims the Crown of Scotland.

In the V. ȝere of Edward cam into Ynglond a man thei cleped Edward de Baliol, pretending to have rite to the crowne of Scotlond. And anon drow onto him Herry Vermount, David, erl of Asseles, Gilbert Umfrevile, Richard Talbot, and many; for thei had rite to grete possessiones in Scotlond, ethir be hem self, or be her wyves. These alle cam to the Kyng, and asked leve to enter Scotlond, goyng thorw his lond. The Kyng wold gyve hem no leve, because David, Kyng of Scottis, had weddid his sistir. Than gote thei schippis, and took the se aboute the feste of Seynt Laurens,[2] and londed fast by the Abbey Downfermelyn, where thei fond grete resistens of Scottis; but a few of oure archeres occupied the Scottis, til oure armed men were londed.

He defeats the Scotch army.

Sone aftir was there a grete bataile in a place thei clepe Gledesmore, where too thousand Englischmen had victorie ovir XL. thousand Scottis. Alle men seide it was Goddis hande, and not mannes hand. For the Scottis were so many, and Englisch so fewe, that ech of hem bar down othir.

A.D. 1332. The King determines to aid Baliol.

In the sexte ȝere of the Kyng, Edward Baliol continued his werres with the Scottes, and, aboute mydsomer, many worchipful men of this lond drow to him, to help him of her own fre wille, and at her

---

[1] *the XVII. kalend of June.*] It should have been, "on the XVIIth of the kalends of July," *i.e.*, the 15th of June, on which day the Black Prince was born. The seventeenth of the kalends of June is equivalent to the 16th of May.

[2] August 10.

A.D. 1332. owne cost. The Kyng, conseyvyng weel that the Scottis were evir ontrewe and ful of treson, and thei toke nevyr no treus but to make hem strong ageyn us; consideryng eke who that the mariage and alle the pees was mad be Ser Roger Mortimere, him being undir yong age;—alle this considered, he gadered a grete power[1] for to go onto Scotland.

A.D. 1333. He besieges Berwick, In the VII. ȝere the King went to Berwyk, and the hoost al on fote, where he fond many Scottis that come to remeve the sege of Berwik. For these forseyd lordis, aftir thei had crowned Edward Baliol at Scone, thei cam streith and besegid this Berwik. There had the Kyng grete victorie, and the Scottis grete velonye: for thei fled alle, and the King pursewid hem more than V. myle. VIII. erles were dede of the Scottis; a thousand and III. hundred of horsmen; and of fote-men XXXV. thousand. The ledere of the Scottis at that tyme was William Keth. In this batayle[2] wonne the archeres of Ynglond a perpetual laude.

and defeats the Scots.

The Queen at Bamborough. In this same tyme lay the Qween at Banborow. Certeyn Scottis were sent to besege that town; but whan thei herd that Berwik was take, thei fled anon.

Baliol is restored. Than mad the Kyng this same Edward Baliol capteyn of Berwik, and keper of Scotlond; and he cam ageyn to Ynglond, and visited many pylgrimages. The same tyme the prelatis of Scotlond fled into Frauns, and summe to Rome, compleynyng of this infortune, sekyng socoure and help, but thei founde non.

A.D. 1334. Parliament at York. In the VIII. ȝere the King held a Parlement at York: and there he sent for the Kyng of Scottis; and he excused him, that he myte not come: for the Scottis had leyn certeyn awayte upon him to his grete hurt if he come. He sent thidir his embassatouris, Ser Herri Beaumount, and Ser William Mountagew, with othir barones. But in that same ȝere, at the fest of Gervase and Prothase,[1] the same Kyng of Scottis mad his homage onto the Kyng of Ynglond at Newcastelle up o Tyne. A.D. 1334.

---

[1] *power*] hoost. C.C.C.

[2] *In this batayle*, &c.] In the margin, opposite these words, occurs Capgrave's private mark in red ink. See page 4.

In that same ȝere was a Parlement at London, but for because[2] tydyngis cam that the Scottis were rebelle, and had take Sere Richard Talbot and VI. knytis, the Kyng, with his power, mad him redy to go to Scotlond. And to that entent the clergy and the puple graunted him a grete summe of good. Thus went he to Scotlond, and abood there til wyntir tyme, that he myte go on the hys,[3] and thanne distroyed the lond even onto Galowey. There delyvered he Ser Herry Beaumount, that was besegid in a castel. The King invades Scotland.

This ȝere were so grete wateres, that thei broke down walles in Temse and othir places, ovircured the londis, and kyllid many bestes. Great Inundation in London.

This ȝere deied Jon, the XXII.[4] Pope of that name, and was byried at Avinion. Death of John XXII.

And aftir him was mad Pope an abbot of the Sistewes, and cleped Benedictus XII. He mad many Constituciones to religious men; for the Chanones clepe here Constituciones at this day "Benedictines."[5] Benedict XII., Pope.

In the IX. ȝere the Kyng held his Cristmasse at Rokesborow, with grete noumbyr of Englischmen; and that same tyme was trews take with Scottis A.D. 1335. A truce is made with the Scots.

---

[1] June 19.

[2] *for because*] for cause. C.C.C.

[3] *hys*] yse. C.C.C.

[4] *Jon the XXII.*, &c.] The word 'Papa' is written in the margin, evidently by the same hand as the text.

[5] "*Benedictines.*"] "Benedictina, sive Constitutiones Benedicti Duodecimi Papæ, ad Monachos Nigros, &c." Egidius de Gourmont: Paris, 1517.

A.D. 1335. Parliament at York. tyl the fest of Seynt Jon Baptiste.[1] And than was hald a Parlement at York upon the same matere; and it was concluded that the King schuld jornay into Scotlond; and so he ded: but the Scottis feyned that thei wold have pees. And aftirward the erl of Asseles cam and asked for hem pees; but the othir lordis wold not come. For whech cause, aftirward, was take the lord Morif at Edenborow, and browt to the Kingis prison.

Ransom of Sir Richard Talbot. In that same tyme, Ser Richard Talbot, whech was take prisonere in Scotland, for iiM. mark was delyvered.

A.D. 1336. Prince Edward is made Duke of Cornwall. In the X. ȝere, the Kyng, aftir the deth of his brothir, Jon Eltham, whech was erl of Corwayle,[2] mad Edward, his sone, duke of Cornwaile and erl of Chestir. And in that same tyme he mad sex erles, Herry of Lancastir the yonger, erl of Derby; William Mountagew, erl of Salesbury; and Hewe Awdle, erl of Glouceter; William Clynton, erl of Huntyngdonne; Robert Ufford, erl of Suffolk; and the sext is not now in mende.

Wallingford the astronomer. This ȝere deyed Richard Walingforth, abbot of Seynt Albones, a studious man in astronomie. Be his avis was mad that grete horologe that standeth there, with many mervelous mevynges of astronomye.

The use of foreign stuffs forbidden by statute. This ȝere was mad a statute, that no man schuld were no precious cloth but swech as is wove in Ynglond, except the Kyng, the qween, and here childyrn; and no man were no[3] precious furre but swech as is in Ynglond,[4] but if he myte spend a hundred pound.

---

[1] June 24.

[2] *Corwayle*] Cornwayle. C.C.C.

[3] *no.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *but swech as is in Ynglond.*] om. C.C.C.

In this same tyme[1] was at a litil town clepid Berwik, V. mile fro Walsyngham, on the west syde, a woman thei cleped Jewet Metles, so cleped for sche ete no mete, but receyved the Sacrament on the Sunday, and thereby lyved al the weke. Prestes asayed that sche schuld receyve a hoost not consecrat; but sche knewe it. Sche was examined be the officeres of the Cherch, and no defaute fond thei in hir feith, ne no synne in hir conversacion.

A.D. 1336. Story of Jewet Meatless.

In the XI. ȝere of his regne Southampton was brent be the galeyes of the Kyng of Frauns. And the same Kyng of Frauns occupied mech lond in Gyan, that longid to the Kyng of Ynglond. Wherfor the Kyng Edward wrote onto him letteris of grete humilitie; but he sped not. And whan that was aspied, he gadered power this same Edward, and cast him verili to chalenge the crowne of Frauns.

A.D. 1337. Southampton is burnt by the French. The King seeks redress in vain.

And upon that purpos he held a Parlement at Notingham, where was graunte a XV. of the puple, the X. peny of the borowis. And in this Parlement was ordeyned that alle the cloth-makeris of Flaundres that wold dwelle in Ynglond schuld be welkom. For III. ȝere before that was forbode the passage of wollis, because the pride of Flemingis schuld be repressid, that set more prys be wolle-sakkes than be Englischmen.

Parliament at Nottingham.

In the XII. ȝere of his regne were here to cardinales sent to reforme pees betwix the Kynges of Ynglond and Frauns. And whan it was aspied that thei were more favourable to the Kyng of Frauns than to the Kyng of Ynglond, the archbishop roos up, and declared that thei were not sufficient reformeres whech held with the party.

A.D. 1338. The King claims the French Crown in the right of his mother.

---

[1] *tyme.*] Added above the line. Immediately opposite this passage, in the margin, occurs Capgrave's private mark in red ink. See page 4.

A.D. 1338. Genealogy of Edward III.

Thanne rose the noyse thorw the lond that the Kyng had rite to the crowne of Frauns be his modir. For Seynt Lodewik was the rithfulle Kyng and eyir of Frauns. He had a son thei clepid Philippe; and that Philip begat anothir, thei cleped him Philip the Faire: whech Philip had IIII. childyrn, Ysabelle, moder to Kyng Edward; sche was eldest. The secunde was Lodewik; he was Kyng aftir his fader. The third was Philip. And he had to dowteres; on was weddid to the erl of Flaunderes, the othir to the Delfyn of Vienne, and both deied withoute issew. Thus deied this Philip withoute issew, whech regned in Frauns aftir Lodewik. This same Lodewyk had to wyves, on was dowtir to the duke of Borgayn; sche had no child: anothir was dowtir to the Kyng of Hungarie, of whom cam Jon, cleped Posthumus. Than was this the ordre of Kyngis. First regned Lodewik, the eldest son; and aftir him Jon Posthumus was treted as Kyng. He deied withoute issew. Than regned Philip the Secund brothir, whech had to douteris, as we saide; and neythir of hem had issew. He ded, the third brothir regned, cleped Charles; and, because he had no child, he mad a statute that no woman schuld be eyir of Frauns, to forbarre the rite of Kyng Edward, his sistiris son.

The King lands in Flanders and invades France.

In this same ȝere, in the Translacion of Seynt Thomas,[1] the Kyng went ovir the se, and the qween grete with childe, for to trete with the Duke of Braban, and othir lordis, to help him in his rite that he had to Frauns. He londid in the port thei clepe Swyn, where thei of Flaundres com onto hym, and profered alle her good servyse. Fro thens he went into Braban, where the duke of Braban, his cosin, met him with gret solempnite. And whan the duke of Bavare herd sey he was come, he cam nyher, so that thei met fast by Coleyn. Ther was gret wondir of the emperoure men why the Kyng of Ynglond kissid not his feet; and it was answerd be Englischmen that her Kyng was anoynted, and had power ovyr lif and membris; therefor he schuld not do so mech subjeccioune as he that is not anoynted. Eke, for he is a[1] insulane, therefor he doth no subjeccion onto[2] no man. A.D. 1338.

---

[1] July 7.

In this same ȝere the qween had child at Anwerp, whom thei cleped Leonelle. Prince Lionel is born.

In that same[3] ȝere welowes bore roses, rede and frech; and that was in Januarie.

In the XIII. ȝere of this Kyng, the Kyng left the qween at Anwerp with the houshold, and he pryvyly cam to Londonne, and fond in the Toure III. of his childyrn and III. servauntis with hem. The Constable of the Toure was that tyme Matheus de la Bech. Anon the Kyng sent aftir the Chauncelere and Tresorere, and Justises many, and set hem in prison. A.D. 1339. The King returns to London.

Thanne held he a Parlement at London, and sette the puple at swech a tribute whech men had not herd of. For men payed him the V. part of her goodes, and alle the wolles he took onto him. Parliament at London: a severe tribute is levied.

In this same tyme the cyte of Bordews was besegid be the power of the Kyng of Frauns. Thei withinne sette ope the gates, and sette on the towres the Kyngis armes of Frauns. That aspied the Frenschmen; and, wenyng that the cyte had be taken, com unarmed, withoute reule, for to bribe that thei myte. Sere Olyvere of Yngham was keper of the cite at that tyme; and, whan he sey that thei were com in, The King of France besieges Bordeaux.

---

[1] *is a.*] Written upon an erasure.

[2] *onto.*] Written upon an erasure.

[3] *In that same, &c.*] In the margin, opposite this sentence, occurs Capgrave's private mark. See p. 4.

A.D. 1339. fel upon hem, and killid grete noumbir. Befor this dede the Kyng had behote hem to com and remeve the sege; but whan he had letteris of this jornay, he sent hem letteris of gret plesauns and gret behestes.

John of Gaunt born at Ghent.

In the same ȝere the qween had child at Gaunt; thei cleped him Jon.

A.D. 1340. The French send a large fleet against the King.

In the XIIII. ȝere, whan the Kyng purposed him into Frauns, com tydingis of the conspiracioune of Frauns and Normannye, that thei had gadered ageyn hym too hundred schippis, and many galeies, with XXV. thousand of chose men. Alle thei had mad her oth to take Edward the Kyng, and presente him to the Kyng of Frauns, eydir lyvyng or ded. And alle these abydyn in the havene of Slus. And thow the Kyng had redy to hundred schippis, yet sent he Ser Water Burwage, bischop of Lincolnne, into the South cuntre to gete him mo. And the King went to Yermoth, and there mette his nave. Ser Robert Morley, he gadered the schippes of the North, and met with the Kyng in the se. There was gret batayle betwix tho to navees; but by the help of God, the Englischmen had the victory. For whanne the Frenschmen felt the gret hurt of arowes, many were ded, and many scippid into the se. There deied on that side XXX. thousand men. Whan this jornay was don, there durst no man telle the Kyng of Frauns tydyngis, save a sage[1] fool stood in his presens on o day, and seid to the King,—"The Frensch men, thei be hardi; and the Englisch men be but cowardis." The Kyng inqwired whi he seide so. "For soth," he seith, "for at the last jornay the Englischmen stood stille in here schippis, and durst not scip into the se, as the Frenschmen ded." Be this word the Kyng undirstood that his puple was put to rebuk. In this conflict oure

Great naval victory at Sluys: the King takes two hundred French ships.

---

[1] *sage*] sayge. C.C.C.

Kyng[1] took too hundred schippis; and in o schip of the Normannes thei founde XL. ded bodies. A.D. 1340.

Than the Kyng, with the duke of Braban, and the erl of Hennow, with the strength of the puple[2] of Bruges, Gaunt, and Ypres, entered into Frauns, and besegid the cite whech thei clepe Torneacensis. Whille he lay at the sege the erl of Hennow, and Ser Walter Mawny, and Ser Reynald Cobham, took mo than CCC. townes in Frauns, grete and smale, and spoiled hem. The Kyng of Frauns lay but fast by, and durst not stere a foot, thow that he had redy a grete hoost. But he sent too cardinales for to have a trews, for the cause that his puple deyed for hungir and thirst; whech trews the Kyng of Ynglond accepted with the better wil, because mony cam not redily oute of Ynglond, as was promised.

The King invades France, and besieges Tournay.

A truce is concluded.

In the XV. ȝere the Pope put alle Flaundres undir interdict, for because thei obeyed not the King of Frauns. And thei answerd that thei knew weel that the Kyng of Frauns occupied the Crowne onrithfully; therefor thei wold not obeye him. Than were sent too cardinales; and trews was take for III. ȝere, tyl it myte be discussed wheythir Edward had rite to the corowne of Frauns or nowt.

A.D. 1341. The Pope puts Flanders under an interdict.

In this same ȝere the qween had child in the Toure of London, a dowtir thei cleped Blaunch. Sche deyed sone, and is byried at Westminster.

Birth of the Princess Blanche.

In the XVI. ȝere the emperoure revoked the letteris that he had mad, and turned to the part of the Kyng of Frauns.

A.D. 1342.

And in that same ȝere the Kyng went into Litil Brityn, for to help Jon Mountforth, whech was very eyir thereof, ageyn Charles de Bloys; and there he

The King invades Britanny.

---

[1] *oure Kyng*] the Kyng. C.C.C.

[2] *puple.*] Written upon an erasure.

A.D. 1342. wan many castelles and strengthis. Aftir he besegid the town of Vanes, and wan it, and kept it.

A.D. 1343. In the XVII. ȝere deied Benedictus XII.[1]

Clement VI., Pope.

And Clemens VI. was Pope aftir him; whech was before archbischop of Rone.

He grants 'provisions' to foreign clergy, intruding them into English benefices. The King resists his claims.

This Pope gave the benefices of Ynglond to the cardinales that were vacaunt,[2] and mad newe tytiles thereto.[3] That herd the Kyng, and withstood it, and forbad, in peyne of prisonment, no man bryng no swech provysiones into his lond. And upon this he wrote a solempne letter onto the Pope that he schuld not interrupt the privilege of this lond, ne prive hem of her rite that were patrones of cherches: For whanne a aliene hath care of a puple that knowith not her tonge, the goodes of the Cherch are trewly gadered, but the teching of soule is not had. Eke he wrote that it was perel onto the rem, that swech men schuld be promoted here that were enmyes to the lond, whech schuld knowe al the councel of the lond, to confusion of the same. And the clerkys of this lond, that were of gret letterure and of blessed lyf, schuld be rejecte, and alienes accepted: this schuld growe to gret mischef of the lond; for few men schuld have appetite for to lerne. Many othir suasiones were in that lettere ageyn thoo provisiones.

Death of the Bishop of Lincoln.

In this same ȝere deied Herry Burwayche, bischop of Lyncolnne. And whan he was ded, he appered onto on of his swyeres,[4] with a bow, arowes, and horn, in a schort grene cote, and seid onto him, "Thou knowist wel whanne I mad this park I took many pore mennes londes, and closed hem in. Therfor go I here, and kepe this park with ful mechil peyne. I pray the go to my bretherin chanones of Lincolnne, and pray hem that thei restore the pore men to here lond, breke down the heggis, make pleyn the dykes, and than schal I have rest." Thanne, be the comoune assent of the Chapetere of Lyncolnne, thei sent a chanon, cleped William Bachelere, and he fulfillid alle this restoryng. A.D. 1343.

---

[1] *Benedictus XII.*] The word 'Papa' is here written in the margin, apparently in the same hand as the text.

[2] *that were vacaunt.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *thereto*] there. C.C.C.

[4] *swyeres*] squeres. C.C.C.

In the XVIII. ȝere the Kyng sent Herri of Lancaster, erl of Derby, with Hewe Spenser, and Raf Stafford, and the bischop of Excetir, with many othir, for to trete with the Pope for the rite that he had to the crowne of Frauns,—not as to a juge, but as to a counceloure. And because the Pope was a Frenschman, thei found but litil coumfort there. A.D. 1344. Futile negotiations for peace before the Pope.

This ȝere was William Bateman mad bischop of Norwich, whech was the Popes auditoure before.

This ȝere the Kyng renewed the Round Tabil at Wyndesore, which was first mad be Arthure. That aspied, the Kyng of Frauns mad a round tabil in Frauns, to drawe the knytehod of Almayn fro the Kyng of Ynglond. King Arthur's Round Table.

This ȝere Herry of Lancaster, in the cuntre of Gyan, took a strong cyte thei clepe Brigerak, and othir strengthis and townes, in noumbyr LVI. Successes in Guienne.

In the XIX. ȝere the Kyng entered the se; and no man wist whidir he wold. Whan he was in the se, a Frensch knite thei cleped N. Harecort, whech was exiled oute of Frauns, mad the Kyng for to lond on the south side of Normannie, at a port thei clepe Hogges. There took he Cane, and many othir townes, and had grete richesse there. And because Kyng Philip had brok alle the briggis that led into Frauns, the Kyng cam to Picardie, and distroyed the cuntre; and than went thei ovir the watir of Seyne; and there the erl of Norhampton killid V. hundred men that letted him to make the brigge ageyn. Than went thei ovir the watir of Summe, and fond a pas- A.D. 1345. The King again invades France. He lands at La Hogue, takes Caen, and advances inland.

A.D. 1345. sage that was nevir founde before. There killid thei to thousand men that wold lette here passage.

A.D. 1346. Battle of Crecy. In the XX. ȝere the Lord Spencer tok the town of Crotey, where were killid IIII. hundred armed men. Than cam Philip the King of Frauns, and kept batail at Cressi with the Kyng of Ynglond, whech is in Pountney. The King wins a glorious victory. There fawte thei the XXVI. day of August, where the King of Frauns was fayn to fle, and the King of Bem, and the King of Majoricarum; and the duk of Lotharinge was ded there; too bischoppis, VIII. erles, too thousand knytes and mech othir puple, eythir slayn or put to flite. In this same bataile the Kyng of Frauns was wounded in the throte, and in the thi, and twies onhorsid be the Kyng of Ynglond: for had he not fled on swift hors, he had be take there. He invests Calais. Fro thens Kyng Edward rood onto Kaleys the IX. day aftir the batail, and besegid that town; for it was a cursed place, and cruel onto Englischmen. This sege lastid a ȝere. The King of Frauns cam thedir, for to dissolve the sege: but schamfully he fled with his puple, and left his tentis and his vitaile behinde.

The Scots invade England, but are defeated, and King David II. is taken. In the same ȝere, the XIII. day of Octobir, was a grete bataile betwix Englischmen and Scottis at Dorham, whech be the councelle of the Kyng of Frauns was procured: for he supposed, whil the Kyng was at Caleys, the Scottis schuld have but lytyl resistens, for wantyng of puple. There was take the Kyng of Scottis; and William Duglas, and many othir lordis, slayn. Thei that had this victorye were Ser Wylliam La Souch, archbischop of York, with his clergie, Ser Gilbert Umfrevyle, Herry Percy, Raf Nevyle, William Dayncourt, and Herry Scroop.

Charles of Blois is taken prisoner in Britanny. In that same ȝere the Lord Dagworth, with foure score armed men, an[1] a hundred archeres, held batail with Charles de Bloys, whech pretended to be duke of Bretayn; and there had the victori ovyr V. hundred armed men, and VIII. thousand arbasteleres. A.D. 1346.

---

[1] *an*] and. C.C.C.

A.D. 1347. Surrender of Calais.

In the XXI. ȝere, whan Kyng Philip of Frauns was fled thus cowardly fro the sege of Caleys, thei of the same town offered the town to Kyng Edward withoute any poyntment. And he lay in the town a month, considering the strong disposicion thereof. Thanne, at instauns of the Pope, was take trews betwix the two Kyngis for a ȝere. Aboute the fest of Seynt Michael,[1] the Kyng took the se into Ynglond and there had he grete tempest, and mervelous wyndes; and thanne he mad swech a compleynt on to oure Lady, and seide, "O blessed Mayde, what menyth al this? Evyr, whan I go to Frauns, I have fayre weddir; and whanne I turne to Ynglond intollerable tempestes."

The King returns to England.

A.D. 1348. Great rain.

In the XXII. ȝere were grete reynes, whech dured fro the Nativite of Seynt Jon Baptist[2] onto Cristmasse.

Pestilence in the East.

And aftir that reyne there folowid a grete pestilens, specialy in the Est side of the world amongst the Sarasines. So many deied, that there left scarsly among hem the X. man, or the X. woman. Thei, seyng this veniauns amongst hem, purposed veryly to be Cristen. But whan thei wist that the pestilens was among the Cristen men, than her good purpos sesed.

A.D. 1349. The Great Pestilence ravages England.

In the XXIII. ȝere was the Grete Pestilens of puple. First it began in the north cuntre; than in the south; and so forth thorw oute the reme. Aftir this pestilens folowed a moreyn of bestis, whech had nevir be seyn. For, as it was supposed, there left not in Inglond the ten part of the puple. Than cesed lordes rentis, prestis tithes. Because there were so fewe tyl-

---

[1] September 29.

[2] June 24.

A.D. 1349. men, the erde lay untillid. So mech misery was in the lond, that the prosperite whech was before was nevir recured.

Almeric of Pavia surrenders Calais to the French. In this same ȝere was a knyte of Frauns, thei cleped Geoffrey Charneys. He mad a comenaunt[1] with the Capteyn of Caleys, that Caleys schuld be delyveryd onto him for a certeyn summe of mony. The Capteyn, whech was a Januensis, had take a grete part of this summe. Whan the Kyng knew this treson, privily he went thidir. The French knyte sent to the Capteyn, to have entre into the Castel: he was late in, and the brigge of tymbyr was drawe. And anon the Kyng gaf hem a saute, and took the knyte, and alle the felauchip, hung the Januensis, and mad a new Capteyn. He is surprised by the King and executed.

A.D. 1350. The Spanish Fleet defeated near Winchelsea. In the XXIV. ȝere the Kyng had a gret bataile with the Spaynardis in the se, a lytyl fro Wynchilissey, in whech batayle there scaped but fewe of the Spaynardis: XXX. grete schippis were take of her part.

A.D. 1351. Introduction of new coins. In the XXV. ȝere William Edyngton, bischop of Wynchester, whech loved bettir the Kyngis profite than the puples, mad the Kyng to make a new coyne, grotes, pens of too, and pens; distroying alle the elde sterlynges, whech were of gretter white,[2] quantite for quantyte.

A.D. 1352. Death of Clement. In the XXVI. ȝere deied Pope Clement, in the fest of Seynt Nicholas.[3]

Innocent VI., Pope. And in his stede[4] was chose Stevene, bischop of Hostiensis, and cleped Innocent the Sext.

The see of Rochester. In that same ȝere Haymo at the Heth resyned the bischoprick of Rouchester frely; and the Pope gaf it to Maystir Jon Schepey, prioure of the same place. A.D. 1352.

---

[1] *comenaunt*] covenaunt. C.C.C.

[2] *white*] wiȝt. C.C.C.

[3] December 6.

[4] *in his stede.*] The word 'Papa' is here written in the margin, apparently by the same hand as the text.

In that same tyme was gret derth of yrun, led, and bras, and othir metalle. Scarcity of metals.

And that tyme the duk of Seland weddid duke Herry doutyr, of Lancastir.

In tho same dayes Ser Raf Bentle, keper of Britayn, in the Vigil of the Assumpcioune of oure Lady,[1] faute with the Marchale of Frauns, fast be Mauron, betwix Reymes and Plumerel; where were killid on the Frensch side XIII. lordis, of knytes a CL.; swieres a hundred; of comoun puple withoute noumbir. There were take IX. lordes, and of knytes and swieres a hundred and XL. The French are defeated at Mauron.

In the XXVII. ȝere was there swech a droute in the lond, that fro the month of March on to July fel not a drope of reyn on the ground; and for that cause the gres and the corn was evene dreid up. So Ynglond, that was wone to fede othir londis, was fayn to be fed with othir londis. A.D. 1353. Great dearth in England.

The same ȝere Herry, erl of Derby, was made duke of Lancaster. And that same tyme Raf Stafford was mad erl of Stafford.

In the XXVIII. ȝere was mad acord be the Kyngis of Frauns and Ynglond, and confermed with othis, but not with seles, undir this forme,—That the Kyng of Ynglond schuld have pesibyly al his londes whech the Kyng of Frauns had unritefully occupied: but he must first renounce alle the rite and the chalenge whech he mad to the crowne of Frauns. Upon this were sent solempne embassiatouris of the Kyngis party of Ynglond to the Court of Rome,—Herry, duk of Lancastir, Richard, erl of Arundel; William, biscop of Norwich, and Gy Brian, knyte. But whan A.D. 1354. Negotiations for peace.

---

[1] August 14.

A.D. 1354. The King ravages France, but returns to oppose the Scots, who had taken Berwick.

thei come thidir, with fraude of the courtesanes, whech were comensalis with the Pope, thei were illuded. Anon as the Kyng herd this, he went into Frauns, and began to distroye the cuntre. Than cam tiding that Scottis had take Berwik; and he cam hom ageyn, and wan it.

Disorders at Oxford: the citizens are laid under an interdict.

In this tyme the dwelleres of Oxenforth gadered the cuntre, and spoiled summe scoleres; summe fled, summe were slayn: but alle wer thei robbid and dryve fro the town. Thanne was the town put undir interdict for a tyme, tyl a tretys was mad thus,—That thei whech caused the discord schuld be bound in grevous peynes that thei schuld no more do so; and eke that the Chauncelere schuld have al the governauns and alle the correccion.

A.D. 1355. Death of Philip VI. Accession of John the Good.

In XXIX. ȝere deied Philip the Kyng of Frauns. And aftir him Jon, his son, was Kyng, whech was aftir prisonere in Ynglond. Anon as he was crowned he gaf Charles, his eldest son, the duchie of Gyan: for whech cause Kyng Edward was wroth, and gaf the same duchie to Edward the Prince, as his riteful heritage. And he anon gadered a host, at the Nativite of oure Lady[1] sayled into Gian, where he[2] took many townes. Alle that were rebel ageyn him he prisoned or killid: and there abod he al that wyntir.

The King invades France.

The Kyng, his fader, had letteres into Ynglond, that Jon, Kyng of Frauns, had gadered a gret host at Seyn Omeres, to fite with Edward Kyng of Ynglond. And anon the Kyng went to Caleys, and with him his too sones, Leonelle and Jon, and Herry, duk of Lancanstir, with these erles, Norhampton, March, and Stafford. This aspied, the Kyng of Frauns distroyed alle the vitale of the cuntre, and pryvyly fled awey. So Kyng Edward cam ageyn to Caleys.

---

[1] September 8.

[2] *where he.*] These words are repeated in the MS. Pub. Lib.

A.D. 1355. The Scots take Berwick.

This same ȝere Scottis took the town of Berwik, but not the castelle.

And in this same ȝere was graunted be the Parlement to the Kyng, of every sak of wolle Ls̃. for VI. ȝere aftir.

Prince Thomas is born at Woodstock.

And this ȝere the qween had a son at Wodstok; thei cleped him Thomas.

A.D. 1356. Berwick surrenders to the King.

In the XXX. ȝere of Edward, the Scottis were fayn for to delyvir the town of Berwik frely.

Baliol resigns the Crown to Edward III. at Roxburgh.

And the same tyme Edward Baylol, Kyng of Scottis, resyned alle the rite of the crowne of Scotland to Kyng Edward, at Rokisborow, be his patent letteris.

Success of the Black Prince in France.

In the same ȝere Prince Edward rod oute of Burdews be the cuntres of Agenes, Peregor, Lymozin, Bery, and Soloigne: alle that evir mad resistens to him he took or killid; and thei that receyved him he suffered hem lyve undir tribute. So be the weye he tok mony Frensch lordes, and many armed men.

Battle of Poitiers.

At the last ende of that ȝere he met with the King of Frauns fast be Peytris. The Prince had in his felauchip not passid IIII. thousand; and the Kyng of Frauns had IIII. bataytes. But, for al that, the Frensch fled, the Kyng was take, and Philippe his yonger son, James Borbon, and XI. erles, the bischop Senonensis, with othir lordis and knytes to the noumbyr of too thousand. There were killid too dukes, XIX. lordes, and fyve thousand of men of armes, beside othir puple. The Prynce rood streit to Burdews with his noble pray.

King John and his Son are taken captives.

A.D. 1357. The Black Prince returns to England with his prisoners.

In the XXXI. of Kyng Edward, the Prince cam into Ynglond aboute the feest of Pentecost,[1] brynging with him Jon the Kyng of Frauns, and many othir prisoneris. Whan he cam to London there was so mech prees of puple, that, whan he was at the

---

[1] Whit Sunday fell on May 28 in the year 1357.

A.D. 1357. bregge at nyne befor non, it was on aftir noon or he myte come to Westminster.

Three Carnals visit England. In that same ȝere were sent to Cardinales into Ynglond, to reforme pes betwix the to Kingis. The third cardinal cam only to visit and to se the Kyng of Frauns. And alle these III. abydyn here ny to ȝere.

David II. of Scotland is ransomed from prison. In this same ȝere was David Kyng of Scottis delyveryd oute of prison; for he had be kept in the Castelle of Odiham XI. ȝere. His raunson was a hundred thousand marc.

A.D. 1358. Dispute between the Archbishop of Armagh and the Friars. In the XXXII. ȝere felle a gret strif betwix on Armacan and the IIII. Orderes of Freres. For the same Armachan, archbischop of Yrland, accused the IIII. Orderes before the Pope, that thei lyved not aftir the writing of her reule. He wold eke a distroyed here pryvyleges; but he prevailed not. In Oxenforth he held straunge opiniones, whech Wiclef meyntened aftirward more venomously. But at that tyme was a Frere Augustin; thei clepid him Geffrey Hardeby, aftirward Provincial, and Confessoure to the Prince, whech mad ageyn his opinion a notable book we clepe "De Evangelica Vita."[1]

John Lisle, a Dominican, complains to the Pope of the oppression of the lady Wake. In this ȝere frere Jon Lyle, of the Dominic Order, mad a grete compleynt of the lady Wake and hir councelle, of many wrongis do to him, and to his Cherch of Hely.[2] And upon this the Pope wrote to the bischop of Lincolnne and othir prelatis, comaunding hem that thei schuld curse alle hem that do wrongis; and thoo that were ded, and gilty in this matere, to digge hem oute of her graves, and throwe hem out of saunctuarie. Mech manslauth felle in this matere; for thei that broute the bulles were killid for the most part. A.D. 1358.

---

[1] "*De Evangelica Vita.*"] Tanner in his "Bibliotheca Britannica," mentions two such works of Geoffrey Hardeby:—"De perfectione evangelicæ paupertatis," contra Armachanum, lib. ii.; Scripsit etiam contra eundem "De vita evangelica," a copy of which occurs in MS. Bodl. Digby. 113.—fol. 1–117.

[2] *of Hely.*] Added in the margin.

A.D. 1359. John of Gaunt marries the daughter of the Duke of Lancaster.

In the XXXIII. ȝere Jon Gaunt, erl of Richemund, the son of Kyng Edward, weddid dam Blaunche, the doutir of the duk of Lancastir; be whech mariage he was aftir mad duke of Lancastir.

King John offers part of France to the King, but the French refuse to sanction this step.

In this same tyme Jon, Kyng of Frauns, prisonere at London, profered to Kyng Edward alle thoo londis that Edward had ovirrydyn before, that is to sey, Flaundrys, Pycardye, Gyan, and othir londis. For whech graunt Kyng Edward sent into Frauns; and the Councelle of Frauns wold not consent theretoo.

The King invades France.

Than was the Kyng gretly mevyd, and rood into Frauns, with the Prince, the duk of Lancastir, and many othir lordes: he had in his nave to lede him to Caleys XI. hundred schippis. The IIII. day of October, he entered into Frauns; and on Seynt Lucye day[1] he cam into Burgenye. There mette with him the duk of Burgeyn and profered him VII. hundred thousand[2] floreins, undir this condicion, that he schuld do no hurt onto his cuntre. Thanne the Kyng went and remeved to Reymes, and dwelled there onto Seynt Gregory day.[3]

He lays siege to Rheims.

The Normans pillage Winchelsea.

In this same tyme thei of Normannye londed at Wynchilsey, and robbed the town, and led awey many women. The cuntre ryse to her defense, but al for nowt; for thei were go or thei cam.

In this ȝere blod ran owt of the toumbe of Thomas duk of Lancastir at Pounfreit.

William of Wykeham superintends the works at Windsor.

And in the same ȝere the Kyng began the newe edifiyng of Wyndesore, and mad Maystir William Wikham surviour of the some werk; whech was aftir bischop of Wynchester.

---

[1] December 13.

[2] *VII. hundred thousand.*] The V has been altered upon an erasure.

[3] March 12.

A.D. 1360 The King lays siege to Paris.

In the XXXIV. ȝere the Kyng Edward remeved fro the heyer cuntre of Frauns, and cam down to Paris. There brent he the subarbes of the cite be the corage of IIII. hundred knytes, whech were newly mad. And in the same tyme thei of Ynglond gadered a gret nave IIII. score schippis, in whech were XIIII. thousand men. Thei sailed, and took the ylde of Cans. And thanne cam[1] the Abbot of Cloyne, and the erl Tankervyle, whech was Steward of Frauns, and Bursigalde, Constabil[2] of the same, and othir lordis many, onto Kyng Edward, and offered onto him a certeyn tretis, and a forme of pes; whech wrytyng displesid gretly the Kyng; and he forbad hem his presens onto the tyme thei had mad anothir forme. Than cam thei aftir to the King, and broute him writing sumwhat aftir his plesauns. This was the manere of the oth that thei swore:—"We Charles, governour of Frauns, the first begotin son[3] of John, Kyng of Frauns, upon the Holy Sacrament swere here, and on the Holy Gospelle, that we schal kepe pees and concord whech is mad betwix the Kyngis, and make no contradiccion ageyn it." The same oth made the Prince Edward, and the to Kyngis, and alle the lordes on both parties. And for more sikernesse, the Kyng of Ynglond took pleggis, V. dukes, VII. erles, IX. lordes, and many honourabil knytes.

The French treat for peace.

King John is released.

So was the Kyng of Frauns delyvered, and his raunson set at III. milliones of florenes, of whech too schuld weye a nobil.

A.D. 1361. The Parliament meets at Westminster and agrees to the treaty.

In the XXXV. ȝere, in the Parlement at Westminster, before the Englisch lordis and the Frensch was this acord purposed and graunted; and alle thei that had not swore mad her othis there before the Archbischop at Messe.

---

[1] *And thanne cam.*] Written upon an erasure. In the margin are the words "Than were sent."

[2] *Constabil.*] Written upon an erasure. In the margin has been written, in the same hand as the last marginal note, the word 'Constable.'

[3] *begotin son.*] Written upon an erasure.

A.D. 1361.

The Earl of Richmond is made Duke of Lancaster.

This ȝere was Ser Jon Gaunt, erl of Richemund, mad duk of Lancastir be the rite of his wif, whech was doutir to good Herry of Lancastir late ded.

The Black Prince marries Joan of Kent.

In this ȝere Prince Edward weddid Jone, the cuntesse of Kent, whech was before departed fro the erl of Salesbury, and weddid aftir to Ser Thomas Holland, knyte.

The second Great Pestilence.

This ȝere was grete pestilens, speciali of men.

Legends.

And this same tyme felle many merveyles in dyvers londes. At Bologne, on Corporis[1] Cristi day[2] appered a blody crosse in the eyr, fro morow til it was noon; and thanne it fel into the se. Anon aftir, wolvys cam oute of wodis, and devoured many men. In Burgundy was a reyn alle of blood. Both in Ynglond and in Frauns appered too castellis in certeyn forestis, and in desert places, out of whech castellis went too hoostis; on white, the othir blak; and sumtyme the white had the victorie, whan thei faute, and sumtyme the blak had the victorie: and sodeynly the castelle and the hoostis vanysched and were not seyn.

A.D. 1362.

Great hurricane.

In the XXXVI. ȝere blew the grete wynd oute of the southwest fro evensong til mydnyte, that blewe down many a hous; of whech wynd these vers were mad:—

"C.ter erant mille decies [sex] unus et ille
Luce tua Maure vehemens fuit impetus aure."

This is the Englisch:—

"A thousand III. hundred sexti and too,
Was Maurus wynd whech blew soo."

This ȝere a pound of wax[3] was worth XVIII. đ.

---

[1] *Corporis*] Corpus. C.C.C.

[2] *Corporis Christi day.*] A moveable feast: the Thursday after Trinity Sunday. In the year 1361 this Feast was kept on May 27.

[3] *wax.*] Added above the line.

A.D. 1362. The King holds his jubilee.

In this same ȝere, on Seynt Bris Day[1] the Kyng was fifti wynteres old. Therfor the Kyng mad this ȝere his jubile,—losed prisoneris,[2] forgaf alle forfetis.

Pleading at the bar to be in English.

And this ȝere was ordeyned that alle plees at the barre schuld be in Englisch tunge, and in no othir tunge.[3]

And this ȝere was Leonel mad Duke of Clarens, and Edmund his brothir erl of Cambrig.

A check is put on purveyance.

It was ordeyned eke in the Parlement that the Kyng schuld have III. ȝere folowand of a sak wolle XXVI. š. VIII. đ.: and that purvioures schuld take no vitale but thei payed therefor. And eke that there schuld no men have swech purvioures but the Kyng, and the qween, and dukes.

Death of Innocent VI. Urban V., Pope.

This ȝere Pope Innocent deied.

And[4] aftir him succedid Urbanus Quintus, whech mad a Constitucion ageyn pluralites. But it availed but litil; for clerkis plesed so lordes, that the Constitucion was not admitted.

A.D. 1363. Parliament meets in London: certain apparel and food is forbidden to the lower classes.

In the XXXVII. ȝere, in the month of October, the Kyng held a Parlement at London, fro whech mite no man of powere absent him. There was forbode that sylvyr and gold schuld not be used in knyves, ne girdelis, ne brochis, ne ringes, ne no othir ornamentis, but in swech persones that myte spend X.libi. be ȝere: and eke that no man schuld were peloure or precious cloth, but he myte spend be ȝere a hundred pound. It was ordeyned eke that the comoune puple schuld not use no precious mete ne drink.

The Kings of France, Cyprus, and Scotland visit King Edward.

In this same tyme thre Kingis came into this lond, to se oure Kyng, The Kyng of Frauns, the Kyng of

---

[1] November 13.

[2] *prisoneris.*] Written upon an erasure.

[3] *and in no othir tunge.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *Innocent deied. And.*] Partly written upon an erasure. The word 'Papa' is written in the margin, apparently by the same hand.

Cipir, the Kyng of Scottis. And whan thei had be receyved worchipfully, too Kyngis turned hom ageyn: the third, that is to sey, of Frauns, felle seek, and deyed at London, in Saveye, in the next ȝere; whos exequies Kyng Edward ded holde worchipfully in dyvers places. His body was caried, at the Kyngis cost, onto Dover, and than the Frenschmen led him, and byried him at Seint Denys.

A.D. 1363.

King John dies in the Savoy.

This ȝere a quarter whete was sold for XV. š.

In the XXXVIII. ȝere Charles de Bloys cam with a gret hoost into Bretayn, to fite with Jon Mountforth, duk of Bretayn; for this same pretendid to be duke of the same. And there was the same Charles slayn, and many of his men, in noumbir a thousand and fyve hundred. Off Jon side deyed but VII. men.

A.D. 1364. Battle of Auray. Charles of Blois is slain.

In this same ȝere the Lumbardes accused her felawes, that thei had deceyved the King in certyn merchaundise.[1] Than were thei put in the Tour, onto the tyme that thei content the Kyng even aftir his pleasauns.

Certain Lombards are imprisoned in the Tower.

In this ȝere, in the pleyn of Turkye, was a grevous batayle, on Alhalow Day,[2] betwix Cristen men and Paynymes; where, be the grace of God, Cristen men had the victory. On the Christen side were slayn Jon, Kyng of Hungarie; Seward, Kyng of Gorganye; and the Maistir of the Hospital in the ylde of Rodis: and of the puple V. thousand to hundred and X. On the othir side were killid fourty thousand of myty men, and of othir comowneris without noumbyr. The princes of that side were these: The Soudan of Babilony; the Kyng of Turkye; the Kyng of Baldak; the Kyng Belmaryn; the Kyng of Tartare; the Kyng of Lettow; of whech III. were slayn.

Great victory over the Turks.

---

[1] *merchaundise.*] Written upon an erasure.

[2] November 1.

A.D. 1365. Birth of Edward, Son of the Black Prince.

In the ȝere of Edward XXXIX. was born Edward, the first begote child of Prince Edward. And whan he was VII. ȝere old he deyed.

The King of Cyprus takes Alexandria.

In the same[1] ȝere the grete cyte of Alisaundre was take be the Kyng of Cipir. But for thei that tok it were Cristen men and fewe, thei robbed the cyte, and fled with the godes, or the Soudam cam with his strength. This same Kyng of Cipre was in Ynglond before this jornay, and had of Kyng Edward men, schippis, and mony.

A.D. 1366. Birth of Richard II. at Bordeaux.

In the XL. ȝere was born a child to Prins Edward at Burdews, whom the Kyng cleped Majoricarum left fro the funt, an cleped be his name Richard.

The English overrun France.

In tho same daies the Kyng of Frauns wrote letteris onto the Kyng of Ynglond, that he schuld help him ageyn the grete cumpanye of Englisch that ovyrrydin Frauns. The Kyng wrot onto hem, that thei schuld leve her ridyng, and go fro Frauns. Thei answerd that the londis whech thei had gote thei wold not forsake; and eke, as thei longed not to the crowne of Ynglond, thei were not bounde to his comaundment. Whan the Kyng had letteres of this rebellion, he proclamed a viage into Frauns; gadered a gret puple, and purposed for to venge him patently, as the answere was divulged. This aspied the Kyng of Frauns, and prayed the Kyng that he schuld not perform his jornay. For he was aferd, if the Kyng cam on the o side, and the cumpany on the othir side, that it schuld be destruccion of his kyngdam. Whan Kyng Edward herd the letteris, he swore be the Blessed Mayden Marie,—"Though thei ovyrryde alle the regne of Frauns, the Kyng schal nevyr have help of me."

Peter the Cruel is driven from Castile.

In that same tyme Bertran Claykyn, and Hew Calvyrle, that were lederes of this cumpany, left

---

[1] *same.*] Written upon an erasure.

A.D. 1366.

Frauns, at reverens of the Kyng, and went into Spayn, with grete puple ni to LX. thousand, at comaundment of the Pope, ageyn Peter, Kyng of Spayn, to prive him of his lordchip. Whan Kyng Petir herd of her comyng, he fled into Gascoyne onto Prynce Edward, that he myte recure his regne be his favoure. In the same tyme thei of Spayn chose hem a newe Kyng, that was brothir to the forseid Petir, and a bastard.

A.D. 1367. The Black Prince espouses his cause, and defeats the rival King at Najara.

In the XLI. ȝere was a grevous bataile in Spayn betwix the Prince Edward and Herry the wrong Kyng of Spayn, where the Englischmen had the bettir. This batail was by the town and the watir of Naȝar. The Kyng of Spayn fled, for he myte not[1] susteyne the tempest of arowes. VII. thousand men of his were slayn there, and many mo dronchin in the watyr. There were take the erl of Dene, and Bertram Cleykyn, that was his principal counceloure. Aftir this victorie the Kyng Petir was restored to his dignite, and the Prince returned into Gyan. This Kyng, aftir the Prince was go, be fals deceyt of his enmyes, was killid at his mete. The Prince eke in that viage was poysoned, for aftir that tyme he had nevyr helth of body.

A.D. 1368. A remarkable comet appears.

In the XLII. ȝere, in the month of March, there appered betwix the north and the west a sterre thei clepe comata, directing his bemes rite onto Frauns.

The Duke of Clarence marries Violante of Milan.

And in the same ȝere, in the month of April, Sere Leonel, duk of Clarens, with a chose felauchip, took his jornay onto Melan, for to have the duke doutir to his wif, and half the lyflod of that duchy. Aftir the tyme he had weddid that lady he lyved not longe, but deied in that cuntre aboute the Nativite of oure Lady.[2] His body was byried at Pavy, fast by

He dies and is buried at Pavia.

---

[1] *not*] note. C.C.C.

[2] September 8.

A.D. 1368. the toumbe of Seyn Austin; his hert was broute to the Freres of Clare, and biried, or kept in leed.

Troubles in France.

In this ȝere the Frenschmen broke the pees, and, ovirridin the Kyngis londes in Pounte, distroyed castellis and townes, and took many prisoneris; putting al the cause upon the Englischmen.

A.D. 1369. The King resumes the title of "King of France."

In the XLIII. ȝere the Kyng held a Parlement at Westminster, where was purposed what is best to doo ageyn the rebellion of Frauns, notwithstandyng her wryting and her othis. Ther it was concluded that the Kyng schuld chaleng his rite ageyn. Upon this purpos[1] he sent his son Jon, duk of Lancastir, and Humfrey Bown, erl of Herforth, into Frauns, for to cleyme his rite. And whil thei taried at Chalkhul, abydyng the resistens of the Frensch part, there cam oute of Ynglond the erl of Warwik, Ser Thomas Belchaump, whech had evyr grete worchip in batayle. The Frenschmen, that had sette the day of batayle, whan thei sey that navy in the se, wenyng that the Kyng of Ynglond had come, thei fled, levyng mech of here stuf behynde hem.

In this same tyme was Ser[2] Herry Spenser a grete werrioure in Ytaile, or the tyme that he was promoted: and Ser Jon Haukwood, a mervelous man of armes, whech led in Itale a grete cumpany clepit "The White Felauchip." His dedis wold ask a special tretys.

A.D. 1370. In the XLIIII. ȝere the Kyng borowed gret good of dyvers astatis, pretending that it schuld be spent in profite of the reme: but it was spent al othir wyse.

A great army sent into France under Sir John Knollys.

At the fest of Seint Jon Baptist[3] the Kyng gadered a hoost of the best men that mite be chose, and sent hem into Frauns. Amongst hem was the lord Graunson and the lord Fitzwalter, with othir yonger lordis. And Ser Robert Knollis, as a elde werroure, was assigned be the Kyng for to be her capteyn. Whanne thei cam into Frauns, as long as thei were governed be Knollis thei had no rebuke. Than was amongst hem a knyte thei clepid Ser Jon Monstreworth; and he seid onto the lordis, that it was schame onto hem that thei schuld be governed undir swech a elde theef. Thus were thei disparplied into dyvers cumpanies, and Ser Robert, with his mene, went into Britayn, to a castel of his owne. The lordis, thus departed, were take summe, and summe slayn, be the Frensch party; and Ser Jon Monstreworth fled into Ynglond, and accused Ser Robert Knollis of treson: for whech cause Ser Robert durst not se the Kyng, tyl he sent him mech tresoure; and than he cam to his excuse. The forseid Monstreworth aftir that fled, and held with the Kyng of Frauns.

---

[1] *purpos.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *Ser.*]. om. C.C.C.

[3] June 24.

A.D. 1370.

In this ȝere deyed Pope Urban.

Death of Urban V.

And for him was chose Gregorius XI.

Gregory XI., Pope.

In this ȝere many cytees in Gyan fel fro the obediens of Prince Edward, and held with Frauns,[1] for grevous exacciones that were leyde upon hem; and specialy the cite Lemovicensis; whech cyte the Prince distroyed onto the ground. Aftir that,[2] with his wif and Richard his son, the Prince cam into Ynglond, and resined al Gyan and Gascon into his faderis hand, levying in that same cuntre his too bretherin, Jon, duke of Lancastir, and Edmund, erl of Cambrigge.

Limoges and other cities in Guienne revolt from the Prince. They are compelled to submit. The Prince returns to England.

In the XLV. ȝere the clergi and the puple lent onto the Kyng fifty thousand pound, whech was graunted

A.D. 1371. The people are heavily taxed.

---

[1] *with Frauns.*] Added in the margin.

[2] *that.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1371. for a subsidy, and late payed ageyn. And to paye this summe the annual prestis were compelled, and pore benefices, that nevir payed before.

The Clergy are excluded from all civil offices.

In this ȝere lordes asked that the bischoppis schuld be remeved fro the offises, Chauncelere, Tresorer, and Privy Sel; and that temporal lordes schuld have tho offises. And so was it fulfillid in dede; and alle this was don for hate of the clergie.

The Pope in vain tries to make peace.

In this same ȝere cam solempne messageris fro the Pope, to trete pes betwix the to Kingis; but it availed not.[1]

A.D. 1372. Parliament at Winchester.

In the XLVI. ȝere, the Kyng held a Parlement at Winchestir, to whech Parlement were somound foure bischoppis and foure abbotis, and no mo. And this cause was pretendid, that the citeceynes of London, and of Norwich, and othir cytes, had conspired ageyn the Kyng.

In this ȝere the duke of Lancastir and his brothir Edmund cam oute of Gyan, with the too douteris of the King of Spayn. The duke of Lancastir weddid the elder; sche hite Constauns: and Edmund weddid the yonger; sche hite Ysabel.

Naval victory over the Flemings.

In this ȝere was a batail betwix Englischmen and Flemingis in the se; where the Englischmen killid many Flemingis, and took XXV. schippis laden with bay salt.

Siege of Rochelle.

In that ȝere was Rochel besegid with Frenschmen. And the Kyng sent thidir[2] the erl of Penbrok, Ser Jon Hastingis, for to remeve the sege. And sodeynly, in the port of Rochel, met with him a grete nave of Spaynardes, distroyed the Englisch blod, brent alle the schippis, and led the forsaid lord into Spayn, and XX. thousand marks, whech the Kyng

Defeat at Rochelle.

---

[1] *not*] nat. C.C.C.

[2] *ȝere . . . . . thidir.*] Written upon an erasure.

A.D. 1372.

had tak him to his viage. This infortune fel onto him on Missomer Even,[1] whech is the feest of Seynt Andre, as summe suppose; for he was a gret enmie onto the Cherch of Hely.

A.D. 1373. The Duke of Lancaster in France.

In the XLVII. ȝere, the duk of Lancastir with strong hand rood into Frauns, and, be Paris, onto Burgoin, and took tributes of cites, as he went, evene aftir his pleasauns. Thei offered him good for dreed. Than went he be the hillis of Alverne, (not Malverne,) where many of his deied for hungir: so was he compelled to turne ageyn to Bordeus. Ther was prefixed a bataile betwix him and the duke of Angoye, but it turned to a treus til the XX. day of May: the day of batail was sette first the X. day of April.

The King resists the Papal claims.

The same ȝere the Kyng wrote to the Pope, that the elecciones of cathedral cherchis schuld be kept aftir the eld custom of the lond. And in the Parlement holden aftirward at London, it was ordeyned that the cathedral cherchis[2] schuld have here dew eleccion; and that the King schuld not write the contrari to the Pope, but promote the same eleccion.

A.D. 1374. Return of the Duke of Lancaster.

In the XLVIII. ȝere, Ser Jon Duk of Lancastir cam oute of Gyan into Ynglond. And aftir he was go, alle the cuntre turned Frensch, save Burdews and Bayon.

Truce between England and France.

In this same ȝere was a grete trete at Bruges betwix the Councel of the two remes, for to make a fynal pes. For this cause[3] was sent Jon, duke of Lancastir, William Mountagew, erl of Salisbury, Regnald Cobham, and many othir. For the Frensch side was the Duke of Angoy, with many othir lordes. Ther were eke of the clergi of Ynglond, Simon Sudbyry, with many othir prelatis. This trety lasted ny to ȝere,

---

[1] June 23. S. Andrew's day is Nov. 30.

[2] *cherchis.*] Added in the margin at a later period.

[3] *cause.*] Added in the margin.

A.D. 1374. not withoute grete expenses, and no pes had. For al that same tyme the Frenschmen purveyed hem for to fite with Englischmen. So was there graunted trews for o ȝere.

A.D. 1375. Expedition of Montfort into France. In the XLIX. ȝere, Sere Jon Mountforth, duk of Bretayn, rod with the Kyngis son, Edmund, erl of Cambrigge, and the erles of March, Warwic, and Stafforth, and the lord Spenser: all these went into Bretayn. Anon as thei were come, the castelle of Seint Mathew,[1] the castelle of Orcey, and the castelle of Brest, were ȝolde onto hem; and than besegid thei the town of Kemple, where were[2] alle the worthi men of the lond. And that had thei take, had not lettyng be with a messager that cam fro Ynglond, with the Kyngis letteris, that thei schuld leve the sege, and com hom ageyn.

In this tyme was take[3] the ylde of Constantyn, with the castel of Seynt Savyoure,[4] be a swyere thei clepid Thomas Karington,[5] whom Ser Jon Anysle, knyte,[6] apeched aftir of treson, and faut with him, and killid him.

A.D. 1376. Parliament in London. In the fifti ȝere of Edward, whech was the ȝere of oure Lorde 1376, was gadered a gret Parlement at London, in whech was asked a gret summe of mony to the Kyng. And it was answerd be Petir de la Mar, knyte, and Speker of the Parlement, that the Kyng nedeth not for to have the godes of the pore men, if he were wysely and treuly gided. And if it were so that the Kyng had so gret nede,[7] he offered, be asent of the Comownes, that thei wold largely help him, up condicion that certeyn officeres schuld be remeved;

---

[1] *of Seint Mathew.*] Written upon an erasure.

where were.] Written upon an erasure.

[3] *was take.*] Added in the margin.

[4] *with . . . . . Seynt Savyoure.*] om. C.C.C.

[5] *Karington*] Kyryngton. C.C.C.

[6] *knyte.*] om. C.C.C.

[7] *nede.*] Added in the margin.

A.D. 1376.

that is to sey,—the Chambirleyn, whech was the lord Latymer, and many othir; and new men were[1] assigned in her place. But this Statute lest not fully III. monthis. The Commaunte asked eke, that Dame Alis Pereres schuld be remeved oute of the Kyngis hous, as a woman malepert, and entermenting in every mater. This woman would sumtyme sitte be the Juges on the bench, and sumtyme be the Doctouris in the Consistory, and plete with the treuth, and ageyn the treuth, be the Kyngis auctorite; whech turned gretly onto his vileny and slaunder. And be the instauns of this woman was this Petir De la Mare condempned to perpetuel prison at Notingham; but within too ȝere aftir he was delyveryd.

Alice Perrers.

In the tyme of this Parlement deyed the noble Prince Edward, on the Trinite Sunday, the VIII. day of June. His deth bare awey al the sikirnes of this lond.

Death of the Black Prince.

In this Parlement, Richard, son onto the forseid Prince, was mad erl of Chestir, and sone aftir that, duke of Cornwayle; and not long aftir Prince of Wales.

Richard his son.

In this tyme on Jon Wiclef, Maystir of Oxenforth, held many straunge opiniones:—That the Cherch of Rome is not hed of alle Cherchis. That Petir had no more auctorite thanne the othir Aposteles; ne the Pope no more power than anothir prest. And that temporal lordes may take awey the godes fro the Cherch, whan the persones trespasin. And that no reules mad be Augustin, Benet, and Fraunceys, adde no more perfeccion over the Gospel than doth lym-whiting onto a wal. And that bischoppis schuld have no prisones; and many othir thingis. Upon these materes the

John Wiclif.

---

[1] *were.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1376. Pope sent a bulle to the arbischop[1] of Cauntirbury and of London,[2] that thei schuld areste the same Wiclef, and make him to abjure these seid opiniones. And so he ded, in the presens of the duk of Lancastir: but aftirward he erred in these, and in mo. The same tyme thei of London wold a killid the forseid duk, had thei not be lettid be her bischop.

A.D. 1377. Death of Edward III.

In the on and fifty ȝere of his regne, he deyed at Schene, and is biried at London;[3] whech ȝere is acounted onto Richardis tyme, and not to his. This King Edward was gracious and fortunat in pes; devout onto the Cherch; fortunat in batayle; nevir steyned, save that in his age he was gretly langaged with lecchery.

Accession of Richard II.

Anno 6575—6596. 1377–1398.—In the ȝere of Grace a 1377, Richard of Burdews, the son of Edward the Prince, was crowned at London, the sextene day of Jule, bi the handis of Simon Sutbyry, archbiscop of Cauntirbury; the ȝere of his age XI. The first thingis he ded he mad pees betwix his uncle, Jon of Gaunt, and the Cyte of London. In the day of his coronacion he mad IIII. newe erles,—Thomas Wodstock, the yongest son of Kyng Edward, erl of Bokyngam; Richard of Angolisme, erl of Huntydon; Thomas Moubray, erl of Notingam; Herry Percy, of Northumberlond.[4]

The French invade the Isle of Man.

In this same ȝere the Frenschmen took the Ilde of Man, al save the Castel, whech Ser Hew Tyrel manfully defended:[5] but thei of the ylde were fayn to gyve the Frenschmen a M. marc, that thei schuld not brenn her houses. A.D. 1377.

---

[1] *arbischop.*] This word was originally written bischop, and the abbreviation 'ar' added above the line.—"Archbishop." C.C.C.

[2] *and of London*] and Bishop of London. C.C.C.

[3] *London.*] Above this word is a mark referring to the word 'Westminster,' written in the margin in a later hand.

[4] *of Northumberlond*] Earl of Northumberlond. C.C.C.

[5] *defended*] kept. C.C.C.

In the same ȝere thei londed in Southsex, fast by a town cleped Rotyngdene; and ageyn hem went the Priour of Lews: and there was he take; and with him to knytes, Ser Jon Fallisle, and Sir Thomas Cheyne, and a swyere, Jon Brokas.

In the secund ȝere of Rychard deied Gregori the XI.[1] A.D. 1378.

And for him was chose Urbane the VI., whech was before bischop of Bare.[2] And ageyn him[3] ros the Cardinal Jubanensis, that procured certeyn cardinales to chese him, notwithstanding that he and al his party had mad her obediens to this Urbane before. This cardinal cleped him selve Clement, whech fled oute of Rome with his clientis. Urban VI., Pope.

In this ȝere the King of Navern lete to Kyng Richard Cherborow, in Normandie, for a certeyn pension, to be paid every ȝere, that he schuld have esy londyng into the ground of Frauns. Cherburgh is given up to the King.

In this ȝere the Kyng of Frauns asked of hem that dwelle in Litil Bretayn here castellis and her strengthis; and thei that were his[4] rebelles he killid vilensly. This was the cause that thei of the lond desired gretly that Ser Jon Mountforth schuld com hom ageyn, as very eyer. Charles V. oppresses the Bretons.

In the third ȝere of Richard, Ser Hew Calvirle and Ser Thomas Percy were mad amirelis of the se; and thei tok many schippes, and caused gret plente of alle maner marchaundise in this lond. A.D. 1379.

---

[1] *Gregori the XI.*] Written upon an erasure. The word 'Papa' is written in the margin, evidently in the same hand as the text.

[2] *Bare*] Bar. C.C.C.

[3] *him.*] C.C.C. Added by a late hand above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[4] *his.*] Added in the margin by a late hand.

A.D. 1379. The Pope notifies to Richard that the French King is excommunicate.

In this tyme the bischop Cassilensis, a Erischman, was sent fro the Pope to the Kyng, doying him to wete[1] that the Kyng of Frauns was acursed, because he ded crye thorw the lond that there schuld no man in Frauns do obediens to Pope Urbane up peyne lesing of[2] his hed.

General taxation of the nobles and clergy.

In this ȝere was hold a Parlament, where was ordeyned that for this tyme the Comones schuld be spared, and rich men schuld pay a subsidie to the Kyng: every duk X. marc; every archbishop X. marc; every erl VI. marc; and every bischop, and every abbot mitred, VI. marc; notwithstanding that every abbot mitred and polled schuld pay for every monkis hed XLđ. There was no religious man, ne woman, justise, schreve, knyt, swyere, person, vicarie, simpil prest, that scaped this tax; but ech of hem payed aftir his degree.

A ship of Fowey is captured by the Flemings.

In this same tyme the fals Flemyngis took a barge of Fowey, whech is in Cornwayle; and the men that were within schip, thei killid, save o boy, that fled to on of the Flemysch shippis, and hid him in the horrok.[3] The Flemingis com into Ynglond for to selle the merchaundise whech thei had take: the boy herd Englischmen speke, and cried for help. Anon, as he was pulled up, he told whou[4] thei took the schip be treson, pretending that thei were oure frendis, and thus killed alle the men, save him. So were the Flemyngis take, and sent to dyvers prisones.

Dispute at Bury S. Edmunds.

In this same ȝere Edmund Brounfeld, munk of Bury, entered the place of Bury, be the Popes gift, took upon him to be abbot of the place. Wherfor the Kyng put him in the Toure of London, and alle

---

[1] *wete*] know. C.C.C.

[2] *lesing of*] of lesing. C.C.C.

[3] *horrok*] hurrok. C.C.C.

[4] *whou.*] This word was originally written 'who;' the 'u,' having been added above the line at a later period.

A.D. 1379.

tho monkes that favoured him. But at the last he was delivered[1] on that condiccion, that he schuld not come at Bury, ne he schuld not passe the se. But he brok his oth, went to Rome, and there was he mad lyster of the Paleis, and comensale with the Pope.

A.D. 1380.

The Emp., and Patriarch of Constantinople submit to the Pope.

In the IIII. ȝere of Richard the eyer of the emperoure Constantinopolitan, and the Patriark, com, and mad her obediens to Urban the Sexte, of whom he was crowned.

Dispute between the Bp. of Norwich and the Abbot of S. Albans.

In that same tyme was betwix the bischop of Norwich, Herry Spenser, and Thomas de la Mar, abbot of Seynt Albonne, a ple,[2] in whech ple the abbot opteyned that there schuld no prioure longing to Seynt Albonne, in the dyosise of Norwich, be compelled for to gadere the dymes to the King.

The English ravage the north of France.

In this ȝere Ser Thomas Wodstok, herl of Bokyngham, the Kyngis unkil, Hugo Caverle, Robert Knollis, Thomas Percy, William Wyndesore, proved knytes, tok the se, to help Ser Jon Mountforth, duke of Bretayn. Thei myte not lond there, for the multitude of galeies, whech the King of Frauns had hired. Therfor thei turned ageyn to Caleis, and riden be lond thorw Frauns, where thei brent and killid, with outeony resistens.

Death of Charles V.

Accession of Charles VI.

In that same tyme deyed the Kyng of Frauns, and beqwath the crowne to his yonger brothir, duk of Burgon: for whech cause the elder brothir, duke of Angoye, reysid batayle ageyn his brothir,[3] profitable to hem that were in Britayn. But yet, be favoure of the lordis, this yonger brothir was crowned, a child but X. ȝere old. In his begynyng was grete trouble in the lond, for grevous taxes that were reysid of

---

[1] *delivered.*] Written on an erasure.

[2] *a ple.*] Added above the line by a later hand.

[3] *brothir.*] C.C.C. The word is written by mistake 'bothir' in the MS. Pub. Lib.

A.D. 1380. the puple. The lordis were fayn to fle; and eke the Januensis were killyd, where thei myte be get.[1] For thoo XXV. galeies receyved every day sevene hundred and fifty pound. And this payment lastid fro the beginning of May onto the last end of August. Thus was the mony of the regne consumed.

Parliament at Northampton. In this ȝere, at the fest of Seynt Martyn,[2] was a Parlement at Norhampton, where was reysid a grevous taske,[3] whech mad mech troubyl in this lond: for every religious man, and every religious woman was compelled for to pay a nobil. And seculere prestis payed as mech. Eke every man and woman that were weddid payed XIId. for her hed.

A.D. 1381. Wiclif. In the V. ȝere of Richard, Jon Wiclef resumed the eld dampned opinion of Berengari, that seide,—Aftir the consecracion of Cristis body bred remayned as it was before. Mani foul errouris multipled Wiclef more than Berengari:—That Crist was there, as he is in othir places, but sumwhat more specialy; That this bred was no bettir than othir bred, save only for the prestis blessing; and, if Cristis bodi was there, it was possible to a man for breke Cristis nek. He seid eke it was lasse[4] synne to worchip a tode than the Sacrament; for the tode hath lyf, and the Sacrament non.

Expedition into Portugal. In this ȝere Edmund Langle, erl of Cambriggis, and unkil to the King, with William Beucham, Mathew Gurnay, and many othir expert in bataile, went into Portingale, to help the Kyng ageyn the hethen Spaynardis. And aftir thei had dwelled there too ȝere the Spaynardis were weri of hem, and were acorded to the Kyng of Portingale; and thei of Portingale were eke wery of hem for ryveling and oppression. Thus cam the erl hom onto Ynglond, with his wyf, the yonger douter of Kyng Philip[1] Kyng of Castile in Spayn. And a son of his first-begotten in Ynglond was weddid there to the Kyngis doutir of Portingale. A.D. 1381.

---

[1] *get*] gote. C.C.C.

[2] November 11.

[3] *taske*] tax. C.C.C.

[4] *lasse.*] lesse. C.C.C.

Beginning of the rebellion of Wat Tyler.

In this ȝere, in the month of May, the Comones risen ageyn the Kyng and the lordes; and in her wodnes thei kyllid the bischop of Cauntirbiry, Simon Sudbury, Chauncelere, and Ser Robert Hales, Tresorere, whech was prioure of Seynt Jones. Her duke was Wat Tyler, a proude knave and malapert. Anothir capteyn was there fast be Bury, thei cleped Jon Wraw, a preest. He heded the abbot of Bury; and, fast be Bury, he killid the principal justise, Jon Caundisch. There was with him anothir malefactoure, Robert Westbrom, whech named him self Kyng. There smet thei of the prioris heed, with othir munkis, and seculeris. Fast be Norwich rose anothir wrech, cleped Jek Lister. He smet of the hed of that nobyl knyte, Sere Robert Salle. At Hely thei killid a man of Cort, thei clepid Edmund Galon. For her entent was to kille alle the men that lerned ony lawe; and in hate of hem thei brent here place at London, clepid Temple Barre; eke the duke of Lancastir place, clepid Savey: and the Hous of Seynt Jones, at Clerken-Welle thei lete brenne vii dayes. At Seynt Albones mad thei gret destructioune in housing, brenning dedis and chartoris; alle clausures of wodis thei distroyed; bokis, and rolles of cortis, and obligaciones, thei rent and brent. But, sone aftir, this sedicious man, Wat[2] Tilere, was killid at London be the handis of William Walworth, Meire of London. Thanne was Jon[3] Straw taken; and befor his deth he mad this confession openly:—"Whan we were on the Blak-Heth, and sent aftir the Kyng,

---

[1] *Philip.*] This is a mistake. Pedro IV. was King of Castile from 1336 to 1387. The error is corrected in a later mention of this King, under the year 1386.—Peter. C.C.C.

[2] *Wat*] What. C.C.C.

[3] *Jon*] Jac. C.C.C.

A.D. 1381. if he had come onto us, we schuld a killid alle the lordes and gentilmen that cam with him, and led him with us, to make the puple to suppose that he were auctoure of oure rising: aftir that, to sle the Kyng; and than ech of us schuld have the reule in dyvers places of Ynglond, and make lawes aftir oure owne fantasies."[1]

Anne of Bohemia. In this same ȝere cam into Ynglond the Kyng of Bem sistir, Anne, for to be maried to the King.

A.D. 1382. Marriage of the King. In the sexte ȝere of Richard was the mariage performed with gret solempnite and justis of pes.

Death of Edm. Earl of March. And in the same ȝere Edmund Mortimer, erl of March, deied in Yrland, whan he had caused in that lond grete[2] pes.

Execution of Wraw. In that same tyme[3] Jon Wraw, prest, leder of riseres at Mildvale[4] was hang and drawe by auctorite of the Parlement at London.

Earthquake. In the XII. day of June, in the XI. houre, was a grete erdqwave[5] in Ynglond.

In this ȝere Urbane the Pope ordeyned, that the Vigile of Nativite of oure Lady[6] schuld be fastid.

A.D. 1383. Despenser invades France and Flanders. In the sevenet[7] ȝere, in the month of March, in the Parlement at London, Ser Herry Spenser, bischop of Norwich was marked[8] with the Cros ageyn the scismatikes of Frauns and of Flandres, with grete auctorite of Urbane the Sexte. And aboute myd May he went into Flaundres with myty hand, and with a saute he took Gravening; and, aftir that, Dunkirk,

---

[1] *fantasies.*] fantasy. C.C.C.

[2] *grete*] full grete. C.C.C.

[3] *tyme.*] Added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib. In the text of C.C.C.

[4] *at Mildvale.*] om. C.C.C.

[5] *grete erdqwave.*] Written upon an erasure.

[6] September 7.

[7] *sevenet*] VII. C.C.C.

[8] *marked*] morkyn. C.C.C. This word appears to have been orignally written 'marky,' in the MS. Pub. Lib.; but the second and third letters have been altered upon an erasure, and the 'd' added by a later hand.

Neuport, and many othir. And in VIII.[1] Kalende of Juli[2] he faughte[3] with XXX. thousand scismatikes; he having but V. thousand: where he killid sevene thousand of Frenschmen, Fleminges, and Britones; and of his hooste were ded but sevene.[4] Than beseged he the town of Ypris; and there was he deceyved and rebuked be the covetise of too knytes, Ser William Elman, and Ser Thomas Tryvet. A.D. 1383.

In this tyme the Kyng of Frauns besegid the town of Burburgh, in whech were that tyme the lord Bemound, Thomas Trivet, William Elman, and William Faringdoune, knytes; and aftir many sawtes, whech availed not,[5] the Kyng profered hem this issew, that thei, with here servauntis and her hors, and swech tresore as thei wold cary oute of the town, schuld passe frely, up condiccion, that thei schuld streight[6] go to Ynglond: and to this profir thei obeyid, and cam hom to Yngland. In the same forme the Kyng of Frauns acordid with the bischop; and he cam hom fro Gravenyng: but first he distroyed the town. Successes of the French.

In this same tyme was ordeyned by the Kyng of Frauns a grete navy, to lette hem that were sent be the Kyng of Ynglond to help the bischop of Norwich. And thei of Dertemouthe[7] and Portesmouthe distroyed alle that hoost, save IX. men. Than the vyntage of Ynglond took a othir felauchip, where thei had a thousand tunne wyn and V. hundred. The English destroy their fleet.

In the VIII. ȝere of Richard, the duke of Lancastir sailed into Frauns, and there mad a trews betwix both londis for half a ȝere. A.D. 1384. Truce with France.

---

[1] *in VIII.*] In the VIII. C.C.C.

[2] June 24.

[3] *faughte.*] This word was originally written 'faute,' the letters 'gh' having been added above the line by a later hand.

[4] *sevene*] sevene men. C.C.C.

[5] *not*] nat. C.C.C.

[6] *streight.*] Altered upon an erasure.

[7] *Dertemouthe*] Dortesmouth. C.C.C.

A.D. 1384. Unsuccessful invasion of Scotland.

And in the same ȝere, befor Lenton, the same duke, with Thomas, erl of Bokyngam, his brothir, and with a gret noumbyr, went into Scotlond. That aspied of Scottis, thei fled ovir the se, and summe hid hem in forestis. So the Englisch host was fayn to com hom ageyn, compelled for cold and hungir.

Legend.

In this ȝere, in the XX. day of August, in the fest of Seynt Oswyn, the Kyng being[1] at Newcastelle upon Tyne, a wright[2] hew on a tre, whech schuld long to a schip; and at every strook he smet ran oute blood, as it had be of a beste. He bethought[3] him of the festful day, and left his werk. His felaw stood beside, having no reverens to this myracle, took the ax[4] and smet, and anon blod ran owte. He fel for fere, and cryed mercy. And al the town merveylid, and gaf worchip to God. The tre was bore to Tynmouth, in token of[5] this myracle.

A.D. 1385. Death of Wiclif.

In the IX. ȝere of this Kyng, John Wiclef, the orgon of the devel, the enmy of the Cherch, the confusion of men, the ydol of heresie, the meroure[6] of ypocrisie, the norischer[7] of scisme, be the rithful dome[8] of God, was smet with a horibil paralsie thorw oute his body. And this veniauns fell upon him on Seynt Thomas day[9] in Cristmasse; but he deyed not til Seynt Silvestir day.[10] And worthily was he smet on Seynt Thomas day, ageyn whom he had gretely offendid, letting men of that pilgrimage; and conveniently deied he in Silvestir fest, ageyn whom he had venemously berkid for dotacion of the Church. A.D. 1385.

---

[1] *being.*] Added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib. It is not found in C.C.C.

[2] *wright.*] Written in a later hand upon an erasure.

[3] *bethought.*] So also in C.C.C. This was originally written "bethou" in the MS. Pub. Lib. The last three letters have been added at a later period.

[4] *ax.*] Written in a later hand upon an erasure.

[5] *in token of*] in worschyp and token of. C.C.C.

[6] *of heresie, the meroure.*] om. C.C.C.

[7] *norischer.*] Originally written 'norcher,' but altered by a later hand.

[8] *dome*] hand. C.C.C.

[9] December 29.

[10] December 31.

Troubles in Italy.

In this ȝere Pope Urbane degraded these cardinales:— Ser Adam Eston,[1] monk of Norwich, of the title of Saint Cecile; and the cardinal of Venice,[2] cardinal of Jene,[3] whech were worchipful men, and Professors of Divinity. Othir III. cardinales were men of gret[4] birth and good condiccion. The VII. was cardinal Reatinensis, a Doctoure of Law, on whom[5] the Pope put defaute of al the conspiracion that he schuld favour the Kyng of Cicile ageyn the Pope. For the Pope had promised many thingis to this King, and nothing fulfillid. But aftir this the Kyng besegid the Pope in a town thei clepe Lucery,[6] where the Pope was compelled to make pes with him. And so with grete difficulte he fled.

Contention between the King and the Duke of Lancaster.

In this same ȝere fell a contraversie betwix the Kyng and the duke of Lancastir, in so mech that summe of the Kyngis hous had conspired the dukes deth. That aspied, the duke vitailed the castel of Pountfract, and kept him there; but aftirward,[7] be mene of the Kingis modir, there was procured pes betwix hem.

Higher titles are conferred on the Earl of Oxford and other Peers.

In this same ȝere, at the feste of Seynt Martyn,[8] was a Parlement at London, where Ser Robert Ver, erl of Oxforth, was mad markeis of Dulyn, in Erlond; and Thomas Wodstok, erl of Bokyngham, was mad duke of Gloucester; his brothir Edmund, erl of Cambrigge, was mad duke of York; Michael at the Pool, than Chauncelere, was mad erl of Suffolk, and graunted of the Kyngis cophir ȝerly a thousand mark.[9]

---

[1] *Eston.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *cardinal of Venice*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *Jene*] Gene. C.C.C.

[4] *gret*] good. C.C.C.

[5] *on whom*] of whom. C.C.C.

[6] *Lucery*] Lucery or Lucerne. C.C.C.

[7] *aftirward*] sone after. C.C.C.

[8] November 11.

[9] *mark*] pownd. C.C.C.

A.D. 1386.

The King of Armenia visits England.

In the ten ȝere, the Kyng of Armeny cam onto Ynglond to trete of pes betwix Frauns and Ynglond; but it avayled neythir partye, for al the avail turned onto him self. For, beside a thousand pound that the Kyng gave him in a smal schip of gold, he mad him letteris patent to receyve every ȝere a thousand mark. He was put oute of his lond, as he seide, be the Sarasines; and, undir that pretens, he gadered mech good of Kingis[1] and lordis.

The Duke of Lancaster goes to Spain.

In this same ȝere the duke of Lancastir took his viage into Spayn, to chalenge his rite that longid onto him because of his wif Constauns, whech was elder dowtir and eyir to the King of Spayn, Petir. And, because that the Spaynardis were scismatikes, the Pope Urban graunted every man in that viage plener remission of synne that wold go with the duke, or gyve ony good to his viage. As he went toward Spayn, he took the castel of Brest, in Bretayne, and delyveryd it fro the malice of Frenschmen, whech had layd there a sege. Fro thens he sayled into the port of Groyne. Of this viage we wil sey more aftir.

Rebellion in Austria.

In this same ȝere the duke of Ostrich, enmy to the Pope Urbane, troubled wrongfully the pilgrimes that went to Rome, constreyned hem to pay grete tribute, to this entent, that men schuld not desire to go to Rome. And, for his puple ros ageyn him in this cause, allegging that it was gret hurt onto hem, he gadered a strength, and killid many of hem. But thei left not[2] her rebellion; for thei risen ageyn, and killid the duke, and many othir[3] lordis.

The French threaten Calais.

This ȝere come tydannes that the Kyng of Frauns wold besege Caleys. Wherfor the King sent thidir Herry Percy the yonger, whom the Scottis clepid Herry

---

[1] *he seide . . . Kingis.*] Written on an erasure.

[2] *not*] nat. C.C.C.

[3] *othir.*] om. C.C.C.

Hatspore. Anon as he cam thidir, he had a gret jornay upon the Picardis, and brout fro hem a gret pray. So was the Kyng of Frauns purpos lettid for that tyme.

A.D. 1386.

The French threaten to invade England.

In these dayes[1] was it noysed that the Kyng of Frauns was comyng to distroye Ynglond,[2] with XV. dukes, XXVI. erlis, C. knytes, a cM. men, schippis a M.CC.[3] He lay at Slus[4] fro the Kalendis of August[5] to the Vigile of Alle Seyntis,[6] and nevir had wynd. Than had he wynd tyl he was in the myd se; and thoo turned it contrari, and brak many of his schippis or thei cam to londe. Thus was he frustrat[7] and Ynglond delyveret fro daunger.[8] In this mene tym thei of Londonne were so[9] aferd as thou Frauns[10] had be at her wallis: thei broke down the houses that were ny the wallis, and sette up gunnes;[11] and mech aray thei made; and al for nought.[12]

Michael de la Pole accused of treason.

In this ty[me][13] Michael at the Pool[14] was accused be the Parlement of certeyn poyntis of treson, and deposed fro his office of Chaunceler: but it plesed not the Kyng; for he restored him aftir that to the same office. An than conspired this Mychael the deth of the duke of Glouceter, and of othir lordis, whech schuld a deied at a sopere in London, had not thei be warned be Richard Exston, than mehir of London.

A.D. 1387.

Naval victory over the French.

In the elevene ȝere of Richard, the erl of Arundel, Richard, and the erl of Notingham, Thomas, went to

---

[1] *these dayes*] the same tyme. C.C.C.

[2] *to distroye Ynglond*] to distroye all Ynglond. C.C.C.

[3] *a M.CC.*] a CC. C.C.C.

[4] *Slus.*] The first two letters have been erased and altered in a later hand.

[5] August 1.

[6] October 31.

[7] *frustrat*] frustrat of his entend. C.C.C.

[8] *daunger*] grete drede. C.C.C.

[9] *so.*] om. C.C.C.

[10] *Frauns*] the King of Frauns. C.C.C.

[11] *gunnes.*] The 's' has been added upon an erasure.

[12] *nought.*] Written upon an erasure.

[13] *ty[me].*] The word is left unfinished at the end of a line.—tyme. C.C.C.

[14] *at the Pool*] de la Pol. C.C.C.

A.D. 1387. the se, for to seke oute the theves. And in the Vigil[1] of the Annuncacion of oure Lady thei had a grete jornay with a nave[2] of Frenschmen, Flemyngis, Normannes, and Spaynardis. The victorie felle on oure side; for, in that viage, thei took a hundred schippis, in whech thei had nyneteen thousand tunnes of wyn. Than remeved thei the sege of Brest, that was newly layd; and there took thei too castellis of tymbyr, whech the Frenschmen had reysid to destruccion of Breste. The on thei brent; the othir left thei in the castelle with the Englisch dwelleris.[3] This grete viage was not comendid in the Kyngis hous; for the duk of Erlond, Robert Ver; and the erl of Suffolk, Michael de la Pool; and Simon Burle, and Richard Sturry, enformed the Kyng that it was grete wrong to robbe so good marchauntis.

Disputes in the Church.

In that tyme a Frere Carmelite,[4] cleped Mayster Dys, whech went with the duke of Lancastir into Spayn for reverens of his lord, procured gret graces of the Cort;[5] amongst whech graces he had powere for to receyve men that thei schuld be chapuleynis of the Pope, with alle the libertes that long thereto. Many men boute these graces, and mysused hem. Amongst whech was a Frere Augustyn, thei clepid Petir Patteshul; for, aftir he had that liberte, he felle in the secte of Wiclefistis, and grew to so gret malice, that he sette letteris on Poules dore slaundering his Order and his bretherin on the moost malicious wise.[6] At this matere the hodid men had grete joy. Hodid men were cleped thanne thoo Lolardis, that wold nevir avale here hood in presens of the Sacrament, of

---

[1] March 24.

[2] *nave*] navy. C.C.C.

[3] *Englisch dwelleris*] Englisch men that dwellid there. C.C.C.

[4] *Carmelite.*] C.C.C. Only a portion of this word, "Carme," is found in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[5] *Cort*] Court. C.C.C.

[6] *wise*] manner. C.C.C.

A.D 1387.

whech at that tyme these were the principales;—William Nevyle, Lodewic Cliffortli, Jon Clambowh, Richard Sturry, Thomas Latymer, and, werst of alle,[1] Jon Mountagu; for he reseyved the Sacrament in the cherch, and fro his mouth[2] voyded it to his hand, bare it hom, and ete it with his oystres. Summe write that Laurens de Sancto Martino ded this ded. And of J. Mountagu thei sei he was a gret distroyer of ymages.

Miscon-duct of De Vere.

In this ȝere Robert Ver, whom the Kyng had mad duke of Erland, ros in so grete pride of hert, that, ageyn the lawe of God, he refused his wif, a fayre woman, and good, and eke born of grete blood; for Kyng Edward dowtir was hir modyr. The woman whech he weddid aftir this rejeccion cam oute of Bem, a sadelere doutir; hir name was Lancecrone. The Kyng gaf favoure to this matere; but the lordes were wroth with it, specialy the duke of Gloucester, uncle to the forseid Ysabel, that thoute sumtyme to set remedy in this mater. This was not onknowe to Robert Ver; and therfore be sotil ymaginacion he thoute for distroye the duk of Glouceter. Now was Pase day[3] go, at whech tyme this duke Robert had behestid he schuld a be in Erland. For whech cause, that[4] the lordes among hem schuld not gruch, the Kyng led him into Wales, fere fro his enmyes, whech were the duke of Glouceter, the erles of Arundel, Warwyc, Derby, and Bokyngham,[5] and othir; for these were the lordis that the Kyng hated moost, at the instigacion of Michael at the Pool,[6] Robert Tresilian, justise, Alisaundre Nevyle, bischop of York, and othir many.[7]

The King espouses his cause.

---

[1] *werst of alle.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *fro his mouth.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] Easter day fell on April 7 in the year 1387.

[4] *that*] and that. C.C.C.

[5] *Bokyngham*] Notyngham. C.C.C.

[6] *at the Pool*] de la Pole. C.C.C.

[7] *and othir many*] this Robert Ver, and othir many. C.C.C.

A.D. 1387.

Thus the Kyng taried with the duke[1] and Michael in Walis, tyl, as he supposed, the lordes conjecture was sesed; and than cam he with him[2] onto the Castel of Notyngham. Thider cleped he to councel alle swech men whech were not weel wyllid to the duke of Glouceter and his felauchip.

A.D. 1388. The King claims to choose Knights and Burgesses, but is opposed by the Commons.

In the XII. ȝere the Kyng, abyding at Notyngham, wrot to the scryves[3] of Ynglond, that no knytes ne burgeys schuld be sent onto the Parlement but swech as the Kyng wold chese. And to this peticion was answerd[4] scharply[5] that the usage had be that the comones schuld chese the knytes and these[6] burgeises; and that it was ful hard to put hem fro her liberte.

The King summons certain Judges, to consider the Commission of regency.

Than were these justises cleped before the Kyng: Robert Tresilian, principal justise, and Robert Belknap, cheef for the bench, with his felawes,[7] Jon of[8] Holt, Roger Fulthorp, William of Borow, knytis and justises. These were charged befor the Kyng upon her feith and ligauns, to answere to swech poyntis as schuld be layde before hem. The first was,—If it were derogacioune to the regalie, that the duke of Gloucetir, with his felauchip, schuld purchace a commission of the Kyng ageyn the Kyngis wil, as it was seid, to make inquisicioune upon the defautes of Michael de la Pool.[9] Thei answered alle, that it was derogacioune to the regalie. The secund point was,—What thei were worthi that purchased swech a commission. Thei answered,—Thei were worthi to lese here hedis, but if the King wold gyve hem grace.

The Judges pronounce it illegal.

---

[1] *the Kyng taried with the duke*] the duke taried with the Kyng. C.C.C.

[2] *cam he with him*] cam he home with him. C.C.C.

[3] *scryves*] schryves. C.C.C.

[4] *answerd.*] This word is written on an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[5] *scharply*] full scharply. C.C.C.

[6] *these*] the. C.C.C.

[7] *with his felawes.*] om. C.C.C.

[8] *of.*] om. C.C.C.

[9] *de la Pool*] de la Pole. C.C.C.

A.D. 1388.

The third was answered,—That alle thei that stered the Kyng to that conclusion were worthi that same peyne. Many othir articles were purposed there, upon whech the duke of Glouceter, and othir lordis were endited. And the forseid justises seled al this with her seles; and Jon Lokton, serjaunt; Alexaunder of York, Robert of[1] Dulyn, Archbischoppis;[2] bischop of Dorham; bischop of Chestir; Robert Ver, duke of Erlond; Michael de la Pool,[3] erl of Suffolk; Jon Ripon, clerk; Jon Blake, swyere. And aftir this endyment[4] the Kyng sent unto the most powere of the lond, that thei schuld strength him in his right.[5]

Opposition of the Duke of Gloucester.

The tydingis of this endytment cam to the knowlech of the duke of Glouceter; and he clepid to him the bischop of London, and many othir lordes, and there, befor the bischop, he swore on the Holy Gospel, that it was nevyr his purpos, ne his wil, for to purpos no thing ageyn the welfare of the Kyng, save that he coude not loke meryly on the duke of Yrland, whech had so horribyly disparaged a lady that was ny cosyn to the Kyng and to him.

The Bishop of London reproves De la Pole before the King.

And whan the bischop had mad this report to the King, and his hert, in maner, was stered[6] to benevolens to his uncil, and the othir lordis, Michael de la Pool,[3] that stod beside, dreding that, if the duke were reconciled onto the Kyng, it wold bring him onto grete schame, anon he began to reprove the grete rebellion of the duke, and the sotil ymaginaciones ageyn the Kyngis servauntis. To him the bischop

---

[1] *of.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *Archbischoppis*] Archbishop. C.C.C.

[3] *de la Pool*] de la Pole. C.C.C.

[4] *endyment*] endytment. C.C.C.

[5] *strength him in his right.*] These words have been added upon an erasure, and are apparently written in a later hand.

[6] *in maner, was stered*] was stered, in manner. C.C.C. The word "stered" has been added above the lime in the MS. Pub. Lib.

A.D. 1388. answerd :—"Hold thi pees, thou Michael. It becometh the rite evel to sey swech wordis; thou that art dampned for thi falshed,[1] booth be the lordes and be the Parlement." At this word the Kyng was so wroth, that he comaunded the bischop to voyd fro his presens.

The Duke of Gloucester takes up arms.

The bischop told alle this to the duke of Gloucester, and he told it to his felawes; and sone thei alle were gadered with her powere in a wood fast by London, cleped Harnasey.[2]

The Duke of Ireland gathers forces in the North.

Whanne the Kyng wyst that thei were there, he dred mech that gaderyng, and with his Councel took avisament what myte best be do in this mater. Than sent he the duke of Erlond into Lancastir schere,[3] and Chestir schere,[4] to gadir him puple, with whech puple he myte[5] make resistens ageyn these lordes. That cam onto the lordis eres; and thei, with anothir puple, rood up to Oxenforth. There met thei with this duke of Erlond, and in fayre maner turned al the puple home ageyn to her cuntre. Robert Ver fled anon as he saw these lordes. This puple, or thei went, submitted hem to the duke of Gloucetir, and delyveryd him King Richard baner, whech Robert Ver broute hem.

He is defeated in Oxfordshire.

The Duke of Gloucester marches upon London.

Than cam these V. lordis with her host[6] to Londonne, and leid hem aboute London, lich as schuld besege it. The Kyng lay thann in the Toure. And thei of London sent the keyis of the cite to these lordes, seying that thei were wolkom.

He confers with the King in the Tower.

Than sent the Kyng for hem into the Toure, that thei schuld come and telle the cause why thei had

---

[1] *falshed*] falshod. C.C.C.

[2] *Harnasey.*] This word is written upon an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib. In C.C.C. the reading is "Haryngey Park."

[3] *schere*] schyr. C.C.C.

[4] *and Chestir schere.*] om. C.C.C.

[5] *myte.*] This word has been altered, by the insertion above the line of the letters 'gh,' into 'myghte,' but evidently by a comparatively late hand.

[6] *with her host.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1388.

rered swech a powere. The duke of Gloucetir had the wordis:—"Sovereign Lord, ye schal undirstand that we be, and schul be, onto you as trew ligemen as ony be in youre lond. But the cause of oure commocyon is, that certeyn malefactoris, whech be evyr hid undir your proteccioune, be not correct aftir the desire of youre Lordis and youre Comounes."

Parliament is summoned.

Than the Kyng graunted hem to set a Parlement, in whech alle these thingis schuld be correcte. Whanne this was graunted, Michael de la Pool[1] took a schip in Humbir, and sailed into Frauns, and there he deyed. Robert Ver sailed into Midelborow, and cam nevir hom. Alexaundir Nevyle deied at Dunbar, in Scotlond.

Some of the Judges, and others, are condemned to imprisonment.

At the Parlement these men were condempned to dyvers prisones:—Simon Burle, William Helman, Nicholas Dagworth, Jon Golofir, knytis of the Kingis hous: Jon Clifforth, prest; Nicholas Slake, clerk, were condempned to the Castelle of Notingam. Jon Beuchamp, steward of the Kingis hous; Thomas Tryvet, Jon Salesbury, knytis; Jon Lincolnne, clerk, were assined to Dovyr. James Beverles,[2] knyte, Richard Mutforth, clerk, onto Bristow.

Others are forbidden to approach the King.

Alle these folowing were swore that thei schuld not com in the Kingis hous tyl thei had leve be the Parlement,—Jon Fordham, bischop of Doram; frere Thomas Russoc, of the Dominices, bischop of Chestir, and Confessoure to the Kyng; the Lordis Souch, Lovel, Burnel, Beuchamp, Camuse, and Clifforth.[3] And these ladies,—the lady Moyne, the lady Pownynges, the lady Molenys.

---

[1] *de la Pool*] de la Pole. C.C.C.

[2] *Beverles*] Beverle. C.C.C.

[3] *The Lordis Souch, Lovel, Burnel, Beuchamp, Camuse, and Clifforth*] These Lordis,—Lord Souch, Lord Lovel, Lord Burnell, Lord Beauchamp, Lord Camuse, and Lord Clifforth. C.C.C.

A.D. 1388. The Bishop of Chester is exiled into Ireland.

This Thomas Russok was sent to no prison, but cleped before the juges, and condempned gilty to these evel lederis of the Kyng in his yong age; and because he was a bischop, and men had not herd that ony bischop schuld be in prison, therfor the Court voyded, and he sood stille at the barre. Sone aftir cam a knyte, and bad the bischop go to his in. For aftir that he was exiled into Yrlond.

The King renews his oath.

In this Parlement the lordes desired of the Kyng to make his sacramental oth byfore the puple, be cause the oth whech he had mad before was in his childhod. And so ded the Kyng, and all the lordis and states of the Parlement mad here new othis to be trewe ligemen to her Kyng.

Naval successes of the Earl of Arundel.

Aftir the feste of Pentecost,[1] the erl of Arundel, Richard, was mad amyrel of the se; and IIII. score schippis of oure enmyes he took, or brent; and fewe men were left o lyve that were in hem. Thanne took he these yles, Bas,[2] Us,[3] Re,[4] Lemustre,[5] Rochel,[6] Olin, and Olorum,[7] where the lawes of the se were mad.

Parliament at Cambridge; at which certain Statutes are appointed.

Aftir the fest of Nativite of oure Lady[8] was a Parlement at Cambrigge, in whech Parlement were mad many[9] statutes,—Of servauntis heres;[10] Of open beggeris, that thei schuld not begge, but in the townes where thei dwelle; Of bering of armoure, not withouten grete cause; Of playes unlawful,[11] that non schuld be used but schotyng: and the stapil schuld be remeved fro Mydilborow to Caleys: and that no prest schuld purchace no benefice at Rome withoute leve of the Kyng.[1] In this tyme Ser Thomas Tryvet in the Kyngis presens, betwix Bernwelle and Cambrigge, with a falle fro his hors, brake his bowelis and deyid. A.D. 1388.

---

[1] Whit Sunday fell on May 17 in the year 1388.

[2] *Bas*] the yle of Bas. C.C.C.

[3] *Us*] the yle of Us. C.C.C.

[4] *Re.*] om. C.C.C.

[5] *Lemustre*] the yle of Le Mustre. C.C.C.

[6] *Rochel.*] om. C.C.C.

[7] *Olin, and Olorum*] the yles Olin and Olorum. C.C.C.

[8] September 8.

[9] *many*] om. C.C.C.

[10] *heres*] hyr. C.C.C.

[11] *unlawful.*] This word has been added above the line, and in a later hand.

A.D. 1389. The King claims the liberties of the throne.

In the XIII. ȝere of this King, the Kyng sodeynly cleped his houshold togidir, and inqwired of hem what age he was of. And sum saide XX.; sum saide XXII. Than saide the Kyng:—"Sith I am of sufficient age, it is not wel that my condicioune schuld be worse than othir that dwelle in my lond. I am, as[2] ȝe sey, of sufficient age to governe my lordis, and my puple. Before this tyme I have lyved undir governaunce: now will I take the governauns upon me."

He makes William of Wykham his Chancellor.

And anon he comaunded the chauncelere to resigne the sel. And forth anon he took the sel to Sere William Wikkam, bischop of Wynchester; and mad alle newe officeres. The duke of Glouceter, and the erl of Warwyk he remeved fro his Councelle, and pulled in othir that plesed bettir his yze.

The Duke of Gloucester is falsely accused to the King.

In this same tyme flatereris[3] that were aboute the King told the Kyng that the duke of Glouceter had gadered a gret hoost to destruccioune of the Kyng, and his frendis. The Kyng sent aftir the duke, and there was provyd fals al that evir was seyd. And whan the duke began to declare his innocens, to confusion and schame of hem that stood in the Kyngis presens, the Kyng prayed the duke, for al the love that was betwix hem, that he schuld hold his pes.

A three years' truce concluded with France.

In this same ȝere, at the fest of Seynt Jon Baptiste,[4] was take a trews betwix Frauns and Ynglond; and both Kyngis swore that it schuld be kept III. ȝere.

---

[1] *and the stapil . . . . . . of the Kyng.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *as.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *flatereris*] flateris. C.C.C.

[4] June 24.

A.D. 1389. Miracles at Ely and elsewhere.

In this tyme were many miracules do at Hely, and Bridlington; and fast by Wymundam, at a crosse whech thei clepe Westwade.

Death of Michael de la Pole.

This ȝere deyed Mychael at the Pool,[1] in the cyte of Paris.

The Pope alters the calculation of the year of Jubilee.

And this same ȝere Urbane, the Pope, ordeyned that the Jubile schuld be broute fro L. ȝere onto XXXIII., aftir Cristis age.

The followers of Wiclif increase.

In this tyme the disciples of Wiclef grew in so grete erroure, that her prestis took upon hem for to sacre prestis. Thei saide that every prest hath as grete powere as the Pope. Alle[2] this erroure began first in the diocyse of Salesbury. Thei prechid openly ageyn pilgrimage, and specialy Walsingam, and the rode of Northdore.[3] The bischoppis of this lond saide right nowt to this mater, but kepte hem in here houses, and opened no mouth to berk ageyn these erroneous doggis.

Death of Pope Urban.

In this ȝere deyid Pope Urbane.

Boniface IX., Pope.

And aftir him was intronized Bonifacius the IX.

Return of the Duke of Lancaster.

In the beginning of Novembir, this ȝere, Ser Jon, Duke of Lancastir, that had be in Gyan and Spayn III. ȝere, cam hom, saved fro many pereles. For many of his men in Spayn, for hungir, and cold, and poverte, fled fro him onto the Frensch party, whech were hired into Spayn, to help his enmy the Kyng of Castille. And the Frensch men receyved hem as her bretherin, and refreschid hem in al goodly maner. The duke, whan he had aspied the miseri of his hoost, with wepyng teres he cried to God, praying Him of His coumfort. And oure Lord, That nevir forsakith[4] hem that be desolat, sent him redy coumfort. For his adversarie, the Kyng of Castile, towchid only be oure Lord, sent onto him embassiatouris for to trete for[1] pes. Than were thei thus acordid, that the son of the Kyng of Castile schuld wedde the doutir of the duke and dame Custauns,[2] whech Cunstauns was doutir to King Petir of Spayn. And the childirn of hem II. schuld be eyeres of Spayn. And if there come no frute of hem too, than schuld the heritage remayne to the duke son of York, whech duke was brothir to the duke of Lancastir, and had[3] weddid the yonger doutir of that same[4] Petir, Kyng of Spayne. These covenauntis were confermed with writing, and a grete summe of gold geven[5] to the duke, and letteris mad for to receyve, his lyve and his duchesse lyve, eviry ȝere, xM. pound. A D. 1389.

---

[1] *at the Pool*] at the Pole. C.C.C.

[2] *Alle*] and. C.C.C.

[3] *Northdore*] Nordor.

[4] *forsakith*] forsoke. C.C.C.

Accidental death of the Earl of Pembroke.

In this same ȝere, Jon Hasting, erl of Penbrok, in justing in the presens of the Kyng, was wounded to the deth. He that smet him hite Ser Jon Seint Jon. It was seid of that kynrod, that fro that tyme of Eymere of Valauns, whech was on of the juges that sat on the deth of Thomas of Lancaster, onto this Jon, that there was nevir erl of Penbrok that saw his fader.

Canonization of Thomas Earl of Lancaster.

And this same ȝere was Thomas of Lancastir canonized: for it was seid comounly that he schuld nevir be canonzied onto the tyme that alle the juges that sat upon him were ded, and al her issew.

In the XIIII. ȝere[6] Bonifacius the IX. ordeyned that the fest of the Visitacioune of oure Lady[7] schuld be saide of alle Cristen men. A.D. 1390.

---

[1] *for.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *Custauns*] Constauns. C.C.C.

[3] *had.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *same.*] om. C.C.C.

[5] *geven*] gove. C.C.C. This word has apparently also been "gove" in the MS. Pub. Lib. The second letter, in the latter MS., has been altered by an erasure, and the contraction for 'n' at the end of the word has been evidently added at a later period.

[6] *ȝere*] ȝere of Richard. C.C.C. The words "the XIIII. ȝere" are written on an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib., the last word having been added above the line.

[7] July 2.

A.D. 1390.

Disputes between the King and the citizens of London.

In this ȝere fel gret distauns betwix the Kyng and the cite of London; for thei wold not lend him a thousand pound. And the Kyng prived hem of her libertes, and ordeyned that thei schuld no meyhir have, but a wardeyne, whech was first Edmund Dalyngbrig; and aftir him, Baldewyn Radyngton.[1] Than payed thei grete good to have her liberte ageyn.

Madness of the King of France.

This ȝere the Kyng of Frauns fel in a frenesi; and the cause was, as it is saide, for an ontrewe bataile whech he rered ageyn the duke of Bretayn. And alle his lyf, as long as the wedir was hote, his seknes cesed nevyr: in wynter, and in cold, it greved not mech.

Death of Sir Rob. de Vere.

In this same ȝere deyed Robert Ver in Lovayn, sumtyme duke of Erlond, now desolat and pore.

And in this ȝere, Ser Adam, munk of Norwich, and cardinal, that was deposed be Urbane the Pope, now was restored be Bonifas, his successoure. It is seid comounly that this Urbane was a very tiraunt; and this cardinal lettid him mech of his wrong desire; and for this cause, and non othir, he deposed this Adam, and put him in prison; for this was his open confession, whan he schuld deye. At instauns of this cardinal Adam, the Pope Bonifas[2] mad a declaracion upon the plenar remission that is graunted men be certeyn indulgens, that this remission is not verily had, though a man be schryve, in many pereles, til his last ende at his deth.

Expedition of the Earl of Derby into Prussia.

In this ȝere Ser Herry, erl of Derby, sailed into Prus, where, with help of the Marchale of Prus, and of a Kyng that hite Witot, he ovyrcam the Kyng of Lettow, and mad him for to fle. Thre of his dukes he took, and foure dukes he killid, with many lordes and knytis, and swieris mo than thre hundred.

---

[1] *Radyngton*] Dadyngton. C.C.C. | [2] *Bonifas.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1390. Arrangements made for renewing the truce with France.

In this ȝere the Kyng of Frauns sent worchipful men into Ynglond to have a perpetual pes; and that it schuld be the more ferme and stabil, it was desired that the Kyngis schuld speke togider in sum place ny be Caleys. This was graunted, and therefor King Richard sent to alle the abbeyes of this lond to purvey him grete hors, and to lend him mony, to this jornay. Thei that were messageris saide it was convenient that religious men, with her goodis, schuld help to swech tretis of pes. The hors that were asked of abeyes schuld be in pris XX libr. The lone was asked no lesse than[1] L. mark.

The King recalls English beneficed clergy from the Court of Rome.

In these dayes was proclamacion, be consent of the Kyng, that everi benefised man that was in the Cort of Rome schuld be at hom in the fest of Seynt Nicholace.[2] This cry stoyned gretly the Court, and caused that the Pope sent an abbot to the Kyng brynging swech message. First, he commendid the Kyng of his feith[3] and treuth, that he held evir with the Cherch ageyn the Antipope, whech Antipope was gretly supported be the Kyngis of Frauns and of Spayne. Than saide he, that the Pope merveyled mech[4] of certeyn statutes whech were mad in this lond ageyn the liberte of the Cherch; and for the Pope supposed that it was not the Kyngis wil, therefor he sent his messagere to stere the Kyng that swech statutes schuld be abrogat whech be ageyn the liberte of Holy Cherch, specially these two, "*Quare impedit*," and "*Premunire facias.*" Also, he notified onto the Kyng that the Antipope and the Kyng of Frauns be thus accordid, that the seid Kyng of Frauns, with help of the duke of Burgony, and othir, schul set

The Pope's message to the King.

---

[1] *The lone was asked no lesse than*] The lone that was asked was no lesse than. C.C.C.

[2] December 6.

[3] *of his feith*] of feith. C.C.C.

[4] *mech*] sor. C.C.C.

A.D. 1390. the Antipope in the sete at Rome; and the same Antipope schal make the Kyng of Frauns emperoure; and othir dukes he schal endewe[1] in the lordchippis of Itaile. Also, he enformed the King what perel schuld falle if the Antipope and the Kyng[2] were thus acorded, and the Kyng of Frauns emperoure,—he schuld be that wey chalenge the dominion of Ynglond. Therfor the Pope counceleth the King, that he schal make no pes with the Kyng of Frauns but on this condicion, that the King of Frauns schal favoure the opinion of the trewe Pope, and suffir non of his puple to fite ageyn him. These and many othir thingis were put in delay til the next Parlement, whech was at Halowmesse.[3] And as for promociones of hem that dwelled at Rome, it wold not be graunted; but, for favoure of the Pope, thei graunted him his provysiones til the nexte Parlement. Othir materes were put in avisament.

A.D. 1391. A truce concluded with France for one year.

In the XV. ȝere of this Kyng, the duke of Lancastir sailed into Frauns, to trete with the King of Frauns of this final pes. And he and the bischop of Dorham were led fro Caleys onto the cite Ambianensis with a thousand hors of Englischmen, at the costis of the Kyng of Frauns. Whan the treti was do thei cam hom ageyn, and browt with hem treus for o ȝere, that in this tyme men myte be avysed whethir it was more neccesary to have werr or pes.

The truce ratified at Stamford.

And for this mater was gadered a Councel at Staunforth, where was no more do, but that thei consented to this truse.

The Duke of Gloucester is sent into Ireland.

In this ȝere was the duke of Glouceter sent into Erlond, for reformacion of the cuntre, of whech cuntre

---

[1] *he schal endewe*, &c.] he schal mak gret lordes, and endewe, &c. C.C.C.

[2] *and the Kyng.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] November 1.

A.D. 1391.

the King had mad him duke. And anon as he was absent, his enmyes in the Kyngis hous cried on the Kyng to clepe him ageyn. It was perel, as thei seide,[1] for making of rebelles in that wilde lond.

A.D. 1392. Parliament at Winchester.

In the XVI. ȝere of this Kyng was a Parlement at Wynchester, sone aftir Cristmasse, where was graunted a gret summe of good for the expensis of the dukes Lancaster and Glouceter, that schuld go into Frauns.

The King of France narrowly escapes being burnt to death.

In that same ȝere the Kyng of Frauns daunsed in his halle with IIII. knites, and was arayed lich a wodwous, having a streyt cote, dippid in rosyn and pich. And sodeynly, with touching of a torch, the cote was on fire, and he had brent, had not a lady rysen, and pulled him oute of the dauns. It was seide that this was the ymaginacion of his brothir, whech desired to be Kyng.

The citizens of London are deprived of their charters, but only for a short time.

In this ȝere the Bank and the Chauncelry was translat fro London to York; summe sayd for hate that lordes had to London; summe said for favoure of York, for the archbischop of that se was Chauncelere. But this novelte lastid not longe, for it went sone to London ageyn.

Sir Aubrey de Vere.

In this same ȝere Ser Alfrede Ver[2] was mad erl of Oxenforth.

Sir William Scrope buys the lordship of the Isle of Man.

In this ȝere Ser William Scrop boute the ylde of Eubony, with the crowne, of Ser William Mountagw, erl of Salesbury: for he that is lord of this yle may were a crowne. This yle stant betwix Ynglond and Yrlond. The name is now the Ile of Man.

Loss of Cherbourg.

In this ȝere the town of Cherborgh[3] turned ageyn to the Kyng of Navern; for it[4] was laid to wedde for certeyn ȝeris to Kyng Richard for iiM. pound.

---

[1] *as thei seide,*] as thei seide, that he schuld go. C.C.C.

[2] *Ser Alfrede Ver*] Ser Albred Ver. C.C.C.

[3] *Cherborgh*] Cherborow. C.C.C.

[4] *for it*] whech. C.C.C.

A.D. 1393.

The Duke of Lancaster accuses the Earl of Arundel of rebellion.

In the XVII. ȝere,[1] in the Octave of Seynt Hilari,[2] was a Parlement at London, where fel a gret strif betwix the duke of Lancastir and the erl of Arundel. He bare the erl on hand that he ros with a gret meny ageyn the pes in Chestir schere, in his castel cleped Holt, to meynten also certeyn rebelles. The erl said "Nay" herto. And so be[3] menes was had pes.

A four years' truce with France.

Aboute the fest of Seynt Jon Baptiste[4] the same[5] duke of Lancastir cam ageyn fro Frauns, bringing with him trews for foure ȝere, and consent of the Frensch Kyng, that alle Scottis, where evyr[6] thei dwelt, schuld be browt onto the obediens of the King of Ynglond, as thei owe[7] of rite.

Death of the Duchess of Lancaster; Mary Countess of Derby; Queen Anne, of Bohemia, and Isabel Duchess of York.

In the same tyme that the duke was in Frauns, deyed his wif dam Constauns, doutir to Petir, Kyng of Spayn, a woman ful blessed and devoute.[8]

Soon aftir deied Mari, cuntesse of Derby.

And sone aftir that deied qwen Anne, buried at Westminster.

Eke this ȝere[9] deyed dame[10] Ysabelle, duchesse of York, doutir to Kyng Petir of Spayn.

Death of Sir John Hakewood.

And Ser Jon Hakwod,[11] the nobil knyte, moost named in manhod and werre.

Irish settlers in England required to return to their own land.

In the month of Auguste was it proclamed thorowoute Ynglond, that alle Erischmen be at hom, in her owne lond, in the fest of Nativite of oure Lady,[12] in peyne of lesing of her[13] hed. It was proved be expe-

---

[1] *ȝere*] ȝere of Richard. C.C.C.

[2] January 20.

[3] *And so be, &c.*] Aftir mech strif wer found menes of pes. C.C.C.

[4] June 24.

[5] *same.*] om. C.C.C.

[6] *where evyr*] where so evyr. C.C.C

[7] *owe*] awȝte. C.C.C.

[8] *and devoute*] and full devoute. C.C.C.

[9] *this ȝere*] in the same ȝere. C.C.C.

[10] *dame.*] om. C.C.C.

[11] *Hakwod*] Haukwod. C.C.C.

[12] September 8.

[13] *of lesing of her.*] These words are written on an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

A.D. 1393.

riens that there were com to Ynglond so many Erischmen that the Erisch cuntre, whech longeth to the King of Ynglond, was so voyded fro his dwelleris that the wilde Erisch were com in, and had dominanacioune of al that cuntre. And, more ovyr, it was noted, that in Kyng Edward tyme the Thirde, whan he had set there his bank, his juges, and his chekyr, he received eviry ȝere xxxM. pound: and now the Kyng Richard was fayn to paye ȝerly to defens of the same cuntre xxxM. mark.

Birth of Capgrave.

In this ȝere,[1] in the XXI. day of Aprile, was that Frere bore whech mad these Annotaciones.

The King goes into Ireland at Lady Day.

And in the same ȝere Kyng Richard went into Erland, with the duke of Glouceter, and erles March, Notingham, and Ruthland. Many of the Erisch lordis wold ha[2] lettid his comyng; but her power was ovyr weyk. Ther was he fro the Nativite of oure Lady[3] onto Esterne.[4] And in that tyme were sent onto him, be the clergi of this lond, the archbishop of York and the bischop of London, praying him that he wold come hom ageyn to oppresse the malice of Lollardis. For thei laboured sore to take away alle the possessiones of the Cherch, and aftir to distroye alle the lawes that were mad to favoure of the Cherch. Whan the Kyng herd this, he hastid him in al goodly maner to com hom ageyn.

A.D. 1394. Parliament held at Dublin.

In the XVIII. ȝere the Kyng held his Parlement at Dulyn,[5] and thidir com alle the lordes that had mad subjeccion onto him.

---

[1] *In this ȝere*, &c.] Here, in the margin, again occurs the private mark of the Author of the present Chronicle, of which we have given a facsimile at the end of the Dedication, page 4. In this, however, and some other instances, it wants the lower part.

[2] *wold ha*] would a. C.C.C.

[3] September 8.

[4] Easter Day fell on April 19 in the year 1394.

[5] *Dulyn*] Dublyn. C.C.C.

A.D. 1394. The Duke of York holds a Parliament in London.

And in that same tyme, Edmund, duke of York, Keper of Ynglond, held a Parlement at London; to whech Parlement cam the duke of Gloucetir fro Yrlond, expressing the Kyngis costis in Yrlond: and his legacion was so acceptabil, that the clergy graunted him a dyme, and the lay fe[1] a fiftene.

The Lollards.

In this tyme the Lolardis set up scrowis at Westminster and at Poules, with abhominable accusaciones of hem that long to the Cherch, whech sounded in destruccioune of the Sacramentis, and of statutes of the Cherch.[2] The meyteyneris of the puple that were so infect were these:—Richard Storry, Lodewik Clifforth, Thomas Latymer, Jon Mountagw.[3] Thei were principal instructouris of heretikes. The Kyng, whan he had conceyved the malice of these men, he cleped hem to his presens, and snybbed hem; forbad hem eke thei schuld no more meynten no swech materes. Of Richard Story he took a hooth;[4] for he swore on a book that[5] he schuld nevyr meynten no swech opiniones. And aftir this hooth[6] the Kyng saide,—"And I swere here onto the, If evyr thou breke thin ooth, thou schal deye a foul deth." Thei that were gilty in this mater withdrow gretly her oterauns of malys.

Legend.

In this ȝere a ymage upon a crosse appered in the eyir above the stepil cleped Laudunensis, in Frauns. And this apparicion lastid half a houre, that alle men mite se it.

Troubles at Rhodes.

And in the same ȝere, a hethen prince, cleped Morettus, with his cursed puple, III. hundred thousand and L. thousand, faut ageyn the Maistir of Rodis; and, thorw the myte of oure Lord, he lost of his puple a hundred thousand. Than asayed he to fite in schippis; and there eke was he put to grete rebuke. And in the same tyme the emperoure of Constantinople killid a gret part of his host, whech had besegid the same cyte. A.D. 1394.

---

[1] *lay fe*] lay fee. C.C.C.

[2] *whech sounded . . . . . . the Cherch.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *Mountagw*] Mountagew. C.C.C.

[4] *hooth*] oth. C.C.C.

[5] *on a book that*] on a booke an oth that. C.C.C.

[6] *hooth*] hoth. C.C.C.

In this ȝere, William, bischop[1] of Cauntirbury, havyng no consideracion what cost the cherchis in his province had bore, paying[2] a subsidi to the Kyng eviry ȝere, yet[3] gat he bulles fro the Court to have IIIId. of the pound, both of exempt and not exempt. Many that loved pes payed. And summe mad apeel in this matere. But the ende of al this strif was, the deth of William, whech folowed sone. Grievous taxation of the clergy.

In this ȝere, in the month of Novembir, Kyng Richard sent aftir the body of Robert Ver, and beried it at Coln. And there was he, and the archbischop of Cauntirbury. The body of Robert de Vere is buried at Cologne.

In the XIX. ȝere, the duke of Lancastir, whom the Kyng had mad duke of Gyan, cam hom to Ynglond, compelled be the King, no consideracion had at the costis whech he mad there to gete him pees and frendchip. He cam hom at the fest of Cristis Nativite, onto the King haldyng that fest at Langle. He was receyved in chere outeward, as a frend; but not in hert, as he supposed. Wherfor he took leve of the Kyng, and rood onto Lyncolnne, where Katerine Swynforth dwelled that tyme. And sone aftir he weddid the same woman, ageyn the opinion of many men. Of this woman cam many childirn, whech were aftir legitimat; so semeth it that thei were bore befor this mariage. Recall of the Duke of Lancaster. Catherine Swinford.

In this ȝere the Pope wrote speciali to the Kyng for these Lolardis, tretouris to God and to the Kyng. The Pope prays the King to punish the Lollards.

---

[1] *bischop*] archbishop. C.C.C.
[2] *paying.*] om. C.C.C.
[3] *yet*] ȝit. C.C.C.

A.D. 1395. In his letteris he prayed the Kyng that he schuld be redy to punche al thoo whom the bischoppis declared for heretikes. Othir bullis sent he, in whech was conteyned that alle maner religious men that dwelt fro her Ordir, undir pretens of swech graces as thei clepe Capellains honoris, that thei schuld be compelled to kepe her religion. This plesed wel the IIII. Ordres of Mendinauntis; for thei pulled hom many a man that was of[1] ful evel reule.[2]

Conference between the Kings of England and France.

In this tyme the Kyngis of Frauns and of Ynglond mette togidir fast by Caleys, and there picchid here tentis. And, before ony trety, both Kyngis were swore for hem and alle her frendis that VIII. dayes befor this trety, and VIII. dayes aftir, there schuld no man o neithir side harme othir be no manere, ne no weye.

The truce is renewed.

In the XVI. day of Octobir the Kyng of Ynglond rood fro Caleys onto Gynes,[3] and with him the duke of Barry, that was sent to Kaleys to receive the Kingis oth.

In the morow the Kyngis met in the feld. And these Frensch lordes rood with the Kyng of Ynglond, the duke of Barry, the duke of Burgonie, the duke of Aurialensis, the duke of Borboune, the erl Sancer, Vicount de Meleyn, the bischop of Velanienssis,[4] and the lord Bussi. And on the othir part, with the Kyng of Frauns, rood the duke of Lancastir, the duke of Gloucetir, the erl of Derby, erl of Ruthland, erl of Notingham, and erl of Northumbirlond. In this feld these to Kyngis had her trety; and in that place where thei tretid thei were acorded that a chapel schuld be mad at the costis of hem both, and it schuld be clepid Nostre Domine de Pace. In the

---

[1] *of.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *reule*] reuled. C.C.C.

[3] *onto Gynes.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *Velanienssis*] Relaniensis. C.C.C.

A.D. 1394.

fest of Simund and Jude[1] thei were swore to kepe certeyn articulles whech were purposed and wrytin.

Richard espouses the daughter of the King of France.

And aftir that the Kyng of Yngland praid the King of Frauns to dyner the next[2] day. Helianore, the doutir to the King of Frauns, was browt to Kyng Richard tent, and there hir fadir gave hir to the same Kyng. He thankid hir fadir, and kissid the mayde, and comendid hir to the duchesses of Lancastir and Gloucetir, and cuntesses of Huntyngdon and Stafforth, and othir ladies, for to lede hir to Kaleys. Sche was ful scarsly VIII. ȝere of age, but sche broute oute of Frauns XII. chares ful of ladies and domicelles. Thus went the Kyngis to mete. The Kyng of Frauns sat on the rite hand; and alle the corses of mete were servid aftir the gise of his cuntre, al in o disch. The Kyng of Ynglond was served in many dischis, aftir his use. Aftir mete the Kyng of Ynglond led the Kyng of Frauns on his weye, kissid him, and toke leve.[3] In this receyving Richard spent iiiC.M. mark.[4]

This ȝere deyed Maistir William Courtne.

Thomas Arundel is made Abp. of Canterbury.

And in his stede Thomas Arundel was bischop of Cauntirbury.

A.D. 1396.

Legitimization of the children of the Duke of Lancaster.

In the XX. ȝere of Richard was a Parlement at London, where the duke of Lancastir purchased a legittimacion for the childyrn that he had begoten of dame Katerine Swynforth. And in this Parlement Ser Thomas Beuforth, on of thoo childirn, was mad erl of Somirsete.

The exiled Judges are recalled by the King.

In this same tyme, the Kyng, ageyn alle the othis that he had mad, cleped ageyn oute of Yrlond thoo Justises whech were exiled be the Parlement, and be his consent.

---

[1] October 28.

[2] *the next*] in the next. C.C.C.

[3] *toke leve*] toke his leve. C.C.C.

[4] *In this . . . mark.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1396. Rumour that the King was elected to be Emperor.

In this tyme eke risen tydingis in this lond that the Kyng was chose emperoure, for whech cause the Kyng mad mo gaderingis and mo taliages than evir he ded before. There was no cyte, no town, no prelate, lord, knyte, or marchaunt, but thei mote lende the Kyng mony.

Arrest of the Duke of Gloucester,

In this same ȝere, whan men supposed alle pes and rest to be had, sodeynly the Kyng brak oute with privy malice, whech he had long born, and ded his officeres arestin at Plasche, in Essex,[1] his uncil the duke of Gloucetir, and streite sent him to Caleys. The erl of Warwik, the same day that he had dyned with the Kyng, and the Kyng had hite him his "good Lordchip," was arestid and put in prison. The erl of Arundel was arested and sent to the Ilde of Wite. And, that there schuld be no grucching in the puple for this maner doying, he ded proclame thorow the rem, that it was not for eld treson, but for newe.

and the Earls of Warwick,

and Arundel.

And sone aftir, at Notingham, alle these lordes were endited.

The names of their accusers.

These were the lordis assined be the Kyng, that schuld accuse hem in the next Parlement:—Ser Edward, erl of Ruthland; Ser Thomas Mounbray, erl Marchale; Ser Thomas Holland, erl of Kent; Ser Jon Holland, erl of Huntingdon; Ser Thomas Beuforth, erl of Somirsete; Ser Jon Mountagew, erl of Salesbury; Thomas, lord Spenser, and William Scrop, Chaumbyrleyn.

The King anticipates danger.

In this tyme the Kyng, because he dred conspiracion of puple, sent into Chestirschire for baretores and riseris, that thei schuld com and have the kepying of his[2] body.

---

[1] *in Essex.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *his*] the Kynges. C.C.C.

A.D. 1396. Parliament in London. Cancelling of all pardons granted in the matter of the commission of regency.

At the Nativite of oure Lady[1] was a Parlement at London, and thidir cam many lordis with gret aray. In that Parlement the grettest spekeris were thre proud[2] coveytous men,—Jon Bussy, William Bagot, and Thomas Grene. These thre with grete clamour cried that swech chartouris of pardon whech were graunted before schuld be revoced. And to this mater both the clergy and the lay fe[3] consented, havyng no consideracion whi it was don. The archbischop Thomas took leve to be absent o day, praying the Kyng that there schuld no thing be concluded in his absens. And notwithstanding that the Kyng hite him this, he was exiled the next day that, up peyn of his hed, he schuld not abide in the lond lenger than VIII. wekis. And in this mene tyme the King sent privily to the Court, that Roger Walden, Treserere, schuld obteyne the benefice. But within a litil tyme he was accused of certeyn crym, and refused.

Banishment of the Abp. of Canterbury.

The Earl of Arundel is beheaded.

In the day of Seint Mathew[4] was Richard Arundel condempned to be ded as a tretoure, save the Kyng pardoned him of alle othir circumstauns, save lesing of his hed. He myte not be excused be his chartour that was graunted him. Whan he cam to the place there he schuld deye he chaunged no chere, but took the swerd fro him that schuld smyte, and felt if it were scharp, and seyde, "It is scharp inow; do thi dede.[5] I forgive the my deth." With o strok his hed went of. And a Frere Augustin,[6] cleped Fekenham,[7] bare it hom in his lap. His othir bretherin bare hom the body onto the Covent.

---

[1] September 8.

[2] *proud.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *lay fe*] lay fee. C.C.C.

[4] September 21.

[5] *do thi dede.*] om. C.C.C.

[6] *Augustin*] Austin. C.C.C.

[7] *Fekenham.*] The MS. C.C.C. here adds:—"Mayster of Divinite."

A.D. 1396. Remorse of the King.

Aftir his deth the King was tormented with dredful dremes, that he myte not slepe. Eke he thoute evyr that a schadow of a man walkid before him. More ovyr this grevid him, that the comoun puple talked that he was a martir, and that his hed was growe ageyn to his bodi. For these causes, in the tent day aftir his sepulture, at the X. houre at even, the Kyng sent certeyn dukes and erles to delve up the body, and make a frere for to go betwix the hed and the body. And with this dede the Kyng was more qwiet. But for al this, he comaunded the wax aboute his grave and clothis and othir aray to be take away, and to leve the grave desolate.

Arrest and exile of the Earl of Warwick.

Aftyr his deth was the erl of Warwik arested. And gwanne thei inqwired[1] of him what was his entent for to gadere so mech puple to ride with the duke of Gloucetir, the man, seing who Arundel was ded, and he endited of treson, was a knowe, as thei seid. For whech confession the King gave him lif, and exiled him to prison in the Ylde of Man.

The Duke of Gloucester secretly murdered at Calais.

Aftir this, because men thoute it was not the Kyngis worchip that his uncil schuld be slayn openly, for favoure of the puple, whech loved him; for this cause the Kyng comaunded the erl Marchale that he schuld be privyly slayn. So be that mannes servauntis he was slayn at Caleys, oppressed betwix to fedir bedis. Than mad the King to crye, that this Parlement schuld be jorned tyl aftir Cristmasse, and thanne[2] ended at Schrouesbury.

A.D. 1397. The King obtains certain privileges of the Parliament.

In the XXI. ȝere of Richard, in that same Parlement, the Kyng procured ful sotilly that, be the consent of alle the statis of the Parlement, that the praiere of certeyn peticiones whech were porrect in the Parlement, mite be determined be certeyn persones, VII. or VIII. aftir the Parlement was do.

---

[1] *thei inqwired.*] These words have been added in the margin of the MS. Pub. Lib. They form part of the text of C.C.C.

[2] *thanne.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1397.

This graunted, the Kyng put in his stile "Prince of Chestir." And thanne mad he certeyn dukes;—the erl of Derby, duk of Herforth; erl Marchale, duke of[1] Norfolk; erl Rutland, duke of Albemarle; erl of Kent,[2] duke of Suthrey; erl of Huntingdon, duke of Excetir; the cuntesse of Norfolk, duchesse of the same;[3] the erl of Somirsete, markeis of Northfolk; the lord Spenser, erl of Gloucetir; the lord Nevile, erl of Westmorlond; Ser William Scrop, erl of Wiltschere; Ser Thomas Percy, erl of Wicetir. And to these lordes gave he mech of the liflod of the duke of Gloucetir, erl of Warwik, and erl of Arundel.

He makes the County of Chester a Principality, and grants higher titles to several of the Nobles.

He purchased eke bullis of the Pope, whech confermed al that was do in the Parlement; and grete censuris were there ageyn alle that schuld breke hem.

The Acts of this Parliament are confirmed by the Pope.

In this ȝere the Kyng exiled the duke of Norfolk, and set grete peynes, that no man schuld pray for him. And this was do that same day twelvemonth, in whech first day the duke of Gloucetir was suffocat at Caleys.

Exile of the Duke of Norfolk.

In this ȝere the Kyng translate Jon, bischop of Lincolnne,[4] onto the cherch of Chestir. And the Cherch of Lincolnne gave he to Herry Beuforth, on of the childirn of the duke of Lancastir and Katerine Swynforth. Jon, that was bischop of Lincolnne, wold not admit this translacion, but went to Cauntirbyry, to Crist Cherch, and there deied amongst the munkis.

Changes in the Sees of Lincoln and Chester.

---

[1] *of.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *duke of Albemarle; erl of Kent.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *the cuntesse . . . . same.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *of Lincolnne.*] These words have been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. They form part of the text of C.C.C.

A.D. 1398. The Pope appeals unsuccessfully against the writ "*Quare impedit.*"

In this tyme cam a messanger fro the Pope, Petrus de Bosco, bischop Aquitensis, for to pray the King that he schuld suffir his lige men to have provisiones of the Popes hand, and to distroye that writ, "*Quare impedit.*" But because the patrones wold not consent thereto, therefor the King honoured him with grete giftis, and sent him hom ageyn.

Discovery of great treasure at Rome.

In this tyme was founde a grete summe of mony at Rome in a rotin wal, whech was the tresoure of Helyn, Constantyn modir; for in the serkil was writin hir name. And eviry pes thereof was worth XXs̃. With this mony the Pope ded renewe the capitol, and[1] the Castell Aungel.[2]

A.D. 1398. Drying up of a river in Bedfordshire.

In the XXII. ȝere, in the fest of Circumcision,[3] a depe watir in Bedforthschire, that rennyth betwix Snelleston and Harleswoode, sodeynly stood stille, and departed him onto othir place; and the ryver, that was wete before, stood drye thre myle o length, that men myte go ovyr. This merveyle betokned, men seide, gret dyvysion that schuld falle in the puple.[4]

Roger Mortimer slain by the Irish. The King goes into Ireland.

In that tyme Roger Mortimere, erl of March, was deceyved be the Erischmen, and slayn. Whan the Kyng knew it, he purposed for to venge his deth, and make a jornay into Yrlond. Upon whech he purveyed mech thing of his ligis, and payed rite not; so that ny alle men hated him.

A.D. 1399. Death of the Duke of Lancaster.

In this tyme deied Jon, duke of Lancastir, and was byried at Seyn Poules, in London. Aftir his deth, the Kyng, that had exiled Herry, his son, for X. ȝere, now he exiled him for evyr; forbedyng alle his receyvouris that thei schal gader no mony to profite of here lord, notwithstanding he had graunted hem patentis befor, that thei schuld gader a certeyn summe for her lordis redempcion, that he mite with his good purchase the Kyngis grace.

---

[1] *the capitol, and.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *Castell Aungel*] Castelle of Aungel. C.C.C.

[3] January 1.

[4] *This merveyle . . . puple.*] om. C.C.C.

The King extorts much money from the people.

In this same tyme the Kyng borowid more good of dyvers men, and bond him be patent letteris to pay hem at certeyn dayes; whech he nevyr payed. Than sent he to alle the schreves, that thei schuld make the puple to swere newly ageyn, that thei schuld be trewe to the Kyng. And tho men that were counted rich were bore on hand that thei had consented to the tretouris that were ded; and so were thei compelled to pay grete summes. Every person, of what degre he was, if thei were accused thei had seid ony word in derogacion of the Kyng, there was no mercy, but payment or prison. And this mad the puple to hate the Kyng, and caused gret murmour in the puple.

The King visits Ireland.

About the fest of Pentecost[1] the Kyng went into Yrland, with his Chestirveris,[2] and with the dukes Awlmarre and Excetir, the eyeris[3] eke[4] of Gloucetir and Herforth, certeyn bischoppis, and the abbot of Westminster, that he myte make a Parlement whan he wold.

The young Duke of Lancaster returns to England.

In this tyme, whil he was in Yrlond, the duke of Lancastir, Herry, beryng hevyly his exile, and eke privacion of his heritage; and considering who evel-beloved the Kyng was of his lychmen, thinking that now was tyme for to entir, cam into the se, with Thomas, bischop of Cauntyrbury, and the son and eyer of the erl of Herforth, whech had with him at that tyme but XV. speres. Thus Herry kept him in the se, appering now in o cost, now in a othir, lokyng evir

---

[1] *Pentecost.*] C.C.C. The word is written 'Pentcost' in MS. Pub. Lib.—Whit-Sunday fell on May 26 in the year 1398.

[2] *Chestirveris*] Chestirreves. C.C.C.

[3] *the eyeris*] and eyres. C.C.C.

[4] *eke.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1399. if ony resistens schuld be mad to let him of his londing.

The Duke of York holds a council on this matter.

Whanne Ser Edmund, duke of York, herd these tydingis, that duke Herry was in the se; because he was the Kyngis uncil, and eke keper of the rem in the Kyngis absens, he cleped onto him Ser Edmund Stafford, bischop of Chestir, and Chauncelere[1] at that tyme; and the Tresorere, William Scrop, erl of Wiltschere; and these knytes of the Kyngis Councel:—Jon Bussy, William Bagot, Thomas Grene, and Jon Russel. They thus gadered, he asked councelle what was best to do in this mater, and what resistens mite be had ageyn duke Herry. They seyde it was best go to Seynt Albonis, and gader the cuntre, and with that strength mete with the duke. But her councel was nowt, for whan the puple was gadered, thei seide thei knew nowt of duke Herry but as of a good lord and a trewe, and a man whech had suffered mech wrong; wherfore thei wold not let him to come, and receyve his dew heritage. Than the Tresorere and these IIII. knytes lefte the duke of York, and fled to the Castelle of Bristow.

The Duke of Lancaster lands at Ravenspur. He is joined by many Nobles,

And the duke of Lancastir londid at Ravenesporne, fast by Grymisby, in the Translacion of Seynt Martyn,[2] no man makyng resistens. To him cam anon Herry, erl of Northumbirlond, and Herry Percy, his son, and Raf Nevile, erl of Westmorland; and so many mo that within fewe dayes the noumbir of fytyng men cam onto LX. thousand. Than was her comon councel at the first to destroye Kyng Richardis evel Councel. So cam thei to Bristow, and took[3] alle that were there, and smet[4] of here hedis, save[5] William

marches upon Bristol, and takes it.

---

[1] *Chauncelere.*] This word is written on an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] July 4.

[3] *took.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *and smet*] they smet. C.C.C.

[5] *save*] save of. C.C.C.

Bagot, for er thei cam he was fled to Chestir, and so sailed [1] into Erland. A.D. 1399.

The King returns in haste,

Whan Kyng Richard herd in Erlond of the coming of Herry, anon he took the se, with the dukes of Awmarle, Excetir, and Sotheray, and bischoppis London, Lincolnne, and Carlil, that he schuld mete the duke with strong hand or he had gadered ony power. Whan he was com to Ynglond, and herd telle what power duke Herry had with him, and undirstood who many hevy hertis he [2] had in the puple, he left [3] alle his puple, [4] and soute pryvy places, where he myte best dwelle. For the duke of Lancastir evyr folowid him. At the last he was founde in the Castelle of Conweye; and there desired he to speke with Thomas Arundel, bischop [5] of Cauntirbiri, and the erl of Northumbirland. To hem seid he,—That he wold resigne his regaly, and alle that long thereto, save the carectis of his soule; so that his lif schuld be graunted him, and sufficient liflod to him and VIII. persones. Thei graunted his peticioune, and broute him forth to the Castel of Flynt, where the duke and he had but a smal talkyng; and than rydyn to the Castelle of Chestir.

but is obliged to resign the crown.

He gives himself up to the Duke of Lancaster.

In the XX. day of August, the XLVII. [6] fro the tyme that the duke entered into Ynglond, the Kyng ȝald him to the duke; and alle his tresore, his ornamentis, his hors, cam to the dukes hand. The lordis and alle the host that cam with the Kyng, were robbid be Northmen and Walschmen, withoute mercy. Fro that place was the Kyng led to London, to the Toure.

Parliament meets at London.

And in this tyme were sent writtis thorow oute the lond, that the Parlement schuld be at London at

---

[1] *sailed.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *he*] himself. C.C.C.

[3] *he left.*] C.C.C.—In the MS. Pub. Lib. the word "he" has been omitted by mistake.

[4] *alle his puple*] as hys retenew. C.C.C.

[5] *bischop*] archbischop. C.C.C.

[6] *the XLVII.*] the XLVII. day. C.C.C.

A.D. 1399. Myhilmesse, to whech Parlement alle men were cited whech of custom schuld be there. And these writtis were sent undir the name of Kyng Richard.

The King formally resigns the crown.

Whan this tyme was come, evene on Mihelmesse day, the Kyng in the Toure, with good wil, as it semed, and mery chere, red the Act of his Cessacion before these lordis and other men present:—Archbischop of Cauntirbury, Thomas Arundel;[1] the othir of York,[2] Richard Scrop;[3] Jon, bischop of Herforth; Herry, duke of Lancastir; Herry, erl of Northumbirland; Raf, erl of Westmorland; Hew, lord Burnel; Thomas, lord Berkle; Abbot of Westminster; Prioure of Cauntirbyry; lordis Ros, Wilbey, and Bergeveny; William Thirnyng and Jon Markam, justises; Thomas Stoke and Jon Burbage, Doctouris of Canon; Thomas Erpyngham and Thomas Grey, knites; William Ferby and Dionyse Lopham, notaries. Before alle these red he his resignacion, and assoyled alle his ligemen fro the treuth of the oth whech thei had mad to him. And this renunciacion[4] was openly red in Westminster Halle; and every state singulerly inqwyred, who thei likid this. And thei saide alle thei consented thertoo.

Anno 6597—6599. 1399-1401.

Anno Mundi viM.DC. [Christi 1402.]

Henry IV.

Anno 6601—6610. 1403-1412. — In the ȝere of oure Lord 1399, in the fest of Seynt Jerom,[5] aftir this renunciacion, the[6] Kyngis sete tho voyde, the forseid Herry duke of Lancastir ros in the Parlement, and stood up,[7] that men myte se him, blessed him with the merk of the Crosse, and saide swech wordes:— A.D. 1399.

---

[1] *Archbischop of Cauntirbury, Thomas Arundel*] Thomas Arundel, Archbischop of Caunterbury. C.C.C.

[2] *the othir of York.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *Richard Scrop*] Richard Scrop, Archbischop of ȝork. C.C.C.

[4] *renunciacion*] resignacion. C.C.C.

[5] September 30.

[6] *the*] on the. C.C.C.

[7] *and stood up.*] om. C.C.C.

"In Dei Nomine, Amen.—I, Herry Lancastir, chalenge the Crown, with al the membris that long thereto, as for descensus of the real blod of Kyng Herry, be whech rite God hath graunted me for to entir with help of my kynred."

The Duke of Lancaster claims the throne.

And whan alle the states of the Parlement had consented to his chaleng, the archbishop of Cauntirbiry took him be the rite hand, and sette him in the Kyngis se.[1]

He is acknowledged King by the Abp. of Canterbury.

Than was it proclamed, that a newe Parlement schuld begynne the next Munday aftir; and on Seint Edward day[2] folowing schuld the King be corowned; and this[3] was fulfilled in dede.

Proclamation of the assembling of Parliament.

This Herry had that tyme sex childyrn be dam Mary, doutir to the erl of Herforth. The eldest son hite Herry; the secunde, Thomas; the thirde, Jon; the fourte, Humfrey: to douteris had he eke; one of hem was weddid into Denemarc.

The King's children.

Thus was he crowned on Seynt Edward day, and anoynted with that holy oyle that was take to Seynt Thomas of Cauntirbury by oure Lady; and he left it in Frauns. This oyle was closed in a egel[4] of gold, and that egil[4] put in a crowet of ston; and be revelacion Herry, the first duke of Lancastir, fond it, and brout it hom to Ynglond, and gave it to the Prince Edward, to this effect, that, aftir his faderes deces,[5] he schuld be anoynted with the same. And aftir the Prince's deth it was left in the Kyngis tresory; and nevir man tok kep thereto til, a litil before that the King

His coronation.

---

[1] *se*] sette. C.C.C.

[2] *Seint Edward day.*] That is, the Translation of S. Edward the Confessor, October 13.

[3] *and this*] and all this. C.C.C.

[4] *egel—egil*] egyl—egyll. C.C.C.

[5] *deces*] death. C.C.C.

A.D. 1399. exiled the bishop Thomas, this relik was found, and certeyn writing thereon, as Thomas of Cauntirbury[1] left it. Than was Kyng Richard glad, and desired of the bischop to be anoynted new; but he wold not. But for al that the Kyng bare it with him into Yrland; and, whanne he was take in his coming ageyn, he dylyvered it to Thomas Arundel. And soo was Herry crowned[2] with the same.

The King's son is made Prince of Wales, &c.

In this Parlement the Kyng, with consent of alle the Hous,[3] mad his son Herri[4] Prince of Walis and duke of Corwaile, and eke[5] erl of Chestir, and aftir that duke of Gian.

The Isle of Man is granted to the Earl of Northumberland: and Richmond to the Earl of Westmoreland.

In that Parlement the Kyng gave to the erl of Northumbirlond the Yle of Man, with this addicion,—that he schuld bere before the Kyng the same swerd with whech he cam to Inglond.

He gave eke to the erl of Westmorland the erldam of Richmund.

Those who had condemned the Duke of Gloucester are deprived of their higher titles.

And ageyn him that appeled, and accused the duke of Gloucetir, this sentens was pronounsed:—"The lordis of this present Parlement decerne and deme, That the duke Awmarle and[6] duke of Suthrey, and eke of Excetir, schul lese her names, her honoure, and her dignite. And the markeis of Dorcete, and the erl of Gloucetir, schul lese the same for hem and her eyeris. And alle the castelle and maneris whech were the dukes of Gloucetir, thei schul lese withoute ony grace. And alle the godes that thei had sith that tyme that he was arested, thei schuld forgo. Tho that thei had befor that tyme, thei schuld have stille: but thei schuld gyve no lyveries, as othir lordis doo. And if evyr it may be knowe that thei make ony gadering in coumfort of Richard, sumtyme Kyng, thei to be punchid as tretouris. A.D. 1399.

---

[1] *of Cauntirbury.*] These words have been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. They are found in the text of C.C.C.

[2] *was Herry crowned*] was King Herry anoynted. C.C.C.

[3] *Hous*] Lords. C.C.C.

[4] *mad his son Herri.*] These words have been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. They are in the text of C.C.C.

[5] *and eke.*] om. C.C.C.

[6] *duke Awmarle and.*] om. C.C.C.

In the secund ȝere of this Kyng the erlis of Kent, Salesbury, and Huntingdon, onkende onto the Kyng, risin ageyn hem. Unkynde were thei, for the puple wold have hem ded, and the Kyng spared hem. These men, thus gadered, purposed to falle on the Kyng sodeynly at Wyndesore, undir the coloure of mummeris in Cristmasse tyme. The Kyng was warned of this, and fled to London. These men knew not that, but cam to Wyndesore with IIII. hundred armed men, purposing to kille the King and his progenie, and restore Richard ageyn onto the crowne. Whan thei cam to Wyndesore, and thus were deceyved, thei fled to a town where the qween lay, fast by Radyngis,[1] and there, before the qwenes houshold, he blessed him this erl of Kent. "O Benedicite,"[2] he seide,[3] "who may this bee that Herri of Lancastir fled fro my presens, he that is so worthi man[4] of armes. Therfor, frendis, know this, that Herri of Lancastir hath take the Toure at London, and oure very Kyng Richard hath brokyn prison, and hath[5] gadered a hundred thousand fytyng men." So gladed he the qween with lyes, and rod forth to Walyngforth, and fro Walingforth to Abyngdon; warnyng alle men be the weye that thei schuld make hem redy to help Kyng Richard. Thus cam he to Cicetir late at even. The men of the town had suspecion to hem that her

A.D. 1400. Conspiracy of the Earls of Kent, Salisbury, and Huntingdon.

The King escapes,

and the Earl of Kent, having deceived the ex-Queen with false hopes,

proceeds to Abingdon.

He is opposed at Cirencester.

---

[1] *Radyngis*] Radyng. C.C.C.

[2] *"O Benedicite"*] and said 'O Benedicite.' C.C.C.

[3] *he seide.*] These words have been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. They are omitted in C.C.C.

[4] *worthi man*] manly a man. C.C.C.

[5] *hath.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1400. tydngis were lyes, (as it was in dede,) risen, and kept the entres of the innes, that non of hem mite passe. There faute thei in the town fro midnyte onto IX. of clok in the morow.[1] But the town drow hem oute of the Abbey, and smet[2] of many of her hedis. The erl of Salesbury was ded there; and worthi, for he was a gret favorere of the Lollardis, a despiser of sacramentis, for he wold not be confessed when he schuld deie.

Death of the Earl of Salisbury.

The Earl of Huntingdon is beheaded at Pleshy.

The erl of Huntingdon herd of this, and fled into Esex. And as often as he assaied to take the se, so often was he bore of with the wynde. Than was he take be the comones, and led to Chelmisforth, and than to Plasche, and his hed smet of in the same place where he arestid the duke of Gloucetir.

The Earl of Gloucester is beheaded at Bristol.

In the same tyme Ser Thomas Spencer, whech was cleped erle of Gloucetir, was take and hedded at Bristow; and many othir wer so ded be the comownes.

Death of Richard II.

This cam to Kyng Richardis ere in the castel of Pounfreit,[3] and, as[4] sum men sey, he peyned[5] himself, and deyed for hungir. Summe othir seide that he was kept fro mete and drink whil a knyte rode to London and cam ageyn. His body aftir his deth was caried to London, and at Seynt Paules had his "Dyrige" and his Masse, the Kyng there present. Than was the body sent fro London onto Langle, to be beried among the Frere Prechouris. At the byriyng was the bischop of Chestir, the abbot of Seynt Albones, and the abbot of Waltham, and fewe othir.

Capture of Scotch shipping

In that same ȝere the schippis of Lennes,[6] whech fischid at Aberden, took certeyn schippis of Scotlond, with her amyrel, Ser Robert Logon, knyte, and broute hem to Lennes.[1] A.D. 1400. by Lynn fishermen.

---

[1] *morow*] morninge. C.C.C.

[2] *smet*] smite. C.C.C.

[3] *Pounfreit*] Pounfracte. C.C.C.

[4] *as.*] This word has been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib. It is in the text of C.C.C.

[5] *peyned*] payned. C.C.C.

[6] *Lennes*] Lynne. C.C.C.

In this ȝere began the rebellion of Walis ageyn the Kyng, undir a capteyn cleped Howeyn Glendore; whech Howeyn was first a prentise at Cort, and than a swyere of the Kingis hous. But for a discord that fel betwix him and Ser Reynald Grey Riffyn for certeyn lond, first he faute with the tenauntis of the same lord: and, because the Kyng pursewid him for brekyng of the pes, he fled into Walis. And whan the[2] Kyng folowid him thidir, he fled into the hillis of Snowdon; and the Kyngis laboure was frustrate. The Welsh rebel under Owen Glyndwr.

In this same ȝere cam the Emperoure of Constantinople into Inglond, for to have sum socoure ageyn the Turkis. The Kyng Herri met him on the Blak Heth, on Seint Thomas Day the Apostil,[3] and led him to London; and there had he good hostel at the Kyngis cost; and aftir went he ageyn with large giftis.[4] The Emperor of Constantinople visits England.

In the third ȝere of this Herry was a Parlement at London, wher was mad a statute ageyn Lollardis, that where evyr thei were founde preching her evel doctrine, thei schuld be take, and presentid to the bischop; and if thei meynten here opiniones, thei schuld be committed to seculere hand, and thei schuld brenne hem and her bokes. This statute was practized in a prest, that sone aftir was brent at Smythfeld. A.D. 1401. Statute against the Lollards. William Sautre burnt at Smithfield.

In this ȝere the Kyng of Lettow killid Bassan, the son of the gret Soudan Baltazar Dan. And because he had so grete victori, ageyn the opinion of many men, therfore he was cristened, and LX. thousand with him of his secte. This herd the emperoure of Constantinople, that was yet in Ynglond, and with mery hert he went hom ageyn. Defeat of Bajazet I. at the battle of Anjora.

---

[1] *to Lennes*] hom to Lynn. C.C.C.

[2] *the.*] C.C.C.—The MS. Pub. Lib. has "thei."

[3] December 21.

[4] *large giftis*] grete gyftis and large. C.C.C.

A.D. 1401.

Queen Isabelle is sent back to France.

In this ȝere qween Ysabelle was sent hom[1] onto hir fader into Frauns, not fully XII. ȝere of age.

Owen Glyndwr ravages the border.

In this same ȝere, Howeyn Glendore[2] ded mech harm upon the borderes of Ynglond.

Conspiracy against the King frustrated.

And in the same tyme was layd in the Kyngis bed a hirun with thre braunchis mad so scharp that where evyr the Kyng had turned him, it schuld sle him. But, as God wold, it was aspied; and so he scaped that perel.

Appearance of a comet.

In this same ȝere of this man appered a sterre, whech thei clepe comata, betwix the west and the north, in the monthe of March, with a hie bem, whech bem bowed into the north. It betokened, as men seid, the blod that schuld be spilt at Schrouisbyry.

Rumours of Richard II. being alive.

The conspirators are convicted of treason, and put to death.

Aboute the fest of Pentecost,[3] that same ȝere, certeyn men whech had conspired the Kyngis deth noised in the puple that Kyng Richard was o lyve, and schuld sone come and reward hem gretly that held with his part. But this langage sesid mech aftir tyme that a prest, on of the first noyseres, was take at Ware. This prest had mad a rolle aftir his owne conseite, and writen in certeyn mennes names, whech he knew nevyr; making the puple believe that alle these wold rise to help Kyng Richard. And whan the men were broute before,[4] and he knew not many of hem, and officeres inquired whi he was so bold for to bille;[5] he answered, because thei were mad rich be King Richard, he supposed verily thei schuld meyteyne his cause. The prest for his laboure was hang[6] and drawe. So was a chanon prioure o[7] Lawne, whech mite ha lyved[8] but for his tunge. So were certeyn religious men, and specialy of the Menouris order, endited of treson and hanged.

---

[1] *hom*] hom ageyne. C.C.C.

[2] *Howeyn Glendore*] Hewen Glendor. C.C.C.

[3] Whit Sunday fell on May 22 in in the year 1401.

[4] *before*] before hyme. C.C.C.

[5] *to bille*] to byll hem. C.C.C.

[6] *hang*] hangyn. C.C.C.

[7] *o*] of. C.C.C.

[8] *ha lyved*] a lyved. C.C.C.

Glyndwr enters Herefordshire, and defeats, and takes prisoner Sir Edmund Mortimer.

In this same tyme Howeyn Glendor, with a multitude of Walschmen, entered into Herforthscire, kyllyng and brenyng, as he was used. And ageyn him rod Edmund Mortimere, with alle the strength of the cuntre: but be treson Edmund was take, and his part ovirthrowe. And aftir the batayle ful schamefully the Walsch women cutte of mennes membris, and put hem in her mouthis, that were ded;[1] and many othir[2] inconvenientis ded thei that tyme.

Marriage of Blanche, the King's daughter.

In this ȝere the Kingis doutir was led to Coleyn, and there[3] the emperoure son weddid hir.

Henry enters Wales, but is unsuccessful.

Sone aftir Assumpcion of oure Lady,[4] the Kyng rod into Walis, for to venge him on his enyme Glendor; and there, for diversite of reyn, and cold and snow, his host was ny lost. In the vigile of Nativite of oure Lady,[5] the Kyng had picchid his tent in a fayre pleyne; there[6] blew sodeynly so mech wynd, and so impetuous, with a gret reyn, that the Kyngis tent was felled,[7] and a spere cast so violently, that, and the King had not be armed, he had be ded of the strok. There were many supposed[8] that this was[9] do be nigromancy, and be[10] compellyng of spirites.

Death of Sir Edmund Langley.

In this tyme deyed Ser Edmund Langle, and was byried at Langle, be his wif, doutir onto Kyng Petir of Spayn.

---

[1] *And aftir . . . . ded.*] Opposite this passage the word 'ffy' is written in the margin in red, in an old hand, apparently that of the writer of the MS.

[2] *othir*] mo. C.C.C.

[3] *doutir . . . . there.*] These words are written on an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[4] August 15.

[5] September 7.

[6] *there*] but there. C.C.C.

[7] *was felled.*] These words have been written in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. They form part of the text of C.C.C.

[8] *many supposed*] many men supposed. C.C.C.

[9] *was.*] om. C.C.C.

[10] *be.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1401. Battle of Homildon Hill. Defeat of the Scots.

In this ȝere was a gret batail at Humeldon[1] Hill, betwix Englischmen and Scottis, wher the erl Duglas was capteyn, and wounded there, and taken; and of lordis and knytes foure score taken and slayn.

The Lollards promulgate their opinions.

In that same tyme the Lolardis set up schamful conclusiones:—That the VII. Sacraments are ded toknes in that forme whech the Cherch useth. That maydenhod and prestod be not appreved of God, but the state of wedlok is the most perfit degre. Ne there schal no man ne woman be saved but if he be weddid, or ellis be in wil to be weddid; for thei distroye the holy sed, of whech schuld grow the secund Trinite. Item, If a man and a woman desire to be weddid, that desire is veri matrimonie. The Cherch is the sinagog of Sathanas. The Sacrament of the auter is the toure of Anticrist. Item, Childirn nede not be baptized.[2] These conclusiones, and many mo, Lodewik Clifford broute to the archbischop; whech saide that he had susteyned these of simpilnesse, and not of malice. He brout him also names of certeyn men whech susteyned the same conclusiones.

A.D. 1402. The Parliament assembles, and levies taxes.

In the fourt ȝere of this King was Parlement at London, to no othir entent[3] but for[4] to have silvir both of the clergi and eke of the lay fe.[5]

The year of Scotch invasion doubtful.

In that same tyme the Scottis, supposing that alle the lordis had be into Walis with the Kyng, come into Ynglond,[6] as is seid before; for[7] sum sey it was this ȝere.

Marriage of the King to Joan of Navarre.

In this same ȝere the embassiatouris come oute of Bretayn, and broute hom the new qwen onto Wyn-

---

[1] *Humeldon*] Humeldown. C.C.C.

[2] *Item . . . . baptized.*] Item; that childerne newly bor ned no baptem. C.C.C.

[3] *entent.*] C.C.C. In the MS. Pub. Lib. one half of the word, 'en,' is written at the end of a line, and the Scribe has forgotten to write the remainder.

[4] *for.*] om. C.C.C.

[5] *lay fe*] lay fee. C.C.C.

[6] *Ynglond*] this lond. C.C.C.

[7] *for.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1402.

chester, whidir the Kyng rod with lordis and ladies. And there was the mariage mad the VII. day of Februari: and in the XXVI. day of the same was sche corowned at London. Sche was before weddid to Ser Jon Mountforth, duke of Bretayn, be whom sche bare childirn.

Unpopular measures of the Pope.

In this tyme cam oute a bulle fro the Court, whech revokid alle the graces that had be graunted many ȝeres before; of whech[1] ros mech slaundir and obliqui ageyn the Cherch; for thei seide pleynly that it was no more trost to the Pope writing than to a dogge tail;[2] for as ofte as he wold gader mony, so oftyn wold he anullen eld[3] graces, and graunt newe.

Legend.

In this somyr, eke,[4] fast by the townes of Bedforth and Bikilhswade,[5] appered certeyn men of dyvers colouris, renning oute of wodes, and fytyng horibily. This was seyne on morownyngis and at mydday: and whan men folowid to loke what it was, thei coude se rite nawt.

Rebellion of the Percies.

In that same tyme Ser Herry Percy the yonger began to rebelle ageyn the King. And to him drew Ser Thomas Percy, erl of Wyscetir, unkyll[6] onto the same Herry. This man had the Prince in governauns, whech sodeynly lefte the Princes hous, and drow to his neve. And, that her rebellion schuld be more excusabil, thei writyn to the cuntre aboute, that thei wold not withdrawe here legauns fro the King. But the cause whi thei strengthid hem thus, for thei wold go to the King for to enforme him that bettir governauns schuld be had in the rem; and

---

[1] *of whech*] of whech bull. C.C.C.

[2] *to a dogge tail*] to a dogge's tail waggyng. C.C.C.

eld] old. C.C.C.

eke] even. C.C.C.

Bikilhswade] Bikiltiswade. C.C.C.

[6] *unkyll*] C.C.C.—The word in the MS. Pub. Lib. appears to be "uncik," which is an obvious error of the Scribe. The MS. C.C.C. ha "and unkyll."

A.D. 1402. thei durst not go withoute strong hand. For, as thei seid, the taskes that were gadered of the pupel, to here grete hurt, were spent neythir to worchip of God, ne profite of the lond. Whan the Kyng had this relacion, he wrote and seide he had ful grete wondir that thei wold noyse him so; for he knew no cause why but that thei mite come to his presens as safly as evyr thei ded. Eke he wrote that mech of the good that was gadered, was sent to here handis for tuycion of the Marches. But al this meved hem nowt; for with her hoost thei remeved streith onto Schreuisbury, abyding there the help of Howeyn Glendor oute of Wales.

They join Owen Glyndwr.

The King hastens against them.

Whan the Kyng undirstod her malys, in al haste he thoute to mete with hem er thei wer fully gadered. For the erl of Northumbirlond was not ȝet come onto hem. Thei that were with Herri Percy noysed thorw the cuntre that the Kyng Richard was ȝet o lyve, and amongst hem; and for his rite thei were thus gaderid. The Kyng rod to Schrouysbury, where this Herry Percy had besegid the town. But whan he sey the Kyngis standard, he left the sege, and turned sodenly ageyn the Kyng. In the ost of Herry Percy were, as is wrytyn, XIIII. thousand men. The Kyng, whan he sey the feld so disposed, seide onto his men wordis of gret coumfort, and mad hem hardi in his quarel. Than sent the Kyng the abbot of Schrouisbury, with the privy sel, onto Herry Percy, desiring that he schuld com and ask grace, and spare that there be no blod spilt. Herri was sumwhat meved with this message, and sent to the King his unkil, Thomas Percy. And whan the King, witȝ grete meknesse had promised the forseid Herri his good lordchip, this Thomas told his neve al the revers. Thanne the Kyng comaunded thei schuld bring him his swerd, in whech he trostid mech. And thei seide it was left in a toun be side, whech thei cleped

Berwik. Whan the Kyng herd "Berwik," he was gretly astoyned, and seide,—"Forsoth it hath be oftyn told me that in Berwik I schuld be in gret perel. But fite mote we nede." So faute thei to grete harm of this nacion. And Herri Percy, aftir the propirte of his name,[1] percid, or presed, in so fer that he was ded, and no man wist of whom. Thei fled that myte fle. The erl of Duglas was take there; the erl of Wissetir, cause of al the sorow; Ser Richard Vernon;[2] the barne of Kynderton, and many othir. On that side were ded the most part of knytes and swieres of Chestirschire onto the noumbir of to hundred; and mech of the puple of whech we have now no noumbir. This batail was on a Satirday, in the vigil of Mari Magdelen.[3]

A.D. 1402.

They are defeated near Shrewsbury.

The next Munday folowand were heded at Schrouisbury the erl of Wissetir, the barn of Kyndirton, and Ser Richard Vernon. And sone aftir the erl of Northumbirland cam with myty hand to help Herry his son, havyng no knowyng[4] of his deth. Ther met with him the erl of Westmorland and Robert Watirton. and mad him turn ageyn, and took a castelle of his, and kept it.

The Earl of Worcester and others are beheaded.

Whan the Kyng had mad al pes at Schrouesbury, he rod streyte to York, and, be letteris, sent aftir the erl, in whech he hite him he mite and schuld com harmles. He cam to the Kyng with fewe men the next day aftir Seynt Laurens.[5] He was not gretly rebuked, but assigned to certeyn places of his as for a tyme.

The King proceeds to York.

Fro the North the King proposed to ride into Walis; but his letting was, that he failed mony: and

He purposes to enter Wales.

---

[1] *name.*] C.C.C. This word has been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib. It forms part of the text in C.C.C.

[2] *the erl . . . . Vernon.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] July 21.

[4] *knowyng*] knowlech. C.C.C.

[5] August 11.

A.D. 1402. therfor certeyn knytes counceled the Kyng that the bischoppis whech were aboute him schuld be pryved of hors, and harneys, and tresoure; and this schuld be gove to hem that laboured with the Kyng. This herd the bischop[1] of Cauntirbury, and seide,—"Trewly there is no knyte with the Kyng that beginne ones[2] for to spoile ony brothir of myn, but he schal for his spoilyng[3] have as good knokkis as evyr had[4] Englischman."

A.D. 1403. The Bretons burn Plymouth.

In the fifte ȝere of this Kyng, the Frenschmen, with the Britons,[5] come to the town of Plummouthe, brent it, and robbed it. The capteyn of hem was a Briton; thei called him Lord of Castel. And whan thei cam hom to Britayn,[5] a elde man of the same lond met with hem, and seyde onto hem, "Be ware of the tayle. Trost verily the Englischmen wil not leve this mater thus." And sone aftir Bretayn repented here dede. For a worthie sweire, cleped William Wilforth, gadered a navy, and went into Bretayn, and took there XL. schippis, grete and smale, where thei fond yrun, oyle, talow, and a thousand tunnes of wyn de Rochel. The good thei took; the schippis brent thei. Than londed thei at Pennarch, and brent sex myle aboute; and Seint Mathew town, and III. myle aboute.[6]

The English take speedy revenge.

Story of some pilgrims.

In these dayes certeyn pilgrymes of Ynglond cam fro[7] Jerusalem, but erred[8] in her wey, and lay in a forest, be nyte, above in trees, for fer of bestis. In the morow thei cam to a hermites hous, whech man refrecchid hem, and bad hem thank God not only for thei had scaped the perel of bestis, but for thei were were not at hom at the bataile of Schrouisbury, whech schuld falle in hast, as he saide.

---

[1] *bischop*] archbishop. C.C.C.

[2] *ones*] onys. C.C.C.

[3] *for his spoilyng.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *had*] had ony. C.C.C.

[5] *Britons—Britayn.*] In the MS. Pub. Lib. an 'e' is written above the line, over the letter 'i,' the latter not being erased.

[6] *and Seint Mathew . . . . aboute.*] om. C.C.C.

[7] *cam fro.*] These words are written on an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[8] *Jerusalem, but erred.*] These words have been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. They are in the text of C.C.C.

A.D. 1403.

Aftir the Octave of Ephiphanie[1] was a Parlement at London, and there was the erl of Northumbirlond restored to his londis.

Restoration of the Earl of Northumberland.

Ther eke was graunted swech a task as had nevyr be herd, upon condicion that there should no memorial wryting be left of it.

Heavy taxes imposed on the people.

In this same tyme the Frenschmen cam to the Ylde of Wite, askyng tribute of the dwelleres to the sustenauns of qwen Ysabelle. And thei of Wyte answered that Kyng Richard was ded, and the qwen pesabely sent hom; wherfor thei wold non pay: if thei cam for to fite, thei schuld be welkom, and thei schuld gyve hem leve to entyr the lond, and[2] rest hem III. dayes befor the batayle. The Frenschmen herd this answere, and sayled fro that cuntre.

The French demand a maintenance for Queen Isabelle.

In that ȝere, a Bryton, cleped Lord of Castel, londed at Dortmouth with grete pride: and of hem of whom he had ful gret indignacion, that is to sey, the rural puple, was he slayn. In that jornay, whech was the XV. day of April, were takyn thre lordis, XX^{ti}. knytes.[3]

The French attack Dartmouth, and are repulsed.

In this ȝere was the translacion of Seynt Jon, prioure of Bridlyngton.[4]

Translation of S. John of Bridlington.

In this tyme the cuntesse of Oxenforth, the moder of Robert Ver, whech was exiled, and ded in Lovan, made hir servauntis to noyse in the cuntre that Kyng Richard lyved, and schuld sone come with myty hand

The Countess of Oxford spreads a report that Richard II. is alive.

---

[1] *Ephiphanie*] Epiphanie. C.C.C. —January 13.

[2] *entyr . . . . and.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *XX^{ti} knytes*] and X. knytes. C.C.C.

[4] May 11.

A.D. 1403.

She is taken and imprisoned.

for to regne ageyn. Eke sche ded make hertis of silvyr, and gave hem aboute, and drow many hertis to hir conclusion.[1] Many men were illuded to these tydyngis, specialy the abbot of Colchestir, and the abbot of Seynt Osithes. The cuntesse was put in prison, and alle her godes acheted. The clerk that wrot these billis[2] was[3] hanged and drawen.

The Earl of Northumberland and Sir William Clifford are reconciled to the King.

Aftir, in the fest of Seynt Jon Baptist,[4] the erl of Northumbirland cam to Pounfreit, to the Kyng, with alle his alye. And there was qwenchid mech suspecioune; for men dempt thei wold be riseris ageyn the Kyng. And with him cam Ser William Clifforth, knyte, with whom the Kyng was offendid, because he had kept Berwik ageyn the Kyngis plesauns. But he purchased the Kyngis grace because he browt with him on Serle, that was privy with Kyng Richard.

Trial of Serle: discovery of the plot.

Whan that Serle was com, al men desired to knowe in what maner the duke of Gloucetir was ded. He confessed verily al the maner, and seid he was worthi to dey, for he was on of the principal tormentouris of the duke of Gloucetir. And whan men inqwyred of him, why he noysed in the puple that Kyng Richard was lyvand, he seide he ded it in despite of King Herry, for to drawe mennes hertis fro him. He seide eke that, whan he was in the Kyngis house of Frauns,[5] ful wel at ese, and herd seid that Kyng Richard lyved in Scotlond, he went thidir to prove the treuth, and fond veryly it was not soth. Than came he onto Berwik, onto William Clifford, for to seke socoure; and thus was he led to the Kyng.

---

[1] *Eke sche . . . . conclusion.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *billis*] bylles. C.C.C.

[3] *was.*] This word has been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib. It occurs in the text of C.C.C.

[4] June 24.

[5] *of Frauns.*] These words have been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. They form part of the text of C.C.C.

Than was he condempned to be drawe thorow oute the good townes of Ynglond, and aftir to be hangen and quartered at London. A.D. 1403.

In this ȝere was a gret Parlement at Coventre, in whech the Kyng asked a grete summe of the puple. And the Speker of the Parlement answered that swech summes myte not be rered so ofte in the puple, but if the Cherch shuld be put fro her temporaltes. This answere was gov be Ser Jon Chene, knyte, Speker of the Parlement. And no wondir though he was enmy to the Cherch; for he had befor take the Ordir of subdiaconne, and withoute dispensacioune aspired to the order of wedlak, and eke the degree of knythod. The archbischop ros, and seide,—"Now se I weel whidir thi malice walkith. Thou renegate, and apostata[1] of thyn Ordyr, woldist put the Cherch al undirfote. But whil this hed stant on this body, thou schal nevyr have thi entent. Remembir the wel that at eviry task, the Cherch have payed as mech as the lay fe. And alle your bisinesse is for to gadere to make your selve rich. But know this for a treuth,—that lond schal nevir endure in prosperite that despiseth Holy Cherch." And than ros[2] the archbischop, and[3] kneled before the Kyng, and prayed him he wold remembir him of the oth that he mad in his coronacion, that he schuld meynten the Cherch, and alle the ministeres thereof, in al her libertees. Than the Kyng commaunded the archbischop to take his sete, behesting him that he schuld leve the Cherch in as good astate as he fond it. Than said the archbischop to the knytes:—"Ye have stered the Kyng to enchete alle the temporaltes that longyng to the Frensch monkis in al the lond; and though the va-

Parliament assemble at Coventry.

Dispute between the Speaker and the Abp. of Canterbury.

The King yields to the Archbishop,

who reproaches the Knights.

---

[1] *and apostata*] and thou postata. C.C.C.

[2] *than ros.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *and.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1403. lew of hem com to many thousandis, the Kyng is not amendid thereby half a mark be ȝere: For ye amongst you have it, and dispende it youre plesauns. And moreovyr, I sey you, myn hed schal rather bowe onto the swerd, than Holy Cherch schuld lese ony part of his[1] rite." Thus sesed the fals chalenge of the enmyes to the Cherch.

Many persons refuse to do reverence to the Host. In the same Parlement, the archbischop, as he went in the strete, happed to mete the prest beryng the Sacrament to a seke man; for there was grete pestilens in the town at that tyme. The archbischop and othir many ded reverens to the Sacrament, as it[2] was her deute. Many of the puple in the strete turned her bakkes, and avaled not her hodes, ne ded no maner reverens. This was told onto the Kyng, and he ded in this mater dew correccion, for many of hem were of his hous.

Great inundation of the sea on the coast of Kent. In this ȝere, the se ros so hye betwix Caleys and Kent that it drenchid many townys in Kent and Flaundris, Hollond, and Selond.

Death of William of Wykeham. This ȝere deyed William Wikam, bischop of Wynchestir, that foundid to nobil Collegis, on at Wynchestir, a othir at Oxenforth.

Death of Boniface IX. And in the first day of Octobir deyed Pope Boniface the IX.

Innocent VII., Pope. And in his stede was chosen the bischop of Bononie, cleped Innocent the VII.

A.D. 1404. The relations of the Earl of March escape from Windsor, In the sext ȝere of this Kyng, in the fest of Cristis Nativite, certeyn men let make keyis of many dores in the castelle of Wyndesore. There entered thei be nyte, and took the eyres of March, and led hem owte. Summe sey her purpos was to lede hem into Wales, that, be the power of Glendor, thei myte rejoyse the

---

[1] *his.*] So written in both MSS.: it is probably a mistake for "hir."

[2] *it.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1404

crowne, as the rite eyeres of Ynglond. But thei were pursewed, and summe were slayn, and summe fled. The smyth that mad the keyes lost his hed.

but are shortly captured.

Conspiracy of the Earl of Nottingham and others.

In this ȝere, Thomas Mounbray, erl Marchale, cam onto Maistir Richard Scrop, arbischop[1] of York, and mad confederacion that thei schuld help to amende the insolens in the reme. Eke Thomas lord Bardolf went onto the erl of Northumbirlond for the same cause. Thei cleped onto hem the cite of York, and mech of the cuntre, and set up certeyn articles in cherch dores, expressing what was her entent. First, thei desired that the puple of the reme schuld have fre elleccion of knytes of the Parlement, aftir the eld forme. The secunde, that there schuld be a remedie ageyns fals suggestiones, by whech many men were disherid of her londis. The thirde, that there schuld be ordeyned a remedye ageyn these grevous taskes, and ageyn the grete extorciones, and eke oppressing of marchauntis. Whanne the puple had red these articules, thei drow fast onto the bischop.

They are frustrated by the treachery of the Earl of Westmoreland.

This herd, the erl of Westmorland,—that was at that tyme with lord Jon, the Kingis third son, in the cuntre fast by,—gadered a grete felauchip, entendyng for to distroye the arbischoppis[1] powere. But whan he aspied the archbischoppis party strenger than his, he sent onto him, and inqwyred why this puple was gadered. And the archbischop answered ageyn, for non othir entent, but for thei wold purpos certeyn materes to the Kyng, to whom thei durst not go withoute grete puple. Tho sent he him the articules before rehersid. And whan the Kingis son and the erl had red hem, thai praised hem, and desired that

---

[1] *arbischop—arbischoppis.*] This word has been originally written "bishop," the abbreviation "ar" having been inserted at a later period. In the MS. C.C.C. the word 'archbishop' is written in full.

A.D. 1404. thei schul com speke togidir with fewer folk. The archbischop cam onto hem, and there had the erl of Westmoreland these wordis:—"Ser Bischop, it is best, sithe youre desire and oure is al on, that the puple undirstande it,[1] that thei nede not thus to laboure. Wherfor we desire that sum special man schal be sent, in youre name, to comaunde eviry man go hom to his laboure, save thei that schul wayte upon you." This was do in dede; and as the bischoppis[2] men voided, the othir party encresed. The good prest, bischop[3] of York, undirstod nevir the deceyte onto the tyme that the seid erle arested him. And the erl Marchale was arested eke in the same place, and behote hem thei schuld be saved harmles: but this behest was not kept.

Of this fals behest not kept prophecied Bridlington,[4] undir these vers:[5]—

"Pacem tractabunt, set fraudem subter arabunt:
Pro nulla marca salvabitur ille[6] Ierarcha."[7]

This is the sentens:—

"Pes schul thei tretyn,
Gile under that schul thei betyn:
For no maner mark
Schal be saved that blessed Ierark."

The King returns from Wales. In this same tyme was the Kyng in the March of Walis, with many thousand, for to fite with Glendor. But whan he herd of this mater anon he cam to York, and thei of the cite com oute with ropes aboute her nek, barefoot, crying "Mercy."

---

[1] *it.*] This word has been added above the line in MS. Pub. Lib. It occurs in the text of C.C.C.

[2] *bischoppis*] archbishopes. C.C.C.

[3] *bischop*] archbishope. C.C.C.

[4] *Bridlington*] Jon Bridlington. C.C.C.

[5] *vers*] verses. C.C.C.

[6] *ille.*] In both MSS. Ipse. MS. Digby.

[7] "*Pacem . . . . . Ierarcha.*"] See MS. Bodl. Digby, 168. The former line occurs in page 11, and the latter in page 6.

A.D. 1404. The Archbishop of York and the Earl of Nottingham are beheaded.

On the Moneday in Pentecost-weke,[1] whil the archbischop of Cauntirburi was at dyner with the Kyng, and long taried in talkyng,[2] the erl of Arundel, and Ser Thomas Beuforth, and William Gascoyne, justise, be a commission condempned the bischop[3] and the erl[4] to the deth. And, that there schuld no prayer be mad for hem, led anon forth into the feld, and there were her hedis smet of. In the place where the bischop deied were many myracles, and mech pilgrimage, tyl the tyme that the Kyng forbade it up[5] peyne of deth.

Sickness of the King.

The Kyng aftir that tyme lost the beute of his face. For, as the comoune opinion went, fro that tyme onto his deth he was a lepir, and evyr fowlere[6] and fowlere. For in his deth, as thei recorded that sey him, he was so contracte, that his body was scarse a cubite of length.

The Archbishop returns to London.

Whan the Archbischop of Cauntirbury herd of this dede, he took swech hevynesse that he fel in a tercian, that continued many dayes, and therfor in al hast he was caried hom.

The King pursues the Earl of Northumberland.

Aftir this, whan the Kyng had punchid the cyte of York to the utterest, he rod for to pursewe the erl of Northumbirlond and Ser Thomas Bardolf. And thei fled to[7] Berwik, and aftirward into Scotlond. The Kyng pursewid hem, and took Berwik fro the keperis, and many othir casteles that longid to the erle.

Unsuccessful expedition into Wales.

Aftir, he went into Wales, and there lost he al his laboure.

---

[1] May 19.—Whit Sunday fell on May 18 in the year 1404.

[2] *in talkyng*] in her talkyng. C.C.C.

[3] *bischop*] archbischop. C.C.C.

[4] *the erl*] the erle Marchale, C.C.C.

[5] *up.*] This word has been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib It is in the text of C.C.C.

[6] *fowlere.*] This word is written on an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[7] *to.*] This word has been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib. In the text of C.C.C.

A.D. 1404. The King attempts to raise money.

Tho called he a Councel at Wycetir, to se what purvyauns myte be mad for mony to the Kyng. And the archbischop of Cauntirbiry asked in this matere deliberacioune; for the lond was so pillid, that eviry man was wery.

Eric IX. of Denmark marries the King's daughter.

In this ȝere were sent embassiatouris fro the Kyng of Denmark for to have the Kyngis doutir Philip to be joyned in wedlok to her Kyng. The Kyng[1] broute hir to Lenne, for to take schip there. And in that towne he lay nyne daies, the too qwenes, thre sones of the Kyng, Herri, Thomas and Umfrey; and many othir lordes and ladies.

The French send aid to Glyndwr.

In this tyme a hundred schippis and XL. sailed oute of Frauns into Wales, for to help Howen Glendor. Thei cam into Mylforth Have.[2] But al her hors were ded or thei cam there, for defaute of fresch watir. Eke the lord Berkle and Herry Pay brent XV. of hem in the same Havene. And at a nothir jornay the lord Berkle, and Ser Thomas Swynborn, and Herry Pay took XIIII. schippis of hem, in whech thei took the Steward of Frauns, with othir VII. capteynes.

The Abbot of Ramsay and others are falsely accused of favoring Glyndwr.

Failure of the plot.

In this same tyme a strong theef and loksmyth, whan he was juged to the deth be William Cokayn, he seide he schuld availe the Kyng mech god if he myte lyve a day or too. Than appeled he certeyn worthi men, and specialy abbotes, of treson; amongst whech the abbot of Ramsey was principal. A certeyn day was set at Huntyngdon, where thei appered alle. But first cam[3] in the abbot of Ramsey, and befor him on of his monkis, he folowyng as a secundary. The juge saide to the thef, "What man is this?" of

---

[1] *The Kyng*] They. C.C.C.

[2] *Have*] havene. C.C.C.

[3] *first cam.*] These words are partly written upon an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

A.D. 1404.

the monk that went first. The thef saide,—"This is the abbot of Ramsey: ful often hath he sent me with gold into Wales, to meynten that tretoure Glendore in his rebellion ageyn the King." Tho seid the juge onto him that thei schuld lede him to his deth as a fals thef, and a fals accusere. Thus was the abbot excused, and many othir worthi men at[1] the noumbir of fifty.

Marriage of the Earl of Arundel.

This ȝere the erl of Arundel weddid the Kyngis doutir of Portingale with grete solempnite.

A.D. 1405. Death of the Archbishop of Canterbury.

In the VII. ȝere of this Kyng deied on Roger Walden, evir infortunat. For fro grete poverte Kyng Richard mad him first tresorere, and than bischop[2] of Cauntirburi, lyvyng Thomas Arundel; and fro that honoure was he put; and than was he bischop of London; and put fro that within o ȝere.

The Pope curses those who condemned the Abp. of York.

In this tyme[3] the Pope cursed openly alle thoo that consented to the deth of Richard Scrop,[4] archbischop of York.

Grievous taxation of the people.

In this ȝere eke[5] was the puple gretly[6] oppresid with taskes, and knites mete, and mech othir thing. Eke prestis annueleris payed nobles to the King, and alle religious, if thei had swech annuelles.

James of Scotland captured on his way to France.

In this ȝere the Scottis ledde the Kyngis son of Scotlond into Frauns to lerne that tonge, and eke curtesie. And men of Cley, in Northfolk, took the schip in whech was this child, with a bischop, and the erl of Orkeney, and led hem to London to the Kyng.

Death of Innocent VII.

In this ȝere deied Innocent the VII. And the cardinales swore solempne othis, if ony of hem were

---

[1] *at.*] This word is written on an erasure in the MS. Pub. Lib.

[2] *bishop*] archbishop. C.C.C.

[3] *this tyme*] this same time. C.C.C.

[4] *of Richard Scrop*] of Mayster Richard Scrop. C.C.C.

[5] *eke.*] om. C.C.C.

[6] *gretly*] full gretly. C.C.C.

A.D. 1405.

chosen, he schuld frely resine his dignite upon this condicion, that the Antipope schuld resigne; and than, be the auctorite of both colleges, swech on schuld be chose be whom unite schuld be had in the Cherch.

Gregory XII., Pope.

Than, in the XXX. day[1] of Novembir, thei chosen on cleped Aungel: and him named thei Gregorius XII., and mad him for swere, and write that he schuld kepe this ordinauns.

Death of Despencer, Bishop of Norwich.

In this ȝere eke[2] deied Herri Spencer, bischop of Norwich; and in his place was chose Alisaundre[3] Totyngton, prioure of the same place.

A.D. 1406. Troubles at Rome.

In the VIII. ȝere of this Kyng, the Pope Gregory, whan he was rydy[4] to ride onto the cite, there the unite schuld be had; sodeynly, be stering of the devele, the Kyng of Naples cam, and leid sege at Seint Laurens Gate. The Pope, with the cardinales, fled into Castelle Aungel, and prayed Paule of the Urcines, that he schuld help in this nede. Than was there on Nicholas of the Columpnes, be whos consent the Kyng of Naples brak the wal, and entered the cite. And than this Paule of the Urcines faute with his host, and of hem killid[5] and took into VII. thousand. Tho[6] fled the Kyng into Naples. And be this mene was the unite of the Cherch lettid.

Death of Sir Robert Knollys.

In this ȝere, at the fest of the[7] Assumpcion of oure Lady,[8] deied Ser Robert Knollis, whech man was ful victorious in many batailes, and gretly famed in Frauns, and[9] Spayn, and Bretayn, and many othir cuntrees. He mad eke[1] the brigge ovyr the watir of Medewey,[2] fast by Rouchestir, and ded gret cost at the Carmelites of Londonne, where he is biried; and mad a Colege at Pountfract.

---

[1] *XXX. day.*] The word "day" is written above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib. It forms part of the text in C.C.C.

[2] *eke.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *Alisaundre.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *rydy*] redy. C.C.C.

[5] *killid.*] This word is written a second time, evidently by mistake, in the MS. Pub. Lib.,—"killid of hem killid and took;"—but it is not repeated in C.C.C.

[6] *Tho*] Than. C.C.C.

[7] *the fest of the.*] om. C.C.C.

[8] August 15.

[9] *and.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1406.

In this ȝere the Prince leide a sege to the castelle of Abrust within Wales, and streytid hem so that were in the castel, that thei promised him to ȝelde the castel at a certeyn day. But it avayled not; for Glendor cam, and put new men in the Castelle, and avoided al hem that consented be ony menis onto[3] the Prince.

A.D. 1407. Remarkable severity of the weather.

In the IX. ȝere of this Kyng was a gret wyntir, that dured both Decembir, Januari, Februari, and March, that the most part of smale birdis were ded.

The Earl of Northumberland takes up arms, but is defeated by Sir Thomas Rokeby.

And that same ȝere, in the Parlement tyme at London, the erl of Northumbirlond and Ser Thomas Bardolf[4] cam oute of Scotlond ageyn to Ynglond; and whan thei cam ny the town of Thrisk there met thei the schryve of Evirwik, Ser Thomas Rokby, Alexander[5] Lownde, Petir de la Hay, and Robert Helys, with many othir. There faute thei; and the erles side had the betir part first; but finaly the erl was killid, and the lord hurt, and aftir ded; and her hedis aftir that born aboute London. The bischop of Bangor was take there; but, because he was not armed, he had his lyf.

The King visits the North, and quells the rebellion.

Than was there mech accusacion in the North of hem that favoured these lordis; for whech cause the Kyng rod to York, and ded gret execucion in this mater, both in mennis deth, and enchetyng of her godis.

---

[1] *eke.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *Medewey*] Mydweye. C.C.C.

[3] *onto*] to. C.C.C.

[4] *Bardolf*] Bardalf. C.C.C.

[5] *Alexander*] and Alexaunder. C.C.C.

A.D. 1407. Council at London. Allegiance is withdrawn from Gregory VII.

In this ȝere, the nest[1] day aftir Mari Magdalen,[2] was a gret Councel at London of alle prelatis, exempt and not exempt, for to withdrawe her obediens fro the Pope Gregori, for he wold not kepe his promisse and his oth. And upon this thei stered the Kyng to write letteris to the Pope, that he schuld kepe his promisse.[3] A cardinal of Bordews eke cam into this lond, to excite the Kyng and the prelatis, that thei schuld withdrawe her obediens fro the Pope, whech was perjure. And to this conclusioune consentid the King of Frauns, writyng to princes and lordis, that thei schuld help to this unite. For it was schame, he seid, to the Cristen Feith,[4] that for the pride of to prestis so mech blod schuld be spilt.[5] It was eke determined, as he wrote, be the Universites of Parise, Bononie, Aurelianensis, Aounte, Pesulane, and Tholosane, that no Kyng, ne prince, myte obeye ony of these too, but if he were a fautoure of scisme and of heresie. Sextene cardinales eke were fled fro the Popes, and held the same opinion.

The Bp. of Salisbury and others are sent to the Council of Pisa.

Upon this, sone aftir the Ephiphanie,[6] was[7] gadered a Councel at Paules, at London, and there were chosen certeyn prelatis, for[8] to go to the Councel of Pise, of whech Maystir Robert[9] Alum, bischop of Salisbury, was principal.

A.D. 1409. Council of Pisa.

In the XI. ȝere of this Kyng began the Councelle of Pise. For ther were the Cardinales of both collegis, both of Gregori and Benedict, and a gret noumbyr of prelatis, alle sette on this holy conclusion to reforme unite in Holy Cherch.

---

[1] *nest*] next. C.C.C.

[2] July 23.

[3] *his promisse*] his promisse and his oth. C.C.C.

[4] *Feith.*] This word has been inserted in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. It forms part of the text of C.C.C.

[5] *so mech blod schuld be spilt*] schuld be spilt so mech blood. C.C.C.

[6] *Ephiphanie*] Epiphanie. C.C.C. —January 6.

[7] *was.*] This word has been inserted in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib., but found in the text of C.C.C.

[8] *for.*] om. C.C.C.

[9] *Robert.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1409.

Aftir thei had cleped the Holy Goost, thei consentid alle, and chosen o[1] person, whech thei clepid Alisaunder the Fift. Gregorie and Benet were not there; but grucchid ful sore ageyn this[2] eleccion.

Alexander V., Pope.

This Alisaundre graunted to the Priourȝ of Seynt Bartholome in Smythfeld plener remission[3] in the first day of his creacion to alle thoo that visited this place[4] on Maunde Thursday, Good Friday, Satirday followand, and the[5] Annunciacionne of oure Lady.

The Pope grants certain privileges to S. Bartholomew's, Smithfield.

In this ȝere was a Parlement at London in tyme of Lenton, where a smyth was appechid for heresie. He held this conclusion, that the Sacrament of the Auter is not Cristes Body, but a thing withoute soule, wers than a tode, or a ereyne, whech have lyf. And whan he wold not renouns his opinion, he was take to the seculere hand, for to be spered in a tunne[6] in Smythfeld, and to be brent. The Prince Herry had pite[7] on the man, and counceled him to forsake this fals opinion; but he wold not. Wherfor he was put in the tunne;[8] and whan the fer[9] brent, he cried horribly. The Prince comaunded to withdrawe the fire, cam to him,[10] and behite him[11] grete:[12] but it wold not be. Wherfor he suffered him to be brent into asches.

A smith is burnt in London.

---

[1] *ō*] oo. C.C.C.

[2] *this*] the. C.C.C.

[3] *plener remission.*] These words are transposed in the MS. C.C.C., and inserted after the word 'creacion.'

[4] *place.*] This word has been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib., but it forms part of the text in C.C.C.

[5] *and the*] and in the. C.C.C.

[6] *tunne*] toune. C.C.C.

[7] *pite*] peti. C.C.C.

[8] *tunne*] toun. C.C.C.

[9] *fer*] fyr̄. C.C.C.

[10] *to him.*] om. C.C.C.

[11] *him.*] om. C.C.C.

[12] *grete*] grete thyngs to him. C.C.C.

A.D. 1409. Destruction of S. Omer.

In this ȝere eke was brent the town of Seynt Omeris, with the Abbey. For the Duke of Burgoyn had leyd there alle his apparament, with whech he thoute to besege Caleys; amongis whech was a horribile ordinauns,—smale barellis filt ful of serpentis and venemous bestes, whech he thoute for to throw into Caleys be engynes, that, whan the barrelles broke, the corupt venym schuld infecte hem of the town. Alle this gere was brent[1] be a ȝong man that bewreyid it to the soudyoures of Caleys; and thei gave him grete good to sette this town o fire.

Alisaundir, the Pope new chose, deied in the Councelle of Pise.

John XXIII., Pope.

And aftir him was chose Balthasar, bischop of Bonony, with consent of alle the Cardinales.

A.D. 1410. Conversion of the King of Poland to Christianity.

In the XII. ȝere of this Kyng, the Kyng of Crakow, touchid with the Holy Gost, was baptized in the name of the Trinite. Alle thei that were Sarasines laboured eythir to perverte him, or elles to distroye him; therfor he disposed him to gete help of Cristen men, and supposed that the heres of Pruse schuld best help. Thei, seing that his frendis were turned fro him, set upon him[2] on the othir side, only to distroye him. Behold what zelatouris thei were of oure Feith! Her religion was ordeyned to defende the Feith; and now covetise stereth hem to distroye it. The Kyng that was newly Cristis child thoute it was best first to fite ageyn these religious renegatis. He faute with hem, and put hem to flite, and[3] conqwered al the cuntre, suffering hem to use her eld[4] lawes and customes.

Sir John Prendergast.

In this tyme Jon Prendirgest, knyte, and William Longe, kepte the se so weel, that no Englischman had harm. But many of the Kyngis hous had envye with him, that he was compelled to take Westminster; and there so streytid, that he dwelled in the porch of the Cherch both nyte and day. William Longe kept stille the se, onto the[1] Chaunceler sent for him, and hite him he schuld no harm have; but whan[2] he had him[3] he sent him to the Toure.

---

[1] *brent.*] Inserted in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib., but found in the text of C.C.C.

[2] *set upon him.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *and.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *eld*] old. C.C.C.

Dispute between the Abp. and the University of Oxford.

In this ȝere the archbishop of Cantirbury wold visite the Universite of Oxenforth; but thei wold not obey it.

Dispute between the Dukes of Burgundy and Orleans.

In this ȝere began a gret debate betwix the duke of Burgundy[4] and the duke Aurelianensis, for because that the first had killid the fader of the secunde. With the duke Aurelianensis was the Kyng of Naverne[5] and Aragone, dukes of Berry and Britanny, with[6] al Gascon and Gyan,[7] the erles of Huys[8] and Armanak, with many othir. With the duke of Burgeyn[9] was the Kyng of Frauns: and for he sey his party was not strong, he sent embassatouris to the Kyng of Ynglond, that he schuld help, promitting him his doutir to be weddid to the Prince, and[10] mech gold and tresore with hire. This[11] Kyng of Ynglond gave hem this answore:[12]—He thoute the titil of this bataile not leful, because the yong man was stered of nature to venge his fader deth; and it was a febil cause to fite in swech degre there morder schuld be meynteyned. Wherfor he counceled thei schuld[13] plese the yong man

---

[1] *onto the*] onto the tyme that the. C.C.C.

[2] *whan.*] This word is written in the margin of the MS. Pub. Lib.

[3] *and hite . . . . had him.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *Burgundy*] Burgoyne. C.C.C.

[5] *of Naverne.*] These words are written in the margin of the MS. Pub. Lib., but form part of the text of C.C.C.

[6] *with*] and. C.C.C.

[7] *Gascon . . . . Gyan.*] These words are transposed in C.C.C.

[8] *Huys*] Hews. C.C.C.

[9] *Burgeyn*] Burgoyne. C.C.C.

[10] *and.*] om. C.C.C.

[11] *This*] The. C.C.C.

[12] *answore*] answer. C.C.C.

[13] *he counceled thei schuld*] thei counceled that thei schuld. C.C.C.

A.D. 1410. with swete letteris and fayre behestis, and offer onto him amendment aftir her power. If he wold not be plesed so, withdrawe hem onto more sikir place, where he might not noye hem. And if thei ded al this, and offered these leful menes, and it availed not, than had the Kyng of Ynglond sum coloure for to fite, and to help his frendis.

Henry sends succours to the Duke of Burgundy.

And sone aftir the Kyng sent this meny to him, with lordis, the erl of Arundel; the erl of Kym; the lord Cobham, Sir Jon Oldcastel; with many men[1] of armes and archeris. Thei were receyved by the duke of Burgundi ful worchipfully, and waged sufficiently.

They are victorious at St. Cloud.

But whan thei had taried longe in Parys, vitaile began to wax dere, and specialy flesch. Wherfor thei seid thei wold go gete sum vitaile among her enmies. This duke Aurelianensis lay in a strong place fast be a town thei clepe Seynclo. This perceyved oure Englischmen, and wold ha take the town; but the brigge was broken. Ther bikird thei; and on the Frensch side, whech was with duke Aurelianensis, many were dronchin, and killid a M.CCC. Many were taken, and broute to Paris; and there began a strif betwix hem of Paris and Englischmen; for thei of Paris wold have hem ded, as tretouris; and the othir parti had graunted hem lyf, so that thei payed raunson. Than thei of Paris payed her raunson, and than killid hem.

A.D. 1411. The Duke of Orleans negotiates with the King of England.

In the XIII. ȝere of this King, this duke Aurelianensis seing this fray[2] mad be Englischmen had astoyned al his host, wrot onto the Kyng of Ynglond, both he and his frendis, in this manere:—

His letter.

"Jon, the son of the Kyng of Frauns, duke of Biturie and Alverne.

---

[1] *many men*] many other men. C.C.C.

[2] *seing this fray*] perceyvyng this grete affray. C.C.C.

"Charlis, duke Aurelianensis and Valens, Blesens, and Bellemount, and lord Concionat.

"Jon, duke Burbon, erl of Claremount and of Forestis, lord of Belleiocy.

"Jon erle Alenconye, Armenak and de Pertica and Filgeriarum.[1]

"We notifie to alle men, that we send oure special legates to trete and to acord with that worchipfulle Prince Herry, be the grace of God King of Ynglond, and with alle his sones, of the restitucion, and the real induccioune of the duchy of Gian, whech longith to him of heritage, as it is seide: whech restitucion schal be mad be us."

Articles proposed by his Lords.

Whan this procuracie was come to the Kyng, these articules were offered of the lordis:—

"First, That her bodies and her goodes schuld be redy to his servyes.

"Secunde, That her chyldyrn schuld be maried be his disposicioune.

"The Third, That her castellis, townes, and tresoris, schuld be his.

"The Fourt, That alle her frendys in the clergy or the lay fe schul be his frendis.

"The Fift, That alle the londis in Gyan and Gascon, that long to him be heritage, schul be delyvired him, and eke thoo that thei have in possession, and more ovyr tho that be in othir handis thei schul help to gete hem."

These be the Articules whech thei profered.

They seek the alliance of the King of England.

These articules folowand desired thei of the Kyng:—

"That the Kyng and his successouris schul help the duke Aurelianensis ageyn the duke of Burgeyn.

"The Secund, That thei schuld recure alle the harmes whech were do to hem be the same duke.

---

[1] *Filgeriarum*] Filgenarum. C.C.C.

A.D. 1411. "The Thirde, Of restitucion to her frendis and her servauntis.

"The Fourt, That he schal gyve assistens that pes may be betwix the remes, Ynglond and Frauns."

Henry joins the Duke of Orleans. Sone aftir, in the fest of Assumpcion of oure Lady,[1] sent the Kyng[2] his son Thomas, duke of Clarens, and Edward, duke of York, Thomas, erl of Dorcet, with mech strength onto the duke Aurelianensis ageyn the duke of Burgundye; and ȝet was not the erl of Arundel and his retenew com hom. And of this sodeyn chaunge men had mech merveyle, that in so schort tyme the Kyng schuld favoure to contraries. Thei that were sent londyd in Normandye; and there abiden long tyme. For the duke Aurelianensis cam not, as covenaunt was. Wherfor thei brent townes, and took castelles, and ded mech harm. Sone aftir thei cam, and spak togidir, the duke Aurelianensis and Clarensis; and, be her councelle, the Englisch host went into Gian, and dwelt there all the wyntir.

A.D. 1412. Death of King Henry IV. In the XIIII. ȝere, this Kyng deied, the XX. day of March, whan he had regned XIII. ȝere and a half. At his deth, as was reported of ful sad men, certeyn lordes stered his confessoure, frere Jon Tille,[3] Doctoure of Divinite, that he schuld induce the Kyng to repent him, and do penauns, in special for thre thingis. On, for the deth on[4] Kyng Richard. The othir, for the deth of the archbishop Scrop. The third, for the wrong titil of the crowne. And his answere was this:—"For the to[5] first poyntis, I wrote onto the Pope the veri treuth of my consciens; and he sent me a bulle, with absolucion, and penauns assigned, whech I have fulfilled.[6] And as for the third poynt, it is hard to sette remedy; for my childirn will not suffir that the regalie go oute of oure lynage."

---

[1] August 15.

[2] *the Kyng.*] These words are written in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib., but they form part of the text in C.C.C.

[3] *Tille*] Till. C.C.C.

[4] *on*] of. C.C.C.

[5] *to.*] Om. C.C.C.

[6] *fulfillid*] do. C.C.C.

A.D. 1412.

In the ȝere of the world 6611,[1] and of oure Lord Jesu 1413, was Herry the V. corowned at Westminster on Passion Sunday.[2] And aftir his coronacion he was evene turned onto anothir man, and alle his mociones inclined to vertu.

A.D. 1413. Coronation of Henry V.

Anno 6612. 1414.—In the ȝere folowand he held a Parlement at London; in whech Parliment he asked no subsidy of no man. And that was grete pleasauns to the puple: for there was no Parlement many day but sum subsidie was graunted.

A.D. 1414. Parliament at Westminster.

In this same ȝere a grete part of Norwich was brent, and a fayre convent of the Prechouris Ordir.

Great fire at Norwich.

Eke in this ȝere, Thomas, duke of Clarens, cam hom fro Gian. And the King held a solempne terement for his fader at Cauntirbury.

Return of the Duke of Clarence.

In a Councelle at London this ȝere was ordeyned that the festes of Seynt George[3] and Seynt Dunstan[4] schuld be dobbil festes.

Festival of SS. George and Dunstan.

Alexaundir, bischop of Norwich deied this ȝere. And aftir him was Maistir Richard Courtnei bishop; a ful able man to that degre.

Death of the Bishop of Norwich.

In this same tyme, the Lollardis, that condempned the preching of the Prophetis, the Gospel,[5] and the Aposteles, set up billis[6] on the cherch dores, in whech billis[6] was conteyned, that a hundred thousand were redy for to rise, and destroye alle hem that wold not consent to her secte and her opiniones. Thei

The Lollards are supported by Sir John Oldcastle.

---

[1] *the ȝere of the world* 6611.] The column of dates is not continued after the reign of Henry IV., the history of the five remaining years having their own dates assigned to each year separately.

[2] *Passion Sunday.*] Commonly called Palm Sunday. This day fell on April 16 in the year 1413.

[3] April 23.

[4] September 7.

[5] *the Gospel*] of the Gospel. C.C.C.

[6] *billis*] bullis. C.C.C.

A.D. 1414. trosted mech on the witte and on the power of a certeyn knyte thei cleped Ser Jon Oldcastelle. He was cleped Cobham, for he had weddid a woman ny of the lordis kyn. A strong man in bataile he was, but a grete heretik, and a gret enmye to the Cherch. For his cause the archbishop gadered a Councel at London; for he sent oute prestis for to preche, whech were not admitted be non Ordinarie; and he was present at her sermones; and alle thei that seide ageyn his prestis was he redy to smite with his swerd.

Oldcastle is summoned to appear before the Archbishop. For these causes and many mo,[1] because he was a knyte of the Kyngis houshold,[2] the archbischop compleyned of him to the Kyng. Aftir mech laboure to his amendement, the Kyng wrot to the archbischop, that he schuld somoune him to appere and answere. The knyte lay that time in his castelle, cleped Coulyng. The messager that was sent was warned that he schuld not entir his castelle but if he had leve. Than enter onto the castelle on Jon Butlere, that was Uscher of the Kyngis Chambir; and he asked the knite whethir the somnoure schuld come to him, or he schuld sende him the lettere. The knyte refused both. Than was the somownes sent on the Monasteri dores in Rouchestir, but III. mile fro him. And at day[3] assined the archbischop, in the castelle of Ledis, cursed him for[4] contumacie, and grete fautoure of heretikes.

He appears before the Bishop at S. Paul's. Aftir this, on a Satirday, aftyr[5] the fest of Seint Matheu, Apostil and Evangelist, the Archbischop sat in Paules Chapetir Hous; and with him Herry of Wynchestir, and Richard of London, bischoppis. And Ser Robert Morle,—at comaundment of the Kyng,—than Keper of the Towre, broute this knyte Oldcastelle onto the presens of these bischoppis.

---

[1] *mo.*] oder. C.C.C.

[2] *houshold*] house. C.C.C.

[3] *at day*] at a day. C.C.C.

[4] *cursed him for*] denownsed him acursed for. C.C.C.

[5] *a Satirday, aftyr*, &c.] S. Matthew's Day is September 21. It appears that this synod began to sit on November 20, and sat till December 4. Capgrave does not say, "*the* Saturday after the Feast of S. Matthew."

The accusation, and the defence.

There the bischop rehersed that for contumacie he stood acursed: and if he wold mekely submitte him to the Cherch, he wold asoile him. Oldcastel stood, and wold non aske;[1] but took out of his bosom a bille[2] endented; and whan he had red it, took it to the bischoppis. Than seid the archbischop,—"Lo, Ser Jon, here be many good thingis in your bille: but ye must answere to othir thingis that be put on you, touching the Sacrament of the Auter, and the powere of the Cherch, and mech othir thing." He seide to this, that he wold gyve no othir answere than was writin in his bille. Thanne the archbischop took him certeyn Articules in a bille, to whech he assigned him that he schuld answere on the[3] Moneday folowand. And whan[4] the day was come, the archbischop inqwired of him, if he wold be assoiled aftir the forme of the Cherch. He seid,—nay; he loked aftir no absolucion but of God. And of the Sacrament of the Auter he seid thus:—"Evene as Crist whil He went here was God and Man; the Manhod mite men se, but not the Godhed; so in this Sacrament is Cristis bodi and bred: the bred may men se, but not Cristis bodi." He seid more,—"That the determinacion of the Cherch and the Doctouris, that

---

[1] *wold non aske*] wold not aske it. C.C.C. The word "it" has evidently been inserted above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib., and afterwards erased.

[2] *bille*] bulle. C.C.C.

[3] *the.*] Added above the line in MS. Pub. Lib., but forming part of the text in C.C.C.

[4] *whan.*] This word has been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib., but it forms part of the text of C.C.C.

A.D. 1414. sei the revers, ar pleynly ageyn Holy Scripture." For the Sacrament of Penauns, he seide,[1]—"That what man is in grevous synne, and coude not rise fro his synne, it is ful necessarie that he have a wise preest to telle him the maner of his amendment. But that a man schuld be schrive to his propir prest, or to a othir preest, it is no nede; for contricion withoute confessioune purgith al synne." For worchipyng of the Crosse, he seide:—"That Body That hing on the Crosse schuld be worchipid, and nothing but He." And whan thei asked him, what worchip he wold do to the ymage on the Crosse, he seide he wold wipe it, and kepe it clene. Than thei asked him what he seid of the Pope. He seid, "The Pope is Antecrist;[2] bischoppis be his membris and freres be his tayl."

Oldcastle is is condemned as a heretic, and is imprisoned,

The archbischop sey no othir amendment in this man, condempned him for a heretik, and left him to the seculere hand. And than[3] went he[4] to the Kyng, and told him al the processe, praying the Kyng to graunt him lif XL. dayes, that he mite do penauns. But this indulgens turned onto gret mischef; for within thoo XL. dayes he brak oute of the Toure, and sent letteris onto his secte.

but soon effects his escape.

He conspires to kill the King,

For al that tyme fro his evasion about Myhilmesse onto the Ephiphanie[5] he mad him strong to distroye the Kyng and many othir. And thei that were gadered to go with him, if thei mad question to what entent thei schuld rise, this answere had thei:—"It skil you not, so ye have good wagis, and treuly payed." The King kept Cristmasse at Eltham; and

---

[1] *he seide*] he seide thus. C.C.C.

[2] *Antecrist.*] This word is thus written in both MSS.

[3] *than.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] *he.*] om. C.C.C.

[5] *Ephiphanie*] Epiphanie. C.C.C. —January 6.

Cobham, with his retenew, had thoute to fulfille his entent. A.D. 1414.

The Kyng was warned of this mater be certeyn men that hed consciens, and were of councel with Cobham; and sodeynly the Kyng remeved onto Westminster. The Lolardis were warned that thei schuld gader in Seint Gilis feld; for there schuld come to hem, oute of London, L. thousand, as was behite hem. But the King was ware of al this, and comaunded London Gatis to be sperd and kept. He sent owte eke men of armes be dyvers weyes, whech apposed hem that cam rennyng in hast, whedir thei schuld? And thei seide, "To Cobham." Thus were take and slayn thousandis. The Kyng was in the feld sone aftir mydnyte. This aspied Cobham: he fled; and many with him. Many of his were take, and hang, and drawe, and brent. On was there of Dunstable, a special scolere of this secte, thei cleped him William Morle. Oldcastelle had behote him that he schuld be a knyte. And in prove of that beheste thei fond with him too stedis, and gilt sporis in his bosoum.

but is foiled in his attempt.

In this ȝere the Kyng foundid thre houses of religion, fast be his place whech thei clepe Schene,—on of the monkis of Chartir-hous; anothir cleped Celestines. Thei kepe[1] Seint Benet reule *ad literam*, as thei sey: thei are constreyned for to be recluses for evyr. The thirde is of Seynt Bride Ordir; thei have Seynt Austyn reule; with certeyn additamentis. And thei clepe it now the reule of oure[2] Savioure. Thei have no thing propir, peny, ne halfpeny, ne touche no mony. The noumbir of hem is, sistires LX., prestis XIII., dekenes IIII., lewed men VIII., whech acordith to the noumbir of XIII. Aposteles,

The Kyng founds three religious Houses.

---

[1] *kepe*] kept. C.C.C.

[2] *oure.*] Seynt. C.C.C.

A.D. 1414. and LXXII. discipules. Thei were no lynand, but wolland. Thei have o cherch: the women above; the men be the ground. Aftir her profession no man may license hem but the Pope. This religion must have sufficient dotacion. Before the fest of Al Seintis[1] thei must count that thei have sufficiently for the nest[2] ȝere; and al the remanent thei schal gyve in elmesse. On of the XIII. prestis schul thei chese to her confessoure, and to him schal thei alle obeye. Ne seculer man ne woman schal entyr the nunnes cleystir.[3]

A.D. 1415. The Council of Constance held. In the third ȝere of this Kyng were chosen worchipful men to go to the Councelle at Constauns; these bischoppis, — Salesburi, Herforth, and Bathe, the abbot of Westminster, and the prioure of Wircetir, with othir clerkis. With hem eke went the erl of Warwik. Ther were gadered the Collegis of Gregori and Petir de Luna. Gregori resined his rite up condicion Petir schuld do the same. He was in Aragony. Jon, that was at Rome mad, was loth to resine; but be the emperoure he was induct that he schuld do it. Mech joye was mad, every man supposing that this mater schuld have good ende.

Resignation of the rival Popes.

John XXIII. long resists. But this Jon, be nyte, fled with the duke of Ostrich[4] into a cite of his, and sent letteris to the emperoure, he fled for no othir[5] cause but for the eyer at Constaunce was not heilsome[6] to him. And whan he was sent for to com to the Councel, he disgised him, and fled with the duke. That sey the emperoure, and rood into Ostrich, and took the duke with him eke.

---

[1] November 1.

[2] *nest*] next. C.C.C.

[3] *cleystir*] cloyster. C.C.C.

[4] *of Ostrich.*] These words have been added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. They are part of the text of C.C.C.

[5] *no othir*] non othir. C.C.C.

[6] *heilsome*] holsom. C.C.C.

A.D. 1415.

Jon was[1] broute to the Councelle in the same aray thei toke him, in schort clothis, lich a Malandryn. There was he robbed of mech good whech he had gadered. This was noysed in Ynglond, and a gret summe of money whech was gadered for him in a hucch at Poules was take oute, and spent in bettir use.

The King sails from Southampton to invade France.

In this tyme, aftir many tretis betwix this lond and Frauns, and nothing that thei profered was acording to reson, the Kyng mad redy his schippis at Southampton to spede him to his conquest.

Conspiracy against the King.

And there were thre notabille men that had conspired his deth. On was Herry Scrop, on whom the Kyng trostid moost, and be whos councelle al thing was doo. Sobir was the man in word and chere; and undir that ypocrisie had he a ful venemous hert. He had a felawe consentyng onto him, Richard, erl of Cambrig, and Thomas Grey, a knyte of the North. But ere[2] thei broute aboute her conclusion, thei were detecte, condempned be her peres, and ded.

The conspirators are beheaded.

The Lollards rise under Oldcastle.

In this tyme the Lolardis risin ageyn, wenyng verily that eithir the Kyng was ded, or sailed ovyr the se. Thei coumforted hem ech to othir, and seide,—"Now is the prince of prestis goo and our uttir enmy." Her leder, whech had hid him longe tyme fast by Malverne, ros fro his den, and sent letteris to the lord Bergeveni that he wold be wrechid first upon him. And he, as a wise man, sent aftir his frendis and his tenauntis, and[3] mad a host of a sex thousand men. That aspied Oldcastelle and fled; no man coude cacch him. Ther took he a preest of the secte, and othir servauntis of his, whom the lord Bergeveni streyted so, that thei told wher Oldcastelle was hid.

---

[1] *and . . . . him eke. Jon was*] and . . . . him. Eke Jon was. C.C.C.

[2] *ere*] or. C.C.C.

[3] *and.*] om. C.C.C.

A.D. 1415. There founde thei his armoure, and his mony. Thei fond there[1] a banere costfully depeynted with[2] a Host and a chalis. Thei fond eke baneris depeynted with[3] Crist ful of woundis, the spere, and the nayles. Al these thingis wer mad for to make simpil folk to suppose that he was a trew zelator of the Feith.

The King lands in the Pays du Caux,

The Kyng, with his nave, took the se, and londid at Kidkaus, with a thousand schippis and five hundred. He entered the lond on a Wednesday, whech was the vigil of Assumpcioune of oure Lady;[4] and on the Satirday aftir[5] he leyde sege to the town of Hareflw, he be lond, the schippis be the watir. And this sege lested til the Sundy befor Myhilmesse.[6] In the Tewisday befor that Sunday,[7] the lordes that were keperes of the town, sent oute a man onto the duke of Clarense, praying him enterly that thei myte trete with the Kyng, and that he schuld[8] make his gunneres to sese, for it was to hem intollerabil. The names of hem were these:—the lord Gauncort, the lord Stutevyle, the lord Botevyle,[9] and the lord Clare. The duke of Clarens spak for hem to the Kyng; and the Kyng sent to hem the erle of Dorset and Ser Thomas Erpingham, to knowe her desire. Thei prayed the Kyng mekely that he schuld ses of his schot onto Sunday; and if[10] the Kyng of Frauns cam not be that tyme, thei schuld delyver him the town. Thei profered him eke that if he wold gyve hem leve and save-conduct to ride to the Kyng of Frauns, thei schuld ley pleggis XXII. knytes with the best of the

besieges and takes Harfleur.

---

[1] *Thei fond there*] There found thei. C.C.C.

[2] *with.*] Added in the margin in the MS. Pub. Lib. It is found in the text of C.C.C.

[3] *a Host . . . . depeynted with.*] om. C.C.C.

[4] August 14.

[5] *aftir*] folowyng. C.C.C.

[6] September 22.

[7] September 17.

[8] *trete with . . . . he schuld.*] om. C.C.C.

[9] *the lord Botevyle.*] om. C.C.C.

[10] *if.*] om. C.C.C.

town. So the lord Hakevile and XII. persones had leve to ride thorw the host. And on the Wednesday,[1] erly, cam oute of the town the lordes, XXII. knytes, swires, and burgeys of the town.[2] And ageyn hem the Kyng sent a solempne procession of prelatis and prestis, and the Sacrament; and aftir folowand lordis, knytes, and the puple. Whan thei had mad a solempne oth, thei went to mete into the Kyngis tent, but thei sey not the Kyng. Aftir mete thei were comaunded for to go with certeyn lordes that schuld kepe hem. On the Sunday com the messageres ageyn withoute ony help of Kyng or of Daufyn. Therfor thei that were in the town submitted hem onto the Kyng; and thei that were with the Kyng, sent be the Frensch Kyng to keping of the town, remayned as prisoneres.

Thomas Beaufort is made Governor of Harfleur.

The Kyng mad capteyn of the town his uncle, Ser Thomas,[3] erle of Dorset. In this sege many men deied of cold in nytes, and frute etyng; eke of stynk of careynes. He deied there, Maistir Richard Courtney, bischop of Norwich; in whos place the monkes chosen Jon Wakeryng. Ther deyed Mychael at the Pool.[4] The duke of Clarensis, the erle of March, the erle Arundel, and the erle Marchale, took gret seknes there.

Death of the Bp. of Norwich, and Michael de la Pole.

The King marches on Calais.

The Kyng, aftir this[5] conquest, purposed to go to Caleys, with foot-men for the most part. For al his hoost was not acoundid passing VIII. thousand; so many were left seek at Harflew. Merveile it was that he with so fewe durst go thorw alle the thik wodis in that cuntre. For the Frensch parti in al this tyme had mad an hoost of an hundred thousand and forty thousand. Vitailes were kept fro hem, that

---

[1] September 18.

[2] *swires, and burgeys of the town*] and the best of the town. C.C.C.

[3] *his uncle, Ser Thomas*] Sir Thomas his uncle. C.C.C.

[4] *at the Pool*] de la Pol. C.C.C.

[5] *this*] the. C.C.C.

A.D. 1415. XVIII. dayes thei had walnotes for bred; and flech had thei sum: but her drynk was watir.

Battle of Agincourt.

So in the XXIIII. day of Octobir the hostis met not a myle asundir. The Kyng coumforted gretly his men, that thei schuld trost in God, for her cause was rithful. The Frensch part stod on the hille, and we in the vale. Betwix hem was a lond new heried, where was evel fotyng. Schort for to sey, the feld fel onto the Kyng, and the Frensch party lost it, for al her noumbyr and her pride. Ther were ded the duke of Lauson, the duke of Braban, the duke of Baver, V. erles, the Constable eke of Frauns, and a hundred lordes; knytes, and swiris, IIII. thousand, sexti, and IX.: the comon puple was not noumbered. These were take,[1]—the duke of Aurelianensis, the duke of Burbon, the erles of Ew and Vendone, Arthure, the duke's brothir of Bretayn, whech cleymeth to be erl of Richemund, and a knyte thei cleped Brucegald, Marchale of Frauns, and othir were take there, of cote armoure, into a VII hundred. On oure side were ded Edward, duke of York, the erle of Suthfolk, IIII. knytes, a swiere, Davy Gamme; of the comones XXVIII. In the tyme of the bataile the brigauntis of the Frensch side took the Kyngis cariage, and led it awey, in whech thei fonde the Kyngis crowne. Thei mad the bellis to rynge and men for to sing,—"Te Deum laudamus," telling verily that the Kyng was ded. But within a fewe houres aftir her joye was chaunged. The Kyng rood to Caleis, and ovir the se to Dover, and in the XXIII. day of Novembir cam to[2] London, and there was[3] receyved in the best maner.

---

[1] *These were take.*] These words have been transposed, and occur after the word 'Burbon,' in the MS. C.C.C.

[2] *Caleis . . . . cam to.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *and there was*] where he was. C.C.C.

A.D. 1416. The Earl of Dorset invades France.

Anno 6614. 1416.—In his IIII. ȝere was a gret batail betwix the erl of Dorcet and the erl of Armenak,[1] in whech batayle there perchid many on both sides; for this Armenak felle upon hem soydenly, and thei were not avised. In the tyme of the batail al her cariage was stole be the Frenschmen. So mote[2] thei nedis go hom on fote. Thei laboured al the Thursday; and on Friday in the morownyng thei sey the Frenschmen on the hillis comyng downward. Than sent to the erl of Dorcet this message the erl Armenak,—"Now art thou so streytid, that the se is on thin o side, and we on the othir. Therfor, be my councelle, ȝeld the; for ellis schalt thou deye." The erl of Dorcet sent this answere ageyn,—"It was nevyr the maner of Englischmen to ȝelde hem, whan thei myte fite. And thouȝ the Englisch host had no mo men but[3] XV. hundred, ȝet had thei bettir[4] of XV. thousand, God and good prayeris hem helpyng."

In this tyme was it defendid that galey halfpenies schuld not used; for thre of hem were ful scarsly worth a peny.

The Emperor Sigismund is received at London.

In this ȝere, in the sevene day of May, cam the emperoure Sigemund to London, and was loggid in the Kyngis paleys at Westminster; the Kyng lay at Lamb-hithe. The emperoure offered a ymage of Seint George at Wyndesore, mad of pure gold. Ther,[5] on Seynt Georges day, was he mad brothir of knites[6] of the gartere; and there[7] receyved the Kyngis lyveri, whech he wered on solempne daies al his lyve.

The Duke of Holland visits England.

At the fest of Ascencion[8] cam the duke of Holland, with gret aray of schippis and vitaile, to speke with

---

[1] *Dorcet . . . Armenak*] Armenak . . . . Dorcet. C.C.C.

[2] *mote*] must. C.C.C.

[3] *thouȝ the Englisch host had no mo men but*] thouȝ the Englischmen had no mo but. C.C.C.

[4] *bettir*] the bettir. C.C.C.

[5] *Ther*] And there. C.C.C.

[6] *of knites.*] om. C.C.C.

[7] *there.*] om. C.C.C.

[8] This feast fell on May 28 in the year 1416.

A.D. 1416. the emperoure and the Kyng.[1] His doutir[2] was weddid to the ȝonger son of the Kyng of Frauns, whech was now eyer aftir the Daufyn was ded.

Violent thunder storms.

In the XVIII. kalend of Julii[3] were the moost horribil thunderes and litynnyngis that evyr ony man herd.

The Duke of Bedford relieves Harfleur.

Al this somyr men supposed that the emperoure schuld a sette pes betwix Inglond and Frauns. But the Frensch Kyng and his Councelle was evyr founde dobil. For whil this trety was in hand the Frenschmen had gadered a gret navy, with karikis and galeyes, for to take Harflew. And for that cause[4] the Kyng sent his brothir, Jon, duke of Bedford, with certeyn men of Ser Herry Percy, whech Herry the Kyng had boute[5] oute of prison fro Scotlond; and with this help thei took and distroyed the most part of that navy.

The Emperor leaves England.

Sone aftir that[6] the emperoure went oute of Ynglond, and in his goyng he mad his servauntis for to throwe billis be the wey, in whech was writyn swech sentens :—

"Farewel, with glorious victory,
Blessid Inglond, ful of melody.
Thou may be cleped of Angel nature;
Thou servist God so with[7] bysy cure.
We leve with the this praising,
Whech we schul evir sey and sing."

Many conveneiones were mad betwix the emperoure and the Kyng, and al her succession dyvyded in XII. Articles, whech were ageyn the ordinauns of oure Book; for we think that it myte be cleped rather "Abbreviacion[1] of Cronicles," than a book.

---

[1] *and the Kyng.*] om. C.C.C.

[2] *His doutir*] And the Duke's doutir. C.C.C.

[3] June 14.

[4] *for that cause*] therfore. C.C.C.

[5] *boute*] bouȝt. C.C.C.

[6] *that*] this. C.C.C.

[7] *so with*] with so. C.C.C.

A.D. 1416.

The Kyng accompanies the Emperor as far as Calais.

The Kyng, that men schuld knowe wel that he was redy to have pes with the Kyng of Frauns,[2] saylid ovyr the se with the emperoure to Caleys. There aspied the emperoure that the proferes on the French side were but fraude and sotilte; therfor he left hem as thei were.

He effects a reconciliation between the latter and the Duke of Burgundy.

Than mad the Kyng a unyte betwix the duke of Burgayn and the emperoure.[3] The cause of her debate was this. The duke of Burgayne long before, the same tyme his fadir Philip lyvand, was take prisoner be the Turkes, and the emperoure boute him ageyn for a grete summe; whech summe he swore treuly to pay to the emperoure, whech was than but Kyng of Hungari. In this mater the Kyng mad the duke to take dayes, and be bound; and forthwith the duke ded homage to the emperoure. The emperoure fro Caleys went to Dordraute, and with him went[4] the duke of Gloucetir and othir,[5] where thei took leve of the emperoure, and cam hom ageyn.

---

[1] In the margin, opposite the words "Abbreviacion of Cronicles," occurs Capgrave's private mark, corresponding nearly with the device of which a facsimile has been given at the end of the dedication at page 4, but wanting the lower part, as does also that in the margin opposite the date of his birth, and one or two other instances. This curious mark, sometimes with, sometimes without the lower member, occurs also in different portions of the other extant works of Capgrave generally used it would seem to distingush events relating to the Author's personal history, or remarks and statements resting only on his own authority: *e.g.* in the "Liber super Actus Apostolorum," and the "Liber de Symbolis," both of which are preserved in the Library of Balliol College, Oxford. See the list of the works of Capgrave given in the Introduction.

[2] *with the Kyng of Frauns.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *the duke of Burgayn and the emperoure*] the emperoure and the duke of Burgayn. C.C.C.

[4] *went.*] om. C.C.C.

[5] *and othir.*] These words have been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib. They form part of the text of C.C.C.

A.D. 1416. One Wolman, a Lollard, put to death in London. In this tyme on Benedict Wolleman, a citeceyn of London, a gret Lollard, whech had set up billes of grete errouris, was takyn, hanged, and drawe, on Myhilmesse day.

Thomas Beaufort made duke of Exeter. Aftir that, in the Parlement whech was hold at London on Seint Luce day,[1] Thomas Beuforth,[2] erle of Dorcete, was mad duke of Exetir.

Death of the King of Arragon. This ȝere deied the Kyng of Aragoyne, whech was a gret letter of the union of Holy Cherch, meynteynyng the Antepope,[3] Petir de Luna. And notwithstanding the emperoure in his owne persone exhorted him to this unite, and he hite the emperoure that he schuld withdrawe his obediens fro that same Petir, al availed not; for he deied sone aftir; and his sone meyteyned[4] the same erroure. Eke that same Petir, obdurat in malice, charged alle his cardinales that aftir his deth thei schuld chese a newe Pope of here owne college.

Children stolen by beggars at Lynn. In the same ȝere III. beggeres stole III. childyr at Lenne,[5] and of on thei put oute his eyne, the othir[6] thei broke his bak, and the thirde[7] thei cut of his[8] handis and his[8] feet, that men schuld of pite gyve hem good. Long aftir, the fadir of on of hem, whech was a marchaund, cam to London, and the child knew him, and cryed loude, "This is my fadir." The fadir tok his child fro the beggeris, and mad hem to be arested. The childirn told alle the processe, and the beggeris were hangen, ful[9] wel worthy.

---

[1] December 13.

[2] *Beuforth*] Beforthe. C.C.C.

[3] *Antepope.*] Thus written in both MSS.

[4] *meyteyned*] meynteyned. C.C.C.

[5] *Lenne*] Lenn. C.C.C.

[6] *the othir*] of the othir. C.C.C.

[7] *and the thirde*] and of the third. C.C.C.

[8] *his.*] om. C.C.C.

[9] *ful.*] This word has been added above the line in the MS. Pub. Lib.; but it forms part of the text in C.C.C.

A.D. 1417. Conspiracy against the King at Kenilworth.

In the V. ȝere of this Kyng he held his Cristmasse at Kenelworth, where was leyd gret avayte,[1] on the Kyng to his destruccion be a swiere of that Oldcastelle: and in every in of Seint Albone, in Reding, and in[2] Norhampton, were founde billes of gret malyce ageyn God and[3] the Kyng.

Council of Basle.

In this tyme was the Councelle gadered at Basili;[4] where was determined in her first Act, That he that were chose in that Councel schuld be preferred for Fadir of alle the Cherch. Ferthermore, That of every nacion schuld be chosen sex prelatis, whech schuld be in the Conclave with the cardinales, and have voys in the same eleccion.[5]

---

[1] *avayte*] a great wayȝt. C.C.C.

[2] *in.*] om. C.C.C.

[3] *and*] and agayne. C.C.C.

[4] *Basili*] Basyle. C.C.C

[5] The date, "Anno 1418," has been written in the margin at the end of the MS., but in a later writing than that of the text of the Chronicle. The MS. ends thus abruptly in the middle of a column. See the account of this MS. given in Introduction.

APPENDICES TO THE INTRODUCTION.

APPENDIX I.

NOTICES OF THE LIFE AND WRITINGS OF CAPGRAVE,

FROM

BALE, LELAND, AND OTHERS.

THE accounts of Capgrave given by Bale and Leland are the most full and satisfactory which we possess. Short notices of his Life and Writings occur in the Biographical Works of Pits,[1] Pamphilus,[2] Vossius,[3] Phil. Labbe,[4] Elssius,[5] Eisengrein,[6] Thomas

---

[1] See page 671 of the Relation. Histor. Angl.; Paris, 1619. Pits has copied and added nothing to Bale's account. He has borrowed from Pamphilus the erroneous statement that Capgrave died in the year 1484, improving upon the blunder by adding "Ricardo Tertio, Usurpatore, per summum scelus Angliæ regnum invadente.

[2] See fol. 82 b. of the "Chronica Ordinis Fratrum Eremitarum Sancti Augustini, Fratre Josepho Pamphilo, Episcopo Signino, Auctore; Romæ 1581." Pits borrowed from Pamphilus, and there is nothing in his account which is not to be found in that given by Bale.

[3] A very brief notice. See Lib. iii. page 569, of "Ger. Joan Vossii De Historicis Latinis Libri tres," published in 1627. This writer spells the name "Caprave;" but adds,—"vel Capgrave."

[4] "Joannes Capgravius, Anglus, de illustribus viris Augustiniorum dicitur scripsisse, teste Joanne Pitseo, ad annum 1484." See the "Bibliotheca Bibliothecarum" of Phil. Labbe.

[5] See page 336 of the "Encomiasticon Augustinianum," published at Brussels in 1654. This account does not differ materially from those of Bale and Pits. He calls Capgrave "B." *i. e.* "Beatus," in allusion to the wish of Henry VII. that he should be canonized. He says also that he was "S. T. D. Oxoniensis," and "Alter Lyra nuncupatus."

[6] Joannes Capgrave, Anglus, Ordinis Fratrum Eremitarum S. Augus-

Gratian,[1] Anton. Gandolf,[2] and also in the Preface to the Second Volume of Wharton's "Anglia Sacra,"[3] Anthony à Wood's "Hist. Antiq. Oxon.,"[4] the "Biblio-

---

tini, Sacræ Paginæ Doctor, vir eruditione et eloquentia clarus, Poeta gravis, Theologus profundus, nec ulli Sacrarum literarum scientia secundus. Quatuor Libros Sententiarum Lombardi exposuit. Utrumque fere Testamentum Commentariis illustravit doctissimis. Vitas præterea Sanctorum Angliæ elegantissimis voluminibus absolvit." See "Catalogus Testium Veritatis. Guilielmo Eysengrein de Nemeto Spirensi Authore. A.D. 1565." See also p. 418 of the Edition by Frisius of the Bibliotheca of Gesnerus.

[1] In the "Anastasis Augustiniana in qua Scriptores Ordinis Eremitarum S. Augustini; Opera Rdi. Patris F. Thomæ Gratiani, ejusdem Ordinis in Provincia Coloniensi Prioris Provincialis," published at Antwerp in 1613, there is (at page 108,) a short notice of Capgrave and a list of his works. This account does not differ materially from those which have been already given. He mentions specially the place of Capgrave's burial:—"Linnæ tandem, Nordovolgiæ oppido, decessit, die 12 Augusti, anno Salutis Humanæ 1464, et ibidem in templo nostro est sepultus." Leland and Bale merely state that he was buried "inter Augustinianos." It most not, however, be forgotten that Bale mentions the place of Capgrave's burial in the first 4to. Edition of his book, even specifying the particular part of the church, viz., the choir. He omits this in his last Edition without assigning any reason for his doing so.

[2] See page 208 of "Dissertatio Historica de Ducentis Celeberrimis Augustinianis Scriptoribus, Auctore Antonio Gandolfo." Rome 1704. This account corresponds more or less with that of Bale. He says that Capgrave was "Cantuariensis Monasterii filius; anno 1423, S. T. Doctor Cantabrigiensis creatus." He makes mention of his having been Provincial of the Province of England in the year 1453, and also in 1445. In reference to his personal character, we have the following:—"Eisdem ingenii dotibus adjunxit candorem singularem, mansuetudinem, benignitatem, affabilitatem, animi moderationem, prudentiam, dexteritatem, ac vitæ integritatem."

[3] Published in 1691. See the Preface, page xix. He gives an account of the contents of the MS. Cotton. Tib. A., viii.; and concludes as follows:—

"Opus integrum, epistola præmissa admodum prolixa, Henrico VI., Angliæ Regi, dicatur. In ejusdem vita Johannes dicit se illo anno quo natus est iste, (viz. 1422,) quartum vel quintum sacerdotii sui annum egisse, et apud Londinum studiis tunc incubuisse. Obiit apud Lynnam in Norfolcia, 1464, 12 Augusti, authore Baleo, anno 1484 juxta Pitsium. Mihi potior est Balei authoritas. Multa alia Capgravius scripsit, a Baleo recensita. Ex his opus præcipuum de Vitis Sanctorum Angliæ, titulo 'Legendæ Novæ Sanctorum Angliæ,' tacito Authoris nomine, prodiit Londini 1516."

[4] See Lib. i., page 118.

theca Augustiniana,"[1] and the Chronicles of Holinshed.[2]

I. FROM THE "SCRIPTORES ILLUSTRES" OF BALE.[3]

"JOANNES CAPGRAVE, in Cantiorum[4] comitatu natus,[5] et Augustinianorum omnium doctissimus, quam-

---

[1] The list of the Works of Capgrave given in the "Bibliotheca" differs in no material respect from that of Bale. The writer mentions, however, the existence of a MS. of the "Nova Legenda Angliæ" in the Cottonian Collection, which was unfortunately burnt to a crust in the fire.

[2] See page 662 *b.* 20.—"John Capgrave, borne in Kent, an Augustine Frier, proceeded Doctor of Divinitie in Oxenford, was admitted Provinciall of his Order, and prooved (without controversie) the best learned of anie of that order of Friers here in England, as John Bale affirmeth. He wrote manie notable volumes, and finallie departed this life at Lin in Norffolke, the twelfth of August, in the yere 1464, which was in the fourth yeare of King Edward the Fourth."

[3] See the folio edition of Bale's "Scriptores Majoris Britanniæ," page 582. This has been collated with the original 4to edition, Ipswich, 1548, which contains a few variations of more or less interest and value.

At page 160 of this same Edition he gives a list of his lost books,—"Veterum et Recentiorum quorumdam Librorum Catalogum, in tuam ac Sociorum gratiam, Gesnere vir optime, his addidi; quos pulcherrime scriptos, et non typis excusos, quod sciam, Papistarum violentiis coactus, in hoc altero meo exilio, in Hybernia reliqui, ut ex eorum titulis scires qui et quales sint, ac mihi condoleres eorum jacturam et interitum, nisi Deus illos servaverit:—

"*Chronica et Historiæ Brytannicorum Scriptorum.*"

Among these are mentioned:—

"Joannes Capgravus De Nobilibus Henricis.

"Idem De Sequacibus Divi Augustini.

"Catalogus Sanctorum Angliæ, eodem Authore."

The first of these MSS. is undoubtedly the same as that now preserved in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, as that MS. contains Bale's handwriting. He not unfrequently quotes the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," and once the "De Sequacibus Divi Augustini."

Local circumstances were likely to make Bale interested in Capgrave. He was a native of Suffolk, and educated by the Carmelites at Norwich. His own account of himself (see page 702 of vol. i. of the folio edition of his Scriptores,) is as follows:—

"Joannes Baleus, patria Sudovolgius, in Covi pago, tribus a Sutholdio milliariis, quinque a Dunvico, parentibus Henrico et Margarita natus, ... duodecim annorum puer in Carmelitani monachatus barathrum in urbe Nordovicensi, trudebar, ut a Christi professione ad montem in otio contemplandum demigrarem."

[4] *Cantiorum*] Cantiæ. 4to. Ed.—This is a mistake. See Introduction, § 1.

[5] *natus*] oriundus. 4to. Ed.

primum esset indagatricis rationis capax, pro vitæ suæ methodo eorum Fratrum institutum assumpsit.[1]

"Is vero, vel ab ipsa pueritia, libris, perinde ac concha suis scopulis, adhærens,[2] ita sensim[3] literis profecit, ut, post adeptum Oxonii Doctoratum,[4] Provincialis suæ Familiæ Gubernator[5] efficeretur.

"Philosophus enim ac Theologus illa ætate[6] præcipuus erat; ingenio etiam[7] atque eloquio summo clarus. Scripturas Divinas unice amabat, sophistarum somniis parum aut nihil tribuens, quum sciret ex illis non alia generari quam rabiosas lites, et inutilium rerum quæstiones.

---

[1] *et . . . assumpsit*] Cantuariæ, pro vitæ suæ methodo, Eremitarum Divi Augustini institutum elegit. 4to. Ed.

[2] *Is . . . adhærens*] Apud hos succedentibus annis. 4to. Ed.

[3] *sensim.*] om. 4to. Ed.

[4] *Oxonii Doctoratum.*] And of Cambridge also. Tanner says:—

"Doctor . . . . Cantabrigiensis; oppositionum enim suarum meminit in Principio, ante Tractatum De Vita S. Gilberti., MS. Cotton. Vitellius, D. XV. 4. It appears that this MS. was unhappily distroyed by the fire, in which so many MSS. of the Cottonian Collection perished; a brief note of its contents, however, has fortunately been preserved in the British Museum; MS. Harleian No. 980, p. 231. See § 43. It appears, moreover, from the same MS., that he preached certain sermons at Cambridge in the year 1422, from one of which the following extract is therein given;—

"The religious which lived under the rules of St. Augustin, were in number 12.

"The first, of Hermites, made by St. Aug. before his being Bishop of Hippo.

"The second, of Cannons Seculer, when he was Bishop.

"The third, Canons Reguler, which were began by him; but a distinction hath been made since by others, (as by St. Ruffus,) and so the monks of Charterhouse came out of the Black Order.

"The 4th, the Dominicans, begun Anno 1216.

"The 5, Knights of St. John's of Jerusalem.

"The 6, Heres of Pruce, the same with St. John, but that they of St. John have black mantles with a cross, and they of Pruce, white with a cross.

"The 7, the Gilbertines of Sempringham order.

"The 8, Premonstratenses, begon in France by Norbertus, anno 1100.

"The 9, the Friers of the Cross; ther foundat. incertan.

"The 10, the order of St. Bridget.

"The 11, the Canons of St. Victor in Paris.

"The 12, an order only in Norff., which had 4 houses; one of them is faln into the King's hand, and he gave it to Walsingham, hite Peterston.

"Joh. Capgrave, in vii. sermon at Cambridg, ann. 1422; et ex museo supra-dicto" [*i.e.* Roberti Kemp, Militis de Giffing.]

[5] *Gubernator*] Rector. 4to. Ed.

[6] *illa ætate*] ætate sua. 4to. Ed.

[7] *etiam.*] om. 4to. Ed.

"Adversus[1] Prælatorum petulantias[2] atque impias tyrannides[3] detonare solitus fuit,[4] dicens quod immodice suas dilataverint fimbrias,[5] laudem aucupantes[6] apud imperitam multitudinem. Item[7] quod non Pastores, sed mercenarii, lupis exposuerint oves, lac et lanam quærentes, non animas. Hos patriæ prædones appellavit ac malos operarios,[8] ut quibus veritas fuit oneri, jus contemptui, crudelitas delectationi.

"Illum ergo[9] præ aliis multis[10] elegit piissimus ejus temporis Princeps, Hunfridus,[11] Glocestriæ Dux,[12] illustrissimi[13] Henrici Quinti, Anglorum[14] Regis, Frater, ut sibi interdum esset[15] a conscientiæ colloquiis;[16] ita ut, quoties de animæ cura sapientissimus Dynastes cogitaret, (frequentissime autem cogitabat,) toties literatissimi Capgravi prudentissimo consilio uteretur. Porro nullus fuit ex Augustinianis Scriptoribus, quos nostra produxit Britannia, cum illo unquam per omnia conferendus.[17]

"Sunt hæc plane illustria ejus doctrinæ testimonia, inter alia multa quæ in pulcherrimis voluminibus ipse orbi scripta reliquit. Primitus in gratiam sui Mæcenatis Hunfridi edidit:—[18]

Commentarios in Genesim. Lib. 1. Arduum namque et supra vires est.

---

[1] *Adversus*] In. 4to. Ed.

[2] *petulantias*] superbiam. 4to. Ed.

[3] *atque impias tyrannides*] ac tyranniden. 4to. Ed.

[4] *detonare solitus fuit*] pluries declamare solebat. 4to. Ed.

[5] *dicens quod . . . . fimbrias*] Ut quod nimium dilatarent fimbrias. 4to. Ed.

[6] *aucupantes*] affectantes. 4to. Ed.

[7] *Item*] et. 4to. Ed.

[8] *ac malos operarios.*] om. 4to. Ed.

[9] *ergo*] igitur. 4to. Ed.

[10] *multis*] om. 4to. Ed.

[11] *Hunfridus*] Vmfridus. 4to. Ed.

[12] *Dux*] Dux prædictus. 4to. Ed.

[13] *illustrissimi.*] om. 4to. Ed.

[14] *Anglorum.*] om. 4to. Ed.

[15] *ut sibi interdum esset*] ut ei adesset. 4to. Ed.

[16] *colloquiis*] secretis. 4to. Ed.

[17] *Ita ut . . . conferendus.*] om. 4to. Ed.

[18] *sunt hæc . . . . edidit*] In cujus favorem quam multa reliquit et eadem magna suæ doctrinæ volumina. Et inprimis.—4to. Ed.

Super Exodum. Lib. 1. Quia historiam quam hic prosequi.

Super Leviticum. Lib. 1. Occultissimorum mysteriorum sunt.

Super Numeros. Lib. 1. Ex Nicolao de Lyra super libro.

Super Deuteronomium. Lib. 1. In hoc ultimo libro Moysi, qui.

In historiam Josuæ. Lib. 1.

In Judices et Ruth. Lib. 2.[1]

In Volumina Regum. Lib. 4. Quod in Regnorum libris jam.

In Psalterium. Lib. 1. Beatus vir qui non abiit in consilio.

In Ecclesiasten. Lib. 1.[1]

In Esaiam Prophetam. Lib. 1.

In Danielem quoque. Lib. 1.

In 12 Prophetas. Lib. 12.

Super Quatuor Evangelia. Lib. 4.

Super Epistolas Pauli. Lib. 14. Domino suo honorabili Hunfrido.

In Acta Apostolorum. Lib. 1. Reminiscor, Sancte Antistes, quanto.

In Apocalypsin Joannis. Lib. 1. Venerabili Domino suo in Christo.

Manipulum Doctrinæ Christianæ. Lib. 1. Inter cetera otii mei secreta.[1]

In Epistolas Canonicas. Lib. 7.[1]

De Fidei Symbolis. Lib. 3. Quoniam Psalmographus ait se.[1]

De Nobilibus Henricis. Lib. 3. Henrico, Dei gratia, Regi Angliæ.[1]

De Sequacibus Augustini. Lib. 1. Testatur Græcorum ille eloquentis.[1]

---

[1] This work is not mentioned in the 4to. Ed. A few minor verbal differences between the two editions, occurring in this catalogue of the works of Capgrave, have not been recorded.

Catalogum Sanctorum Angliæ. Lib. 1. Sancti fratres qui priscis fuere.

Super Sententias. Lib. 4.

Determinationes Theologicæ. Lib. 1.

Ordinarias Disputationes. Lib 1.[1]

Ad positiones erroneas. Lib. 1.

Orationes ad Clerum. Lib. 1.

Sermones per annum. Lib. 1.

De illustribus viris August. Lib 1.[1]

Vitam Hunfrid. Ducis. Lib. 1.[1]

Lecturas Scholasticas. Lib. 1.

Epistolas ad diversos. Lib. 1.

Atque alia plura scripsit.[2]

Majorem Bibliorum partem commentariis magnis illustrasse a suis dicitur.[3] Quod vero superstitiones interdum foverit sui temporis infelicitati tribuendum est.[4]

"Lynnæ tandem, Nordovolgiæ oppido,[5] vita decessit, 12 die Augusti, anno Salutis Humanæ 1464; et ibidem inter Augustinianos[6] sepultus fuit sub Edvuardo Quarto."[7]

II. From Leland's Commentaries.

Johannes Capogrevus, inter Augustinianos πολλῶν ἀντάξιος ἄλλων, a me Doctorum auribus commendabitur. Is vero vel ab ipsa pueritia libris, perinde ac concha suis scopulis, adhæsit. Granta, fœcunda eruditorum parens, quæ illum, ut ego conjectura colligo, juvenem docuit, idem testabitur. Nec deerit Hunfredus Claudianus, vir regii generis, cujus in hac parte clarum mehercule testimonium habebitur. Nam bonus Princeps, quoties de animæ cura cogitabat, (frequentissime autem cogitabat,) toties literatissimi Capogrevi prudentissimo consilio utebatur.

---

[1] This work is not mentioned in the 4to. Ed.

[2] *scripsit*] om. 4to. Ed.

[3] *commentariis . . . . . dicitur.*] commentasse perhibetur. 4to. Ed.

[4] *est*] esse censeo. 4to. Ed.

[5] *Nordovolgiæ oppido.*] om. 4to. Ed.

[6] *inter Augustinianos.*] in choro sui Cœnobii. 4to. Ed.

[7] *fuit . . . . . Quarto*] Edwardo Quarto super Anglos regnante. 4to. Ed.

"Porro adest universus Augustinianorum chorus, testis multo locupletissimus, qui illum, excellenti eruditionis nomine, Gubernatorem Provincialem constituerunt.

"Sunt hæc plane illustria ejus doctrinæ testimonia; obscura tamen, si cum pulcherrimis monimentis, quæ ille orbi scripta reliquit, conferantur. Quare inscriptiones ejus operum mox subjiciam. [The catalogue given here is scantier than those of Bale and Pits, with which it corresponds more or less.]

"Sis ipse, Lector, si quando hæc opera ad tuas manus pervenerint, Capogreviæ censor eruditionis. Ego interea loci quod sentio libere dicam; hoc est, me nullum ex Augustinianis Scriptoribus, quos nostra produxit Britannia, hactenus legisse, quem merito per omnia cum illo conferam.

"Obiit Lini, populosa Nordovolgiæ civitate, duodecimo die Augusti, anno Domini 1464; et ibidem inter Augustinianos sepultus est." [1]

---

[1] See Leland's "Commentarii de Scriptoribus Britannicis," published at Oxford in 1709. pp. 453, 454. This short account of our hisorian is quoted at length by Tanner in his "Bibliotheca Britannica."

APPENDIX II.

EXTRACTS FROM KENNET'S PAROCHIAL ANTIQUITIES.[1]

"ANNO MCCCCLVI.; 34, 35, HEN. VI."

"THE Convent of Augustin Friars, built near the present site of Wadham College, in Oxford, had been founded by the liberality and interest of Sir John Handlo, of Borstall, who had bequeathed his body to be buried in that place, and was reputed their Founder. Upon which title, Edmund Rede, Esquire, the present lord of Borstall, proving his lineal descent from the said Sir John Handlo, was accepted as their Founder and Patron, and so recognised by John Stokton, Prior, and the Brethren of that Convent, with the consent of John Capgrave, Provincial of their Order, in this memorable form:—

"'Universis Christi Fidelibus, ad quos præsens scriptum indentatum pervenerit,[2] Frater Johannes Stokton,[3]

---

[1] The text is from Dr. Bandinel's Edition, vol. ii., pp. 399-401. This has been collated with the copy preserved by Anthony à Wood, in his "Hist. Antiq. Oxon.;" Lib. i. p. 118. See § 5.

[2] *ad quos . . . pervenerit.*] Simply "&c." in Wood.

[3] *Stokton*] Stocton. Wood.

Prior Conventus Oxon. Ordinis Fratrum Heremitarum Sancti Augustini, cum unanimi consensu et voluntate omnium et singulorum Fratrum dicti Conventus, reverentias debitas, et fidem indubitatam adhibere ad ea quæ scribimus temporibus debitis permansura.

"'Notum sit vestris Reverentiis quod Dominus excellentissimus Henricus Tertius, ob salutem animæ suæ, et ad instantiam inclyti Militis sui, Domini Johannis Handlo,[1] de Borstall, Militis, perquisivit quasdam parcellas terræ de diversis personis, in suburbio Oxon., ex opposito Portæ quæ vulgariter dicitur 'Smythys-Yate,'[2] sicut patet in carta[3] plenius inde confecta. Quas parcellas terræ dedit idem Rex,[4] ad instantiam dicti Militis, Fratribus Heremitis Ordinis Sancti Augustini imperpetuum, et eorum successoribus, ad construendam ibidem ecclesiam, et ceteras domos et officinas ad utiliautem dictorum Fratrum.

"'Hanc autem voluntatem Domini nostri Regis, ad instantiam dicti Militis, Dominus Papa, Gregorius Decimus, suis bullis gratiosis confirmavit et ratificavit.

"'Post mortem vero supradicti Domini Regis, idem Johannes Handlo[5] ad constructionem dicti ecclesiæ et Domus[6] plurima bona contulit; et, sicut ex antiquis annalibus intelleximus, morte præventus est antequam dicta ecclesia et domus ad plenum ædificatæ sunt.[7] Volens tamen ostendere ad quem locum anima sua magis affectuose[8] inclinabatur dum in corpore teneretur, corpus suum illic sepeliri jussit[9] ubi anima tanto studio teneretur.

---

[1] *Handlo*] Handlow. Wood.

[2] *Smythys-Yate*] Smithys-gate. Wood.

[3] *in carta*] in charta diversorum. Wood.

[4] *Rex*] Dominus Rex. Wood.

[5] *Handlo*] Handlow. Wood.

[6] *Domus*] Domorum. Wood.

[7] *ædificatæ sunt*] ædificaretur. Wood.

[8] *affectuose*] effectuose. Wood.

[9] *jussit.*] This is the reading of Wood, and evidently the correct one. Kennet has "possit."

" 'Hunc igitur inclytum Militem, post Dominum Regem, in primum et præcipuum Fundatorem suscepimus,[1] et suscipiendum æstimavimus,[2] maxime cum in omnibus fundationibus Conventuum hoc semper cautum est, ut nullus Patronus audeat animo temerario aliquid donare patribus sine licentia Domini Regis.

" 'Nunc autem, cum[3] quæstio vertitur de successione hujus prænobilis Militis, quidam reverendus armiger, Edmundus Rede, partim evidentiis nostris, partim suis, erudita ex pia calumnia sibi vendicat jus dicti Militis, tanquam jure hæreditario ex ipso descendens. Ex dicto enim Milite descendit unus filius, Dominus Richardus Handlo,[4] Miles; ex quo descendit linealiter una filia, dicta Elizabetha de la Pole, et ex dicta Elizabetha descendit altera generosa femina, vocata Katerina James; ex Katerina James descendit Christina Rede, mater dicti Edmundi. Hoc jure descensus naturalis[5] possidet[6] dictus Edmundus multas terras et possessiones sæpedicti[7] Domini Johannis Handlo, Militis; et non solum terras, sed libertates regias, jure hæreditario Domino Johanni concessas.

" 'Et hoc jure dicti[8] Prior et Conventus, considerantes veram propaginem successionis, libero et maturo animo ipsum venerabilem Armigerum Edmundum, et hæredes suos, in Fundatorem dictæ Domus suscepimus[9] ac admisimus, ex jure sibi adquisito ex præfato lineali descensu. Et ad preces eorum venerabilis Magister Johannes Capgrave, Prior Provincialis, summo studio incitatus est ut huic receptioni et recognitioni dicti Fundatoris nostri præsens esset, et ad perpetuam rei memoriam suis literis testificaret, ne filii sine patris consensu aliquid novum conderent, nec labor filiorum sine patris consensu frustraretur.

---

[1] *suscepimus*] semper suscipimus. Wood.

[2] *æstimavimus*] æstimamus. Wood.

[3] *cum*] quoniam. Wood.

[4] *Handlo*] Handlow. Wood.

[5] *naturalis.*] om. Wood.

[6] *possidet*] possedit. Wood.

[7] *sæpedicti*] supradicti. Wood.

[8] *dicti*] dictus. Wood.

[9] *suscepimus*] suscipimus. Wood.

“ ‘Acta sunt hæc in ecclesia nostra Oxon., vicesimo primo die mensis Aprilis,[1] anno Domini millesimo quadringentesimo quinquagesimo sexto, quo die præsentialiter, et cum solemni processione, dictus Edmundus in Fundatorem susceptus est, præsentibus clero et populo,[2] multis et venerabilibus personis,—

‘ Roberto, Priore Sanctæ Frideswidæ Oxon.
‘ Richardo, Magistro Sancti Johannis[3] extra Portem Orientalem.
‘ Magistro Thoma Chaundeler,[4] Gardiano Novi Collegii.[5]
‘ Magistro Johanne Grather,
‘ Magistro Johanne Aber,[7] } Procuratoribus Universitatis Oxon.
‘ Roberto Atte-Wode, Majore Villæ Oxon.
‘ Ricardo Spragett.[8]
‘ Johanne Clarke.[9]
‘ Johanne Lowe.’[10]

“*Ex Chartul. de Borstall. MS. f.* 136.”

---

[1] *mensis Aprilis*] Aprilis. Wood.

[2] *clero et populo*] cleri et populi. Wood.

[3] *Sancti Johannis*] Hospitalis S. Johannis. Wood.

[4] *Chaundeler*] Chaundler. Wood.

[5] *Magistro . . . . Novi Collegii.*] Thomas Chaundler, M.A., S.T.B., was originally warden of Winchester College. He was elected to the wardenship of New College, Oxford, in the latter end of February or in the beginning of March, 1452-3. He held this office till the year 1475, when he was succeeded by Walter Hyll. See *Hardy's Edition of Le Neve*, iii. 554.

[6] *Grather*] Brether. Wood. So also Le Neve.

[7] *Aber*] Abdy. Wood. So also Le Neve.

[8] *Spragett*] Spragott. Wood.

[9] *Clarke*] Clerke. Wood.

[10] In Le Neve's “Fasti Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ,” the names of the two Proctors for the year 1456 are given somewhat differently;—Brether and Abdy, as in Wood, but Robert Abdy. The former was of All Souls', the latter of Balliol College. See Hardy's Edition, iii. 483.

The following document, extracted from the same MS. as the preceding, is not given by Anthony à Wood. Kennet proceeds as follows:—

"On the same day the said Prior and Convent granted to the said Edmund Rede, and to William, his eldest son, some chambers within their house, and some part of their garden, for lodging and other accommodation whenever they should visit the said Convent, or reside in Oxford:—

"'Sciant præsentes et futuri quod nos, Johannes Stokton, Prior Conventus Ordinis Fratrum Heremitarum Sancti Augustini, et ejusdem loci Conventus unanimi consensu, assensu, voluntate, et licentia Fratris Magistri Johannis Capgrave, nostri Provincialis, dedimus, concessimus, et hac præsenti charta nostra confirmavimus Edmundo Rede de Borstall in Com. Bucks, Armigero, et Fundatori nostro, ac Willielmo, filio suo primogenito, quasdam cameras nostras in nostra Domo desuper ædificatas, quæ jacent in longitudine inter ecclesiam nostram ex parte australi, et refectorium nostrum ex parte boreali, cum quadam parcella terræ nostræ jacentis in gardino nostro, qui se extendit a vico qui ducit ad Beaumond in longitudine ad prædictas cameras quinquaginta pedes, et in latitudine viginti-quatuor pedes, cum libero introitu et exitu temporibus congruis præfato Edmundo, et Willielmo, ad terminum vitæ eorum, seu eorum alterius diutius viventis de capitalibus dominis fœdi illius per servitia inde debita et de jure consueta.

"'In cujus rei testimonium, huic præsenti chartæ nostræ indentatæ tam sigillum nostrum commune, quam sigillum nostri Provincialis prædicti præsentibus est appensum,—

"'His testibus venerabilibus viris:—Georgio Nevyll, tunc Cancellario Universitatis Oxon.; Johanne, Abbate

de Oseney; Roberto, Priore Sanctæ Frideswydæ, &c. Dat. in Domo nostra Capitulari, vicesimo primo die mensis Aprilis, &c.'

"*Ex Chartul. de Borstall. MS. f.* 137."

APPENDIX III.

OF CAPGRAVE'S METRICAL LIFE
OF
SAINT KATHARINE.

INTRODUCTION BY SIR HENRY SPELMAN.*

SIR H. SPELMAN TO THE REDER.

"A Prieste, which this Author, Jo. Capgrave, nameth Arreck, having hearde much of St. Katherin, bestowed 18 yeares to search out her life, and for that purpose spent 12 of them in Grece. At last, by direction of a vision, in the dayes of Peter, K. of Cyprus, and Pope Urban the 5, he digged up in Cyprus an old booke of the very matter written by Athenasius hir tutor, bishop of Alexandria (but whither he that made the Creede, or not, the Author doubtethe), and hidden there 100 yeares before by Amylon Fitz-Amarack.

"Then did this Arreck compile her story into Latyn, saith this Author,—

> 'For out of Greek he hath et first runge
> This holy lyfe into the Latyn tounge.'

---

* This Introduction is written upon one of the fly-leaves of the Rawlinson MS., which formerly belonged to Sir Henry Spelman.

"And then also did he make it into Englishe verse; but leaving it unperfected, and in obscure rude English, Capgrave not only enlarged yt, but refyned it to the phrase of his tyme, as himselfe testifyethe, speaking of the Priest to St. Katherin:—

'He made thy life in English tounge full wel,
But yet he deied or he had fully doo,
And that he made it is ful harde therto,
Right for strangnesse of his dark language;
He is now dead; thou hast give him his wage.
Now wil I, Lady, more openly make thy life,
Out of his worke yf thou wilt helpe therto.'

"This Prieste, as Capgrave also sheweth, died at Lynn, many yeares before his tyme, where Capgrave was a Regular, for he saithe in his prologue:—

'If ye wil weet what that I am,
  My cuntry is Norfolk, of the towne of Lynn;
Out of the world to my profit I cam
  Onto the brotherhood which I am in.
  God send me grace never for to blynn
To follow the steps of my fathers before,
Which to the rules of Austen were swore.'"

THE PROLOGUE.*

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

A [1] Jhesu Christe, [2] Crowne of maydenes [3] alle,
A Mayde bare The, a Mayde ȝave The sook; [4]
Amonge [5] the lylyes [6] that may not fade ne falle,
Thou ledest [7] these folk ryght, [8] so seythe the Book. [9]
With al [10] her hert [11] evere [12] on The thei look, [13]
Her [14] love, her plesauns, [15] so sore is on The sette, [16]
To serve the Lord and folowe, [17] thei can not lette. [18]

---

* The text is taken from the MS. Brit. Mus., Arundel 396, and it has been carefully collated with MS. Arundel 168, and MS. Bodley, Rawlinson, Poët. 116.

[1] *A.*] om. MS. Rawl.

[2] *Christe.*] So also Ar. 168; Cryst. MS. Rawl.

[3] *Maydenes*] Maydyns. Ar. 168; Maydenys. MS. Rawl.

[4] *sook*] soke. Ar. 168, and MS. Rawl.

[5] *Amonge.*] So also Ar. 168; Amongi. MS. Rawl.

[6] *lylyes*] lylies. Ar. 168; lilies. MS. Rawl.

[7] *ledest*] ledyste. Ar. 168; ledyst. MS. Rawl.

[8] *ryght*] rith. Ar. 168; ryth. MS. Rawl.

[9] *seythe the Book*] seith this Boke. Ar. 168; seyth owre Boke. MS. Rawl.

[10] *al*] alle. Ar. 168; all. MS. Rawl.

[11] *hert.*] So also MS. Rawl.; herte. Ar. 168.

[12] *evere*] ever. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[13] *look*] loke. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[14] *her.*] So also Ar. 168; here. MS. Rawl.

[15] *plesauns.*] So also MS. Rawl.; plesaunce. Ar. 168.

[16] *sette.*] So also MS. Rawl.; sett. Ar. 168.

[17] *folowe.*] So also Ar. 168; folow. MS. Rawl

[18] *lette.*] So also in MS. Rawl.; lett. Ar. 168.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

Right[1] thus be ordre[2] we wene Thou ledest[3] the daunce,
  Thy Moder[4] folweth[5] the nexte,[6] as resoun[7] is,
And after other[8] thei go ryght[9] as her chaunce
  Is shape[10] to hem of joye[11] that may not mys,
  But next that Lady, above alle other[8] in blys,[12]
Folweth[13] this mayde whiche[14] we clepe Kataryne,[15]
Thus wene we, Lord,[16] because that Thou and Thyne[17]

Have ȝove to hir of grace so greet[18] plente
  That alle Thy pryvileges[19] whiche[20] been[21] in other founde
Are sette[22] in hir,[23] as in Sovereyn of heygh degree,[24]
  For in alle these rychely dooth[25] she abounde.[26]
  Looke[27] alle these Seyntes[23] that[29] in[30] this world so rounde[31]

---

[1] *Right*] Rith. Ar. 168; Ryth. MS. Rawl.

[2] *ordre*] order. Ar. 168; ordyr. MS. Rawl.

[3] *ledest*] ledist. Ar. 168; ledyst. MS. Rawl.

[4] *Moder.*] So also MS. Rawl.; Modir. Ar. 168.

[5] *folweth*] folowith. Ar. 168; folowyth. MS. Rawl.

[6] *nexte*] next. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[7] *resoun*] reson. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[8] *other.*] So also Ar. 168; othir. MS. Rawl.

[9] *go ryght*] goo rith. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[10] *shape.*] So also Ar. 168; schap. MS. Rawl.

[11] *joye.*] So also MS. Rawl.; joy. Ar. 168.

[12] *blys.*] So also MS. Rawl.; blisse. Ar. 168.

[13] *Folweth*] Foloweth. Ar. 168.; Folowyth. MS. Rawl.

[14] *whiche*] which. Ar. 168; weche. MS. Rawl.

[15] *Kataryne*] So also Ar. 168; Kateryne. MS. Rawl.

[16] *wene we Lord.*] So also MS. Rawl.; wene, Lord. Ar. 168.

[17] *Thyne.*] So also MS. Rawl.; Thynne. Ar. 168.

[18] *greet*] grete. MS. Rawl.

[19] *Thy pryvileges*] the privileges. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[20] *whiche.*] So also Ar. 168; weche. MS. Rawl.

[21] *been*] beth. Ar. 168; be. MS. Rawl.

[22] *are sette*] are set. Ar. 168; ar sett. MS. Rawl.

[23] *hir.*] So also Ar. 168; hyr. MS. Rawl.

[24] *Sovereyn of heygh degree*] Sovereyne hye degree. Ar. 168; but degre in MS. Rawl.

[25] *rychely dooth*] richly doth. Ar. 168; rychely doth. MS. Rawl.

[26] *abounde.*] So also Ar. 168; habound. MS. Rawl.

[27] *Looke*] Loke. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[28] *these Seyntes*] thies Seints. Ar. 168; these Seyntis. MS. Rawl.

[29] *that.*] Added above the line in MS. Rawl.

[30] *in.*] So also Ar. 168; on. MS. Rawl.

[31] *rounde*] So also Ar. 168; round. MS. Rawl.

Leved[1] here sumtyme, and, in some spyce or kynde,
Here vertues shal[2] we in this[3] same mayde fynde.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

Thou ȝave to John,[4] Lord, the greet Evangelist,[5]
Thyn owyn[6] presens whan he hens shuld weende;[7]
That same presens ryght evene[8] as thou lyst[9]
Thou gave[10] this mayde at hir lyves eende.[11]
A welle of oyle[12] eke thou wulde[13] hir sende,
Oute[14] of hir grave, as had Seynt Nicholas,[15]
And for hir clennesse Thou graunted hir[16] that graas,[17]

Whiche[18] Seynt[19] Paule had; mylk ryght at[20] his throte
Ran oute with blood[21] men seyne, in tookenyng[22]
That martirdam[23] and maydenhod ryght in on[24] cote
Were medeled togedyr,[25] thou douter onto the Kyng,[26]
So had thou fully alle these hooly thyng.[27]

---

[1] *Leved*] Levyd. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[2] *shal.*] So also MS. Rawl.; shalle. Ar. 168.

[3] *this.*] So also Ar. 168; that. MS. Rawl.

[4] *John.*] So also Ar. 168; Jon. MS. Rawl.

[5] *greet Evangelist*] grete Evangeliste. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[6] *Thyn owyn*] Thin own. Ar. 168; Thyn owne. MS. Rawl.

[7] *weende*] wende. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[8] *ryght evene*] rith eveyn. Ar. 168; rithe evene. MS. Rawl.

[9] *lyst*] lyste. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[10] *gave*] ȝave. MS. Rawl.

[11] *lyves eende*] lyvys ende. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[12] *oyle.*] So also MS. Rawl.; oile. Ar. 168.

[13] *wulde.*] So also Ar. 168; wold ells. Rawl.

[14] *Oute*] So also Ar. 168; Out. MS. Rawl.

[13] *Seynt Nicholas*] Seint Nicholes. Ar. 168; Seynt Nycholas. MS. Rawl.

[16] *hir.*] So also Ar. 168; here. MS. Rawl.

[17] *graas.*] So also MS. Rawl.; grace. Ar. 168.

[18] *Whiche.*] So also Ar. 168; Wheche. MS. Rawl.

[19] *Seynt.*] So also in MS. Rawl.; Seint. Ar. 168.

[20] *mylk ryght at*] mylk at. Ar. 168; mylke ryth at. MS. Rawl.

[21] *blood*] bloode. MS. Rawl.

[22] *tookenyng*] tokynyng. Ar. 168; tokenynge. MS. Rawl.

[23] *martirdam.*] So also Ar. 168; martyrdam. MS. Rawl.

[24] *maydenhod ryght in on*] maydynode rithe in o. Ar. 168; maydenhode ryth in o. MS. Rawl.

[25] *medeled togedyr*] medelyd togedir. Ar. 168; medelede togydyr. MS. Rawl.

[26] *Kyng.*] So also Ar. 168; Kynge. MS. Rawl.

[27] *alle these hooly thyng*] as thies holy thing. Ar. 168; as these holy thingis. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

To araye thi grave His aungelles[1] eke God[2] sent,
Ryght as He dede for Seynt[3] Clement.

And as Seynt[4] Margarete had hir petycyon,[5]
At hir[6] laste eende,[7] graunted of God Almyght,[8]
What maner man or woman that wyth devocyon[9]
Asketh[10] a bone of hir, he hath it ryght[11]
As he wyl[12] have, if he aske but ryght;[11]
For ellys fayleth[13] he, it is not to his behove:
The same grace hast thou of God thi Love

Purchased[14] Lady on to thi lovers[15] alle,
Therefore wil I the serve so as I kan,[16]
And make thi lyef, that more openly[17] it shalle
Be knowe[18] aboute[19] of woman and of man.
There was a preest, flessh he was ful[20] wan,
For grete labour he had in his lyve[21]
To seke thi lyef yeerys threttene and fyve.[22]

---

[1] *His aungelles*] His aungels. Ar. 168; here aungellys. MS. Rawl.

[2] *God.*] So also Ar. 168; Godd. MS. Rawl.

[3] *Ryght as He dede for Seynt*] Rithe as dide sumtyme for Seint. Ar. 168; ryth as He dyd sumtyme for Seynt. MS. Rawl.

[4] *Seynt.*] So also MS. Rawl.; Seint. Ar. 168.

[5] *petycyon.*] So also MS. Rawl.; peticion. Ar. 168.

[6] *hir*] here. MS. Rawl.

[7] *eende*] ende. Ar. 168.; MS. Rawl.

[8] *God Almyght*] Godd Almyth. MS. Rawl.

[9] *wyth devocyon.*] So also MS. Rawl.; with devocion. Ar. 168.

[10] *Asketh.*] So also Ar. 168; Askyth. MS. Rawl.

[11] *ryght*] righte. Ar. 168; ryth. MS. Rawl.

[12] *wyl.*] So also MS. Rawl.; wille. Ar. 168.

[13] *ellys fayleth.*] So also MS. Rawl.; ellis faileth. Ar. 168.

[14] *Purchased*] Purchasyd. MS. Rawl.

[15] *lovers*] loveris. MS. Rawl.

[16] *Therefore wil I the serve so as I kan*] Therefore wille I serve the as I can. Ar. 168; Therfor wyl I the serve so as I can. MS. Rawl.

[17] *lyfe, that more openly*] lyfe mor that openly. Ar. 168; lyffe that more openly. MS. Rawl.

[18] *knowe*] know. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[19] *aboute.*] So also Ar. 168; abowte. MS. Rawl.

[20] *preest, flessh he was ful*] preste of flesch he was fulle. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[21] *lyve.*] So also MS. Rawl.; Ar. 168.

[22] *lyef yeerys threttene and fyve*] lyve thirten yeres and fyfe. Ar. 168; liffe ȝerys thyrtene and fyve. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

Yet,[1] at the laste, he foonde[2] it, to his grete[3] joye,
Fer up in Grece, beryed in the ground,[4]—
Was never knyght[5] in Rome ne eke in Troye
More[6] glad of swerd,[7] or basenet bryght and round,[8]
Than was this preest,[9] whan he had it found;[10]
He blysshed it[11] ofte, and seyde al hys[12] labour
Was turned to solace, joye,[13] and sokour.

He made[14] this lyf en Englyssh tunge ful weel,[15]
But yet he deyed ere[16] he had fully doo,[17]
Thi passyon,[18] Lady, and al that sharpe[19] wheel[20]
He lefte[21] behynde; it is yet not doo too;[22]
And that he made it is ful hard alsoo.[23]
Right for to straungenesse[24] of his dyrke[25] langage;—
He is now ded, thou hast yove[26] hym his wage.

---

[1] *Yet*] Yit. Ar. 168; ȝet. MS. Rawl.

[2] *foonde*] fonde. Ar. 168; fond. MS. Rawl.

[3] *grete.*] So also Ar. 168; gret. MS. Rawl.

[4] *ground*] grounde. Ar. 168; grownde. MS. Rawl.

[5] *never knyght*] never no knyth. Ar. 168; nevyr no knyth. MS. Rawl.

[6] *More.*] So also Ar. 168; Mor. MS. Rawl.

[7] *swerd.*] So also Ar. 168; swerde. MS. Rawl.

[8] *basenet bryght and round*] basnet brith or rounde. Ar. 168; basnett bryght and rownde. MS. Rawl.

[9] *preest*] prest. Ar. 168; preeste. MS. Rawl.

[10] *found*] founde. Ar. 168; fownde. MS. Rawl.

[11] *blysshed it*] blissid the. Ar. 168; blyssid the MS. Rawl.

[12] *seyde al hys*] said alle his. Ar. 168; seyd all hys. MS. Rawl.

[13] *joye.*] So also Ar. 168; to joy. MS. Rawl.

[14] *made.*] So also Ar. 168; mad. MS. Rawl.

[15] *this lyf en Englyssh tunge ful weel*] thi liffe in Englisch tunge fulle welle. Ar. 168; thi liff in Englysch tunge ful well. MS. Rawl.

[16] *ere.*] So also Ar. 168.

[17] *But yet he deyed ere he had fully doo*] But yit he deied or he had fully do. Ar. 168; But ȝet he deyed or he had fully doo. MS. Rawl.

[18] *passyon.*] So also MS. Rawl.; passion. Ar. 168.

[19] *sharpe.*] So also Ar. 168; scharp. MS. Rawl.

[20] *wheel*] wheele. Ar.168; whele. MS. Rawl.

[21] *lefte.*] So also MS. Rawl.; leff. Ar. 168.

[22] *yet not doo too*] yit for to do. Ar. 168; ȝet for to do. MS. Rawl.

[22] *Thi . . . . doo too.*] These two lines had been omitted in the MS. Rawl., and were added afterwards in the margin.

[23] *alsoo*] there to. Ar. 168; thertoo. MS. Rawl.

[24] *Right for to straungenesse.*] So also Ar. 168; Ryth for straungeness. MS. Rawl.

[25] *dyrke*] derk. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[26] *yove*] ȝove. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

Now will I, Lady, more opynly[1] make thi lyf[2]
Oute[3] of his werke,[4] if thou wilt[5] help thertoo;
It shal be knowe of man of mayde, of wyf,[6]
What thou hast suffred, and eke what thou hast[7] doo;
Prey God,[8] oure Lord, He wyl it may be soo;[9]
Enspyre[10] oure wyttis[11] wyth His prevy grace,
To preyse[12] Hym and the that we may have space.

This preest[13] of whom[14] I spak not longe ere
In his Prolog telleth al[15] his desyre,[16]
How that he[17] travayled many a lond to lere
The berthe,[18] the contre,[19] the langage of this martire;—[20]
Ho[21] was hir moder[22] and eke hoo[23] was hir syre.[24]
Aboute this mater he laboured yerys eightene[25]
Wyth preyerys,[26] fastynge, coold[27] and mekel[28] teene.

---

[1] *opynly*] openly. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[2] *lyf*] liffe. Ar. 168; lyffe. MS. Rawl.

[3] *Oute.*] So also Ar. 168; Owt. MS. Rawl.

[4] *his werke.*] So also Ar. 168; hys werk. MS. Rawl.

[5] *wilt.*] So also Ar. 168; wylt. MS. Rawl.

[6] *It shal be knowe, etc.*] It shalle know of man, mayde, and wiff. Ar. 168; It shall be know of man, mayde, and of wyffe. MS. Rawl.

[7] *hast suffred . . . hast*] haste suffered . . . . haste. Ar. 168; hast suffrede . . . hast. MS. Rawl.

[8] *God.*] So also Ar. 168; Godd. MS. Rawl.

[9] *Prey God, oure Lord, etc.*] Pray God, oure Lord, He wille the dore undoo. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[10] *Enspyre.*] So also Ar. 168; Enspire. MS. Rawl.

[11] *wyttis*] wittes. Ar. 168; wyttys. MS. Rawl.

[12] *preyse.*] So also MS. Rawl.; preise. Ar. 168.

[13] *preest*] prieste. Ar. 168; preeste. MS. Rawl.

[14] *whom.*] So also Ar. 168; qwome. MS.

[15] *Prolog telleth al*] Prologe tellith al. Ar. 168; Prologe telleth all. MS. Rawl.

[16] *desyre.*] So also MS. Rawl.; desire. Ar. 168.

[17] *How that he*] Who he. Ar. 168; Who that he. MS. Rawl.

[18] *berthe*] byrth. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[19] *contre*] cuntre. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[20] *martire.*] So also Ar. 168; martere. MS. Rawl.

[21] *Ho.*] So also Ar. 168; Who. MS. Rawl.

[22] *moder.*] So also MS. Rawl.; modir. Ar. 168.

[23] *hoo.*] So also Ar. 168; who. MS. Rawl.

[24] *syre.*] So also MS. Rawl.; sere. Ar. 168.

[25] *yerys eightene.*] So also Ar. 168; ȝerys eytene. MS. Rawl.

[26] *wyth preyerys*] with prayer. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[27] *coold*] cold. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[28] *mekel*] mychil. Ar. 168; mekyll; MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

So at the laste hadde[1] he a revelacyon,[2]
Al mysti and deerk, hyd under[3] cloude;
He thoute he saugh tho in a vysyon[4]
A persone honest-clothed[5] in a[6] precyous shroude
Wiche[7] evere cryed on the preest ful[8] loude:—
"Behold," he seyth,[9] "thou man, what[10] that I am,
What thing I shewe and eke why[11] I cam."

For in his hand he held a book[12] ful eelde,[13]
With bredys rotyn, leves dusty and rent,[14]
And evere he cryed upon the preest:—"Behelde,[15]
Here is thin labour,[16] here is al[17] thin entent,[18]
I wot[19] ful weel[20] what thou hast sought[21] and ment:[22]
Ope thi mouth, this book[23] muste thou ete,[24]
But if thou doo thi wil shalt thou not[25] gete."

---

[1] *hadde*] had. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[2] *revelacyon*] revelacion. Ar. 168; revelacyoun. MS. Rawl.

[3] *Al mysti and deerk, hyd under*] Alle mysty and derk hyde al under. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[4] *He thoute . . . a vysyon*] He thoughte he sey thoo in his avysion. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[5] *honest-clothed.*] So also MS. Rawl.; honeste-clothid. Ar. 168.

[6] *a.*] om. MS. Rawl.

[7] *Wiche*] Which. Ar. 168; Whech. MS. Rawl.

[8] *on the preest ful.*] So also MS. Rawl.; upon the preste full. Ar. 168.

[9] *"Behold," he seyth.*] So also MS. Rawl.; "Beholde," he seith. Ar. 168.

[10] *what.*] So also Ar. 168; qwat. MS. Rawl.

[11] *why.*] So also Ar. 168; qwhy. MS. Rawl.

[12] *book.*] So also Ar. 168; bok. MS. Rawl.

[13] *eelde*] eld. Ar. 168; elde. MS. Rawl.

[14] *bredys rotyn, leves . . . rent*] bredis roten, levys . . . rente. Ar. 168. The MS. Rawl. is as the text, but it has "levys."

[15] *preest:—"Behelde"*] preste:—"beholde." Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[16] *thin labour*] thi laboure. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[17] *al*] alle. Ar. 168; all. MS. Rawl.

[18] *entent.*] So also Ar. 168; entente. MS. Rawl.

[19] *wot.*] So also Ar. 168; wote. MS. Rawl.

[20] *ful weel*] full wele. Ar. 168; ful welle. MS. Rawl.

[21] *hast sought*] haste soute. Ar. 168; hast sowte. MS. Rawl.

[22] *ment.*] So also MS. Rawl.; mente. Ar. 168.

[23] *book.*] So also MS. Rawl.; boke. Ar. 168.

[24] *ete.*] So also MS. Rawl.; eke. Ar. 168. "eke" is evidently merely a blunder of the scribe.

[25] *wil shalt thou not*] wille shall thou noȝt. Ar. 168; wyll schall thou not. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

"A mercy, Lord," seyde[1] this preest[2] to hym,
"Spare me nou,[3] hou[4] shuld[5] I this book[6] ete?
The rotyn[7] bredes,[8] the[9] leves[10] derke and dym,[11]
I may in no wyse[12] into my mouth[13] hem gete;
My mouth is smal,[14] and eke thei be so grete,
Thei wil[15] breke my chaneles[16] and my throte;
This mete to me is lykely[17] to doo[18] noe note."

Thes seyde[19] he:—"Thou muste nedes[20] ete this book,[21]
Thou shalt ellis[22] repente: ope thi mouth wyde;
Receyve it boldely,—it hath no clospe ne hook,—[23]
Lete it go down, and in thi woombe[24] it hyde;
It shal[25] not greve the neyther[26] in bak ne seyde;
In thi mouthe bytter, in thi woombe it wil be sweet;[27]
So was it somtyme[28] to Ezechiel the prophet."[29]

---

[1] *seyde*] seid. Ar. 168; seyd. MS. Rawl.

[2] *preest*] preeste. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[3] *nou.*] So also Ar. 168; now. MS. Rawl.

[4] *hou*] who. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[5] *shuld*] schulde. MS. Rawl.

[6] *book.*] So also MS. Rawl.; boke. Ar. 168.

[7] *rotyn*] roten. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[8] *bredes.*] So also Ar. 168; bredys. MS. Rawl.

[9] *the*] thies. Ar. 168; these. MS. Rawl.

[10] *leves.*] So also Ar. 168; levys. MS. Rawl.

[11] *derke and dym*] derk and dyme. MS. Rawl.

[12] *wyse.*] So also in MS. Rawl.; wise. Ar. 168.

[13] *mouth.*] So also in MS. Rawl.; mouthe. Ar. 168.

[14] *smal*] smale. Ar. 168; small. MS. Rawl.

[15] *wil*] wille. Ar. 168; wyll. MS. Rawl.

[16] *chaneles*] chenles. Ar. 168; chanles. MS. Rawl.

[17] *lykely*] likely. Ar. 168; lykly. MS. Rawl.

[18] *doo*] do. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[19] *Thes seyde*] This sayde. Ar. 168; Thys seyd. MS. Rawl.

[20] *nedes*] nede. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[21] *book.*] So also MS. Rawl.; booke. Ar. 168.

[22] *shalt ellis*] shalle elles. Ar. 168; schalt ellys. MS. Rawl.

[23] *hook.*] So also MS. Rawl.; hoke. Ar. 168.

[24] *woombe*] wombe. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[25] *shal*] shalle. Ar. 168; schal. MS. Rawl.

[26] *neyther.*] So also MS. Rawl.; neither. Ar. 168.

[27] *sweet*] swete. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[28] *somtyme*] sumtyme. Ar. 168; sume tyme. MS. Rawl.

[29] *to Ezechiel the prophet*] to the Ezechiel the prophete. Ar. 168; to Ezechyell, etc. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

The preest[1] tho took it in his[2] mouth anoon;[3]
  It semed sweet ryght[4] as it hony were;
The other[5] man is passed and igoon,[6]
  The preest is stoyned[7] as thou he turned were
  Newe joye, new thought, had he thann and there.
He awook,[8] and was ful glad and blythe,[9]
Of[10] his[11] dreem he blyssed[12] God ofte sythe.

After this not longe, depe in a feeld[13]
  Iclad with floures and heerbes,[14] grete and smale,[15]
He dalf, and fond this book,[16] whiche he beheld
  Before in slep, ryght[17] as I told my tale.
  There had he salve to alle his bytter bale;
It was layd there be a knyght[18] that men calle
Amylyon Fitz Amarak, of Crysten knyghtes alle

---

[1] *preest*] preste. Ar. 168; preeste. MS. Rawl.

[2] *took it in his*] tooke it into his. Ar. 168; toke it into hys. MS. Rawl.

[3] *anoon*] anon. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[4] *ryght*] rith. Ar. 168; ryth. MS. Rawl.

[5] *other.*] So also MS. Rawl.; othir. Ar. 168.

[6] *igoon*] igon. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[7] *The preest is stoyned.*] So also MS. Rawl.; The prest is stonned. Ar. 168.

[8] *awook*] awoke. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[9] *ful glad and blythe.*] So also MS. Rawl.; fulle glade and blithe. Ar. 168.

[10] *Of his dreem, &c.*] This line, and the forty-two which immediately follow, are written in another and smaller hand in the MS. Rawl. The remainder of the Prologue is in the same hand as the beginning.

[11] *his*] this. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[12] *blyssed*] blissed. Ar. 168; blyssyd. MS. Rawl.

[13] *feeld*] feld. Ar. 168; felde. MS. Rawl.

[14] *heerbes*] herbes. Ar. 168; herbys. MS. Rawl.

[15] *smale.*] So also MS. Rawl.; smal. Ar. 168.

[16] *fond this book*] fonde this boke. Ar. 168; fond this boke. MS. Rawl.

[17] *slep, ryght*] slepe, rith. Ar. 168; slepe, rygth. MS. Rawl.

[18] *knyght*] knythis. Ar. 168; knyte MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

Most devoute as onto this mayde.
He fonde it among old tresour in Cypre[1] lond,
In Kyng Petry's[2] tyme, as the Cronycle sayde
Of that same Cypre where he his[3] book foond;
And in Pope Orban[4] tyme, I undirstond,
The Fyfte of Rome, fel al[5] this matere,
Wiche ye have herd, and yet ye shal[6] more clere:

There was a clerke with this same Kataryne,
Whos name we clepe in Latyn Athanas;
He taughte hir the reules as he coude dyvyne,
Of God, of Hevene,[7] of joye, and of gras,[8]
And she hym also, for be hir he was
Iturned onto Cryst,[9] and onto oure Feyth:[10]
He was hir ledere, as the story seyth.[11]

He wrote the lyf eke of this same mayde;
He was with hir at hir laste ende;
He sau hir martird,[12] as hym self sayde,
He must nede hir lyf have in meende;[13]
He was a servant[14] onto hir ryght keende:[15]

---

[1] *old tresour in Cypre*] elde tresoure in Cypir. Ar. 168; old tresore in Cipire. MS. Rawl.

[2] *Petry's*] Petir's. Ar. 168; Petri's. MS. Rawl.

[3] *Cypre . . . his*] Cipre . . . this. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[4] *Orban*] Urban. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[5] *al*] alle. Ar. 168; all. MS. Rawl.

[6] *and yet ye shal*] and yit shalle. Ar. 168; and ȝet ȝe schall. MS. Rawl.

[7] *Hevene*] Hevyn. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[8] *gras*] grace. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[9] *Cryst*] Criste. Ar. 168; Crist. MS. Rawl.

[10] *feyth*] faith. Ar. 168; feythe. MS. Rawl.

[11] *seyth*] seith. Ar. 168; seythe. MS. Rawl.

[12] *martird*] martyred. Ar. 168; martyryd. MS. Rawl.

[13] *must nede . . . meende*] mote nede have hir liffe in mynde. Ar. 168; mote nede have here lyfe in mynde MS. Rawl.

[14] *servant*] servaunte. Ar. 168; servaunt. MS. Rawl.

[15] *ryght keende*] rith kynde. Ar. 168; ryth kynde. MS. Rawl.

What shuld I lengere in this preysyng tary?—
He was hir chaunceler and hir secretary.[1]

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

He gate hir maystrys thurgh oute the partes[2]
  Of alle gret[3] Grece, hir fadery's empyre,[4]
To leerne hir be rowe[5] alle the vii artes,
  This same man payed hem alle her hyre;[6]
  He was as in that court fully Lord and Syre
He knewe hir kyn and hir counsel[7] also,
Hir fadir, hir modir,[8] and alle[9] the lyne therto.

Hir holy lyf[10] he knew, her conversatyon;
  Alle hir holy customes whil she leved[11] here;
He stood by[12] hir in hir grete passyon;
  He saugh the aungelles hough[13] thei hir body bere,
  Fer up onto[14] Synay, and leyde it down there;
He saugh the vengaunce[15] eke, hough[16] it was take
On many a thousende,[17] for hir dethe's[18] sake.

---

[1] *secretary.*] So also MS. Rawl.; secretarie. Ar. 168.

[2] *maystrys . . . partes*] maisteris thorow oute the parties. Ar. 168; maisterys thorw owt the partes. MS. Rawl.

[3] *gret*] grete. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[4] *empyre.*] So also MS. Rawl.; empire. Ar. 168.

[5] *leerne hir be rowe*] lerne her be row. Ar. 168; lerne here be rowe. MS. Rawl.

[6] *hyre.*] So also MS. Rawl.; hire. Ar. 168.

[7] *counsel*] counselle. Ar. 168; counsell. MS. Rawl.

[8] *moder*] modir. Ar. 168; modyr. MS. Rawl.

[9] *alle*] al. Ar. 168; all. MS. Rawl.

[10] *lyf*] liffe. Ar. 168; life. MS. Rawl.

[11] *leved*] levyd. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[12] *stood by*] stode be. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[13] *saugh the aungelles, hough*] saw the aungels, who. Ar. 168; say the awngelis, how. MS. Rawl.

[14] *onto*] into. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[15] *saugh the vengaunce*] saw the veniaunce. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[16] *hough*] who. Ar. 168; how. MS. Rawl.

[17] *thousende*] thousand. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[18] *dethe's*] deth. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

He saugh eke Maxcence, hough[1] he was slayn,
Dropped fro a brigge[2] down in a rever,[3]
Deyed so ful sodeynly in a bitter payn,[4]
Forth was he drawe into helle feer:[5]
Aungelles bar[6] hir; the develle[7] bar his beer.
Behold the sondry reward of vertu and of synne;—
On is in Hevene, the tother[8] is helle withinne.

Longe after the deth of this Maxcencius,[9]—
Bysshop[10] in Alysaundre, Katarine's cyte,[11]
Was this same man, this Athanasius,
In whiche he suffred ful meche[12] adversyte.
I wot[13] not verily yet[14] if it were he
That made the Salme wiche[15] we clepe the Crede,
Wiche we at Prime often-tyme[16] synge and rede.

He deyed[17] evene there, an holy confessour,
And after his deth myght[18] unnethe be knowe
The lyf,[19] the lernyng of this swete flour

---

[1] *saugh eke Maxcence, hough*] saw eke Maxiense, who. Ar. 168; sey eke Maxense. MS. Rawl.

[2] *brigge*] bregge. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[3] *rever*] ryver. Ar. 168; revere. MS. Rawl.

[4] *Deyed . . . payn*] Died full sodenli in fulle bitter payne. Ar. 168; Deyd so ful sodeynly in ful byttyr payn. MS. Rawl.

[5] *feer*] fiere. Ar. 168; foere. MS. Rawl.

[6] *Aungelles bar*] Aungels. Ar. 168; Aungellys bar. MS. Rawl.

[7] *develle*] devels. Ar. 168; develys. MS. Rawl.

[8] *tother*] the othir. Ar. 168; the other. MS. Rawl.

[9] *Maxcencius*] Maxience. Ar. 168; Maxencyus. MS. Rawl.

[10] *Bysshop*] Byschope. Ar. 168; Byschop. MS. Rawl.

[11] *cyte*] cite. Ar. 168; cete. MS. Rawl.

[12] *ful meche.*] So also MS. Rawl.; full myche. Ar. 168.

[13] *wot.*] So also MS. Rawl.; wote. Ar. 168.

[14] *yet*] ȝit. Ar. 168; om. MS. Rawl.

[15] *Salme wiche*] Psalme which. Ar. 168; Psalme qwech. MS. Rawl.

[16] *Wiche . . . often-tyme*] Which . . . of tyme. Ar. 168; Wech . . . . oft-tyme. MS. Rawl.

[17] *deyed*] died. Ar. 168; deyd. MS. Rawl.

[18] *myght*] myth. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[19] *lyf*] liffe. Ar. 168; lyvyng MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

And martyr[1] Katarine, of hey[2] ne of lowe,
Til oon[3] Arrek dede it new i-sowe,
For out of Greu[4] he hath it first runge
This holy lyf[5] into Latyn tunge

This clerk herd spekyn ofte-tymes of this mayde,
Both of hir lyf and of hir eende,[6]
Hough[7] she, for love, hir lyf[8] had thus layde
Of oure Lord Cryst hir goostily[9] spouse keende ;[10]
This made hym seker[11] into that lond to weende[12]
To know of this bothe the sprynge and the welle,
If ony man knowe[13] it ony pleynere telle.

Twelve yeer[14] in that lond he dwelled, and more
To knowe her langage what it might mene,
Til he of her[15] usage had fully the lore,
Wyth ful moche[16] stodye, tary, and tene ;
Ful[17] longe it was er he myght it sene,
The lyf[18] that Athanas made of this mayde ;
But at the last he cam,[19] as it is sayde,

---

[1] *martyr.*] So also MS. Rawl.; martir. Ar. 168.

[2] *hey*] hye. Ar. 168; hy. MS. Rawl.

[3] *Til oon.*] Till on. Ar. 168; Tyl on. MS. Rawl.

[4] *Greu*] Grew. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[5] *lyf*] liffe. Ar. 168; lyff. MS. Rawl.

[6] *lyf . . . . eende.*] liffe and also of hir ende. Ar. 168; lyffe, and also of here heende. MS. Rawl.

[7] *Hough*] Who. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[8] *lyf*] liff. Ar. 168; lyffe. MS. Rawl.

[9] *hir goostily.*] our gostely. Ar. 168; oure gostly. MS. Rawl.

[10] *keende*] kende. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[11] *seker*] sikir. Ar. 168; sekere. MS. Rawl.

[12] *weende*] wende. Ar. 168. MS. Rawl.

[13] *knowe*] know. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[14] *Twelve yeer*] Twelf ȝere. Ar. 168; Twelve ȝere. MS. Rawl.

[15] *her.*] here. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[16] *ful moche*] fulle muche. Ar. 168; ful moch. MS. Rawl.

[17] *Ful.*] So also MS. Rawl.; Fulle. Ar. 168.

[18] *lyf*] liffe. Ar. 168; lyff. MS. Rawl.

[19] *last he cam.*] So also MS. Rawl.; laste he came. Ar. 168.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

There as he fonde[1] it from mynde al and deed,[2]
For heretykes[3] that were tho[4] in that londe
Hadden[5] brent the bookys, bothe the leef and the breed,[6]
As many as thei sought[7] and that tyme fonde.
But, blyssed[8] be God,[9] of that[10] hey sonde,[11]
This book founde[12] thei nought[13] in no maner wyse:[14]
God wolde not[15] that the noble[16] servyse[17]

Of His oune[18] mayde shuld be thus foryete.[19]
An hundyr yeer[20] after[21] it was and more
That this Arrek this newe werk had gete
Fro the tyme of Athanas, for so moche[22] before
Was he hens passed[23] and ded and forlore,[24]
As fro every tunge bothe his book[25] and he,
Of every man and woman in that cuntre;

---

[1] *fonde.*] So also MS. Rawl.; founde. Ar. 168.

[2] *deed*] ded. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[3] *heretykes*] eritykes. Ar. 168; heretykys. MS. Rawl.

[4] *tho.*] So also Ar. 168; thoo. MS. Rawl.

[5] *Hadden.*] Had. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[6] *bookys . . . breed*] bokis both the leff and the brede. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[7] *sought.*] So also Ar. 168; soute MS. Rawl.

[8] *blyssed*] blissid. Ar. 168; blyssyd. MS. Rawl.

[9] *God.*] So also Ar. 168; Godd. MS. Rawl.

[10] *that.*] So also Ar. 168; hys. MS. Rawl.

[11] *hey sonde*] hy sonde. Ar. 168; hye sonde. MS. Rawl.

[12] *book found*] boke fonde. Ar. 168; boke founde. MS. Rawl.

[13] *nought*] noght. Ar. 168; not. MS. Rawl.

[14] *wyse.*] So also MS. Rawl; wise. Ar. 168.

[15] *not.*] So also MS. Rawl.; noght. Ar. 168.

[16] *noble.*] So also Ar. 168; nobyll. MS. Rawl.

[17] *servyse.*] So also MS. Rawl.; service. Ar. 168.

[18] *oune.*] So also Ar. 168; owne. MS. Rawl.

[19] *foryete.*] So also Ar. 168; forȝete. MS. Rawl.

[20] *hundyr yeer*] hundred yere. Ar. 168; hundred ȝere. MS. Rawl.

[21] *after.*] So also Ar. 168; aftyr. MS. Rawl.

[22] *moche.*] So also Ar. 168; meche. MS. Rawl.

[23] *passed.*] So also Ar. 168; pased. MS. Rawl.

[24] *lore.*] So also MS. Rawl.; lor. Ar. 168.

[25] *fro every tunge bothe his book*] from every tonge bothe his boke. Ar. 168; from every tunge both hys boke. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

And be this preest[1] was it onto Englishmen[2]
Isought[3] and founde and brought onto[4] londe,
Hid al in counseylle[5] among nyne or ten,
It cam but seeldom onto ony mannes honde,[6]
Eke whan[7] it kam it was not undirstonde,
Because, as I seyde, ryght[8] for the derk lange;[9]
Thus was thy lyf,[10] lady, kepte in cage.[11]

Neverthelasse he did moche thing[12] thertoo,
This noble preest,[13] this very good man:
He hath led us the weye,[14] and the dore[15] ondoo,
That meche[16] the beter[17] we may and we can
Folwe the steppys;[18] for, thou[19] he sore ran,
We may hym overtake wyth[20] help and grace,[21]
Whiche that this lady shal[22] us purchace.[23]

---

[1] *be this preest*] bi this preeste. Ar. 168; be this preste. MS. Rawl.

[2] *onto Englishmen.*] So also MS. Rawl.; into Englischmen. Ar. 168.

[3] *sought.*] So also Ar. 168; soute. MS. Rawl.

[4] *onto*] unto. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[5] *Hid al in counseylle*] Hyde alle in counseille. Ar. 168; Hyd in alle counseylle. MS. Rawl.

[6] *seldom . . . honde*] seldom unto ony mans hande. Ar. 168; seldom onto any mannes honde. MS. Rawl.

[7] *whan.*] So also Ar. 168; qwan. MS. Rawl.

[8] *seyde ryght*] said righte. Ar. 168; sayd ryght. MS. Rawl.

[9] *lange*] langage. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[10] *thy lyf*] thi liff. Ar. 168; thy lyffe. MS. Rawl.

[11] *kepte in cage*] kept alle in cage. Ar. 168; kept all in cage. MS. Rawl.

[12] *Neverthelasse . . thing*] Neverthelesse he dide miche thinge. Ar. 168; Nevyrthelasse he did mych thynge. MS. Rawl.

[13] *preest*] preste. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[14] *led the weye*] lede the way. Ar. 168; led be the wey. MS. Rawl.

[15] *dore.*] So also Ar. 168; doore MS. Rawl.

[16] *meche.*] So also MS. Rawl.; myche. Ar. 168.

[17] *beter.*] So also Ar. 168; bettyr. MS. Rawl.

[18] *Folwe the steppys*] Folow the steppes. Ar. 168; Folow hys steppes. MS. Rawl.

[19] *for thou*] for thoutȝ. Ar. 168; thowte. MS. Rawl.

[20] *wyth*] with. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[21] *grace.*] So also Ar. 168; with grace. MS. Rawl.

[22] *shal*] shalle. Ar. 168; schalle. MS. Rawl.

[23] *purchace.*] So also Ar. 168; purchasse. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

He is nough[1] ded, this good[2] man, this preest,[3]
He deyed[4] at Lynne, many yeer[5] agoo;
He is ny fro meende wyth more and wyth leest:[6]
Yet[7] in his deying[8] and in his grete[9] woo
This lady, as thei seye, appered hym ontoo;[10]
She bad hym be glad in most goodly wyse;[11]
She wolde reward hym, she seyde,[12] his servyse.[13]

Of the West[14] Cuntre it semeth that he was,
Be his maner of speche, and be his style.[15]
He was somtyme[16] persone of Seynt[17] Pancras,
In the cyte[18] of London, a ful grete while.[19]
He is now above us ful[20] many myle.[21]
He be a mene to Kataryne[22] for us,
And she[23] for us onto[24] oure Lord Jesus,

---

[1] *nough*] now. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[2] *good.*] So also Ar. 168; goode. MS. Rawl.

[3] *preest*] preste. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[5] *deyed*] died. Ar. 168; deyid. MS. Rawl.

[4] *yeer.*] So also Ar. 168; ȝere. MS. Rawl.

[6] *ny . . . . leest*] nye fro mynde with more and with leste. Ar. 168; ny from mynde with more and with leeste. MS. Rawl.

[7] *Yet.*] So also Ar. 168; ȝet. MS. Rawl.

[8] *deying.*] So also MS. Rawl; diyng. Ar. 168.

[9] *his grete*] So also Ar. 168; hys grett. MS. Rawl.

[10] *seye, appered hym ontoo.*] sey, apered him unto. Ar. 168; sey, appered hym unto. MS. Rawl.

[11] *hym . . . . . wyse.*] hym be glade in moste godely wise. Ar. 168; hym be gladde in most goodely wyse. MS. Rawl.

[12] *seyde*] said. Ar. 168; sayd. MS. Rawl.

[13] *servyse*] service. Ar. 168; servyce. MS. Rawl.

[14] *West.*] So also MS. Rawl.; Weste. Ar. 168.

[15] *maner of . . . . style*] maner speche, and bi his stile. Ar. 168; maner speche, and be hys style. MS. Rawl.

[16] *somtyme*] sumtyme. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[17] *Seynt*] Seint. Ar. 168; Sent. MS. Rawl.

[18] *cyte*] cite. Ar. 168; cete. MS. Rawl.

[19] *ful grete while*] fulle grete wile. Ar. 168; full grete whyle. MS. Rawl.

[20] *ful.*] So also MS. Rawl.; fulle. Ar. 168.

[21] *myle.*] So also Ar. 168; a myle. MS. Rawl.

[22] *Kataryne.*] So also Ar. 168; Kateryne. MS. Rawl.

[23] *she.*] So also Ar. 168; sche. MS. Rawl.

[24] *us onto*] us alle unto. Ar. 168; us alle onto. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

After[1] hym next[2] I take upon me
  To translate this story and set it more pleyne;
Trostyng on other men, that here charyte[3]
  Shal helpe me in this cas[4] to wryte[5] and to seyn.
  God[6] sende me part[7] of that Hevenly reyn[8]
That Apollo[9] bar aboute[10] and eke Seynt[11] Poule.
It maket[12] vertu to growe in mannys[13] soule.

If ye wil wete[14] what that I am,
  Myn[15] cuntre is Northfolk, of the toune[16] of Lynne;
Oute[17] of the world, to my profite, I cam
  Onto[18] the brotherhode[19] wiche[20] I am inne.
  God[21] yave[22] me grace nevere for to blynne
To folwe[23] the steppes of my faderes[24] before,
Wiche[25] to the reule[26] of Austyn[27] were swore.

---

[1] *After.*] So also Ar. 168; Aftyr. MS. Rawl.

[2] *hym next*] him nexte. Ar. 168; hyme nexte. MS. Rawl.

[3] *Trostyng . . . . charyte.*] So also MS. Rawl.; Tristynge . . . charite. Ar. 168.

[4] *cas.*] So also Ar. 168; caas. MS. Rawl.

[5] *shal . . . . wryte*] shalle . . . . wrigh. Ar. 168; schall . . . . . wryght. MS. Rawl.

[6] *God.*] So also Ar. 168; Godd. MS. Rawl.

[7] *part.*] So also MS. Rawl.; parte. Ar. 168.

[8] *reyn*] reyne. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[9] *Apollo*] [Apollos]. So also MS. Rawl.; Appolio. Ar. 168.

[10] *aboute.*] So also Ar. 168; abowte. MS. Rawl.

[11] *Seynt*] Seint. Ar. 168; Sent. MS. Rawl.

[12] *maket*] makith. Ar. 168; maketh. MS. Rawl.

[13] *mannys*] man's. Ar. 168; mannes. MS. Rawl.

[14] *If ye will wete*] ʒif ye wille wit. Ar. 168; If ʒe wyll wete. MS. Rawl.

[15] *myn*] my. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[16] *Northfolk, of the toune.*] So also Ar. 168; Northfolke of the town. MS. Rawl.

[17] *Oute.*] So also Ar. 168; Owt. MS. Rawl.

[18] *onto.*] So also MS. Rawl.; unto. Ar. 168.

[19] *brotherhode*] So also Ar. 168; brotherhod. MS. Rawl.

[20] *wiche*] which. Ar. 168; whech. MS. Rawl.

[21] *God.*] So also Ar. 168; Godd. MS. Rawl.

[22] *yave*] gife. Ar. 168; ʒeve. MS. Rawl.

[23] *folwe*] folow. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[24] *faderes*] fadirs. Ar. 168; faders. MS. Rawl.

[25] *Wiche*] Whiche. Ar. 168; Wheche. MS. Rawl.

[26] *reule.*] So also Ar. 168; rewle. MS. Rawl.

[27] *Austyn*] Austeyn. Ar. 168; Austen. MS. Rawl.

Prologue to the Life of S. Katharine.

Thus endeth[1] the Prolog[2] off this holy[3] mayde.
Ye[4] that reed[5] it, pray for hem alle
That to this werk either travayled or payde,[6]
That from here synnes with grace thei may falle;
To be redy to God[7] whan that He wil calle;[8]
With Hem[9] in Hevene to drynke[10] and to dyne,
Thurgh the preyer[11] of this Mayde Kataryne.[12]

---

[1] *endeth*] endith. Ar. 168; endyth. MS. Rawl.

[2] *Prolog.*] So also Ar. 168; Prologe. MS. Rawl.

[3] *holy.*] So also MS. Rawl.; holi. Ar. 168.

[4] *Ye.*] So also Ar. 168; ȝe. MS. Rawl.

[5] *reed*] rede. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[6] *payde.*] So also MS. Rawl.; paied. Ar. 168.

[7] *God.*] So also Ar. 168; Godd. MS. Rawl.

[8] *whan that He wil calle*] when He wille calle. Ar. 168; whan He wyll calle. MS. Rawl.

[9] *Hem*] Hym. Ar. 168; MS. Rawl.

[10] *drynke.*] So also MS. Rawl.; drink. Ar. 168.

[11] *Thurgh the preyer*] Thorough the prayer. Ar. 168; Thorow the prayere. MS. Rawl.

[12] *Katarync.*] So also Ar. 168; Kateryne. MS. Rawl.

APPENDIX IV.

A FRAGMENT

OF

CAPGRAVE'S "GUIDE TO THE ANTIQUITIES OF ROME."

THIS curious fragment has been bound up as fly-leaves with the two MSS. of Capgrave's Commentary on the Creeds. The leaves thus singularly preserved are only four in number, the first eight pages being in the All Souls' MS. (which is Capgrave's autograph copy), the remainder in the Balliol MS. Though they are now (as we have called them) "fly-leaves," it is quite clear that they have been glued down to the boards by way of lining, and have been afterwards removed. In consequence of this some of the words have been a little mutilated.

There can be no doubt that these remains constitute a part of an original work by John Capgrave. It is true that no notice of his having ever written anything of the kind occurs in the lists of his works which have come down to us; but these, though very copious, are confessedly imperfect, and in almost every instance end with the words "Atque alia plura scripsit," or words of the same import. On the other hand, as we find from the Epistle Dedicatory prefixed to his Commentary on the Acts of the Apostles, that he spent some time in Rome, and that he was in bad health while he was there, we are not exceeding the limits of probability in suggesting that some of this time was spent in preparing an account of the antiquities and curiosities around him.

Again, the handwriting is identical with that of the English Chronicle and the other works of Capgrave of which we possess the autographs. It is, indeed, less regular, but this, if it proved anything, would seem to indicate that these fragments were only first and rough copies, the probability of which the universal carelessness of the spelling, and the incompleteness of many of the sentences, certainly seem to strengthen.

Again, it is impossible to read these fragments after having read the English Chronicle, without perceiving the great similarity of style and expression which exists between them, and which would of itself be almost sufficient to decide the question.[1]

These facts justify, in our opinion, the inference we have drawn, that the following remains form part of a lost work by the Author of the present Chronicle.

---

[1] Especially compare the account given in these fragments of the manner in which Athens was saved from being destroyed by Alexander the Great, with the relation of the same story in the Chronicle of England. See page 51.

A FRAGMENT, ETC.

. . . . for the stones were sawen in divers formes, and couched in the walle with cyment, as men may ȝit se in divers cherches in Rome.

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

Bot this werke of this place, and many mo, is distroyed, either be conqueste of the cite, or els be chaunge onto the better use.

Within this tome was a temple, whiche thai say as of richesse was worthe the thirde parts of the worlde, of golde, silver, perle, and precious stonys; in whiche Virgille made a mervelous crafte, that of every region of the world stode an ymage, and alle of tre and in his hande a litille belle. As ofte as any of these regiones was in purpos to rebelle agayne the grete mageste of Rome, anone this ymage that was assigned to that region shulde knylle his belle. Thanne was there in the myddes of the house, alle above, a knyt made of bras and a hors of the same metalle, whiche, evenen anonone as thus belle was ronge, turned hym with a spere to that coste of the erde where thees puple dwelt that purposed thus to rebelle. Thus aspied of the prestes, whiche be certeyne companyes were assigned to wetch and wayte on this ordinauns, anone alle the knyghode of Rome, writh he

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

legions, made hem redi to ride and redresse thus rebellion; the image turned his back to the grete god Jubiter, that stode in the myddes.

They enquired of Virgile who longe this werke schulde endure, and he answerde,—"Till a may[de] bare a childe." Wherfore thai concluded that it shuld stand ever. In the Nativite of Criste, thai say, alle this brake, and many other thinges in the cyte, to shew that the Lorde of alle lordes shuld come.

Men may have mervelle that Virgille shuld have sweche knowinge of the mysteries of our Feith. And I answere therto that the Holy Host putte His ȝiftes not only in gode men of trew beleve, bot eke in other, as it is saide of Cayphas prephicied of Cristes deth.

The Evangelist seith eke of him this:—"These wordes sey he not of hymselff, bot because he was bisshop for that ȝere, therfore he prephicied."[1]

Neverthelasse, in Virgille bokes be fonde open testimonies of giftes, suche as it is conteyned in a laten boke, that a woman called Proba[2] gadered out of Virgil's vers. The III. vers folowing compled she oute of the friste Boke Eneydos, and VII. Boke:—[3]

"Virginis hos habitumque gerens, mirabile dictu.
Nec generis nostri nec sanguinis edunt.
Seraque terrifici cecinerunt omina vates."

---

[1] S. John, xi. 57.

[2] Proba Valeria Falconia. See "Excerptum e Maronis carminibus ad testimonium Veteris Novique Testamenti opusculum, cum Præfat. Julii Roscii Hortani." 8vo. Cologne, 1601.

[3] *the friste Boke Eneydos, and VII. Boke.*] This is not strictly the fact. The first of the three lines is partly from Æn. I., line 315.

"Virginis os habitumque gerens,
et virginis arma."

It will be seen that the end of the line does not correspond with that given in the text. Of the two other lines, the former is line 45 of Eclog. VIII., but imperfectly quoted. The original is as follows:—

"Nec generis nostri puerum, nec
sanguinis, edunt."

The latter is from Æneid V., line 524, and is quoted correctly.

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

These verss mene thus in oure tonge a suppose:—

"A woman beringe a virginalle mouth and a virginalle habite, mervel be to sey,
Neyther of oure kinrede, ne of oure blode, hath a bore a childe.
The late coming of this dredfulle Lorde songe the former prophete."

This same Capitol had many templis and housis hanging upon him, as it is sene. For in the heyth was above temple contrite to Jubiter and Juno; a litille benethe, another tempil, cleped Vestalle, in whiche maydens dwelt in clennesse in chastite, as I declared before. In another temple, that was sumtyme named of the lady Rese, was a solempne chaier, in whiche the principalle bysshop of alle thir tempelis, the day of his entre, shulde be intronyzid, in which chayre thai sette Julius Cesar whan he was frist receved, and that was the VI. day of March. Alle this, as it semyth, was on the este side of the Capitolle. And on the weste side, to the mercats side, was temple dedicate to Mynerve; and faste by a tome in whiche thai killed the noble man after rehersed, which hight Julius Cesar.

Alle the places ar ny chaunged or distroyed be divers men of other londes that have wonne Rome often tyme.

And for the Romaynes seye that thay seide nevyr well, never stode in prosperite sith Cristendome came; therfore will I shew hem that other nationes conquered hem longe before Christe was incarnate. The Chronicles of Grete Bretayne lye now nexte hand, whiche is cleped Englond; therfore oute of tho wille I take my testimonye.[1]

---

[1] See Geoff. Monm. Bk. iii. ch. 8, 9. He does not, however, enter minutely into the details here given. Capgrave does not allude to the matter in his own Chronicle.

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

Belinus and Brennis were to kinges of this londe, reigninge togeder in that same tyme that Hester was wedded to Assure. These to brethren wonne a grete party of Rome, but principalle was Brennis, whiche made the cytes in Lumbardy, both Mylane and Pavye. And afterwarde these to bretherine held a grete batayle with the Romaynes at a flode of this side of Rome called Albula, where the Romaynes fled, and thay folowed, and toke alle this cyte save this Capitole, whiche had be take had not gander, with crie, awaked the kepers.

Of this story not only oure Chronicles bere witnes, but the Chronicles of Itaile, that Godfray of Viterbe, in his boke whiche he clepith Pantheon;[1] and so as Pompeius in his boke eke used, bisshop of Goay in his boke of Chronicles; also Seynt Ambrose,[2] Bisshop of Melane, in his boke called Epistolarum, seith onto Rome that thai were more bounded to do worschip unto her ges than to here goddes, for the gander was waking and warned hem whan her goddis slepte. And in verri sothe, whanne this Brennis had receved a grete summe of golde and was goe, the fonned peple, defouled in erroure, make a gander of white marbille, and dede to it worschip as to God. The hed of it is broke, bot the body lyeth ȝit hole at a chirche dorre, which thai clepe Sanctus Nicholaus in Carcere.

---

[1] See Pistorii Scriptores Germanici, i. 199-201.

[2] "Nam de Senonibus quid loquar, quos, Capitolii secreta penetrantes, Romanæ reliquiæ non tulissent, nisi eos pavido anser strepitu providisset. En quales templa Romana præsules habent! Ubi tunc erat Jupiter? An in ansere loquebatur?" See Divi Ambrosii Epist. Lib. v. Ep. xxxi.

OF THE TO HORS OF MARBILLE, AND TO NAKED MEN CALLED THE CABALLIS.

CAPITULUM XII.

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

Of the Caballis be many straunge tales. Sum sey thay were geauntes; sum sey thai were philosophers. To grete horsis ther be, and to naked men, and standinge be hem on the other side of the strete sitteth a woman, wonde alle aboute with a serpent, and a faire couch of purphir stonde before hir.

This is the treuthe of this mater, as Chronicles telle. In the tyme of Tyberus, other emperoure come to Rome and naked men and philosophers, bot yonge of age, on of hem hight Pratellus; the other hight Sibia. These men were brought onto the emperoure, for the peple dempt be here straunge arai that thay knewe straunge thinges. The emperoure enquired of hem what was cause of hir comynge, and why thay wente naked. Thay answerde that as the schappe of hir body was open to alle men because of hir nakedness, so alle the pryvy of the worlde thinges were open unto her knowinge. "Calle you your councelle into the pryvy chambir," (this seide thei onto the emperoure,) "and comond unto hem what mater thou wilt as pryvyly as thou can, and we shalle telle the afterwarde what was saide fro the moste onto the leste.[1]" The emperoure assayed that thai saide, and

---

[1] *the leste.*] These are the last words of the portion preserved in the All Souls' MS. The remainder is from the Balliol MS.

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

he founde alle thinge sothe that was promised. Tho hight he hem grete richesse, and had hem in full grete richesse, and reverence; and thai refused alle, and desired of hym no other thinge bot that this memorialle shuld be made in her name.

Or we procede here ferther in oure mater we wille satysfie the resones of men that wille aske in what wyse these men myght have his pryvy connynge: and we answer therto that thai had this conning, as is suppose, for innocens. For thai that walked so naked had litille appetite unto worldly gode, and were full vertuous eke in ther manners wherfore oure Lorde liste to rewarde hym with sum specialle ȝift.

I suppose eke that thai were of a nacione whiche be cleped Gymnosopists,[1] of whom we rede, in the gestis of Grete Alisaunder, that after he herde the same of hem, he wolde algate of hem whom he founde alle naked, man and woman, dwellinge in caves in the erde, ever preysinge God, ever doing wronge, lyvynge withouten striffe, withouten debate. Here lyvynge plesed this Kinge so welle that he comaunded hem to aske of hem what thay wolde have, and he shulde graunte hem. They prayed hem to ȝeve hem immortalite. And he answerde,—that thinge whiche he had not hymselve, nor might have, who shalle he ȝyve it unto other men? Tho thay undyrtoke of his pride, monslaught, ovyrridinge of the cuntre and meche other thinge; and he passed from hem gretly meved of hire innocent lyvynge. Alle thus sey we for to preve, be likenes, that these to men were off this nacione.

Therfore stode thei naked for thay knew many pryvy thinges, as iff a man se an other naked he

---

[1] *Gymnosopists*] Gnynesopists. MS.

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

shalle have mo sekernes of hym thanne iff he se hym yclad. That thei halde up her handes and her armes, it betokenyth that thei coude telle of thinges whiche shulle falle afterward.

The grete hors that trede so sore upone the ȝerde betokenyth the princes and potestates that have goververnauns of this worlde, over whome stode these naked, more for to signifie that wisdome is more of honoure thanne power.

For in Kinge Alisaunder liff is a story fulle juste to thus purpos, whiche tellith that the kinge was in wille for to distroye a cyte, a man and woman, walle and hous, — the cyte hight Attenes. And whanne he was come thidere with alle his hoste, he founde sittinge in the sunne and elde philiphosere, called a Maximenes, whiche had sumtyme be his master. The Kinge supposed as it was that the cyte had sent hym for to gete grace of the Kinge; and anone as he say hym, with a grete ire and a grete othe he seide these wordis, — "Be the hye Providens of God above, whatsoevyr thow aske of me this day it shalle not be had." And the philosophire answerde hym and saide, — "Now be that same Providens whiche thou haste name, I charge the that thou lette not tylle this cyte be distroid." "O," quoth Alisaundere, "ever is the meystiris above his disciple." Tho was the cyte[1] and the Kinges ire softed.

These to naked men, whos memorialle we have now in hande to descryve, they prophicied of the Chirche, and eke of the baptym: and, therfore, in testimonie of this profecie, there sitteth a woman wounde with a serpent on a grete vesselle byfore hire of a porphyr stone. This woman wounde with a serpent betokeneth the soules whiche were in the

---

[1] *the cyte.*] A word—probably "saved"—is evidently omitted here.

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

devels daungere with erroure in her feith and cursed customes in hir maneris.

The faire vesselle of purphor stone betokenyth the baptime in whiche the shulde be wasshed fro alle the grete perellis. This same exposiosioune is touched in the Cronicles of Rome, and not newly feyned be us.

OF THE HORS OF BRAS, AND THE RIDER, THAT STANT AT LATERNE.

XIIII.

Now of the hors that stant at Laterne, and of the after[1] that is upon hym shal be oure processe. For sum men say that it was made in worschip of Grete Constantine, but it is not so. Frist will I declare onto you the shappe of the ymage and aftere telle the story, what he was, and why was he sette there.

Of grete hors of brasse is there of fulle faire shappe whiche was sumtyme gilte, and a man eke of the same metalle sittinge on his bak, withouten sadelle; a ringe boundyn undir the hors fote, and a birde sittinge on the hors hede.

This ymage was sette there for his cause. In that tyme that Consules governed Rome, befelle that a Kinge came oute of the este, with a grete strength of men, and beseged Rome;—in the tyme of Consules, seide I, for Rome was first governed by Kynges, and

---

[1] *after.*] There is evidently a blunder here. The word is clearly "after," and corresponds in the form of the letters with the same word which occurs a few lines below. It would seem to be a mistake for "rider."

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

thanne be to Consules whiche were chosen every ȝere; and thanne be emperoure, of whiche Julius Cesar was the first. So, as I seide, in that same tyme that Counselours governed the cyte,—in whos tyme specially finde I not,—came these Kinges and beseged Rome.

The cyte was gretly frayde of this Kinge, and coude not fynde a meyne whow thay shulde a voyde hym. Than was there in Rome a man of grete strength,—sum bokes sey that he was a knight, sum a swyer, and sum that he was bot of the low degre in the peple, whiche is to say, in her langage, "Rusticus,"—in oure, "a chorle."

A bolde man he was, strong and wise.

Happed hym to be in the Capitole where the states and thee peple treted what cheyvysaunce thai myght make to voide this grete daunger. He stode up amonge hem and saide:—"What wolde he ȝeve a man that shulde delyver you from this distresse?"

The Senade answerde,—"Lete that man apere, and aske what he wille, and he shalle have it."

"I wille," seide this man, "take this ornay[1] upon me, so that ye graunte me XXX. sextaries of golde, and eke make a memorialle in myne name, hors and man liche as I wille ride alle: alle this made shalle be of bras, and gilte above oure beste wise."

The Senate graunted hym to fullfille alle his desire.

Than seide he onto hem:—"At mydnyght loke ye ther be redy alle in dykis and cavernes in the grounde, and in the arches withinne the walles, and whatsoever I bid you do, loke ye fullfille it." They consented to all that was seide.

At mydnyght this man lepe upon a grete hors and a stronge, and rode forth into the feld with a sithe in his bak, as thouȝ he wolde goe to mowe. Whanne he

---

[1] *ornay.*] This is a mistake for "jornay." See the Glossary at the end of this volume.

Fragments of a Guide to Rome, by John Capgrave.

come in the hoste he hoved and taried tille the Kinge had slepte his slepe and rost and wente onto a tre to a voide the berdone of his wombe. Certene knyghtes and swyres that were kepers for the body fro feyre and sey this man thus arayed liche a charle, riding withoute a sadille, supposed not he had be of Rome, bot rather prive labourer of her ouyne party, and this thei cried onto hym,—"Be ware, carle, what thou do; come not so nye the Kinge. Thou shal be hanged and . . . . . *Cetera desunt.*

APPENDIX V.

NOTICES OF THE AUSTIN FRIARY AT LYNN.

History of the Austin Friary at Lynn.

THE house of the Austin Friars at Lynn,[1] of which Capgrave was long an inmate, stood in the northern part of the town in Hogman's Lane, otherwise called Hopman's Way. Capgrave himself gives us its his-

---

[1] See Tanner's "Notitia Monastica" (Nasmith's Edition):—"Norfolk, XLI. 6. Austin Friers, Lynne. Here was in this town a House of Austin Friers, in the reign of K. Edward I. which was granted, 36, Hen. VI. to John Eyer. It was valued but at 1*l.* 4*s.* 6*d.* per ann."

In "Dugdale's Monasticon," (vol. vi. p. 1594; London, 1830,) is the following notice of this House:—

"The Augustine Friars settled here in the beginning of Edward the First's reign, as appears by a writ 'Ad quod damnum' for a messuage in Lynne, granted to them by Margaret de Southmere, Inquis. 22, Ed. I. n. 112.

"This Monastery stood in the northern part of the town, in Hogman's Lane, alias Hopman's Way. Besides other grants they had, 6. Rich. II., a Patent for an aqueduct to be made by them from Gaywoode. In the 7th Henry IV. they had a Patent to enlarge their manse, and 1 Hen. V. a Patent for certain messuages granted to them. This house was surrendered to the King by the Prior and four brethren, 30th Sept. 1539. 30th Hen. VIII. to John Eyre . . . . . The buildings of this Convent were sufficiently extensive in 1498 to receive King Henry VIIth, his Queen, his Mother, the Prince of Wales, and a numerous retinue during their visit to Lynne. The site is now in possession of various owners."

History of the Austin Friary at Lynn.

tory. It was founded, he says, in the twenty-third year of the reign of King Edward the First; at least, the monks then took possession of their new abode, the first grants of land having, of course, been made, and the erection of the buildings commenced, at a period somewhat earlier. The original site was given by Margaret de Suthmere, a widow, in the twenty-third year of Edward the First; it was one hundred feet in length, but only twenty-four feet in breadth. Not long after, however, this inconveniently narrow piece of land was considerably increased by the gifts of Humfrey de Wykyn,[1] Robert de Wykyn,[2] Thomas de Lexham,[3] and other benefactors.[1] Although at the Dissolution this Monastery was valued at only 1*l.* 4*s.* 6*d.* per an-

---

[1] *Humfrey de Wykyn.*] See Calendar. Inquis. ad quod damnum, 3 Ed. III. Num. 36, page 290, "Humfredus de Wykene pro Priore de Lenne Episcopi.

"De una placea terræ ibidem, manso Fratrum Sancti Augustini contigua, continente 154 pedes in longitudine et 48 in latitudine."

[2] *Robert de Wykyn.*] See Calendar Inquis. ad quod damnum, 12 Ed. III. Num. 4, page 303.

"Robertus de Wykyn.

"Dedit Priori de Lenn Episcopi unum messuagium cum pertinentibus ad elargationem mansi sui."

[3] The following list of Benefactions is taken from Tanner's Notit. Monast., verified by reference to the "Calendarium Inquisitionum post mortem sive Escætarum," published by the Record Commission in 1808, and the "Calendarium Rotulorum Patentium," published in 1802.

These notices (though, indeed, they do not bear immediately on Capgrave's private history) are valuable as illustrating and completing the account he himself gives us of the House over which he presided, and of which he was so distinguished an ornament.

"Escæt. Norf., 22 Ed. I. n., 112. pro mess. in Lenne, ex dono Marg. de Suthmere. [See Rec. Com. Ed., vol. i. page 122.] Pat. 23 Ed. I. 12. [See Rec. Com. Ed. page 57, *b.*]"

"Escæt., in Norf. 33 Ed. I., n. 110; pro mess. in Lenn ex dono Thomas de Lexham. Pat. 34 Ed. I. M. [31.] [See page 666 of Rec. Com. Ed. In the Calend. Inquis. post mortem, i. 200, is the following:—

"Thomas de Lexham pro priore Sancti Augustini de Lenn. Lenn unum messuagium cum pertinentibus.]"

"Escæt. Norf., 1 Ed. II., n. 82. Pat. 4 Ed. II. p. 2. m. 14.—pro manso elargando. [See page 72, *b.* of Cal. Rot. Pat.—Blomefield, in his History of Norfolk, refers this Pat. to the grant of Thomas de Lexham.]

"Pat. 3 Ed. III., p. [1] M. (26 vel)

History of the Austin Friary at Lynn.

---

27. ['Pro Fratribus S. Augustini de Lenne Episcopi.' — Rec. Com. Ed.]

"Pat. 12 Ed. III., p. 3. M. [15.] ['Pro Fratribus S. Augustini de Yarmouth et de Lynn.' — Rec. Com. Ed.]

"Pat. 38 Ed. III., p. 1. M. 16 (vel 17). ['Pro Priore S. Augustini de Lenne.'—Rec. Com. Ed.]

"Pat. 6 Ric. II., p. 2. M. 23. de aqueductu faciendo a Gaywood.

"Pat. 7 Hen. IV., p. 2. M. 36. ['to enlarge their manse.'—Blomefield.]

"Pat. 1 Hen. V., p. 1. M. 17. ['Pro Fratribus S. Augustini de Lenne Episcopi.'—Rec. Com. Ed.]

"In volumine cartarum mearum originalium, notato Preston, n. 18, Cartam Thomæ Episc. Norwic. conced. tenementum in Lenn Priori et Fratribus Heremitis Ord. S. Augustini, dat. 1364. Ibid. n. 124. Licentiam R. Ed. III. anno 38. quod Thomas Drewe, &c., dare possint quinque messuagia contigua, pro manso Fratrum istorum elargando." This charter is given at full in the following note, extracted from Blomefield's History.

[1] The following interesting records are extracted from Blomefield's History of Norfolk :— "Licence was granted by King Edward III. to Thomas Drew, William Bittering, John de Conteshale, and John Drew, of Lenn-Bishop, that they might give and assign five messuages in Lenn, adjoining to the manse of the Prior and Brethren and Hermits of the Order of St. Augustine of Lenne, to the said Prior, etc., for the enlargement of their manse, on condition that the Reverend Father, Thomas, Bp. of Norwich, of whom the said messuages are held, (as appears from the Inquisition of William de Middleton, late Eschætor of Norfolk,) will grant licence to the said Prior, etc. And the said King gave license to Robert de Cokesford, Agnes his wife, and to Rich. de Honton and Alice his wife, that they may give one messuage in Lynn, (not held of us, as appears by the Inquisition of Roger de Wolfreton, Eschætor of Norfolk,) to the Bishop and his successors, on the same condition of granting licence to the Prior, etc.; of receiving the aforesaid five messuages of Thomas Drew, etc. Teste Rege. Dated at Westminster, the 6th day of May, in the 38th Edward III.

"Trin. Term., 38 of Edw. III. Rotul. 336, in dorso.

"Sciant p'sentes et futuri quod nos Tho., p'missione divina, N. Ep. de consensu capit. nri. N. concessimus et conf. Priori et Frat. Heremitarum de Ordine S. Aug. ville nre. Lenne, quod ten. cum p'tin. ubi eccl'ia cum manso eorum scituat. in villa nra. p'dca qd. totaliter est de fœdo nro. p'ut jacet i't tenem. qd. quond. fuit Tho. de Rigges et commun. fletam. E prate Austr. e dict. frat. ib. et ten. Margar. Folkard et Margariæ sororis ej. et ten. qd. a Joh'is Costyn, et ten. Ric. de Dokkyng

History of the Austin Friary at Lynn.

num, it must have been of considerable importance in Capgrave's time, and it is evident from the great number of rare and valuable works referred to in the present Chronicle alone that the Library must have

---

ex Austr. et commun. viam vocat. Hopeman's gate, ex ag. cuj. caput oriental. abut. sup. ten. Hamonis Cokysford, et ten. Adæ de Eggemer, et caput occidentali super commun. viam quæ ducit de Gresmarket usque ad Eccl. S. Nich. dict. ville, hab. et tenend. p'dict. Prior. et frat. et success. de nobis et success. n'rs p. servitium dim. libre pip's ballivo nost. et success. nost. de ville annuat. in p'petuum. Dat 28 Julii, 1364. Consecr. nre. 9°.—38 Ed. III."

The following document refers to the year 1461, that is to say, the third year before the death of Capgrave. It is copied from Blomefield's History of Norfolk, iv. 616:—

"Hæc indentura, facta 12 die mensis Junii, An. Dni. 1461, int. Priorem Conventus Lenne, ord. Fratrum Heremitar. Sci. Augusti. et totum Conventum, ex una parte; et Aliciam, relictam Rici. Cosyn ac Will. Pilton, executores dicti Rici. ex parte altera,— testat. qd. cum p'dci Alicia et Will. concesserent eisdem Fratribus totum proventum de quibusdam tenementis, quorum numerus et scitus expressi sunt in quad. carta amicis d'cor. Fratrum inde confecta.

"Nos d'cus Prior et Convent., partim obligati tali dono, et partim condescentes illor. voto, concessimus pro nobis et success. nostris Missam de Benedicto Nomine Jesu celebrandam omni sexta feria, nisi quando impedimentum nobis acciderit; tunc eam differemus Missam usque in crastinum: tota autem vita dictæ Aliciæ erit Missa illa cum nota, et post decessum ejus sine nota, quam sic servar. perpetuis temporibus p'mittimus. Insuper concedimus quod obitus ejusd. Rici. tenebitur in eccles. nostra Dominica in albis, cum exequiis in Sabbato an. illam Dominicam; atque p. majore securitate, et ut hæc cautius observetur, annotabimus hanc concessionem nostram in Kalendariis nostris ad futuror. memoriam. Insuper qd. calix inscriptis nominibus dictor. Rici. et Aliciæ assignabitur dicto Altari de Nomine Jesu in p'petuum principalit., qd. et, si necesse fuerit, ad alia altaria deserviet . . . . . quor. omn. . . . . . et robur huic parti penes nos remanenti sigilla dictor. Aliciæ et Will. appendent et alteri parti penes ipsos manent. Sigill. Venerabilis Prioris Provincial., et sigill. commune dicti Conv. append. Esch. n. 112." It appears from this document that Capgrave was the Prior of the Convent. The Prior and the Provincial are evidently spoken of as one person.

Blomefield quotes from Holinshed's Chronicle p. 584, and from Bale, 558, a statement to the effect that "in the reign of Henry V. William Wellys or Wallys was a monk here, a learned man and general of his Order : he died in 1421, having written many books." Holinshed's notices of Wallys is

History of the Austin Friary at Lynn.

been of considerable extent.[1] It appears, however, to have fallen off, both in the number of its inmates, and in importance, shortly before the Dissolution. On the thirtieth of September, 1539, when it was surrendered to the King, it consisted of a Prior and only four Brethren; whereas we learn from our historian that in his day it afforded a home to no less than thirty Priests, beside Deacons, Sub-Deacons, and Novices to the number of sixteen.[2]

King Henry the Sixth, in the twenty-fourth year of his reign, visited Lynn, and took the House of Austin Friars there under his especial protection, promising them, as Capgrave relates with no small exultation, that he and his successors on the throne of England would be its founders and patrons, not in name only, but in reality.[3]

---

as follows:—"William Walleis, a Black Friar in Lin, and Provinciall of his order here in England, made a booke of Moralizations upon Ovid's Metamorphoseis, comparable to Postil's upon Æsop's Fables." It will be observed that Capgrave succeeded Wallys in the office of Provincial of their Order.

[1] A glance at the notes of reference in the present volume will suffice to prove this. It will be seen that in the course of a very few pages he makes quotations from Eusebius, S. Jerome, Hugo de Sancto Victore, Fulgentius, S. Augustine, Josephus, Isidore, Bede, and many others.

[2] See Joh. Capgr. *Liber De Illustribus Henricis*, page 139.

[3] *Ibid.* Page 137. "Hic rex devotissimus, in XXIV. anno regni sui, in illa solemni peregrinatione qua Sanctorum memorias visitavit, locum Fratrum Heremitarum Sancti Augustini, in villa de Lenne, in suum accepit favorem, promittens sacerdotibus suis ibidem manentibus, vivo vocis oraculo, quod amodo locus ille sibi, et successoribus suis de corpore suo legitime procreandis, immediate pertineret. Ipse quoque et successores sui, ut præmittitur, fundator sive fundatores non solum nomine essent sed rei veritate. Acta sunt autem hæc in Ad Vincula Sancti Petri, sub anno Domini M.CCCCXLVI."

GLOSSARY.

A GLOSSARY

OF

OBSCURE OR OBSOLETE WORDS AND PHRASES.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

THE object of the present Glossary is twofold,—first, to enable those who read the Chronicle,[1] which it is designed to illustrate, to ascertain at once, without being compelled to refer to rare and scattered Works, the meaning of every vague expression and obscure or obsolete word; secondly, to afford to the philological student, in a concise and convenient form, such information as he may need to enable him to study the Author's style, and the dialectic peculiarities which characterise his Work.

As we have seen, Capgrave was a native of Norfolk, a fact which would naturally lead us to expect that his style would not be altogether free from the peculiarities of diction which prevail in East Anglia, even those of later times. And this we find to be the case, as a comparison of the present Work with the useful Vocabulary of Mr. Forby[1] abundantly proves. It is considered that a very brief sketch of these peculiarities, founded on Mr. Forby's valuable Introduction, and illustrated, whenever necessary, by examples from the present Chronicle, would be serviceable to the philological reader.[2]

---

[1] The Books which have been chiefly used in the preparation of the present Glossary are Nares' Glossary, Skinner's Etymologicon, Richardson's English Dictionary, Way's Edition of the "Promptorium Parvulorum," Forby's Vocabulary of East Anglia, and the Glossary of Junius. Occasional reference has also been made to Halliwell's Dictionary.

OF VOWELS.

I. The Vowel *A*.

1. The short *a* is commonly changed into the short *e*. "In and about the town of Lynn, for instance, it seems as if the short *a* were in all cases to be rejected, and short *e* accepted in its stead."[3] Capgrave is not free from this peculiarity of the tongue of his native town. *Wex* for *wax*, (one of the examples given by Forby) is found in his writings; *gres* for *grass; fer* for *far; wetch* for *watch; ex* for *axe*, &c.

2. The short *a* is also not unfrequently changed into the short *i*. Capgrave, indeed, does not "say *Jinuary* for *January*, and *kin* for *can*;" but we find *hing* for *hang*.

3. When the *a* would be short if it were not lengthened by the *e* final mute, it is continually made short by the omission of the latter,—as *spak* for *spake; cam* for *came*.

---

[1] "The Vocabulary of East Anglia; an attempt to record the vulgar tongue of the Twin Sister Counties of Norfolk and Suffolk, as it existed in the last twenty years of the Eighteenth Century, and still exists." By the Rev. Robert Forby. 2 vols. 8vo. London, 1830.

[2] The words which are quoted as *examples* in the present Introduction will be found in the Glossary. Most of them are not "obscure," and few of them are "obsolete." They are, however, necessarily introduced there as illustrations of the language of Capgrave's Chronicle, and it was thought desirable that the reader should be enabled to find them, by the references to the pages, as in the case of the other words.

[3] See Forby, i. 84.

4. *A* followed by *n* often takes the sound of *o* short—as *lond* for *land; monslaught* for *manslaughter.*

5. The long *a* is often shortened,—as *scarsly* for *scarcely.*

6. It is also lengthened by doubling,—as *graas* for *grace.*

II. THE VOWEL *E.*

1. The short *e* is in many words sounded as short *a,*—as *marchaund* for *merchant; whan* for *when; than* for *then; malt* for *melted.*

2. The short *e* sometimes becomes short *i,*—as *yit* for *yet.*

3. *E* long is sometimes changed into *i* or *y,*—as *cyment* for *cement; sikir* for *secure; distroye* for *destroy.*

III. THE VOWEL *I.*

The short *i* has sometimes the power of short *e,*—as *ded* for *did; prevy* for *privy; rever* for *river; geven* for *given; Letanie* for *Litany; bregge* for *brigg,* i.e. *bridge; meroure* for *mirror.*

IV. THE VOWEL *O.*

1. The long *o* often becomes shortened,—as *hol* for *whole; ston* for *stone.*

2. The short *o* becomes short *u,*—as *funt* for *font; furfetis* for *forfeits; irun* for *iron.*

3. *O* has sometimes the sound of long *e,*—as *meve* for *move; preve* for *prove.*

4. *O* long has sometimes the sound of *oo,*—as *goo* for *go; soo* for *so; rood* for *rode; hoost* for *host; strook* for *stroke; moost* for *most; booth* for *both.*

V. The Vowel *U*.

1. Short *u* is continually changed into short *o*,—as *sondry* for *sundry; porge* for *purge; contre* for *cuntre* (*i. e., country*)*; onmanerly* for *unmannerly.* In Norfolk, even *impossible* and *irregular* are *onpossible* and *onregular.* Unpossible is certainly old English.[1]

2. The *u* is sometimes merely turned into open *a*,—as *brast* for *burst.*

3. The short *u* is sometimes changed into short *e*,—as *renne* for *run.*

4. The short *u* is convertible into short *i* or *y*,—as *hing* for *hung; flix* for *flux; byried* for *buried.*

OF DIPHTHONGS.

I. *Ai.*

Ai followed by *r* is frequently sounded as if there were no *i*,—as *chare* for *chair.*

II. *Ea.*

1. *Ea* is sometimes sounded like short *a*,—as *brak* for *break.*

2. It has the sound of long *e* in some cases in which it ought not to have it,—as *deed* for *dead; leed* for *lead; beer* for *bear.*

3. Also not unfrequently the sound of short *e*,—as *este* for *east; bet* for *beat; pes* for *peace; grettest* for *greatest; berd* for *beard.*

---

[1] "The short *u*, forming with *n* a negative particle at the beginning of compound words, is invariably pronounced *on.*" See Forby, i. 91. Numerous instances of this peculiarity occur in the present volume and are given in the Glossary.

III. *Ee.*

1. *Ee* is sometimes pronounced as long *a*,—as *say* for *see.*

2. Sometimes as short *e*,—as *ges* for *geese; schep* for *sheep.*

IV. *Ei.*

Ei has sometimes the sound of *ai*, or open *a*,—as *thai* for *thei*, i. e. *they.*

V. *Ie.*

Ie has the sound of short *i*, or short *e*,—as *feld* for *field.* "Chaucer has *felde*, a step to *fild*, our word."[1] Capgrave uses *lith* for *lieth; prest* for *priest*, &c.

VI. *Oa.*

Oa is often changed into *o* short,—as *rost* for *roast; cost* for *coast; oth* for *oath.*

VII. *Oo.*

1. *Oo* has the sound of long *o* in many words,—as *hode* for *hood; sone* for *soon; gode* for *good; Rode* for *Rood.*

2. Also of short *o*,—as *toth* for *tooth; non* for *noon; wodis* for *woods.*

VIII. *Ou.*

1. *Ou* is sometimes reduced to short *u*,—as *shuld* for *should.*

2. For such words as *tough* and *rough*, *tow* and *row* are commonly used in Norfolk, and are so spelt in the present Chronicle.

3. *Ou* generally retains its natural pronunciation in words in which it is commonly sounded like *au*,—as *broute* for *brought; nowt* for *naught; sowte* for *sought; thoute* for *thought.*

4. *Foonde* is also used for *found.*

5. And *bond* for *bound.*

---

[1] See Forby, i. 97.

OF IRREGULAR USES OF CONSONANTS.

F for *V*.

This peculiarity is not unfrequently found,—as *gaf* for *gave; forgifnesse* for *forgiveness; drof* for *drove; invasif* for *invasive; natif* for *native.*

W and *V* commutable.

An example of this change is the use of *dowe* for *dove.*

OF CORRUPTIONS.[1]

1. To some words a whole syllable is added, as *fischerer* for *fisher.*

2. In some the first syllable is changed,—as *infortune* for *misfortune; inobediens* for *disobedience.*

3. In some necessary letters are omitted,—as *Christen* for *Christian; chekyr* for *exchequer; postata* for *apostate; prentise* for *apprentice; gan* for *began; noye* for *annoy; jorn* for *adjourn; long* for *belong; prison* for *imprison; prive* for *deprive.*

4. *Portingale* for *Portugal* is probably the only word in the catalogue of miscellaneous words, given by Forby, at page 117, which is used by Capgrave.

GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES.

1. *The Definite Article* [1] is continually omitted, especially after prepositions signifying motion to or from, and before nouns which are the names of familiar things.

“A title under which we must be content to class many perversions and distortions of legitimate words; not mere peculiarities of pronunciation, changes of the organic powers of letters, or of the form of syllables, but more or less of the structure of words.” Forby, i. 109.

[2] Forby, i. 122.

2. *Nouns Substantive.*[1] — "In a very considerable variety of instances," says Forby, "we use the same form to express both numbers;" *e.g.* "*Swine* is pretty generally so used, . . . which is essentially a plural word, of which *sow* is the singular." An example of this use will be found at page 180 of the present volume.

3. *Nouns Adjective.*[2]—Sometimes *er* is changed into *ern*,—as *Esterne* for *Easter.*

Adjectives are often used for the adverbs formed from them,—as *ful* for *fully; trew* for *truly.*

"Duplications and re-duplications . . . of comparatives and superlatives," are often used; *utterest* is substituted for *uttermost* in the present volume, and is evidently formed in the same way as *lesserer, lesserest,* the example given by Forby.

4. *Pronouns.*—The personal pronoun is occasionally used before a verb, even when a noun precedes,—as "the Kyng . . . *he*, &c."

5. *Verbs.*[3]—After a lengthy essay on the irregularities of English verbs, Forby gives a list of certain verbs in which the East Anglians make "an imperfect attempt at perfect regularity." Among these is the word *catched* from *catch.* Capgrave uses this provincialism, and then proceeds to correct himself as follows:—"*catched* or *caute.*"[4]

"Of verbs in *ow* or *owe* some very few are regular, —as *flow, flowed, flowed,* but the greater number follow the analogy of *know, knew, known.*" Capgrave has *ovyrflew* for *overflowed.*

"Some verbs which have a long *i* in the present . . assume a short one in the perfect," as *risen* for *rise;* or a short *e*, as *smet* for *smite.*

---

[1] Forby, i. 124.

[2] *Ibid.*, 132.

[3] *Ibid.*, 141.

[4] See the Glossary.

The word *give* is very irregular: *gaf* and *gove*, or *gov*, are frequently used.

6. *Participles.*[1]—The final "*g*" is often mute,—as *songen* for *singing*.

The Saxon termination of the participle, *and* for *ing* is frequently retained,—as *seiand* for *saying; folowand* for *following*.

In participles passive ending in *d*, *t* is sometimes substituted for that letter,—as *filt* for *filled*.

7. *Prepositions.*[2]—

On is sometimes used for *of*.

Onto is often substituted for *upon*, when it signifies motion towards.

8. *Negatives.*[3]—In some few instances the word *not*[4] is repeated without destroying the negation.

Examples of distinct words *peculiar* to East Anglia are not very frequently met with in the present Chronicle, and are, in the few cases of their occurrence, noticed in their proper places in the Glossary.

---

[1] Forby, i.152.

[2] *Ibid.*, 153.

[3] *Ibid.*, 156.

[4] See the Glossary.

A GLOSSARY,

&c.

A.

A.

(1) A contraction of the verb "have," still used in East Anglia. *Forby.*

"That Adam schuld *a* sent Seth." 7.—"Schuld *a* leved." 13;

in which instance the later MS. C.C.C. has "shuld *have*."

(2) This letter is sometimes used instead of "O" before a word as the sign of the vocative case, as at 337:—

"*A* Jhesu Christe, Crowne of maydenes alle."

(3) Also in one case apparently for the personal pronoun I.

"These verss mene thus in oure tonge, *a* suppose." 359.

Abedyn. Abode; remained.

"And he had *abedyn*." 185.

Abiden. Abode.

"And there [thei] *abiden* long tyme." 302.

Abod. Abode. 72.

Abrogat. Abrogated; repealed.

"That statute was *abrogat*, and no lenger kept." 181.

Achetid. Escheated.

"And comaunded alle his temporal good to be *achetid*." 192.

Acomer, Acombre. To encumber; to harrass.

"He was so *accmered* with Danes." 122.

Acord. Agreement.

"In this ȝere was mad *acord* be the Kyngis of Frauns and Ynglond." 215.

Acord. To grant.

"Whech was *acorded* to Claudius in this manere." 62.

Acound. To account; to reckon; to number.

"Whech the Lawe *acoundith* among bokis that be clepid Apocripha." 12.

Additament. An addition.

"Thei have Seynt Austyn reule, with certeyn *additamentis*." 307.

Aferd. Afraid.

"The Lordes were *aferd* of swech maner puple." 156.

Still used in Norfolk, and elsewhere. *See* Forby's "Vocabulary," ii. 4.

Affectuous. Well affected; kind.

"That same Gilbert was ryth *affectuous* onto the Heremites of Seynt Austin." 152.

Afiter. After. 129.

Aftir. Afterwards. 230.

Ageyn. Against; towards. 233.

Aknowe. Privy to. 266.

Alay. To mix; to steep in.

"A knyf *alayed* with venym." 162.

Algate. At all events; in all manner of ways.

"He wolde *algate* of hem whom he founde alle naked." 362.

Almyght. Almighty. 340.

Alowe. To approve.

"He was gretly *alowed* and wel rewardid." 182.

Alye. Kindred.

"The erl of Northumbirland cam to Pounfreit, to the Kyng, with alle his *alye*." 286.

Amirel. An admiral. 233.

Amongis. Amidst; among. 2. Written also Amonge and Amongi.

An. And. 224.

And. If.

"For sekirly *and* he had abedyn." 185.

Ankir. Anchoret; a hermit.

Annual Prest, Prest Annuelle, Annuellere. A priest whose duty it was to sing the anniversary masses for the dead. 228. 293.

Anon as. As soon as.

"His sones, *anon as* thei were of age, were lerned to ride." 105.

Answore. Answer [C.C.C.] 299.

Anullen. To annul. 281.

Apeche. To impeach.

"*Apeched* aftir of treson." 230.

Apeired. Impaired; injured.

"The erde was so *apeired* that it bar never so good fruit sithe." 10.

Apostata. An apostate. 287. The MS. C.C.C. has "*postata*." *See* Prentise. *Poticary* is used in Norfolk for *Apothecary*.

Apparament. Preparations.

"All his *apparament* with whech he thoute to besege Caleys." 298.

Appel. To accuse.

"Than *appeled* he certeyn worthi men . . . of treson." 292.

Appose. To ask questions.

"Whech *apposed* hem that cam rennyng in hast, whedir thei schuld." 307.

Appreve. To approve. 280.

Arbastelere. An arblastere; a crossbow-man. 213.

Arblast. A crossbow. 147.

Arestin. To arrest.

"And ded his officeres *arestin* . . . his uncil." 264.

Arsmetrik. Arithmetic. 3.

Ask. To demand; to require.

"His dedis wold *ask* a special tretys." 226.

Asoile. To absolve; to release from.

"And *asoiled* al his barones fro that feith whech thei had mad to him." 143.

Aspie. To espie; to notice.

"Whech coude not be *aspied* whan he was ded." 199.

Assay. To try; to prove.

"Thei *assayed* her arowes." 132.

Astat. Estate; state; position.

"Pope of Rome; whech *astat* he kept IX. ȝere." 63.

Astoyned. Astonied; astounded.

"Thei of Frauns were *astoyned* and wroth with this dede." 170.

Aute. Owed.

"The Kyng of Frauns chalenged servyse and subjeccion of this Kyng of Aragon; and he deneyed it, and saide he *aute* not but to the Kyng of Spayn." 167. "John [Balliol] wrote onto Edward that he *awte* him no subjeccion." 171.

Availe. Advantage; profit.

"He said he wold telle the Prince a pryvy councelle whech schuld be to his *availe*." 161.

Availe. To profit.

"He schuld *availe* the Kyng mech god." 292.

Auter. An altar. 43.

Avale. To let down.

"Many of the puple . . . *avaled* not her hodes." 288.

Avaunce. To advance; to elevate.

"The Kyng norchid hem, and *avaunced*, that nevyr were in werre . . . for profite of the lond." 181.

Avayte. Wait.

"Where was leyd gret *avayte* on the Kyng to his destruccion." 317.

Avis. Advice.

"Be his *avis* was mad that grete horologe." 204.

Avisament.

(1) Advice; counsel.

"And . . . took *avisament* what myte best be do in this matter." 248.

(2) Deliberation.

"Othir materes were put in *avisament*." 256.

Avised. Advised; warned.

"For this Armenak felle upon hem sodeynly, and thei were not *avised*." 313.

Ayle. A grandfather.

"His fader and his *ayle*." 96.

Axed. Asked. 195.

B.

Bale. Damage.

"There had he salve to alle his bytter *bale*." 345.

Banch. To banish. 187.

Baretores. Strife-makers.

"*Baretores* and riseris that thei schuld com and have the kepying of his body." 264.

Barne. A baron. 159.

Basnet, Basenet. A light helmet or casque. 341.

"Because the *basnet* was strong and inpenetrabel, the strok bent it to the Kyng hed." 133.

Bast. Bastardy.

"Begoten of *bast*." 136.

Basulard. The baselard was a kind of long dagger, which was suspended to the girdle, and worn not only by armed knights, but by civilians and even priests. See "Promptorium Parvulorum," p. 25, note.

"With a scharp *basulard* he smet the Kyng." 125.

Bat.

(1) A blow.

"Compelle hem with *battis*." 81.

(2) A club; a cudgel.

"A fulleres *bat*." 61.

Batayle.

(1) A battle. 217.

(2) A battalion. 217.

Bawme. To embalm.

"*Bawmed* with swete gummes." 29.

Baxter. A baker. 55. Still used in the North.

Be.

(1) By.

"*Be* his malicious disciples." 109.

(2) Been.

"He that schuld a *be* baptized." 88.

Been. Are; have been.

"Alle Thy pryvileges whiche *been* in other founde." 338.

Beer. A bier. 348.

Beginner. A founder; one who establishes. Analogous to the use of "finder" for "inventor."

"A grete *beginner* of religion." 115.

Begote. Begotten.

"The first *begote* son." 126.

Begotin. Begat.

"They *begottin* geauntis." 15.

Behest. A promise.

"The lond of *behest*." 31.

Behest. To promise.

"Duke Robert had *behestid* he schuld a be in Erland." 245.

Behete.
(1) To promise.
(2) To command.

> "The Kyng had *behote* hem to com and remeve the sege." 208.

Bem. A beam; the beam or tail of a comet.

> "A sterre, whech thei clepe comata, . . . with a hie *bem*, whech *bem* bowed into the north." 278.

Benet. One of the four lesser Orders of Ministers in the Church of Rome.

> "He ordeyned . . . . that he that schuld be mad a bischop schuld first be a *benet*. 74.

"The functions of the [Benet] extended to the expulsion of evil spirits by the imposition of hands upon persons possessed, recently baptized, and catechumens. The ceremony was always accompanied by aspersion, and the name Benett was doubtless taken from the *aqua benedicta*, eau bénite, or perhaps from the vessel called in French *bénitier*, which contained the holy water." See "Promptorium Parvulorum," i. 30, *note*.

Bequathe. Bequeathed. 130.

Berd. A beard. 105.

Bere. A bear. 124.

Bere. A bier. 124.

Berk. To bark. 241.

Bet. Beat. 145.

Betyn. To prepare. (*3rd pers. plur.*)

> "Pes schul thei tretyn,
> Gile under that schul thei *betyn*." 290.

The words *tretyn* and *betyn* are respectively translations from Bridlington of "*tractabunt*" and "*subter arabunt*."

Bewrey. To betray; but not necessarily in a bad sense. 298.

Biere. A buyer, a purchaser. 187.

Big. To build. 36.

Biker. To quarrel; to fight. 300.

Bileve. Belief.

> "The rith *byleve*." 81.

Bille. To inscribe names in a roll, or list.

> "This prest had made a rolle after his owne conseite, and writen in certeyn mennes names, whech he knew nevyr . . . . The officeres inquired whi he was so bold for to *bille* [hem. C.C.C.]" 278.

Binary. A double resolve.

> "Make eke thre *binaries*." 3.

See Ternary.

Bischop. This word is used as an equivalent for High Priest, at p. 54.

> "He [Ptolemy Philadelphus] sent to Jerusalem onto Eleazer, the *bischop*."

At p. 359 it is used for a heathen priest:—

> "In another temple . . . . . was a solempne chaier, in whiche the principalle *bysshop* of alle thir tempelis . . . shulde be intronyzid."

Bisi, Byse. Busy. 13.

Blod. Blood; kindred.

> "The Englisch *blod*." 228.

Blyssh. To bless. 341.

Boistoys. Boisterous; impetuous; rude.

> "A *boistoys* carl." 133.

Bond. Bound.

> "This Pope *bond* a dragon." 78.

Bone. A boon. 340. *See* Ryght.

Boot. A boat. 193.

Booth. Both. 248.

Bore. Born. 6.

Bore. Borne; endured. 261.

Bot. But. 362.

Boundyn. Bound. 364.

Bounded. Bounden. 360.

Bout. Bought. 27.

Bowe. To curve; to bend.

"A hie bem [of a comet], whech bem *bowed* into the north." 278.

Brak. Broke. 159.

Brast. The past tense of "burst."

"And *brast* the dores ope." 124.

Bredys. Boards. 343.

Brenne. To burn. 6.

Brennyng. Burning. 185.

Brigauntis. Brigands; irregular troops.

"The *brigauntis* of the Frensch side." 312.

Brigg. A bridge. 211. This word is still used in Norfolk. *See* Forby's "Vocabulary," ii. 39. Also spelt Bregge. 218.

Brithnesse. Brightness. 58.

Broche. An ornament (in a metaphorical sense).

"He [Ethelred the Unready] wedded Emme, cleped The *Broche* of Normandie." 122.

Broute. Brought. 219.

Brynk. The shore.

"The ilde of Scicile . . . . thei would argue there. . . . And whan thei cam to the *brynk*." 120.

Byleve. *See* Bileve.

Bylid. Builded.

"He *bylid* the cherch of Seynt Mari Major." 85.

Byried. Buried. 30.

Byry. To bury. 75. This word is also spelt "bery" four lines lower in the same page.

C.

Cacchid. Caught.

"Othir lordis he *cacchid*, or caute." 189.

A provincialism common in Norfolk. That Capgrave should use it, as it were inadvertently, and then add an explanation in correct English, is exceeding curious.

Cage. *In cage*,—concealed. 351.

Cambace. Canvas.

"A girdell of *cambace*." 177.

Caracte.

(1) The sign; the emblem.

"This Conrard took the *caracte* of the cross of Seint Bernard hand." 136.

(2) The character imprinted by some of the Sacraments, *e.g.*, by baptism and confirmation.

"He wold resigne his regaly, and alle that long thereto, save the *carectis* of his soule." 271.

See S. Tho. Aq. 3. qq. 62, 63.

Careyn. Carrion; a corpse.

"The *careyn* was buried amongst the Prechouris of Oxenforth." 178.

Carl. A churl; a clown. 133.

Cart. A car; a chariot.

"Cisara, whech had . . . . nyne hundred *cartis* dith with hokis." 33.

Cass. To quash; to make null and void.

"Whan this eleccion cam to the Pope he *cassed* it." 153.

Cast. To meditate.

"He gadered power . . . . and *cast* him verili to challenge the crowne of Frauns." 205.

Cause. Because; for the sake.

"Went he to Rome, *cause* of devocion." 109.

CAUSE. Fault; blame.

"Putting all the *cause* upon the Englischmen." 226.

CENEWES. Sinews. 34.

CEYSE. To make to cease; to remove.

"Whan that was *ceysid*, thei fond a other lich it, and then the third." 92.

CHALES. A chalice. 65.

CHANELES, *read* **CHAUELES.** The throat. 344.

CHAPULEYNE. A chaplain. 244.

CHARE. A carriage; a chariot. 263.

CHASE. Chose. 60.

CHEKYR. An exchequer. 259.

CHEPE. To make cheap; to cheapen.

"Where was a gret ordinauns to *chepe* vitaile, and it avayled nòt." 180.

CHERCH. The Church; a church. Used also in a particular sense.

"He (Pope Christopher) was eject fro the *Cherch*, and mad a munk." 113.

CHERE. Countenance; bearing; spirits.

"Whan he cam to the place there he schuld dye, he chaunged no *chere*." 265.

CHESE. Chose. 132.

CHESE. To choose.

At p. 132 will be found the forms "chese" and "chase" for the past tense of this verb.

CHESTIVERIS. [Chestirreves, C.C.C.] Men of Chester. 269.

"Cum suis Cestrensibus."—Walsingham, 553. 47.

CHEVESAUNS. Provision.

"The Kyng, for . . . . he must make *chevesauns* for mech money." 144.

CHEVETEYNE. A chieftain.

"The *cheveteynes* of Normandie." 118.

CHOSE. Chosen; picked.

"*Chose* men." 208.

CHOSEN. Chose.

"Thei . . . *chosen* o person." 297.

CHOYS. Adoption.

"Be *choys* his Son." 58.

CIRCUMCIDE. To cut around; to pare; to circumcise. 28.

CITEE, CITE. A city. 25.

CLAUSURE. An enclosure.

"Alle *clausures* of woodis." 237.

CLEPE. To call; to invoke.

"Aftir thei had *clepid* the Holy Goost." 297.

CLEYSTIR. A cloister. [*Cloyster*, C.C.C.] 308.

CLOS. Close. 80.

CLOSE. To enclose; to shut up in.

"In the handelyng thereof was *closed* on of thoo IIII. nayles that were in Christis hands and feet." 117.

CLOSPE. A clasp. 344.

COLET. An acolyte.

"Schuld first be a benet, and then a *colet*."

The acolyte was the highest of the four inferior orders in the Church of Rome. *See* BENET. *See* also "Promptorium Parvulorum," i. 88, *note*.

COLLOCUTION. Conversation; interview. 118.

COMATA. A comet. 278.

COMENAUNTE. The common people; the people at large.

"He was chose by the *comenaunte* of the reme for to be Kyng." 198.

COMMAUNTE. The commons.

"The *Commaunte* asked eke, that Dame Alis Pereres," &c. 231.

Commensal. A companion at the same table.

"*Commensalis* with the Pope." 26.

Comminacion. Threatening.

"Than mad Swayn a grete *comminacion* to the town of Seynt Edmund. 122.

Comorows. Cumbrous; troublesome; oppressive.

"This Berengari was *comorows* to the puple." 117.

Comoun. To have intercourse with. 7.

Comowner. A commoner. 223.

Compleyned. Regretted; lamented.

"And he was the lasse *compleyned* for his meny were of evel governauns." 200.

Compled. Complied. 358.

Compromit. To submit a thing to any one with a view to arbitration.

"The gret debate betwix the Kyng and his barnes was *compromitted* to the dom of the Kyng of Frauns." 159.

Conclusion. Way of thinking.

"And drow many herts to hir *conclusion*." 286.

Condition. Disposition; temper.

"Trew of condicion." 81.

Conjecture. A conspiracy.

"The Kyng tarried with the duke . . . . . tyl, as he supposed, the lordes *conjecture* was sesed." 246.

Consecrate. Consecrated. 291.

Consent. Agreement; pre-arrangement.

"Roger Mortimer . . . . scaped oute of alle the wardes, and met with a boot at his *consent*." 193.

Conspiracioune. A conspiring together.

"The *conspiracioune* of Frauns and Normaunye." 208.

Contracte. Contracted. 291.

Contrite. Consecrated.

A "temple *contrite* to Jubiter and Juno." 359.

Conveniens. Appropriateness; aptness.

"Ȝet fynde I a grete *conveniens* in ȝoure tytil." 4.

Corown. To crown. 273.

Corporas. A small cloth used for covering the elements in the celebration of the Mass.

"No nunne handeled the *corporas*." 67.

Correcte. Corrected; rectified. 249.

Corse. A course. 263.

Cort. A court.

"Bokis and rolles of *cortis*, and obligaciones, thei brent." 237.

Corteyn. A curtain. 200.

Cost. A coast. 269.

Costful. A costly. 90.

Cote.

"Martirdam and maydenhod ryght in on
cote
"Were medeled togedyr." 339.

Cote. A numerical term (*quotus*).

"This noumbir eke of sex is praysed for his particuler noumberes, whech be on, too, thre; and these be cleped *cote*, for in her revolving thei make him evyr hool, as sex sithe on is sex; threes too is sex; twyes thre is sex." 3.

Cothe, Cothis. Faintness; pains of travail.

"Hir *cothis* fel upon hir." 110.

To "cothe" is still used for to "faint" in Norfolk; and "cothish" and "cothy," for "faint," "sickly," are of modern and frequent use. *See* Forby's "Vocabulary," ii. 78, 79.

Couch. To embed.

"*Couched* in the walle with cyment." 357.

Coud. Could; was capable of; knew.

"Veniedes inquired of the Philosophre what craft he *coud.*" 51.

Coumfort. Comfort; support.

"Ony gadering in *coumfort* of Richard, sumtyme Kyng." 275.

Councelle. Secret; private.

"This was kept ful grete *councelle* fro the emperoure." 78.

Covent. A convent. 157.

Covetise. Covetousness. 298.

Crafte. A device.

"Virgille made a mervelous *crafte.*" 357.

Cristendam. Christianity.

"He mad faith to a devel, that he schuld forsake his *Cristendam.*" 79.

This word is used in Shakespere for "a Christian name."

Crose. A crozier.

"The crosses and *croses.*" 135.

Crowet. A cruet; a small vessel for the chrism.

"A *crowet* of stone." 273.

Cruelnesse. Cruelty. 185.

Cubiculer. A chamberlain.

"This wordis herd the *cubiculeris.*" 156.

Cure. To cover; to dress.

"Women schuld with lynand *cure* her heer." 62.

See Ovircure, and Recure.

Customable. Customary.

"Whanne Nylus, the grete ryver, had ovirflowe the cuntre, and aftir descendid into his *customable* mesure." 34.

Cyte. 145. *See* Cite.

D.

Dalf. Past tense of *delve*; dug. 345.

Dampne. To condemn.

"This man *dampned* al that Domician ordeyned." 64.

Dampned. Condemned; accursed.

"The eld *dampned* opinion of Berengari." 236.

Decerne. To decide; to decree.

"The Lordis of this present Parlemen, *decerne* and deme." 274.

Ded.

(1) Did.

"Evir it *ded* him harme." 135.

(2) Dead.

"The erl of Salesbury was *ded* there." 276.

(3) Caused.

"And *ded* his officeres arestin at Flasche, in Essex, his uncil." 264.

Dedicate. Dedicated. 359.

Defaute.

(1) Defect; failing.

"There coude be founde no *defaute* in hem." 64.

(2) Blame.

"On whom the Pope put *defaute* of al the conspiracion." 241.

Defend. To prohibit.

"It was *defendid* that galey halfpennies schuld not be used." 313.

See Not.

Defense. To defend.

"Who this lond schuld be *defensed* ageyn the cruelte of Scottis." 184.

Defouled. Befouledd ; tainte.

"*Defouled* in erroure." 3.

Delectation. Delight; pleasure.

"After his *delectation.*" 8.

Delfyn. The Dauphin.

"The *Delfyn* of Vienne." 206.

Deme. To judge. 274.

Dempt. Judged; decided.

"And whatsoevyr he *dempt,* they schuld observe." 159.

Depart.

(1) To separate; to divide; to distribute.

"Jabel *departed* the flokkis of scheep fro the flokkis of goot." 8.—"The tresoure of his paleis he *departed* among the pore." 92.

(2) To separate (*neutr.*)

"And so thei *departed*," (i.e. separated). 141.

(3). To divorce.

"Jone, Cuntesse of Kent, whech was before *departed* fro the Erl of Salesbury." 221.

Depauperat. Impoverished.

"Alle tho that were *depauperat* . . . by his predecessoure, he releved with his owne good." 105.

Depeynt. To paint.

"Tho ymages of oure Lady that Luce *depeynted.*" 101.

Derk. Dark. 350.

Derogation. A degradation; a thing derogatory to.

"Thei seid it was *derogacion* to swech a state." 179.

Descensus. Descent. A purely Latin word.

"As for *descensus* of the real blod of King Herry." 273.

Descryve. To describe. 363.

Devolute. Devolved.

"The kyngdam of Babilon . . . . *devolute* to the kyngdam of Perse." 53.

Diacone. A deacon. 74.

Diapolitani.

"Than regned thei cleped *Diapolitani.*" 23.

Dilaye. To delay; to postpone. 192.

Dinastines.

"Soverevnes clepid *Dinastines.*" 23.

Disgrade. To degrade. 112.

Disherid. Disinherited.

"Many men were *disherid* of her londs." 289.

Disparplied. Dispersed. 45.

"Exposiciones upon Scripture . . . . *disparplied* in many sundry bokis." 1.

Dispend. To expend lavishly; to squander.

"Ye amongst you have it, and *dispende* it youre pleasure." 288.

Displesauns. Displeasure. 45.

Disposicion. Arrangement for defence; situation.

"He lay in the town a month, considering the strong *disposicion* thereof." 213.

Distauns. Disagreement.

"Betwix him and the kyng felle gret *distauns.*" 131.

Distincte. With a number prefixed to it,—"divided into."

"Woeful songis, *foure-distincte* be the A. B. C." 47.

Distroye. To destroy. 122.

Dith, Dight. Adorned; well furnished. 33.

Divulge. To promulgate.

"It is somewhat *divulgid* in this lond." 1.—"As the answer was *divulged.*" 224.

Do.

(1) To cause.

"And *ded* his officeres arestin . . . . . his uncil." 264.

(2) Done; over.

"Aftir the Parlement was *do.*" 267.

(3) To put; to place.

"To *do* upon him the prestis stole." 43.

Dobil. Deceitful; double-faced. 314.

Dome.

(1) Decision; opinion.

"Compromitted to the *dom* of the Kyng of Frauns." 159.

(2) Judgment; vengeance; punishment.

"Be the rithful *dome* of God." 240.—"To do rithful *dome* to alle." 12.

Domicelle. A domestic; a female servant.

"Sche broute oute of Frauns XII. chares ful of ladies and *domicelles.*" 263.

DOMINACIOUNE. Rule; empire; sway. 165.

DOTACION. Endowment.

"Silvestir fest, ageyn whom he had venemously berkid for *dotacion* of the Church." 241.—"This religion must have sufficient *dotacion*." 308.

DOUTER. A daughter. 6.

DOWE. A dove.

"A wite *dowe* lityng on his hed." 71.

DRANTES. Murmurings; discontented complainings.

"Than, be ydilnesse, began mech debate in the cite; evile *drantes* in the puple; covinauntes broken, opyn extorsion; privy therft." 55.

This would seem to be a purely East Anglian word; they use "drant" of a drawling, mumbling, tone of speaking or reading.

DRAWE. Drawen.

"The prest was hang and *drawe*." 278.

DRENCH.

(1) To drown. 74.

(2) To overwhelm with water; to sink.

"It *drenchid* many townys in Kent," &c. 288.

"And took of hem to hundred and xxviii. schippes. Thei bored and *drenchid* hem." 169.

DRIVE OUT. To work out; to discover by study.

"He *drove oute* the ȝear in whech the day of dome schuld falle." 138.

DROF. Drove. 147.

DRONCHIN. Drowned. Cf drench

"He was *dronchin* in a smal watir." 74.

This word is also written DRONCH. 133.

DROW. Drew. 191.

DRYVE. To manage; to arrange.

The Kyng *dryvyth* our materes withoute ony effect." 179.

DRYNE. Driven. 216.

DUCHERY. A duchy; a dukedom.

"The *ducheries* of Spolet and Beneventane." 104.

DUKE. A leader; a ringleader.

"Her *duke* was Wat Tyler." 237.

DURE. To endure; to last.

"This kyngdam *dured* onto the tyme of Cambises." 23.

DYMEMBER. To dismember. 120.

DYMES. Tithes; tenths.

"To gader the *dymes* to the King." 235.

DYRKE. Dark. 351.

E.

EDIFY. To erect; to build.

"This man *edified* a cherch of oure Lady and Seint Viviane." 87.

EDIFIYNG, NEWE-EDIFIYNG. Building, Rebuilding.

"The Kyng began the *newe-edifiyng* of Wyndesore." 219.

EENDE. End. 349.

EGIL. An eagle. 273.

EJECT. Ejected; deprived.

"He (Pope Christopher) was *eject* fro the Cherch, and mad a munk." 113.

EKE. Also. 1.

ELDE. Also written OLD.

"*Elde* stories." 1.

ELD-FADER. Grandfather.

"Sarugh . . . *eld-fader* to Abraham." 24.

ELMESSE. Alms. 10.

EMBASSIATOUR. An ambassador. 190.

ENCENSE. Incense. 67.

ENCENSE. To cense. 75.

ENCHETE. To escheat.

"Ye have stered the Kyng to *enchete* alle the temporaltes that longyng to the Frensch monkis." 287.

ENDITE. To indict. 247.

Endytment. An indictment. 247.

Enfeff, Enfess. To enfeof; to give possession.

"The Kyng . . . *enfessed* [*enfeffed*, C.C.C.] him in the londes of Normannie and Gian." 194.

Enorme. An enormity.

"For these *enormes* was he brent. 151.

Extend.

(1) To attend. 79.

(2) To intend.

"*Entendyng* for to distroye the Archischoppis power." 289.

Enterdite. An interdict.

"Than cam fro Rome a legate . . . and losed the *enterdite*." 148.

Enterly. Entirely. 310.

Entermenting. Meddling; interfering.

"A woman malepert, and *entermenting* in every matter." 231.

Epitafi. An epitaph. 125.

Erde. The earth. 6.

Erdeli. Earthly. 10.

Erdequave. An earthquake. 163.

Ereyn. A spider. 297.

Est. East. 23.

Este. East. 359.

Esy. Easy; kind; indulgent. 70.

Eterne. Eternal. 74.

Evasion. Escape. 306.

Evenen anonone. Ever and anon. 357.

Ex. An axe. 41.

Express. To mention.

"Moyses *expressed* . . . these foure." 6.

Eyer. An heir; an heiress. 209. The word "air" is also sometimes spelt in this way.

Eyne. Eyes. 101.

F.

Fader. A father. 5.

Fail. To fall short in; to want.

"His letting was that he *failed* mony. 283.

Far forth, Fer forth. In advance; exceedingly.

"So *fer forth* that al the godnes of the fader . . . . be his vice was forgete." 63.

Fast be. Very near.

"*Fast be* Ebron." 7.

Fautoure. An abettor; a supporter. 102.

Fe, Fee. A reward. Also a property.

"On Water Tyrel . . . . asked that arow for his *fe*." 132.

Felauchip. Fellowship; company. 159.

Felawys. Fellows; companions. 136.

Feld. A field; a territory, in the sense of the Latin "ager."

"In the *feld* of Damask," *i.e.*, "in *agro* Damasceno." 5.

Fer.

(1) Far. 164.

(2) Fire. 297.

Fer Forth. *See* Far forth.

Ferthyng. A farthing. 165.

Festful. Festal.

"He bethought him of the *festful* day, and left his werk." 210.

Feyer. A fair.

"A great *feyer* at Boston; and sodeynly the *feyer*, and the town was set on fyre." 167.

Filt. Filled. 288.

Fischerer. A fisherman. 113.

It seems that in Norfolk, even in the present day, this curious reduplication is common in comparatives; *e.g.*, for Less or Lesser, we frequently hear "*lesserer*."

Flagell. To scourge; to beat.

"Many good Cristen prestis . . . . he *flagellid*, and aftir exiled." 96.

Flayn. Flayed. 61.

Flete. To float. 41.

Flewme. Phlegm. 98.

Flix. A flux. 81.

Flood. A river. 18.

Florenes. Florins. 220. This coin was originally worth three shillings and fourpence. *See* Nobil.

Flour. To flourish.

"Aristotoles *floured* in philosophie." 51.

Floures. Reputation; the zenith of fame.

"In this time Origene was in his *floures*." 69.

Folowand. Following. 142.

Folweth. Followeth. 338.

Folwe. To follow. 351.

Fond. Found. 113.

Foonde. Found. 341.

For. Because.

"*For* he resyne." 71.

Forbarre. To prevent; to take away from; to bar.

"He purposed for to fite with Gefrey Plauntgenet, dreding that he schuld begete ony child, whech schuld *forbarre* him his rite." 136.

Forbode. Forbidden. 205, 222.

Forby. Past; near.

"Whan Mercury cam *forby*." 34.

Forgete. Forgotten. 63. 349.

Forgifnesse. Forgiveness. 145.

Forser. A box; a chest; a casket.

"A *forser* of silver." 97.

Fosteres. Nourishers; rearers; educators. 111.

Fourty. Forty. 223.

Foutyn. Fighting. 47.

Fray. An affray. [C.C.C.] 300.

Frere. A friar; a brother. 1.

Frist. First. 358.

Fro. From. 193.

Fructuous. Fruitful; profitable.

"He mad many *fructuous* bokes." 135.

Ful. Quite; entirely.

This word is used continually as an intensitive:—

"The King had *ful scarcely* the thirde part of his lyflod." 193.

Furfetis. Forfeits; penalties incurred. 179.

This word is still commonly used in Norfolk and Suffolk. *See* Forby's "Vocabulary," p. 119. *See also* Moor's "Suffolk Words and Phrases," p. 133.

Fynde. To supply with provisions.

"He had not to *fynde* his houshold." 176.

Fynder. An inventor.

"The first *fynder* of tents." 8.

G.

Gader. To gather. 1.

Gadering. A levy; a collection.

"Mo *gaderingis* and mo taliages." 264.

Gaf. Gave. 76.

Galey-halfpennies. These were foreign coins, not of equal value with English halfpennies, and on that account prohibited, in the year 1416, by King Henry the Fifth.

"It was defendid that *Galey-halfpennies* schuld not be used; for thre of hem were ful scarsly worth a peny." 313.

See Rolls of Parliament, iii.498; iv. 69, 255.

Gan. Began. 123.

Genelogie. Genealogy; descent.

"Melchisedech . . . . withouten fadir, withouten moder, withouten *genelogie*." 28.

Gete. Gotten. 350.

Geven. Given. 253.

In this place the MS. C.C.C. reads "*gove*."

Gise. Guise; manner.

"The corses of mete were servid aftir the *gise* of his cuntre." 263.

Glade. To make glad.

"So *gladed* he the queen with lyes." 275.

Glotonye. Gluttony. 54.

Go. Gone.

"Now was Pase Day *go*." 245.

Godspel. Gospel. 61.

Goe. Gone. 360.

Gong. A jakes. 78.

Good. Riches; wealth; goods.

"With his *good*, he seide, he wold help; with his body he myte nct." 141.

Goostily. Ghostly; spiritual.

"Hir *goostily* spouse." 349.

Gore. To stab.

"The othir, in his pulling, *gorid* the Kyng." 118.

Gove. Given. 9.

See also p. 287, where this word is written "gov" exactly as it is now pronounced in some of the provinces.

Governauns. Government; rule. 4.

Graunt. To consent.

"She *graunted* to this jornay ful mekly." 193.

Grece. A step.

"A hundred *grecis* and fifty." 78.

Gres. Grass; herbage. 215.

Grete. Numerous; a great number of.

"To purvey him *grete* hors." 255.

Grettest. Greatest. 265.

Grew. Greek.

"The bokes of Dialoges he [Pope Zachary] transalet fro *Grew* into Latyn." 102.

Grieve. To inflict bodily pain.

"It shal not *greve* the neyther in bak ne seyde." 343.

Grife. A griffin.

"An for the plente of *grifes* men dare not goo theretoo." 23.

Grope. To feel; to investigate.

"Thomas . . . *groped* the woundes of Crist." 61.

Growe. Grown.

"His hed was *growe* ageyn to his bodi." 266.

Grucching. Complaining; grumbling.

"Thanne was there mech *grucching* in the puple." 85.

Gruch. To complain; to grumble. 245.

Gwanne. [Qwanne.] When. 266.

H.

Ha. Have.

"Wold *ha* [*a*, C.C.C.] lettid his comyng." 259.

Hald. To hold.

"The Kyng *haldyng* that fest at Langle." 261.

Hald. Held. 144.

Hali. Holy.

"*Hali* water." 65.

Halp. Helped. 30.

Hamber. A hammer. 8.

Hand. *To bear on hand;* to charge with; to make to believe.

"He *bare* the erl *on hand* that he ros with a gret meny." 258.—"The men that were counted rich were *bore on hand* that thei had consented." 269.

Handelyng. A handle.

"The swerd whech Constantine fawt with: in the *handelyng* thereof was closed on of thoo IIII. nayles that were in Christis handis and feet." 117.

Hang. Hung.

"The prest was *hang*." 278.

Happe. To happen.

"The Kyng . . . . *happed* for to sey a word." 185.

Have. A haven.

"Mylforth *Have*." [Havene, C.C.C.] 292.

Have in. To be intrusted with; to have committed to one.

"A swier of the emperoure *had in* comaundment to kille this Pope." 95.

He. Ye. 365.

Hed. To behead.

"Was both flayn and *hedid*." 61.

Hedyng. Beheading. 190.

Hegg. A hedge. 211.

Heilsome. Wholesome. 308.

Hem. Them. 1.

Hepe. The hip.

"To *hepis* and to leggis." 82.

Herborow. To harbour; to entertain.

"Abraham . . . . receyved the Trinite to *herborow*." 27.

Here, Her.

(1) Their.

"Of *here* evel werkis." 13.

(2) Hair.

"Thei went with as long *heer* as women." 134.

Heremit. A hermit. 123.

Heried. Harrowed.

"A lond new *heried*." 312.

Herl. An earl. 235.

Hert. The heart.

"She ded make *hertis* of silvyr." 286.

Hertly. Heartily; sincerely. 27.

Herto. Thereto. 158.

Hey. High. 44.

Heyer. Higher. 220.

Hing. Hung. 306.

Hire. Her. 194.

His. This. 365.

Hite.

(1) To tell; to promise.

"Notwithstanding that the Kyng *hite* him this." 265.

(2) Called; named. 5.

Always so spelt in the Chronicle; (in the Fragment contained in Appendix IV., "hight.")

Hodid. Hooded.

"*Hodid* men were cleped thanne thoo Lolardis that wold nevir avale here hood in presens of the Sacrament." 244.

Hok. An oak tree. 140. *See* Hol.

Hokis. Hooks. 33.

Hol. Whole.

"In these dayes was Arthures body founde . . . in a *hol* hok." 140.

Holpe. Helped. 182.

Honest Clothed. Well clothed. 343.

Hoost. A host. 221.

Hoot. Hot. 198.

Horologe. A dial; a clock. 44, 204.

Horrok, Hurrok. The hold of a ship.

"O boy, that fled to on of the Flemysch schippis, and hid him in the *horrok*," [*hurrok*, C.C.C.] 234.

See Miss A. Gurney's Additions to Forby,—Thurruck.

Hosel. To receive the Eucharist.

"Were *hoseled* upon her oth." 111.

Hosen. Stockings. 70.

Hostel. Entertainment.

"There had he good *hostel* at the Kyngis cost." 277.

The substantive "hostel" is still in ordinary use at Cambridge, *e.g.* "The Bishop's Hostel" in connexion with Trinity College.

Housing. Houses.

"Thei mad gret destructioune in *housing*, brenning dedis," &c. 237.

Housyng. Tents, sheds, &c. in a fair.

"Whil men were bysy to save her *housyng*, theves schuld stele her good." 167.

Hoved. To hover around.

"He *hoved* and taried." 366.

Hucch. A coffer; a chest.

"A gret summe of money, whech was gadered for him in a *hucch* at Poules." 309.

Hundyr. Hundred. 350.

Hungir. Famine; scarcity.

"A gret *hungir* thorw oute Ytaile." 112.

Hys. See Yse.

I.

Iclad. Clad. 345. 363.

Idol. The representation of.

"The *ydol* of heresie," [applied to Wiclif.] 240.

Igoon, Igon. Gone. 345.

Ild. An island. 145.

Illude. To frustrate; to deceive.

"With fraude of the courtesanes.....thei were *illuded*." 216.

Image. To imagine; to feign.

"*Ymaged* a fals opinion ageyn the Feith." 74.

The MS. C.C.C. has "ymagined" in this passage.

Inconvenientis. Improper actions. 279.

Inducciounne. The act of putting in possession.

"The restitution and the real *inducciounne* of the duchy of Gian." 301.

Induct. Induced.

"Be the emperoure he was *induct* that he schuld do it." 308.

Infamyde. Famished.

"And, aftir, thei *infamyde* him for hungir." 170.

Infect. Infected.

"With this same heresi was this emperoure *infect*." 86.

Infortunate. Unfortunate. 293.

Infortune. Misfortune. 202.

Inhabitable. Uninhabitable. 23.

Innoumbirabel. Innumerable. 155.

Innoumbred. Unnumbered. 117.

Inobediens. Disobedience. 148.

Inow. Enough. 132.

Insolens. Disaffection.

"To amende the *insolens* in the reme." 289.

Isowe. To issue; to publish. 349.

Instauns. Pressing; attempts to influence.

"Where was grete *instauns* mad to the Kyng that he schuld suffir," &c. 175.

Insulane. Insular; of an island.

"Eke, for he is a *insulane*, therefor he doth no subjeccion to no man. 207.

Intronyze. To enthrone. 359.

Invasif. Offensive.

"Wepenes of batayle, both *invasif* and defensif." 8.

Irun. Iron; the sword.

"The Normannes.....distroyed Frauns and Lotharinge with fire and *yrun*." 111.

Isought. Sought. 351.

Issew. An alternative.

"Aftir many sawtes whech availed not, the Kyng profered hem this *issew*." 239.

Iturned. Turned. 346.

J.

Januensis. A Genoese.

"The Capteyn.....was a *Januensis*." 214.

Jorn. To adjourn.

"Parlement schuld be *jorned* tyl aftir Cristmasse." 266.

Jornay. An undertaking; a day's work.

"The Kyng....happed for to sey a word whech was confusion of that *jornay*." 185.

Juge. To judge; to condemn.

"Thomas was *juged* to drawing, hanging, and hedyng." 190.

Just. A joust; a tournament.

"Thei bore down in *justis* many Englishmen." 175.—"With gret solempnite and *justis* of pes." 238.

Just. To joust.

"In *justing* in the presens of the Kyng." 253.

Juster. One who jousts or tilts.

"He had gadered many *justeres* alienes." 175.

K.

Karikis. A vessel of a peculiar kind.

"*Karikis* and galeyes." 314.

Kep. Attention; care.

"And nevir man tok *kep* thereto." 273.

Keende. Kind. 346.

Kennets. Hounds.

Knites-mete. Providing for knights. 293.

Knowe. Known. 340.

"And if ever it may be *knowe* that," &c. 275.

Knowing. Knowledge.

"That *knowing* which he had." 6.

Knylle. To knell; to toll a bell. 357.

Kynrod. Kindred. 10.

Used also for "Tribes."

"The XII. *Kynrodis* cam oute of him." 20.

L.

Langage. To language; to entangle. *See* Richardson's "Dictionary."

"He was gretly *langaged* with lechery." 232.

Lange. Tongue; language. 351.

Largenesse. Liberality; generosity. 97.

Lass. Less. [Lesse, C.C.C.] 239.

Lawhing. Laughing. 26.

Lay fe *or* **Lay fee.** The laity.

"Both in the clergy and in the *lay fe*." 102.

Lecchoure. A lewd person. 116.

Leche. A physician.

"The grete *leche*, cleped Galiene." 66.

Leddir. Leather. 34.

Leder. An adviser.

"These evil *lederis* of the Kyng." 250.

Leerne. To teach. 347.

Lef. Willingly; lief.

"I had as *lef* be killid of the in Inglond, as of a Sarasine in Surre." 141.

Lefful, Leful. Lawful. 118, 299.

Legitimat. Made legitimate; legitimized. 261.

Legittimacion. A legitimization. 263.

Lenger. Longer. 121.

Lenten. Lenten-time; Lent.

"He ordeyned that in *Lenten.*" 103.

Leon. A lion. 166.

Lepe. Leaped. 365.

Lere. To learn. 342.

Lerned. Taught. 105.

Lese. To lose.

"Up peyn of *lesing* of a finger." 195.

Lest. Lasted. 231.

Let. To hinder. 121.

Letanie. A litany. 95.

Lete make. Caused to make; had made. 21.

Letterure. Literature; learning.

"The clerkys of this lond that were of gret *letterure.*" 210.

Lettyng. A hindrance. 231.

Leve. To live. 27.

Levene. Lightning. 73.

Lewed. Untaught; unlettered; lay.

"*Lewed* men," *i.e.* Laymen. 307.

Lift, Left. Lifted.

"His hed was *lift* with the flood." 5.—"*Left* fro the funt." 224.

Lift. Left.

"That used the *lift* hand for the rite." 33.

Ligauns. Allegiance. 246.

Lite. Light; candles.

"The servauntis . . . offered thereto garlondis and *lite.*" 22.

Lith. Lieth. 3.

Lithnes. Slimness; agility.

"For the *lithnes* of his body, an the sotilte of his witte." 52.

Live. Life. "O lyve" is equivalent to "on life," i.e. *alive.* 12.

Logg. To lodge. 123.

Lomb. A lamb. 145.

Lond. Land. 1.

Lond. To land.

"Thei that were sent *londyd* in Normandye." 302.

Long. To belong; to belong to. 149.

Longyn. Belonging; belong to.

"That *longyn* to yrun." 8.

Low. Laughed.

"Zorastes . . . *low* as no child ded but he." 26.

Lyand. Lying.

"*Lyand* be the grete fennes." 23.

Lychmen. Liegemen.

"Considering who evel-beloved the Kyng was of his *lychmen.*" 269.

Lyflode. The means of living; livelihood.

"The *lyflode* of the queen was take fro hir." 193.

Lynage. A lineage. 303.

Lynand. Linen. 62.

Lyst. Wilt.

"As thou *lyst.*" 339.

Lyster.

"There was he mad *lyster* of the Paleis, and commensale with the Pope." 235.

Lyvand. Living. 286.

Lyve. *See* Live.

C C

M.

MAD. Made. 5.

MALANDRYN. "Lépreux; voleur arabe au temps des Croisades; brigands en France sous Jean et Charles V." *See* Boiste's French Dictionary.

"In schort clothis lich a *Malandryn*." 309.

[A Merry-Andrew ?]

MALEPERT. Presumptuous; impudent. 231.

MALLE. A hammer; a mallet. 34.

MALT. Melted.

"The metalle . . . *malt*." 9.

MANHOD. Manliness.

"Moost named in *manhod* and werre." 258.

MANSLAWTH. Manslaughter. 185.

MARCHAUNDISE. Merchandise. 233.

MARICE. A marsh.

"Wodes, and *marices*, and othir straunge place." 190.

MARKEIS. A marquis. 241.

MAUMENT. An idol. 21.

This word is derived from *Mahomet.*

MAUMENTRIE. Idolatry. 21.

MECHIL. Much. 210.

MEDELED. Joined; mingled. 339. *See* COTE.

MEENDE. Mind. 346.

MENE. A mediator.

"He be a *mene* to Kataryne for us." 352.

MENY. A retinue; a band of followers.

"The King huntid in the same forest; lost his *meny*." 123.

MERCAT. A market. 359.

MEROURE. A mirror.

"The *meroure* of ypocrisie" [applied to Wiclif]. 240.

MERVELOUS. Marvelous. 134.

MERVEYLE. A marvel. 221.

MESSAGER. A messenger. 228, 230.

MESSE. The Mass. 221.

MEVE. To move. 219. Still used in Norfolk. *See* Forby's "Vocabulary," p. 213.

MEVYNG.

(1) A moving; a contrivance.

"That grete horologe that standeth there [at S. Alban's], with many mervelous *mevynges* of astronomye." 204.

(2) A moving; an influence.

"The bestial *mevyng* of the body." 3.

MEYHIR, MEHIR. A mayor.

"Decius, that was no emperoure, but a *meyhir*, and therefor he cleped Decius Minor." 72.—"Richard Exston, then *mehir* of London." 243.

MEYNE. Manner; way. 365.

MEYSTIR. A master. 363.

MEYTEYNER. A supporter.

"The *meyteyneris* of the puple that were so infect." 260.

MICHE, MECH. Much; also—great, large.

"This William mad Westminster Halle; and, when he see it first, he seide it was not half *mech* inow." 132.

MINDE. Remembrance.

"Makith *minde* of his book." 12.

MITH. Might. 28.

The MS. C.C.C. has this later form.

MODIR. A mother. 5.

MONY. Many. 217.

MOO, MO. More. 195, 228.

MOOST. Most. 245.

MORDER. Murder. 108.

MORE.

(1) To enlarge; to increase. 66.

(2) Greater; larger.

"Grete Constantin mad it [Constantinople] *more*." 46.

(3) Greater; higher.

"Wyth *more* and wyth leest," *i.e.*, "richer and poorer." 352.

Moreyn. A murrain.
"Grete *moreyn* of bestis." 185.

Morkyn. Marked.
"*Morkyn* with the Cros." 238, *note.*
This is the reading in the MS. C.C.C. for *markyd* in the MS. Pub. Lib.

Morowning. Morning. 52.

Mote. Must. 264.

Mummer. A masker.
"*Mummeris* in Cristmasse tyme." 275.

Mussel. A morsel of bread. 128.

Myddes. The midst. 357.

Myhilmesse. Michaelmas. 306.

Mys. To miscarry.
"Joye that may not *myss*." 338.

Mysel. A leper.
"He kissed a *mysel*, and sodeynly the *mysel* was hol." 95.

Mysti. Mysterious; dark; learned.
"Many *mysti* exposiciones." 107.

N.

Named. Made mention of; distinguished.
"Ser Jon Hakwod, ... moost *named* in manhod and werre." 258.

Natif. Native. 137.

Nave. A navy.
"The Kyng went to Yermoth, and ther mette his *nave*." 208.

Ne. Nor; not. 10.

Nest. Next. 296.

Neve. Grandson.
"Heber was *neve* onto Sem." 19.

Newe. Newly; recently. 9.

Nigromancer. A necromancer. 120.
It will be seen that this word is supposed to be derived from *niger*, and not from νέκρον.

Nigromancy. Necromancy. 79.

Nobil. A coin, the value of which was six shillings and eightpence, or two florins.
"Florencs, of whech too schuld weye a *nobil*." 220.
See Florenes.

Non. None. 73.

Non. Noon. 218.

Norch. To nourish; to nurse.
"*Norchid* onto mannes age." 30.

Norischer. A fosterer.
"The *norischer* of scisme" [applied to Wiclif.] 240.

Not. Naught.
"And payed rite *not*." 268.

Not. This word is not unfrequently used redundantly, strengthening the negation, as in the Greek language, instead of cancelling it.
"It was defendid that galey-halfpennies schuld *not* be used." 313.
See Defend. See also p. 222. lines 22, 29.

Not withstand. Notwithstanding. 2.

Note. Good; profit.
"This mete to me is lykely to doo noe *note*." 344.

No thing. In no respect; not at all.
"Richard, [King of the Romans,] his brother, whech was chose emperoure, *no thing* with worchip." 158.

Nowil. The navel. 82.

Nowt, Nouthe.
(1) Naught; nothing. 104.
(2) Not.
"If he schuld go into Frauns to do homage, or *nowt*." 191.

Noye. To annoy. 300.

Noyse. A rumour; a report.
"Than rose the *noyse* thorw the lond that the Kyng" &c. 206.

Ny. Nigh; nearly. 159.

O.

O.

(1) One.

"Jewes and Hethen into *o* Feith." 3.

(2) On.

"He is *o* lyve," (i.e. *alive*). 12.

Obeiauns. Obeisance ; homage.

"He [Baliol] mad a new *obeiauns* to the Kyng." 171.

Onbrent. Not burned. 31.

Onburied. Unburied. 75.

Onde. Breath.

"Swete of *onde*." 63.

One [altered by erasure from "wone" in the MS. Pub. Lib.] Wont; accustomed.

"King Richard . . . . was *one* to tell that it was no merveile." [*Wone*,—C.C.C.] 139.

One. Alone; by one's self.

"Thei to went into a chambir al be her *one*." 162.

Ones, [Onys, C.C.C.] Once. 284.

Ongentily. Roughly; harshly. 198.

Onhorsid. Unhorsed. 212.

Onkend, Onkind. Unkind. 275, 143.

Onknowyng. Unknowing [as in the MS. C.C.C.] 110.

Onknowe. Unknown. 145.

Onleful. Unlawful.

"Fel in *onleful* lecherie beside his wyf." 119.

By a mistake of an *n* for a *u* this word is printed *ouleful* in the text.

Onmannerly. Rudely.

"Thei of the cuntre cam, . . . and treted the ladies *onmannerly*." 145.

Onresonable. Unreasonable. 198.

Onrithfully. Wrongfully ; without right.

"The Kyng of Frauns occupied the Crowne *onrithfully*." 209.

Onto. Unto. 1.

Ontretable. Intractable. 166.

Ontrewe. Untrue; unjust.

"An *ontrewe* bataile." 254.

Onwisely. Unwisely. 119.

Ony. Any. 86.

Ope. Open.

"And brast the dores *ope*." 124.

Oppresse. To repress. 259.

Or. Ere; before. 13.

Ordenauns.

(1) Arrangement; contrivance.

"This was be the *ordenauns* . . . of Ser Jon Mauntreveres and Thomas Gurnay, whech layd a grete dore upon him [Edward II.], whil thei ded this work." 199.

(2) A piece of machinery. 357.

Ordinacioun. Ordaining.

"The sexte cause is of Goddis *ordinacioun*." 10.

Orison. A prayer. 109.

Oterauns. Utterance ; open declaration.

"Thei . . . . withdrow gretly her *oterauns* of malys." 260.

Oth. An oath. 250. Also spelt Hooth. 260.

Ouleful. *See* Onleful.

Outeragious. Excessive; outragious.

"A hunter *outeragious*." 116.

Overlyve. To outlive. 131.

Ovircure. To overflow; to overrun.

"Grete wateres . . . . *ovircured* the londis." 203.

Ovyr, Over. Too; very.

"Her power was *ovyr* weyk." 259.

Ovyrflew. Overflowed.

"The flood that *ovyrflew* al the world." 17.

P.

PARALSIE. A palsy. 240.

PARCH. A parish.

"He departed the cite of Rome into divers *parches*, and ordeyned cherchis, and cymeteries, and prestis for to serve." 73.

PARFITE. Perfect. 15.

Still used in Norfolk. *See* Forby's "Vocabulary," ii. 243.

PARTIE.

(1) Part.

"In *partie* to stand to his justise." 163.—"Rod onto the west *partyes*." 195.

(2) Part. "In party," *i.e.*, in part; partly. 17.

PASE, PASE DAY. Easter Day. 61.

PASS. To surpass. 68.

PASS. A pace; a step.

"In length half a mile, and XL. *passes*." 16.

PASSID. Exceeding.

"The Prince had in his felauchip not not *passid* IIII. thousand." 217.

PASSING. Excessively.

"He was a *passing* covetous man." 103.

PASSIOUN. Sickness; disease.

"Asa . . . in his age had sore feet whech *passioun*," &c. 40.

PAST. Paste; the material employed in making the wafer used in the Mass.

"He ordeyned white *past* for the Sacrament." 94.

PATENTLY. Openly.

"And purposed for to venge him *patently*." 224.

PAX. A small ornamental box called the "pax-brede," or "pax-borde," given during the celebration of the Mass to the faithful that they may kiss it. *See* "Promptorium Parvulorum," p. 388, *note*.

"He ordeyned that the prest should kiss the *pax*, and thanne send it to the puple." 97.

PEER. An equal; a peer.

"Thei were . . . condemned be her *peres*." 309.

PEISE. To oppress; to weigh down; to weigh.

"Whech vilony the duke *peisid* ful hevyly." 146.

PELOURE. Garments made of fur.

"*Peloure* or precious cloth." 222.

PENS. Pence. 214.

PENS OF TWO. Twopence.

"Grotes, *pens of two*, and pens." 214.

PENYTAUNCERE. A Penitentiary.

"Raymund . . . . was *Penytauncere* undir the Pope." 150.

PERCHE.

(1) To pierce.

"And Herri Percy, aftir the propirte of his name, *perchid*, or presed, in so fer that he was ded." 283.

(2) To perish.

"That this craft should not *perch*." 8.

PERJURE. Perjured. 296.

PERSON. The parson of a parish. 132.

PERSONAGE. A parsonage. 132.

PES, PEES. Peace. 218.

PESIBYLY. Peaceably. 215.

PILL. To spoil.

"The lond was so *pilled*." 292.

PLEGGE. Pledged. 159.

PLENER. Plenary.

"*Plener* remission of synne." 242.

Plenteuously. Perfectly; fully.

"More *plenteuously* conceyved be Mercurye." 34.

Plesauns. Pleasure; delight. 8.

Plete. To plead.

"He was the first that mad causes to be *pleted* before juges." 29.

Pleyn. Clear; smooth.

"The erdqwave threw it fer awey, and eft the ground *pleyn*." 164.

Podegra. The gout. 40.

Point. An instance.

"Accused certeyn *poyntis* of treson." 243.

Polled. Having the hair cut; wearing the tonsure.

"Every abbot mitred and *polled*." 234.

Porge. To purge. 106.

Porrect. Promulgated; tendered.

"Certeyn peticiones whech were *porrect* in the Parlement." 266.

Porsewe. To pursue. 80.

Possibilite. Power; capability.

"After my *possibilite*." 1.

Postil. To comment briefly.

"Hewe [de Sancto Victore], that *postiled* al the Bible." 154.

Potestat. A chief magistrate. 3.

Poules. Paul's; St. Paul's. 260.

Power.

(1) A great number. 145. Still used in Norfolk. *See* Forby's "Vocabulary," ii. 260.

(2) Influence.

"A Parlement . . . fro whech mite no man of *power* absent him." 222.

Poynt. *See* Point.

Poyntel. A style for writing.

"Jon clepid the Scot......be his malicious disciples was punchid to the deth with *poyntelis*." 109.

Poyntment. An appointment; a condition.

"Thei . . . offered the town to Kyng Edward withoute any *poyntment*." 213.

Practik. A practice. 74.

Pray. To invite.

"The Kyng of Yngland *praid* the King of Frauns to dyner the next day." 263.

Prees. A press; a crowd. 217.

Prefer.

(1) To appoint; to assign.

(2) To set over in preference to others.

"I schall *preferr* the this day befor al the puple, and make the leder to hem alle." 32.

Prefix. To appoint.

"There was *prefixed* a bataile betwix him and the duke of Angoye." 229.

Prentise. An apprentice. 277.

Prephecy. To prophecy. 358.

Prest. A priest. 74.

Preve. To deprive. 99.

Preve. To prove. 362.

This pronunciation is still sometimes used in East Anglia.

Principal. A chief man; a head.

"The *principalis* of London." 160.

Prison. To imprison.

"First was he *prisoned* in the Castel of Aungel." 119.

Prive. To deprive. 210

Prive. Private.

"Bot rather *prive* labourer of her ouyne party." 366.

Processe. Relation; story.

"In sekyng of her *processe*." 1.

Procuracie.

"Whan this *procuracie* was come to the Kyng. 301.

Procuracion. A procuring.

"Be *procuracion* of the queen was made a mariage betwix," &c. 194.

Promit. To promise. 209.

Propir. Of one's own.

"Thei have no thing *propir*, peny, ne halfpeny, ne touche no mony. 307.

PROVIDENS.

"The observauns and *providens* of the Cherch." 54.

PROVYSIONES.

"For favoure of the Pope thei graunted him his *provysiones* til the nexte Parlement." 256.

PRYVE. 284. *See* PRIVE.

PRYVY.

(1) Secret; unseen.

(2) Acquainted with.

"Now will I make you *pryvy* what manner opinion I have of ȝoure persone in my *pryvy* meditaciones." 2.

PULL HOM. To pull home; to bring into order.

"Thei *pulled hom* many a man that was of full evel rule. 262.

PUNCH.

(1) To punish.

"Adrian . . . . . went to Jerusalem, and *punchid* there the Jews that were rebelles." 65.

(2) To stab with a dagger or small pointed instrument. *See* POYNTEL.

PUPLE. People. 17.

PURPOSE.

(1) To propose.

"Many other articles were *purposed* there." 247.

(2) To meditate a journey; to propose to go.

"The Kyng *purposed* him into Frauns." 208.

PURSEW. To strive to obtain.

"Than *pursewed* he a dyvors betwix him and his wif." 147.

PURVEYE. To provide; to obtain.

"He [the King] cam hom to *purveye* this mony." 146.—"The Frenschmen *purveyed* hem for to fite with Englischmen." 230.

PURVYAUNS, PURVEYAUNCE.

(1) Foresight; providence.

"Be the *purvyauns* of God." 35.

(2) Provision. 292.

PURVYOUR. One who purveys or provides; a purveyor.

"The quenes *purvyouris*." 188.

Q.

QUANTITE. Capacity.

"His schip [the ark] whech was of grete *quantite*." 16.

QUEN. A queen. 104.

QUER, QUERE. The choir; [quire]. 122.

QUOME. Whom. 342, *note* (14).

QWAT. What. 343, *note* (10).

QWERNE. A hand-mill.

"To dwel with a baxter, and grind his corn at a *qwerne*." 55.

QWEST. An inquiry.

"The Kyng . . . . mad a *qwest* for to be assigned." 192.

QWHY. Why. 343, *note* (11).

QWIK. Alive; living. 33.

R.

RASE. To erase. 86.

RAVEYN. Theft, plunder.

"The Kyngis meny used mech *raveyn*." 131.

REAL, RYALL. Royal.

"The Queen held a *real* Christmasse at Walingford." 197.

REBEL. Rebellious.

"Alle that were *rebel* agayn him he prisoned or killid." 216.

RECURE. To recover. 127, 214.

"He . . . . killed hem, and *recured* ageyn the empire." 98.

Reforme. To renew; to restore.
"To cardinales sent to *reforme* pees be twix the Kynges." 205.

Regalie. Royalty; kingly office. 129.

Regne. A kingdom; a dynasty.
"This was the secund *regne.*" 23.
So also "Regner," the reigning Sovereign. 52.

Rejecte. Rejected. 88.

Rejoyce. To enjoy.
"That he schuld frely *rejoyce* alle the lond of the othir side of Seyne." 112.

Relese. To relinquish. (A law term.)
"He *relesed* al the rite that he had to Gyan and Gascon." 157.

Remanent. Remnant; remainder.
"Al the *remanent* thei schal gyve in elmesse." 308.

Remeve. To remove. 219.
Also, (of a siege,) to raise.
"To *remeve* the sege of Berwick." 202.

Renegate. A renegade. 298.

Reneye. To renounce; to deny.
"For to *reneye* here feith." 138.

Renne. To run. 307.

Rere. To raise.
"Why thei had *rered* swech a power." 249.

Respone. A response.
"Thoo *respones* of oure Lady." 121.

Resyne. Resigned.
"But for he *resyne* and went," &c. 71.

Rever. A river. 348.

Revoce. To revoke. 265.

Rewme, Reme. The realm. 187.

Risen. Arose.
"In this tyme eke *risen* tydingis." 264.

Riser. A rebel; insurgent.
"Jon Wraw, prest, leder of *riscres.*" 238.

Rith. Right. 81.

Rithfully. Rightly. 40.

Rode. The Rood. A representation of the Crucifixion.
"Thei prechid openly ageyn pilgrimage, and specially Walsingam, and the *Rode* of Northdore." 252.

Ronge. Rung. 357.

Rood. Rode. 219.

Rost. Rose. 366.

Rost. To roast. 73.

Row. Rough.
"He had *row* here lych a leon." 166.

Rowe. Order.
"He rehersed be *rowe.*" 172.

Ryght.
(1) Even; like.
"*Ryght* as he dede for Seynt Clement." 340.
(2) Surely; certainly.
"What maner man or woman . . . .
Asketh a bone of her he hath it *ryght.*" 340.

Ryveling. Violent conduct.
"Thei of Portingale were eke wery of hem for *ryveling* and oppression." 336.

S.

Saccis (in). [Sack.] In coarse garments.
"Helie and he schal come *in saccis.*" 14.
The coarse upper garment worn by the Sac Friars was called "Saccus."

Sacrarie. The sacrarium; the holy place.
"In the *Sacrarie* of Seynt Petir Cherch." 97.

Sacre. To consecrate; to ordain.
"The disciples of Wiclif . . . took upon hem for to *sacre* prestis." 252.

Sacri. The Consecration.
"He ordeyned that 'Sanctus' schuld be sunge at *Sacri.*" 139.
Also spelt Sacre.

Saute. An assault. 214.

Sawter. The Psalter. 90.

Say. Saw. 191.

Scape. To escape. 118.

Schaberk. A scabbard.
"A swerd fel fro Hevene into his *schaberk.*" 117.

Schave. Shaven. 132.

Schon, Shone. Shoes.
"Hosen and *Schon.*" 70.

Schep. A sheep. 180.

Schere. Shere Thursday; the Thursday before Easter Day.
"*Schere* or Maunde Thursday." 71.

Schreve. A sheriff. 133.
Also written Schryve.

Schryve. Shriven; absolved. 254.

Scolere. A disciple.
"A special *scolere* of this secte." 307.

Scrow. A scroll; a roll. 262.

Seek. Sick. 223.

Seem. To beseem.
"It *seemeth* a King for to stand and die." 63.

Sege. A seat; a jakes. 78.

Seiand. Saying. 32.

Sekirly. Surely; certainly. 185.

Seld. Sold. 145.

Sene. See. 349.

Sene. A Synod.
"Betwix him [Abp. Lanfranc] and the Kyng felle gret distauns, for fro the tyme that he was Kyng myte he nevir hold no *sene,* ne use no correccioune." 131.

Sentens. Import; meaning.
"The general *sentens* of the bok." 148.

Sepulture. A place of burying. 6.

Serkil. A circle. 288.

Sese. To make to cease.
"Sche mad hir son more esy, and *sesed* mech his persecucion. 70.
See Ceyse.

Seson. Seizin; occupation; possession.
"Edward . . . . took *seson* in his wyves heritage." 165.

Sette. To fix; to determine.
"The Frenschmen that had *sette* the day of batayle." 226.

Sex. Six. 2.

Sext. Sixth. 204.

Sexti. Sixty. 2.

Sey. Saw. 89.

Seyd. Called.
"Were *seyd* prophetes." 38.

Seyne. Saw. 339.

Shette. To shut. 124.

Sikernesse. Security. 93.

Sikir, Seker.

(1) Secure; safe; certain; undisturbed.
"But *sikir* is this, that, &c." 28.
"Used to dwell in that hil, for most *sikir* consideracion of sterris." 30.

(2) Resolved; determined.
"This made hym *seker* into that lond to weende." 349.

Simpilnesse. Simplicity. 280.

Sinet. Marked.
"He *sinet* his covetous servaunt with the same seknes." 41.

Singulerly. Severally.
"Every state [estate] *singulerly* inqwyred who thei likid this." 272.

Sith. Sight.
"To plesauns of the *sith.*" 8.

Sithe.

(1) Times.
"Sex *sithe* on is sex." 3.

(2) Since. 10.

Skil. To make a difference to; to signify to.
"It *skil* you not, so ye have good wagis." 306.

Slaundre. Scandal.

"Constantine II. was Pope, that entered the office with grete *slaundre*." 103.

Sle. To slay. 278.

Smet, Smeten.

(1) Smitten. 46.

(2) Smote. 88.

Smok. A woman's shift.

"The *smok* of oure Ladi." 106.

Snyb. To snub; to cut a person short.

"The Kyng cleped hem to his presens, and *snybbed* hem." 260.

Softed. Softened. 363.

So fer forth. To such an extent.

"*So fer forth* that al the godnes of the fader . . . be his vice was forgete." 63.

Solemply. Solemnly; devoutly.

"Sche cam to Rome, and red there *solemply*." 110.

Somnoure. A summoner. 304.

Somonounis. Summons. 170.

Sond. Sand. 161.

Sondry. Sundry; different.

"The *sondry* reward of vertu and of synne." 348.

Songe. Sung. 359.

Sone. Soon. 66.

Songen. Sung. 97.

Songing. Singing.

"*Songing* ympnis to On thei cleped Crist." 64.

Soo. So. 144.

Sore. Very; exceedingly. Still used in this sense in East Anglia. (*Forby.*) 7.

Soth. True.

"Wenyng al had be *soth*." 135.—"It was not *soth*." 286.

Soudan. A sultan. 277.

Soudyoure. A soldier. 298.

Sound. To signify.

"Enos . . . *soundith* 'A resonable man.'" 9.

Sowte. Sought. 147.

Spak. Spake. 81.

Special (in). In chief.

"Of Sem come V. puples in *special*, of whech Elam was first." 17.

Sped. To dispatch speedily; to speed.

"As though thei had *sped* a grete matere. 184.

Spere. To shut; to close.

"He *sperd* Hevene fro reyn." 41.—"Thei *sperd* the gates." 145.

Spete, Spite. A spit. 198.

Spoke. Spoken. 6.

Spore. A spur.

"The chalis of Seynt Edward, the crosse, the sceptre, the *spores*, and swech other." 174.

Spring. Rising.

"The *spring* of the sunne." 18.

Spring. To spread abroad; to prevail.

"In these days *sprong* the too heresies, the Priscillianistes and Pelagianes." 83.

The word "Springe" is still used in Norfolk in the active sense,—"*to spread*;" "*to sprinkle*." *See* Forby's "Vocabulary," ii. 321.

Sprong. Sprung. 83.

Spyce. Sort; wise.

"In some *spyce*," *i.e.*, "in some sort." 339.

Stal. Stole.

"Than the Cuntesse of Bowan *stal* fro hir lord alle his grete hors." 173.

Stant. Stand; stands.

"This lond *stant* in the south side of the world." 23.

STAUNS. A distance; a difference.

"There fel a *stauns* betwix the emperoure and the Pope." 93.

STEDE. A horse; a steed. 307.

STERE. To incite.

"Thei that *stered* the Kyng to that conclusion." 247.

STERER. An inciter; one who stirs a person up to any act.

"The principal *stereris* to this oth." 162.

STERING. Inspiration; stirring up.

"Throw his *stering*." 128.

STITH. A blacksmith's anvil. This word is generally written "Stithy," but the form "Stith," according to Forby, is still used in East Anglia.

STODE. Stood; continued. 359.

STON. A stone. 2.

STOYNE.

(1) To dash with a loud noise.

"And brast the dores with swech a violens that thei *stoyned* on the walle." 124.

(2) To astonish.

"This cry *stoyned* gretly the Court." 255.

STRANGILLID. Suffocated.

"*Strangillid* with the hete." 80.

STREITE. [Strait.] Narrow. 3.

STREITE, STREITH. Straightway. 202.

STRENGER. Stronger. 289.

STRENGTH.

(1) Forces.

"The erl of Warwik cam with *strength*." 178.

(2) A stronghold.

"Many castelos and *strengthis*." 171.

STRENGTH. To strengthen; to confirm.

"That thei shuld *strength* him in his right." 247.

STROOK. A stroke. 240.

STUDIER. A student. 1.

SUASIONES. Persuasions.

"In whech letter swecch *suasions* were mad." 172.

SUBARBES. Suburbs. 186.

SUBDIACONE. A subdeacon. 74.

SUBLIMAT. Elevated; raised.

"Was *sublimat* in the empire." 93.

SUDARIE. A handkerchief; a napkin.

"The *sudarie* of oure Lord." 106.

SUFFICIENS. Sufficient; enough.

"God schal sende us *sufficiens* on erde." 92.

SUFFOCAT. Suffocated. 267.

SURVIOURE. An overseer of any work; a surveyor. 219.

SUSPECTE. Suspected.

"His juges schuld not be *suspecte*." 87.

SWARE. Square. 2.

SWECH. Such. 84.

SWERD. A sword. 117.

SWITNESSE. Swiftness. 36. The MS. C.C.C. has *Swiftinesse*.

SWORE. Sworn.

"All these folowing were *swore*." 249.

SWORE. Sworne. 353.

SWYERE. An esquire. 230.

SWYN. A pig. Used in the singular.

"A good *swyn*, to ȝere old, for xld'." 180.

T.

TABEL. A tablet.

"He . . . . sei in the ground a *tabel* of marbil, &c." 92.

TAKE. To give; to deliver unto. Participle "take" for "taken."

"Whanne it was newly *take* it had more vertu because of the ȝivere." 9.—"Then the archbischop *took* him certeyn articules." 305.

TAKE. Taken (in the ordinary sense). 214.

TALIAGE. A tax. 264.

TARGE. The large royal seal, with the shield of arms upon it.

"The grete *targe* and the privy sel." 183.

TARY. Delay.

"With ful moche stodye, *tary*, and tene." 349.

TAYLE. A reckoning; a day of reckoning.

"'Be ware of the *tayle*. Trost verily the Englischmen wil not leve this mater thus.'" 284.

TEENE. Sorrow.

"With preyerys, fastynge, coold and mekel *teene*." 342.

"With ful moche stodye, tary, and *tene*. 349.

TEREMENT. A funeral; an interment.

"The King held a solempne *terement* for his fader at Cauntirbury." 303.

TERNARY. A triple resolution.

"Make in ȝoure soule to *ternaries*." 3.

See BINARY.

TEWHEL. The "intestinum rectum" or "straight gut." *See* Skinner's "Etymologicon." It is used in the present text, (page 199,) in the account of the murder of King Edward II. It is stated in Halliwell's "Dictionary" that this word is still commonly used of a horse in Norfolk.

THERE. Where.

"Whan he cam to the place *there* he schuld deye." 265.

THO, THOO.

(1) Those.

"*Thoo* that schuld come to their secte.' 77.

(2) Then.

"And *thoo* turned it contrari." 243.

THOROW, THORW. Through. 78.

THOUTE. Thought. 245.

THOUȜ. Though. 139.

THREES. Thrice.

"*Threes* too is sex." 3.

THRETT. To threaten. 80.

THRETTENE. Thirteen. 349.

THURGH. Through. 347.

THURIFIE. To burn incense. 76.

THUS. This. 357.

TILMAN. An agricultural labourer. 23, 214.

TO. Of.

"The men of the town had suspicion *to* hem." 275.

TO. Two. 228.

TOME. A tomb. 359.

TONG. A tongue; a nation.

"This Pope translate the empire fro the Grekis onto the Frensch *tong*." 103.

TOOKENYNG. Token; signification. 339.

TOTH. A tooth. 31.

TOUCH. A hasty inspection; a passing glance.

"A schort *touch* of the writing." 1.

TOUCH. To notice; to make mention of.

"As it schal be *touchid* aftirward." 16.

TOW. Tough. 20.

TRACE. A path.

"Thou tredis the *trace*." 158.

TRAGEDIE, TRAJEDI. A tragedian.

"Sophocles and Euripides, that were cleped *tragedies*. *Trajedi* is as mech to sey as he that writith eld stories, with dittees hevy and sorowful." 49.

TRANSALET, Translated.

"The bokes of Dialoges he [Pope Zachary] *transalet* fro Grew into Latyn." 102.

TRANSLATE. Translated.

"This Pope *translate* the Empire fro the Grekis onto the Frensch tong." 103.

Translat. Translated. (*Pass. Part.*)

"His bones . . . . . were *translat* . . . . . be Moises." 30.

Trayn. A stratagem.

"That the Kyng of Scottis schuld be *trayn* kille this Thomas." 183.

Tre. Wood; timber.

"He had a castel of *tre*, whech he cleped Mategrifon." 145.

Tretour. A traitor. 275.

Treuth. True and faithful observance.

"The *treuth* of the oth." 272.

Trouble. Disturbance ; outbreak.

"He was killid in Mens at a grete *trouble* and rising of knytes." 69.

Tuycioune. Keeping ; guardianship.

"His body was kept undir *tuycioune* of the bischop of Cauntirbiry." 192.—"For *tuycion* of the Marches." 282.

U.

Undirtake. To convict ; to convince ; to rebuke.

"To *undirtake* wikkid men of here evel werkis." 13.

Unnethe. Scarcely.

"And after his deth myght *unnethe* be knowe,
The lyf, the lernyng of this swete flour." 348.

Up. Upon.

"Gordian . . . had grete victorie *up* the Perses." 70.

Utterest. Uttermost.

"To the *utterest*." 134.

This form is still used in Norfolk. "They say, utter, utterer, utterest; little, lesserer, lesserest." *See* Forby's Introduction.

V.

Variauns. A variation; a difference. 48.

Velim. Vellum.

"The *velim* lith bare." 2.

Velonye. *See* Vilony.

Venemously. Violently; with rancour. 241.

Venge. To revenge. 15.

Veniabil. Revengeful.

"A cursed *veniabil* man onto Cristen men." 71.

Veniauns. Vengeance. 213.

Venym. Poison.

"A knyf alayed with *venym*." 162.

Vernicle. The picture of the face of Christ, preserved in S. Peter's at Rome, which (according to the legend) was miraculously imprinted on the handkerchief given to our Lord by S. Veronica, at the time of His crucifixion.

"Vespasian . . . . cured be sith of the *Vernicle*." 62.

This word is also spelt Verony.

Viage. A voyage; also a journey by land. 224.

Vicarie. A vicar. 234.

Vilens. Villainous.

"He said *vilens* wordis ageyn the Seint." 122.

Vilensly. Ignominiously. 233.

Vilony.

(1) Wickedness; offensive conduct.

"Whech *vilony* the duke peised ful hevyly." 146.

(2) Disgrace.

"There had the Kyng grete victorie, and the Scottis grete *velonye*." 202.

Void.

(1) To put out of the way; to remove.

"The othir seyde that the Gospel whech Crist prechid . . . . schuld be a *voided* in the ȝere of oure Lord M.CCLX., and that same ȝere schuld beginne the doctrine of Joachim." 158.

(2) To depart.

" To *voyd* fro his presens." 248.

W.

Wage. To pay wages.
" *Waged* sufficiently." 300.

Wage. Reward; wages. 341.

Walk. To move; to tend.
"Now se I weel whidir thi malice *walkith.* 287.

Walnote. A walnut. 312.

Wallid. Protected; hedged round.
"So *wallid* with the Kyngis grace." 191.

Wan. Won; gained.
" Oloferne *wan* Egypt." 24.

War. Ware, aware.
" Gefrey was *war* of this." 136.

Watir. A river.
" The *watir* of Seyne." 211.

Wedde. A pledge.
"It was laid to *wedde* for certyn ȝeris." 257.

Weel. Wel. 161.

Weende. To wend; to go.
" Whan he hens shuld *weende.*" 339.

Wene. To suppose; to think.
" *Wenying* al had be soth." 135.

Went. Dwelled; lived.
"Crist. whil He *went* here·" 305.

Wered. Wore. 70.

Werk. Work. 135, 240.

Werre. War. 181.

Werroure. Warrior. 227.

Wetch. To watch. 357.

Wex. To become; to grow. 141.

Where that. Whereat.
" He . . . . gat licens to remeve his sete to Norwich, *where that* he foundid a worchipful nonasteri." 131.

Whidir. Whither. 287.

White, Wiȝt. Weight.
" The elde sterlynges, whech were of gretter *white.*" [*wiȝt,* C.C.C.] 214.

Who. How. 14.

Whou. How. 234.

Wich. A wizard.
" Mahomet . . . was a *wich.*" 94.

Wist. Knew.
" No man *wist* where he was." 123.

Wite. To ascertain; to know.
" He went into Normandy, for to *wite* if his doutir were with child." 135.

Withdrow. Withdrew. 185, 260.

Withouten. Without. 28.

Witȝ. With. 196. 282.

Wodis. Woods. 221.

Wodnes. Madness.
"In her *wodnes* thei kyllid the bischop of Cauntirbiry," &c. 237.

Wodwous. A wild man of the woods.
" Arayed lich a *wodwous.*" 257.

Wold. Would; was willing. 141.

Wolkom. Welcome. 248.

Wolland. Woollen. 308.

Wombe. The bowels; the belly.
"Out of his *wombe.*" 78. 344.

Wone. Wont; accustomed. 131.

Wood. Mad.
" Be cursed and *wood.*" 173.

Worchip. Reverence; honour. 90.

Wordis. The words; the talking part.
"The duke of Gloucetir had the *wordis*." 249.

Wrech. A miserable fellow; a rebel.
"Fast be Norwich rose anothir *wrech*, cleped Jek Lister." 237.

Wrech. To be avenged.
"And sent letteris . . . that he wold be *wrechid* first upon him." 309.

Wretin. Written. 125.

Wright. A workman.
"A *wright* hew on a tre, whech schuld long to a schip." 240.

Wykyr. Wickerwork.
"In a vessel of *wykyris*." 30.

Wynd. Breath.
"The *wynd* of his mouth." 78.

Wyntir. Wintry, stormy weather. Like the Latin *hiems*. 295.

Y.

Ydol. *See* Idol.

Yclad. *See* Iclad.

Yld. *See* Ild.

Ymage. *See* Image.

Ymbir-dayes. Ember-days. 69.

Ympnis. Hymns. 64.

Yove. Given. 341.

Yrun. *See* Irun.

Yse. Ice. 203.

Z.

Zelator. A defender.
"Good *zelatores* of the rem." 195. "Behold what *zelatouris* thei were of oure Feith." 298.

Ȝ.

Ȝald. Yielded.
"The King *ȝald* him to the duke." 271.

Ȝave. Gave. 337.

Ȝe. Ye; thou. 124.

Ȝelde. To yield.
"They promised him to *ȝelde* the castel." 295.

Ȝerd. A yard.
"The church *ȝerd* at Glaskinbury." 140.

Ȝeringis. Yearlings. 8.

Ȝere. A year. 1.

Ȝet. Yet. 302.

Ȝift. A gift. 52.

Ȝiftes. Gifts. 358.

Ȝiving. Giving. 104.

Ȝold. Yielded.
"*ȝold* hem to the Kyng." 187.

Ȝoldyn. Yielded; given up.
"The cyte had be *ȝoldyn*." 161.

Ȝong. Young. 131.

Ȝouȝ. Though. 134.

Ȝove. Gave; had given. 104.

Ȝow. You.

GENERAL INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

Aaron, 30.

Abda, 47.

Abdon, Judge of Israel, 36.

Abdy, John [Robert, according to Le Neve], Junior Proctor of Oxford, (A.D. 1456), 332, *and notes.*

Abel, birth of, 5; death of, *ib.*

Aberdeen, ships of Lynn fishing at, take certain Scotch ships, 276.

Aberystwith [Abrust in MS.], (co. Cardigan), siege of, 295; Glendwr relieves the castle, *ib.*

Abgarus, Legend of, and the Epistle of Christ, 138.

Abijam, King of Judah, 40.

Abimelech, Judge of Israel, 35.

Abingdon Abbey is founded by King Edgar, 120.

Abingdon, the Earl of Kent tries to raise the townsmen of, in favour of Richard II., 275.

Abraham, Generations from Adam to, 19; birth of, 25; begets Isaac, 27; his life and death, *ib.*

Absalom, son of David, 40.

Absolution, Sir John Oldcastle's tenet respecting, 305.

Abyngton, Edmund of, chosen Archbishop of Canterbury, 153; confirms Edward I., 154.

Achaia, S. Andrew martyred in, 60.

Acre taken in the first Crusade, 128; taking of, by Richard I., 146; quarrel between Richard I. and the Duke of Austria at, *ib.*; relieved by Prince Edward, 161; attempt to murder Prince Edward at, *ib.*; anciently called Ptolemais, 162; Prince Edward elected King while at, *ib.*; Joan, daughter of Edward I., born at, 168.

Acts of the Apostles, Capgrave's commentary on, xii, xvi, 315 *note*, 326, 356.

Adah, 8.

Adam, 2, 4, 12, 18; creation of, 5; penance of, 7 *and note*; death of, 11; buried in Hebron, *ib.*, 5.

Adam de Orleton, Bishop of Hereford, and the Barons at S. Albans demand the banishment of the Despensers, 187; appeals to the Archbishop of Canterbury against a charge of treason, 192; is condemned and deprived of his liberty, *ib.*; supports Queen Isabella against the King, 195; keeps Christmas with Queen Isabella at Wallingford, 197.

Adam Eston, monk of Norwich and Cardinal, deposed by Pope Urban VI.; restored by Pope Boniface, IX., 254; persuades Boniface IX. to define the remission conveyed by indulgences, *ib.*

Adamar, Abbot of Cluni, 115.
Addresses to the Clergy, by Capgrave, xvii.
Adelaide [Dalvida in MS.], widow of Lothaire, imprisoned by Berenger IV., 117 ; but released by Otho the Great, who marries her, *ib.*
Adelais, of Louvain, marries Henry I., 133.
Adeodatus, Pope, 96.
Adrian, Emperor, 65.
Adrian I., Pope, 104.
Adrian II., Pope, 111.
Adrian III., Pope, 112.
Adrian IV., Pope, 137 ; permits Henry II. to invade Ireland, *ib.*
Adrian V., Pope, *see* Ottobone.
Æneas, 36 ; Augustus descended from, 58.
Æneid of Virgil quoted, 358, *and note.*
Ætas prima, 1 ; secunda, 17 ; tertia, 27 ; quarta, 39 ; quinta, 49 ; sexta, 59.
Æthiopians, descendants of Ham, 18 ; Zerah, King of, 40.
Africans, descended from Canaan, 18.
Agace, S., martyred, 75.
Agapetus I., Pope, 91.
Agapetus II., Pope, 115.
Agatho, Pope, 97.
Agen (on the Garone), 217.
Agincourt, the battle of, 312.
Agnes, S., martyred, 75 ; the Church of, 95 ; Pope Honorius I. buried in the Church of, *ib.*
Ahashuerus, 50, 360.
Ahaz, King of Judah, 44.
Ahaziah, King of Judah, 41.
Alaric plunders Rome, 83.
Alba Longa, 37.
Alban, S., the Protomartyr, 180.
Albanactus, son of Brute, 37.
Albania, an early division of Britain, 37.
Albanopolis, S. Bartholomew martyred in, 61.
Albans, S., Pope Adrian IV. born at, 137 ; Edward II. visits, 179 ; investigation by him of the relics of S. Alban at Ely, and at, 180 ; pillaged by Sir Robert Walkfare, 187 ; the Barons assemble at, and demand the banishment of the Despensers, *ib.* ; disturbances at, 198 ; Richard Wallingford, the astronomer, Abbot of, dies, 204 ; dispute between Henry Spenser, Bishop of Norwich, and the Abbot of, 235 ; troubles (in Wat Tyler's rebellion) at, 237 ; Edmund, Duke of York, proposes to gather the people against Henry, Duke of Lancaster, at, 270 ; John de la Moote, Abbot of, present at the burial of Richard II., 276 ; the adherents of Oldcastle set up seditious bills at, 317.
Albemarle, Duke of, the Earl of Rutland is made, by Richard II., 267 ; accompanies Richard II. into Ireland, 269 ; returns with him to oppose Henry of Lancaster, 271 ; is deprived of his title on the accession of Henry IV., 274.
Albert, (father of Pope John XII.,) procures the election of his son by bribery, 116.
Albula, the river, [the Tiber,] 360.
Alcuin, 104.
Alcoran, origin of, 94.
Aldred, Archbishop of York, crowns William I. at Westminster, 129.
Alençon, John, Count of, *see* John, Count of Alençon.
Alexander [Paris] ravishes Helen, 36.
Alexander de Neville, Archbishop of York, *see* Neville.
Alexander Totington, Bishop of Norwich, *see* Totington.
Alexander the Great, his interview with Diogenes the Cynic, 51 ; with Demosthenes, *ib.* ; he overcomes Darius Codomannus, 52 ; notices of his reign, 53, 362, 363 ; his death, 53 ; mention of his library, 54.
Alexander Severus, 69 ; his death at Ments, *ib.*
Alexander I., Bishop of Rome, 65.
Alexander II., Pope, 126 ; is appealed to by William the Norman to support his claim to the throne of England, 129 ; grants certain privileges to the Abbot of S. Edmund's Bury, *ib.*

Alexander IV., Pope, permits the Hermits of S. Austin to build in England, 153; condemns certain heretical writings, especially those of the Abbot Joachim, 158.

Alexander V., Pope, 297; elected by the Council of Pisa, *ib.*; grants certain privileges to the Priory of S. Bartholomew's, Smithfield, *ib.*; dies at the Council of Pisa, 298.

Alexandria, great library at, 54; Origen teaches at, 68; the Cypriots take, 224; Athanasius Bishop of, 335.

Alfred the Great, fourth son of Ethelwulf, 109, 113; he founds the University of Oxford, 113.

Alfred, son of Ethelred, is killed by Godwin, Duke of Kent, 126.

All-hallows, Feast of, ordained, 94.

All Souls' College, Oxford, references to MSS. in the library of, xvi., 355.

Allum, or Hallum, Robert, Bishop of Salisbury, elected to go to the Council of Pisa, 296; is sent as a delegate to the Council of Constance, 308.

Almagest, The, 66, *and note.*

Almaric condemned for heresy at Paris, 143.

Almayn [Germany], victories of Flavius Claudius in, 73.

Almeric of Pavia betrays Paris, 214; is surprised by Edward III., and executed, *ib.*

Alphonso III., of Castile, *see* Castile.

Alphonso IX., of Castile, *see* Castile.

Alphonso V., King of Aragon, *see* Aragon.

Altar, Sacrament of, *see* Eucharist.

Amalthea, the Sibyl, 45.

Amaziah, King of Judah, 42.

Ambrose, S., quotation from, in reference to Constantine the Great, 77, *and note*; his fame, 81; made bishop of Milan, *ib.*, S. Augustine converted by the preaching of, 82; quotation from his Epistles, 360.

Amesbury by Salisbury, monastery founded at, by Elfrida, stepmother to Edward the Martyr, 120.

Amiens, Council at, Louis IX. decides for King Henry III. against the Barons, 159; a truce between England and France concluded at, 256.

Amon, King of Judah, 46.

Amphibalus, S., 180.

Amri, 30.

Amurath I., Ottoman Emperor, 223.

Amylon Fitzamarack, Legend of, 335, 345.

Anacletus, Bishop of Rome, 64.

"Anastasis Augustiniana," of Thomas Gratian, reference to, 322, *and note.*

Anastasius, pseudo-patriarch of Constantinople, encourages Constantine V. in his persecution of the orthodox, 102.

Anastasius I., Emperor, 88.

Anastasius II., Emperor, 101.

Anastasius I., Pope, 82.

Anastasius II., Pope, 88.

Anastasius III., Pope, 114.

Anastasius IV., Pope, 137.

Anastatia, S., martyred, 75.

Anathoth, Jeremiah born in, 46.

Andrew, S., the Apostle, 60; translation to Constantinople, 79.

Angelo, Castle, renewed by Pope Boniface IX., 268.

"Anglia Sacra," reference to Wharton's, xxi, 322, *and note.*

"Angliæ Sanctorum Catalogus," by Capgrave, reference to, xvii, xxi, 322, *note* (³), 323, *note* (³), 327.

Angoulême, Isabella of, [Blanch of Engelsyn in MS.] is married to King John, 147; Guischard of, is made Earl of Huntingdon by Richard II., 232.

Anicetus, Pope, 67.

Anjora, the battle of, defeat of Bajazet I. at, 277.

Anjou and other lands ceded by Henry III. to France, 159.

Anjou, Louis, Duke of, resists John of Gaunt, 229; is on the French side at the treaty of Bruges, *ib.*; tries to obtain the Kingdom of France on the death of Charles V., 235.

Anlaf of Ireland, defeated by Athelstan, 117.

Anlaf, King of Norway, ravages England, 122.

Andrew, Sir, of Florence, a notary, 191.

Anne, sister of Wenceslas of Bohemia, marries Richard II., 238; dies, and is buried at Westminster, 258.

Annesley, Sir John, 230.

"Annueleris, prestis," pay nobles to the King, 293.

Anselm made Archbishop of Canterbury, 131.

Anteros, Pope, 71.

Anthemius, 91.

Anthony, Duke of Brabant, is killed at the battle of Agincourt, 312.

Anthony, S., the Hermit, 79.

Antichrist, reference to the coming of, 12, 14, 21.

Antigonus, King of Asia, 53.

Antioch, 53; S. Ignatius martyred at, 64; heresy at, 89; taken in the first Crusade, 128.

Antioch, Gregory, Bishop of, 93.

Antioch, Paul, Bishop of, 111.

Antiochus the Great, 55.

Antiquities of Rome, fragment of Capgrave's Guide to, xx, 355–366.

Antoninus Philosophus, 67.

Antoninus Pius, 66.

Antonius Aurelius [Elagabalus], 69.

Antwerp, Prince Lionel, son of Edward III., is born at, 207.

Aosta, the University of, consulted by Henry IV. respecting ecclesiastical unity, 296.

Apocalypse, Capgrave's Chronicle on, xvi, 326.

Apocryphal Books: the book of Enoch, 12.

Apollo, 34; worshipped at Delphi, 45.

Apparel and food regulated by Statute (37 Edw. III.), 222.

Aquæ Saluiæ, the place of S. Paul's martyrdom, 62.

Aquila, 65.

Aquitaine, given by Louis I. to Pepin, 106; brought by Queen Eleanor to Henry II., 139; restored to Henry III. by Louis VIII., 150; the men of, send to invite Henry III., by the Bishop of Bordeaux, 152; with Gascony, is conferred, in all its rights, on Edward I., 157; Prince Edward does homage to Charles IV. of France for, 194; also after his accession, 199; is encroached upon by Philip VI., 205; successes of Henry of Lancaster in, 211; John II. of France gives the Duchy of, to his son Charles, 216; Edward III. gives it to the Black Prince, *ib.*; King John II. offers to restore it to Edward III., 219; Limoges, and other cities in, revolt from the Black Prince, 227; promised to be restored to Henry IV., 300; the English winter in, 302; leave, 303.

Arabians, Constantine IV. makes a truce with the Bulgarians, and the, 97.

"Ara Cœli," a church at Rome so called, and why, 58.

Aragon, Alphonso V., King of, who had supported Peter de Luna, the Antipope, dies, 316.

——, Ferdinand I., King of, supports the house of Orleans against that of Burgundy, 299.

——, Pedro III., King of, refuses to pay subjection to Philip III. of France, 167.

Aram, son of Shem, 17.

Arator, the poet, 90.

Araxes, the river, 23.

Arbiter, T. Petronius, quotation from, 22, *and note.*

Arcadia, 25.

Arcadius, Emperor, 83.

Arderne, the Black Dog of, a name given to Guy of Warwick, 178.

Argives, Kingdom of, 28, 29.

Arian heresy, 77; success of, under Constans, 78; suppressed by Gratian, 81.

Aristotle, 51.

Arius, death of, 78.

Armachanus, *see* Armagh.

Armagh, Richard Fitz-Ralph, Archbishop of, disputes between the Austin Friars and, 218.

Armagnacs, the faction of the, its origin in France, 299.

Armegnac, the Count of, his battle with the Earl of Dorset, 313.

Armenia, Livo V., the King of, visits King Richard II., and obtains many presents from him, 242.

Armenia, S. Bartholomew preaches in, 61; S. Jude martyred in, *ib.*; conquests of Mauricius in, 93.

Arnulphus, Emperor, 112.

Arphaxad, son of Shem, 17; his descendants, *ib.*, 19.

Arrek, a priest named; legend of his finding the life of S. Katharine, 335, 349; writes her life in English verse, 336; dies at Lynn, 336, 352; is said to have been priest of S. Pancras, 352.

Arses, 52.

Artaxerxes Longimanus, 49.

Artaxerxes II., 50.

Artaxerxes III., 51.

Arthur of Britanny, (who claimed the Earldom of Richmond,) is taken at Agincourt, 312.

Arthur, King of Britain, his conquests and death, 87; the body of, found at Glastonbury, 140; his dominion over Scotland pleaded by Edward I. against Pope Boniface VIII., in the matter of homage, 172; his Round Table restored at Windsor by King Edward III., 211.

Arthur, Prince, heir of Richard I., is slain by order of John, 147; Louis VIII., of France, claims the English Crown, having married the sister of, 149.

Articles proposed by the Orleanists to Henry IV., 301.

Arundel, Edmund, Earl of, *see* Edmund.

——, Richard, Earl of, *see* Richard.

——, Thomas, Earl of, *see* Thomas.

Arundel, Thomas, Archbishop of York, prays Richard II. to return to England from Ireland, and to suppress the Lollards, 259; is made Archbishop of Canterbury, 263; is exiled by Richard II., 265; returns to England with Henry Duke of Lancaster, 269; Richard II. consents to resign the crown in the presence of, 271; is present at his formal resignation in Westminster Hall, 272; acknowledges Henry of Lancaster as King, 273; is entrusted by Richard II. with the holy oil given (according to the legend) to Thomas Becket by the Blessed Virgin, 274; anoints Henry IV. with the same, *ib.*; dispute in the Parliament at Coventry between the Speaker (Sir John Cheney) and, 287; dispute between the University of Oxford and, 299; dines with Henry IV., 291; his sickness, *ib.*; takes part in the council at Worcester in which Henry IV. attempts to raise money, 292.

Arvigarus, marries the daughter of Claudius Cæsar, 62.

Asa, King of Judah, 40.

Asaph, S., John Lowe, Bishop of, Capgrave dedicates some of his works to, xiv, xx.

Ascanius, 36.

Asia, 24.

Asshur, son of Shem, 17.

Assyria, Kingdom of, 24.

Assyrians, name of, derived from Asshur, the son of Shem, 17; first Kingdom of, 23; host of, under Sennacharib, destroyed, 45.

Astolphus, King of the Lombards, drives Pope Stephen II. into France, 103.

Athaliah, Queen, 41.

Athanasius, Legend of the Life of S. Katharine written by one, 335; her confessor, 336.

Athanasius, S., 78, 79; recalled from exile by Jovian, 80.

Athelstan, (son of Edward the Elder,) 117; his victories over Anlaf of Ireland and Constantine of Scotland, *ib.*, marriage of his daughter to Otho the Great, *ib.*

Athens, so named after Minerva, 21; Pope Hyginus born in, 66; Pope Joan said to nave studied at, 110.

Athol, David, Earl of, joins Edward Baliol, 201; attends the Parliament at York, 204.

Atlas, 30.

Atwood, Mayor of the City of Oxford, (A.D. 1456), 332.

Audley, Hugh, 189; is made Earl of Gloucester, 204.

Augustin, S., monks of 1; the Friars Hermits instituted, 144; the Hermits patronised by Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester, 152; allowed to build Houses of their Order in England, *ib.*; build convents at various places, 153; the monks of, allowed to dwell in cities, 85, 157; patronized by Pope John XXII., and are allowed by his intervention to settle in Bohemia, 181; Capgrave's list of "the religious which lived under the rules of St. Augustin," 324, *note* (4); convent of Augustin Friars at Oxford, 329; deed relating to the Founders of their House, extracted from the chartulary of Borstall, 329–334; notices of the Austin Friary at Lynn, 367–371.

—— S., De Civ. Dei, quoted, 25, 26, *and note.*

—— S., his conversion, 82; his opposition to the Priscillianists and Pelagians, 83; his reasons for writing the "De Civitate Dei," 84; the relics of translated to Pavia by Luitprand, 102; legend of his appearance to Pope Alexander IV., 157.

"Augustini, De Sequacibus Divi," by Capgrave, reference to, xvii, 323; *note* (3); 326.

"Augustini, De illustribus viris," by Capgrave, xviii, 327.

"Augustini, Chronica Fratrum Eremitarum Sancti," of Pamphilus, x, 321, *and note.*

"Augustinianis, De ducentis Scriptoribus," of Ant. Gandolphus, reference to, 322, *and note.*

"Augustinianum Encomiasticon," of Elssius, reference to the, 321, *and note.*

Augustin, S., Capgrave's Life of, xviii.

Augustine, S., sent into England by Gregory the Great, 93; baptizes Ethelbert, 99.

Augustus Cæsar, 57, 58.

Aungel, *see* Corrario (Angelo).

Auray, the battle of, Charles de Blois defeated at, 223; De Montfort takes the Castle of, 230.

Aurelian, Emperor, 73.

Aurelianensis, the University, *see* Orleans.

Aureolus slays Gallienus at Milan, 72.

Austria, the Duke of, (the Marshall,) one of the seven Electors of the Emperor after the death of Otho III., 121.

Austria, Leopold, Duke of, offended at the siege of Acre, 146; takes Richard I. prisoner, and betrays him to the Emperor Henry VI., *ib.*

Austria, Leopold III., Duke of, oppresses the pilgrims passing through his country, 242; and so stirs up a rebellion among his subjects, *ib.*

Austria, Pope John XXIII. flies into, 308.

Auvergne, John, Duke of, and others, negotiate with Henry IV. in behalf of the house of Orleans, 300.

Auvergne, 229.

Avalon, King Arthur dies in the Isle of, 87.

Avignon, the Papal See removed to, 173; Pope John XXII. formerly Bishop of, 181; dies, and is buried at, 203.

Ayreminne, William de, Bishop of Norwich, is made Chancellor, 169; keeps Christmas with Queen Isabella at Wallingford, 197.

Azuba, 41.

B.

Babel, tower of, built, 20.

Babylon, Manasseh led captive to, 45; the Erythræn Sibyl dwelt at, *ib.*; Daniel led captive to, 47; Alexander the Great dies at, 53; destruction of, 48.

Babylonish Captivity, the, 46; end of, 47.

Babyngton, Katharine, Sub-Prioress of Campseye Priory, Suffolk, xxviii.

Bachelor, William, Canon of Lincoln, is sent to restore to the spoiled the goods of which Henry Burghurst had deprived them, 211.

Bactrians, descended from Salah, 18; Zoroaster King of, 25, *note*.

Baddlesmere, Bartholomew, Lord of Leeds Castle, Kent, 188; the wife and daughters of, committed to the Tower of London, *ib.*; taken at Borough Bridge and executed, 190.

Bagot, Sir William, one of the chief speakers in Parliament in behalf of cancelling all pardons granted in the matter of the Commission of Regency, 265; is summoned by Edmund, Duke of York, to attend a council on the landing of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 270; leaves him and flies to Bristol, *ib.*; escapes to Chester, 271.

Bajazet, defeated, 277.

Baldock, Robert de, counsels Edward II. not to do homage to Charles V., 191; accompanies Edward II. in his flight before the Queen, 196; is taken by the Queen, *ib.*; is sent to London, and dies in Newgate, 197.

Baldok, Walter de, Prior of Lesnes, hanged, 278.

Baldwin, Abbot of Bury St. Edmund's, purchases certain privileges of Pope Alexander II., 129.

Baldwin, Archbishop of Canterbury, crowns Richard I., 144.

Bale, the Works of, 321; extract from, 323, 327.

Baliol, John, refuses to acknowledge Edward I., 171; is defeated at Dunbar, *ib.*; surrenders to Edward I., *ib.*; is claimed in the exchange of prisoners by Philip IV. of France, 172.

Baliol, Edward, claims the crown of Scotland, 201; is assisted by certain English Lords, *ib.*; defeats the Scots, *ib.*; obtains the assistance of Edward III., *ib.*; is crowned at Scone, 202; is established in the kingdom after the siege of Berwick, *ib.*; is unable to attend the Parliament at York, for fear of the Scots lying in wait, *ib.*; does homage to Edward III. at Newcastle-on-Tyne, 203; resigns Scotland to Edward III. at Roxburgh, 217.

Balliol College, Oxford, MSS. at, xvi, 355.

Baltazar, Dan, 277.

Balthasar, Cossa, Bishop of Bologna, elected Pope John XXII., 298.

Bamborough, Athelstan defeats Constantine of Scotland at, 117.

Bangor, Bishops of, *see* Bifort (Lewis or Llewelyn).

Bar, pleading at, to be in the English tongue, 222.

Barabbas, story of the baptism of one, by an Arian Bishop, 88.

Barak, overcomes Sisera, 33.

Bardolf, Thomas Lord, his conspiracy, 289; retreats into Scotland, 291; is defeated and slain, 295.

Bari, Bartholomew Prignano, Archbishop of, chosen Pope (Urban VI.), 233.

Barking, Mary, the sister of Archbishop Becket, is made Abbess of, 142.

Barlaam, 81.

Barnabas, S., finding of the body of, 87.

Barnwell, Sir Thomas Trivet is accidentally killed between Cambridge and, 251.

Bartholomew, S., the Apostle, 61; relics of, translated to Rome by Otho II., 119.

Bas, I. de, is taken by Richard, Earl of Arundel, 250.

Basil, S., Bishop of Cæsarea, 81.

Basle, the Council of, 317.

Bassan, *see* Bajazet.

Basset, Ralph, and nearly a hundred knights, taken at Northampton, 159; offends the King of France, 193.

Bateman, William, is elected Bishop of Norwich, 211.

Bath and Wells, Bishop of; *see* Bubwith, Nicolas.

Bathsheba, the mother of Soloman, 39.

Battle Abbey, built by William the Conqueror, 129.

Bavaria and Germany, given by Louis I., to his son Louis, 106.

Bavaria, Louis III., Duke of, meets Edward III. at Cologne, 207 ; afterwards as Emperor deserts Edward III. and joins himself to Philip VI., 209.

——, Ernest, Duke of, at the battle of Agincourt, 312.

Bayeux, Odo, Bishop of, brother of the Conqueror, 129.

——, Thomas of, made Archbishop of York, 130; his contention for supremacy with Archbishop Lanfranc, *ib.*

Bayonne, after the departure of John of Gaunt, remains faithful to Edward III. 229.

Beatrice, natural daughter of John I., King of Portugal, the marriage of, 237.

Beauchamp, John, an adherent of Richard II., is imprisoned at Dover, 249.

——, Thomas, Earl of Warwick, enters France with Edward III., 226; accompanies John de Montfort into France, 230; opposes Robert de Vere, 245; is removed from his Council by Richard II., 251; is arrested by order of Richard II., 264 ; is arrested and exiled to the Isle of Man, 266.

——, William, *see* Bergavenny.

Beaufort, Thomas, takes part in the execution of Archbishop Scrope, 291; Earl of Dorset, and made Governor of Harfleur, 311 ; is created Duke of Exeter, 316.

——, Henry, is made Bishop of Lincoln, 267 ; returns from Ireland with Richard II., on the landing of Henry Duke of Lancaster, 271 ; is translated to Winchester, and is present at the condemnation of Sir John Oldcastle, 305.

——, Sir John, [Thomas in the MS.], son of John, Duke of Lancaster, by Katharine Swinford, is legitimized and made Earl of Somerset, 263 ; one of the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, 264 ; is made Marquis of Dorset, [Norfolk in the MSS.,] 267.

Beaumont, Henry, sent by Edward Baliol to the Parliament at York, 203; besieged in a Castle at Galloway, and delivered by Edward III., *ib.*

——, Louis de, the Legates of John XXII. conduct to Durham, to make him Bishop, 182; taken prisoner by Gilbert de Myddleton, *ib.*; is sent with Edmund of Woodstock and others to the French Court, to excuse Edward II. from doing homage, 192 ; meets Queen Isabella at Harwich, 195.

Beaumont, John, is besieged by the French in Burburgh, 239.

—— Palace, Oxford, 333.

Bec, Lanfranc, Prior of, 130; and tutor of Anselm there, 131.

Becket, Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, his wrongs prophesied by S. Bernard, 139; exile and murder of, 140; translation of, by Henry III., 150; legend of the oil given to him by the Blessed Virgin, 273.

Bede, quotations from, 59, *and note.*

Bedford, John, Duke of, *see* John of Lancaster.

Bedford, strange occurrence near, 281.

Bedfordshire, drying up of a river in, 268.

Beech, Mathew de la, 207.

Beersheba, Zibiah born at, 42.

Belinus, 360.

Belknap, Robert, one of the Judges appointed by Richard II., to consider the Commission of Regency, 246.

Belus, 24; names of, *ib.*

Benedict I., Pope, 92.

Benedict II., Pope, 97.

Benedict III., Pope, 110.

Benedict IV., Pope, 113.

Benedict V., Pope, 116.

Benedict VI., Pope, 119.

Benedict VII., Pope, 120 [Boniface in the MS.]; he receives Otho II. and his Queen at Rome, 119.

Benedict VIII., Pope, 124.

Benedict IX., Pope, 124.

Benedict X., Pope, 126.

Benedict XI., Pope, 173; punning verses on his name, and a translation, *ib.*

Benedict XII., Pope, 203, *and note*; dies, 210; letter of Edward III. against his unjust claims to church patronage in England, *ib.*

Benedict XIII., Pope, unpopularity of his measures, 281; deposed by the Council of Pisa, 297; resigns the Papacy, 308.

Benet, S., translation of, 96; dispute in the time of Pope Zachary as to the relics of, 102.

Benevento and Spoleto, the Duchies of, given by Charlemagne to the Church, 104.

Benevento, is beseiged by Otho II., 119.

Bently, Sir Ralph, defeats the French at Mauron, 215.

Beoville, the lord, 191.

Berenger, King of Italy, driven out by Louis III., 114; restored to his kingdom, *ib.*; Emperor, *ib.*

Berenger II., Emperor, 115.

Berenger III., Emperor, 116.

Berenger IV., Emperor, 117.

Berenger, heresies of, 126; he abjures his opinions at the Council of Tours, under Pope Nicholas II., *ib.*

Bergavenny, William Beauchamp de, accompanies Edward, Earl of Cambridge, into Portugal, 236; is present at the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272; Sir John Oldcastle pursued by him, 309, 310.

Bergerac, Henry of Lancaster takes, 211.

Berkeley, Sir Maurice, imprisoned by Edward II. in Wallingford Castle, 189.

——, Sir Thomas, is reinstated in Gloucester Castle by Queen Isabella, 196; has the keeping of Edward II., 198.

——, Thomas Lord, is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272; burns a portion of the French fleet in Milford Haven, 292.

Berkeley Castle, Edward II. is confined in, 198.

Bernard, S., 128.

Berri, Edward the Black Prince penetrates as far as, 217.

——, John, Duke of, is present at the renewal of the truce of Guines, 262; embraces the cause of the Duke of Orleans, 299.

Bertrand de Guesclin [Bertram Claykin], 225.

Berwick, Edward II. proceeds to, 180; it is betrayed by Peter of Spalding to the Scots, 184; is besieged by Edward II., *ib.*; the King offends Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, who withdraws from the siege of, 185; Edward II. leaves the siege of, and follows the Scots, who had defeated the English at the River Swale, *ib.*; besieged and taken by Edward III., 202; given by him to Edward Baliol, *ib.*; taken by the Scots, 217; surrenders to Edward III., *ib.*; held by Sir William Clifford against Henry IV., 286; Henry IV. seizes it, 291.

—— Castle, sold to the King of Scotland by Richard I., 145.

Berwick, near Shrewsbury Henry IV., remark concerning, 283.

——, five miles from Walsingham, story of Jewet Meatless of, 205.

Bethlehem, David buried at, 39; Christ born at, 59; Pope Evaristus born at, 64.

Bethsaida, 61.

Beuforth, *see* Beauford.

Beverley, Edward II. holds a Parliament against the Scots at, 184.

Beverley, Sir James, an adherent of Richard II., is imprisoned at Bristol, 249.

Bias, 48.

Bica, *see* Woodhouse.

Bifort, Lewis (or Llewelyn), Bishop elect of Bangor, captured at Thrisk, 295.

Biggleswade, strange occurrence near, 281.

Binham, Walter, the Prior of, deposed by the Abbot of S. Albans, 187.

Birinus, S., Bishop of Dorchester, near Oxford, 100; baptizes Ethelwold, King of Sussex, *ib.*, and Cynegils, King of Wessex, 100.

Bizantium, founded, 46.
Blackheath, the rebels, under Wat Tyler, congregate on, 237.
——, Henry IV. meets Manuel, Emperor of Constantinople, there, 277.
Blake, John, affixes his seal to the judgment against the legality of the Commission of Regency, 247.
Blanch, daughter of Henry IV., 273 ; her marriage at Cologne, 279.
Blanch, the Princess, born in London, 209.
Blanch, daughter of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, is married to John of Gaunt, 219.
Blois, 171 ; Charles de, *see* Charles.
Blundy, John, chosen Archbishop of Canterbury, but refused by the Pope, 153.
Bodleian Library, the, MSS. in, xix, xxviii, xxix.
Boëthius, exiled, 88 ; his death, 89.
Bohemia, Anne of, marries Richard II., 238.
——, John King of, admits the Hermits of S. Austin into his kingdom, 181; flies at the battle of Crecy, 212.
——, Spitigneus, Duke of, 115 ; the King of, (the Butler,) one of the seven Electors of the Emperor after the death of Otho III., 121.
——, Henry II., Emperor, originally Duke of, 121.
Bohemond I. (of Antioch), Prince of Tarento, his successes in the Holy Land, 127.
Bokenham, Osbern, *see* Osbern Bokenham.
Bokingham, John de, Bishop of Lincoln, translated to Chichester [MS. Chester, Le Neve, Lichfield], which he refuses, and retires to Canterbury, 267.
Bolland's Acta Sanctorum, xxi, *note* (²).
Bologna, the University of, Henry IV. addresses on ecclesiastical unity, 296.
——, Balthasar, Cossa, Bishop of, *see* Balthasar, Cossa.
Bologne, meteor at, 221.
Boniface I., Pope, 84.
Boniface II., Pope, 90.
Boniface III., Pope, 94.
Boniface IV., Pope, 94.
Boniface V., Pope, 95.
Boniface VI., Pope, 112.
Boniface VII., Pope, 120, *and note.*
Boniface VIII., Pope, 169 ; his device to secure election, *ib.*; cruel treatment of, 170; he interferes with Edward I. on behalf of Scotland, 172.
Boniface IX., Pope, 252 ; ordains that the Visitation of the Blessed Virgin should be kept by all men, 253 ; tries to effect the repeal of the *Quare impedit*, and the *Præmunire facias*, 255; writes a special letter to Richard II., begging him to punish the Lollards, 261 ; confirms the acts of the Parliament held at Shrewsbury, 267; sends Peter de Bosco to England, to endeavour to abolish the writ "*Quare impedit*," 268 ; discovers in a wall at Rome the treasure of the Empress Helena, *ib.* ; restores with this sum the Capitol and Castle Angelo, *ib.*; his death, 288.
Bordeaux, the Archbishop of, Gerald de Malmort, sent by the Gascons to invite King Henry, 152 ; Simon de Montfort, Seneschal of, deprived by Henry III., 156 ; Stephen Longspere (in his room) is made Seneschal of, *ib.* ; the Normans (in 1294) plunder English merchants at, 170 ; taken by Edward I., 171 ; Betrand de Goth, Archbishop of, made Pope (Clement V.), 173 ; Philip VI. besieges, 207 ; Edward the Black Prince at, 217 ; he takes John II., his prisoner, to, *ib.* ; Richard II. born at, 224 ; John of Gaunt penetrates to, 229, on the departure of John of Gaunt, remains faithful to Edward III., *ib.*
Boroughbridge, battle of, 189.
Borstall, extract from the Chartulary of, 329.
Bosco, Peter de, sent by Boniface IX. to endeavour to abolish the writ "*Quare impedit*," but is unsuccessful, 268.
Boston, great fire at, 167.
Botevyle, the Lord, present at the siege of Harfleur, 310.
Boucicaut, *see* Meingre, Jean le.

Bourbon, James of, taken prisoner with John II. of France, by Edward the Black Prince, 217.

——, John, Duke of, *see* John, Duke of Bourbon.

——, Louis de, Count de Vendôme, taken prisoner at the battle of Agincourt, 312.

Brabant, Anthony, Duke of, killed at the battle of Agincourt, 312.

——, John III., Duke of, receives Edward III. on his invading France, 206; accompanies him on his invasion, 209.

——, the Marquis of (the Chamberlain), one of the seven Electors of the Emperor after the death of Otho III., 121.

Bradburn, Henry, executed, 190.

Braisse, William de, 186.

Brandan, S., of Scotland, 91.

Braybroke, Robert de, Bishop of London, the Duke of Gloucester protests his innocence of treason before, 247; he rebukes Michael de la Pole before Richard II., *ib.*; prays the King to return from Ireland, and repress the Lollards, 259; returns with Richard II. out of Ireland, on the landing of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 271.

Breaute, Faulkes de, prevents Henry III. from accepting the invitation of the Gascons by the Archbishop of Bordeaux, 152.

Brennus, 60.

Brest, taken by John, Duke of Lancaster, 242; relieved by Richard, Earl of Arundel, and Thomas, Earl of Nottingham, 244.

Brether, John, (A.D. 1456,) senior Proctor of the University of Oxford, 332, *note.*

Bretons, the, are oppressed by Charles V., 233; desire the return of De Montfort, *ib.*; burn Plymouth, 284.

Brian, Sir Guy, is sent to France to negotiate for peace with Philip VI., 215.

Bridlington, legend of miracles at, 252.

——, John, his prophecies, 290.

——, John, Prior of, his translation, 285.

Bristol, committed to the charge of Sir Hugh de Spenser, 195; besieged by Queen Isabella, 196; Sir James Beverley, and other adherents of Richard II., are imprisoned at, 249; William Scrope, Earl of Wiltshire, Sir John Bushey, Sir William Bagot, Sir Thomas Greene, and Sir John Russel, leave Edmund, Duke of York, on the landing of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, and fly to, 270; Henry Duke of Lancaster takes, *ib.*

Britain, division of, by Brute, 37; great persecution of the Christians in, 75.

Britanny, Edward III. invades, to help John de Montfort, 209; claimed by Charles de Blois, 213; obtained by John de Montfort after the battle of Auray, 223; invaded by the English, 284.

British Museum, MSS. in, xviii, xix, xxviii.

Bromfield, Edmund, appointed by the Pope Abbot of Bury, is deposed by the King, 234; is imprisoned in the Tower, *ib.*; escapes to Rome, 235; is slain in Wat Tyler's rebellion, 237.

Brookes, John, assists the Abbot of Lewes in driving the French from the Sussex coast, 233.

Bruce, Edward, occupies Ireland, 181; dies, 184.

Bruce, Robert, is crowned at Scone, 173; is driven by Aymer de Valence into the Isles, 174; sends Edward Bruce into Ireland, 181.

Brucegald, *see* Meingre, Jean le, surnamed Boucicaut.

Bruges, contributes men to the invading army of Edward III., 209; treaty between France and England ratified at, 229.

Brute, the first King of Britain, 37; his triple division of Britain, *ib.*

Bubwith, Nicolas, Bishop of Bath and Wells, chosen to go to the Council of Constance, 308.

Buckingham, Thomas of Woodstock, Earl of, *see* Thomas.

Bulgarians, Constantine IV. makes a truce with the, 97.

Burbache, John, Doctor of Canon Law, is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272.

Burburgh, the French take, 239.

Burgh, Isabel de, 168.

——, William de, one of the Judges appointed by Richard II. to consider the Commission of Regency, 246; is condemned to imprisonment, 249.

Burghill, John, Bishop of Lichfield, present at the burial of Richard II., 276.

Burghurst, Henry de, Bishop of Lincoln, *see* Lincoln.

Burgundy, 229; Edward III., invading France, enters, 219; legend of a shower of blood in, 221.

——, the Duke of, Louis X. marries the daughter of, 206.

——, Philip I., Duke of, bribes Edward III. to do no damage to his country, 219.

——, Philip II., Duke of, is present at the renewal of the truce at Guines, 262.

——, John, Duke of, disputes between him and the Duke of Orleans, 299; his adherents, *ib.*; reconciled with the Emperor Sigismund, 315.

Burley, Sir Simon, opposes the Earls of Arundel and Nottingham, 244.

Burnel, Hugh, Lord, is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272.

——, is forbidden to have intercourse with Richard II., 249.

Bursigalde, *see* Meingre, Jean le, surnamed Boucicaut.

Burton-upon-Trent, Thomas, Earl of Lancaster marches against Edward II. as far as, 189.

Bury St. Edmund's, disturbances at, 198; disputes at, 234; rebellion of John Wraw against Richard II. at, 237.

Butlere, John, usher of the King's Chamber, his conference with Sir John Oldcastle, 304.

C.

"Caballis" at Rome, story of the, 361.

Cadmus, King of Thebes, 32.

Caen, William I., buried at, 130; taken by Edward III., 211.

Cæsarea in Cappadocia, 80.

Cain, birth of, 5; his kindred, 12, 15.

Cainan, birth of, 10; derivation of the name, *ib.*; the third from Adam, 12, 19; his death, 14.

Caius, Pope, 74.

Calabria, Wars of Otho II. in, 119; his escape into Sicily from, 120.

Calais, invested by Edward III. after the battle of Crecy, 212; surrender of, 213; Edward III. remains for one month in, *ib.*; betrayed by Almeric of Pavia, 214; the Earl of Buckingham after endeavouring to aid John de Montfort, in Britanny, returns to, 235; is threatened by the French, 242; the Staple removed from Middleburgh to, 251; conference between Richard II. and Charles IV. near, 262; Thomas Duke of Gloucester is arrested at Plesshy by command of Richard II., and sent to, 264; he is put to death by order of the Earl Marshal (Thomas Earl of Nottingham) at, 266; intended assault of, by John, Duke of Burgundy, 298; Henry V. marches towards, 311; visited by Henry V. and the Emperor Sigismund, 315.

Caleb, 32.

Caligula, Emperor, 61.

Calixtus, Cemetery of, 67; Popes buried in, —Anicetus, 67; Eutychianus, 73; Caius, 74.

Calixtus I., Pope, 69.

Calixtus II., Pope, 128, 132.

Calmana, birth of, 5.

Calverley, Sir Hugh, goes into Spain against Pedro IV. (Peter the Cruel), 225; is made Admiral of the Sea, with Thomas Percy, 223; accompanies the Earl of Buckingham into Britanny, 235.

Camber, son of Brute, 37.

Cambria, 37.

Cambridge, Richard, Earl of, *see* Richard, Earl of Cambridge.

Cambridge, John Capgrave educated at, ix.; King's College in, xii.; the Public Library at, MSS. in, xx, xxv.

——, Prince Edmund, (son of Edward III.,) is made Earl of, 222; goes with an army into Portugal to help King Ferdinand against the Spaniards, 236; is made Duke of York, 241; is Regent of the kingdom at the time of the landing of Henry of Lancaster, 270; holds a council on this matter, *ib.*; is deserted by William Scrope, Earl of Wiltshire, and the others *ib.*

——, in a Parliament at, certain Statutes relating to beggars, servants, the bearing of arms, &c. are appointed, 250; Sir Thomas Trivet falls from his horse and is killed between Barnwell and, 251.

Cambyses, conquers Egypt, 24.

Camoys, Lord, is forbidden to approach Richard II., 249.

Campseye Priory, Suffolk, xxviii.

Campynett, John, name on the flyleaf of the English Chronicle, MS. Pub. Lib., Cantab., xxvi, *note* (6).

Cana of Galilee, 61.

Canaan, son of Ham, 18, 19.

Canterbury, Theodore made Archbishop of, by Pope Vitalianus, 96.

Canterbury, Archbishop of:—
  Anselm, *see* Anselm.
  Baldwin, *see* Baldwin.
  Courtenay, William, *see* Courtenay.
  Dunstan, *see* Dunstan.
  Edmund, *see* Abyngton, Edmund of.
  Islip, Simon, *see* Islip, Simon.
  Lanfranc, *see* Lanfranc.
  Mepham, Simon de, *see* Mepham, Simon de.
  Odo, *see* Odo.
  Peckham, John, *see* Peckham.
  Reynolds, Walter, *see* Reynolds, Walter.
  Stigand, *see* Stigand.
  Theobald, *see* Theobald.

Canterbury, Archbishops of—*cont.*:
  Theodore, *see* Theodore.
  Walden, Roger, *see* Walden, Roger.
  Winchelsey, Robert, *see* Winchelsey, Robert.

Canterbury, King Henry IV. buried at, 303; disputes as to the election to the See of, 147; Reginald, Sub-Prior of, is elected Archbishop, but his election is annulled by Pope Innocent III., *ib.*; disputes as to the succession to the See of, 153; a severe earthquake felt at, 163; contributes forty soldiers to Edward II. against the Scots, 184; John de Bokingham, Bishop of Lincoln, being translated to Chichester, [Le Neve, Lichfield,] against his will, goes to, and dies there, 267.

——, Thomas, Prior of, *see* Chillenden, Thomas.

Canute, 124; his wars with Edmund Ironside, 125; their reconciliation, *ib.*

Capgrave, John, (the Author of the present Chronicle,) private mark of, 4, *note*; date of his birth, 259, *see also the facsimile*; Biographical Notices of, ix–xiii.; catalogue of the works of, xiii–xxi; death of, xxii, 327, 328; Editions of the works of, xxi, xxii; Notices of the Chronicle of England by, xxii–xxvii.; notices of the other English works of, xxviii, xxix; life of, by Bale, 323–327; life of, by Leland, 327, 328; acts as Provincial at Oxford, 329.

Cappadocians, descended from Meshech, 18.

Caracalla, 68.

Cardinals, titles given to, 64.

Carew, G., once possessor of MS. Arundel, 20, (Brit. Mus.), xxviii.

Carington, Thomas, takes the Castle of S. Sauveur in Coutances, 230.

Carinus, Emperor, (with Carus and Numerian,) 74.

Carlisle, attacked by the Scots, 181; Sir Andrew Harcla, Warden of, at the battle of Boroughbridge, 189.

Carmania [Kirman], 17.

Carmentis, 31.

Carthage, founded, 39 ; taken by Scipio Africanus, 55.
——, S. Cyprian, Bishop of, 72.
——, Council of, against Pelagius, 84.
Carus, Carinus, and Numerian, Emperors, 74.
Cashel, the Archbishop of, is sent by Urban VI. to notify to Richard II. the excommunication of the King of France 234.
Cassibelaunus, 57.
Cassiodorus, 90.
Castel, the Lord of, invades England, 284 ; is killed at Dartmouth, 285.
Castile, Alphonso III. of, marries Eleanor, daughter of Henry II., of England, 140.
——, Alphonso IX. of, gives his daughter Eleanor to Prince Edward, who receives the right to Aquitaine and Gascony, 157.
——, Pedro IV. of, is banished, but is restored by the Black Prince, 225. *See* Pedro IV.
Cato, Life of, reference to the, xxviii, xxix, *note* (1).
Cavendish, John, is slain by John Wraw, at Bury S. Edmund's, 237.
Ceawlin, King of Wessex, 100.
Cecilia, S., 70 ; vision of, to Pope Paschal I., 107.
Cecrops, 21.
Cedrenus, 7, *note.*
Celestine I., Pope, 84.
Celestine II., Pope, 137.
Celestine III., Pope, 142.
Celestine IV., Pope 155.
Celestine V., Pope, 169 ; he resigns immediately after his election, *ib.*
Ceolric, King of Wessex, 100.
Ceolwulf, King of Wessex, 100.
Ceorl, King of Mercia, 101.
Cerdic, King of Wessex, 100.
Chaldæa, Abraham born in, 27.
Chaldeans, descendants of Arphaxad, 17.
Chalkhill, near Calais, 226.
Chalus Chabrol, the castle of, King Richard I. is slain while besieging, 147.
Chancellors (three), appointed to assist in choosing the Emperor after the death of Otho III., 121.
Charlemagne, 101; conquests of, in Lombardy, 104; his kindness to the Church, *ib.*; he is made Emperor, 105; his victories in Spain, and at Jerusalem, 105, 106; he visits Rome, and redresses the wrongs of Pope Leo III., 106.
Charles II. (the Bald), Emperor, 110; his daughter is married to Ethelwulf of England, 109.
Charles III., Emperor, 111.
Charles IV., of France, summons Edward II. to do homage for Aquitaine, 190; Prince Edward does homage to, for Normandy and Aquitaine, 194; makes a statute that no woman should succeed to the throne of France, 206.
Charles V., of France, (when Regent,) makes a truce with Edward III., 220; quarrels with Edward III., on the question of the incursions made by some Englishmen, 224 ; oppresses the Bretons, 233 ; is excommunicated by Urban VI., who notifies the event to Richard II., 234; dies, 235.
Charles VI., of France, accession of, 235; drives Sir Thomas Trivet and his companions out of France, and makes an agreement with Bishop Henry Despenser, 239; sends a fleet against the English, which is destroyed, *ib* ; threatens Calais, 242 ; purposes to invade England, 243; concludes a three years' truce (in 1388) with Richard II., 251; is afflicted with madness, 254; sends ambassadors to renew the truce, 255; arranges a truce for one year with John Duke of Lancaster, and Walter Skirlawe, Bishop of Durham, 256; narrowly escapes being burnt to death, 257; agrees to a four years' truce, and acknowledges the rights of the English King over Scotland, 258; holds a conference at Guines, near Calais, with Richard II., 262; renews the truce, *ib.*; gives his daughter to Richard II., 263.
Charles II., King of Navarre, cedes Cherbourg to the English, 233.

Charles III., of Navarre, the town of Cherbourg returns to the allegiance of, 257; sides with the Duke of Orleans, 299.
Charles de Blois, Edward III. supports John de Montfort against, 209; he is defeated, 213; is slain at the battle of Auray, 223.
Charles, Duke of Orleans, his letter to Henry IV., 300.
Charney, Geoffrey de, persuades Almeric of Pavia to betray Calais to him, 214.
Chaundler, Thomas, Warden of New College, Oxford, 332.
Chelmsford, the Earl of Huntingdon passes through, on his way to execution, 276.
Cheney, Sir William, executed, 190.
Cheney, Sir John, Speaker of the Parliament, dispute between him and the Archbishop of Canterbury, 287.
Cheney, Sir Thomas, assists the Abbot of Lewes in driving the French from the Sussex coast, 233.
Cherbourg (in Normandy), ceded to the English by Charles II., of Navarre, 233; loss of, 257.
Cheshire, the men of, chiefly concerned in the battle of Shrewsbury, 283.
Chester, Bishop of, *see* Burghill, John, Bishop of Lichfield.
Chester, Earl of, Henry V. (when Prince) created, 274.
——, Ranulf, Earl of, *see* Ranulf.
——, Richard of Bordeaux (II. of England), made Earl of, 231.
Chester, Richard, Sheriff of, drowned with the sons of Henry I., 133; Henry V., the Emperor, said to have been a monk at, 134; Richard II. forms his bodyguard from malcontents in the county of, 264; the county of, created by Richard II. into a principality, 267; Richard II. at the Castle of, 271.
Chichester, Bishops of, *see* Langton, John de; Rushbroke, Thomas.
Chich, S. Osith of, co. Essex, the Prior of, involved in a conspiracy against Henry IV., 286.
Chillenden, Thomas, Prior of Canterbury, present at the abdication of Richard II., 272.
Chosroes, King of Persia, 94.
CHRIST, called a Nazarene, 38; prophecied of by David, 39; by Isaiah, 44; by the Sibyl Tiburtina, 46; the Nativity of, 59; found among the Doctors, *ib.*; the Baptism of, 60; He chooses His Apostles, *ib.*; the Crucifixion of, 61; the age of, *ib.*
Christian Era, date of the, 59, *and note.*
Christina, S., Life of, reference to the, xxviii, xxix, *note* (¹).
Christmas mumming, 275.
Christopher, Pope, 113.
Chronicle of England, the, by Capgrave, xx.; Notices of, xxii–xxv.; Notices of the MSS. of, xxv–xxvii.
Chrysogonus, S., martyred, 75.
Chrysostom, S. John, 79.
Chusan-rishathaim, overcome by Othniel, 32.
Cimmerian Sibyl, the, 45.
Cirencester, the conspirators against Henry IV. proceed thither, 275.
Cistercians, the, 156; James Fournier [Pope Benedict XII.,] an Abbot of, 203.
Clambouch, John, a Lollard, 245.
Clare, Margaret de, *see* Margaret de Clare.
Clare, the Duke of, his sickness at Harfleur, 311.
Clare, S., canonized, 157.
Clarence, Prince Lionel is made Duke of, 222. *See* Lionel, Prince.
——, Thomas Duke of, *see* Thomas, Duke of Clarence.
Clarendon, Edward II. spends his Easter (A.D. 1315) at, 181.
Clarke, John, 332.
Claudius, Emperor, 61; he founds Gloucester, and gives his daughter to Arviragus, 62.
Clement I., Bishop of Rome, 63.
Clement II., Pope, 124.
Clement III., Pope, 142.
Clement IV., Pope, his death, 160.
Clement V., Pope, 173; translates the Papal See to Avignon, *ib.*; originally [Bertrand de Goth], Archbishop of Bordeaux, *ib.*; dies, 179.

Clement VI., Pope, 210; futile negotiations for peace before, 211; he arranges a truce between Edward III. and Philip VI., after the surrender of Calais, 213; dies, 214.

Clement VII., Antipope, Robert de Genève, 233, 255, 256.

Clement, S., the body of, translated to Rome 110.

Cleobulus, 48.

Cleopatra, 55; she drives Ptolemæus Lathyrus into exile in Cyprus, 56; makes Ptolemæus Alexander, King, 57; becomes Queen, *ib.*

Clergy, the, are excluded from all civil offices, 228.

Clergy, Addresses to the, by Capgrave, xvii., 327.

Clerkenwell, St. John's at, set on fire by the rebels (in 1381), 237.

Clermont (in Auvergne), Council at, under Urban II., 127.

Cletus, Bishop of Rome, 63.

Cley, (co. Norfolk), the men of, capture James I., King of Scotland, 293.

Cleyhanger, the Austin Friars are permitted to build at, 153.

Clifford, Sir William, is reconciled to Henry IV., 286.

Clifford (Richard), Bishop of London, present at the condemnation of Sir John Oldcastle, 305.

——, Sir Louis de, 245, 260; he brings the conclusions of the Lollards to the Bishop, 280.

——, John, priest, an adherent of Richard II., is imprisoned, 249.

——, Roger de, taken prisoner at Boroughbridge, 189; executed, 190.

——, Roger de, is forbidden to approach Richard II., 249.

Clinton, William, is made Earl of Huntingdon, 204.

Cluni, founded by William of Burgundy, in the time of Berenger I., 114; death of S. Odo, Abbot of, 115; Adamar, and Majolus, Abbots of, *ib.*; Androin de la Roche, Abbot of, and others, sue for peace before Edward III., 220.

Cobham, Sir John Oldcastle, Lord, is sent into France, by Henry IV., 300; is summoned to appear before the Bishops, 304; his accusation and defence, 304, 305; he escapes from the Tower, 306; he conspires to kill Henry V., *ib.*; his insurrection, 309, 310; one of his esquires plots against Henry V., 317.

Cobham, Reginald de, and Sir Walter Manny, take many towns in France, 209; sent to Bruges with John of Gaunt to ratify a treaty of peace, 229.

Coinage, changes in the (temp. Hen. III.), 155; (temp. Ed. I.), 165; (temp. Ed. III.), 214; (temp. Hen. V.), 313.

Cokayne, William, 292.

Colchester, Constantius at, 76.

——, Geoffrey, Abbot of, *see* Storey, Geoffrey.

——, William de, Abbot of Westminster, accompanies Richard II. into Ireland, 269; is sent as a delegate to the Council of Constance, 308.

Cologne, bridge over the Rhine at, built by Charlemagne, 105; Archbishop of, Chancellor of Italy, for the election of the Emperor, after the death of Otho III., 121; Louis III., Duke of Bavaria, meets Edward III. at, 207; Richard II. buries Robert de Vere at, 261; the Princess Blanch married at, 279.

Colonna, Nicolas, 294.

Comestor, Peter, of Troyes, 142.

Comet appears, 225, 278.

Compostello, the Bishop of, made an Archbishop by Pope Calixtus II., 132.

Concha, mother of St. Patrick, 85.

Conon, Pope, 97.

Conrad I., Emperor, 114.

Conrad II., (the Salique,) Emperor, 123.

Conrad III., [II.], 135; his expedition to the Holy Land, 136.

Constance, daughter of Peter the Cruel of Castile, marries John of Gaunt, 228, 253; dies, 258.

Constance, the Council of, 308.
Constantine (Pope John XII.), 116.
—— the Great, 46, 76, 77, 78.
Constantine, Constantius, and Constans, Emperors, 78.
Constantine, son of Leo III., Emperor, 101.
——, son of Heraclius, 94.
Constantine I., Pope 99.
Constantine II., Pope, 103.
Constantine III., Emperor, 95.
Constantine IV., Emperor, 96.
Constantine V., Emperor, 102; he holds a Council at Constantinople against images, *ib.*
Constantine III. of Scotland defeated by Athelstan, at Bamborough, 117.
Constantinople, 46; First Council of, 82; Theodosius Magnus buried at, 83; Sixth General Council at, 96, 97; Council against images, (A.D. 754,) 102; Eighth General Council at 111; taken by the French, 143; John Palæologus Emperor of, and the Patriarch of, do homage to Urban VI., 235.
——, Manuel II., Emperor of, *see* Manuel.
Constantius Chlorus, 76; his marriage with Helena, *ib.*; he is buried at York, *ib.*
Conway Castle, Richard II. at, 271.
Cornelius, Pope, 72.
Cornwall, John, Earl of, *see* Eltham, John of.
——, Richard, Earl of, *see* Richard, Earl of Cornwall.
——, Piers Gaveston, Earl of, *see* Gaveston, Piers.
——, Richard of Bordeaux (II. of England) is made Duke of, 231.
——, Duke of, Henry V. (when Prince) created, 274.
——, Fowey in, the Flemings take a vessel belonging to, 234; Lundy Island, between the coasts of Wales and, 154.
Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, MSS. at, xx, xxvii.
Corrario, Angelo, aferwards Pope Gregory XII., *see* Gregory XII.
Cosmus and Damian, (SS.), martyred, 75.
Cossa, Balthasar, *see* Balthasar.
Council of London, 296.
Courtenay, Richard, Bishop of Norwich, his accession to the Diocese, 303; his death, 311.
Courtenay, William, Bishop of London and Simon Sudbury, Archbishop of Canterbury, are commanded by the Pope to arrest and try Wiclif, 232; [translated to Canterbury] grievously taxes the Clergy, 261; is present at the burial of Robert de Vere at Cologne, *ib.*; dies, 261, 263.
Coutances, S. Sauveur in, taken by Thomas Karington, 230.
Coventry, a maniac tries to kill Henry III. at Woodstock, and is executed at, 154; Parliament at, 287; the pestilence there, 288; Roger de Northburgh, Bp. of, *see* Northburgh.
Crakow, the King of, *see* Jagellon.
Crapwell, Richard, accused of heresy, 167.
Crecy, battle of, 212.
Credda, King of Mercia [Cuda], 100.
Creeds, a Commentary on, xvi., 326.
Cremond, John, Cardinal of, holds a council in London, 133.
Crete, Lycurgus dies in, 42; Legend of certain Jews deceived by the devil in the likeness of Moses, in, 85.
Crisping, William, 133.
Cromwell, Sir John, and four Knights, accompany Queen Isabella to France, 193.
——, John de, accompanies Isabella, Queen of Edward II., into France, 193.
Cross, the Feast of the Exaltation of, instituted, 94.
Crotoi, le, taken, 212.
Crusade, the First, 128; Richard I. raises money for the, 144.
Cuda, *see* Credda.
Culpepper, Thomas, Castellan of Leeds Castle, Kent, refuses admission to Queen Isabella, 188; is executed, *ib.*
Cumæan Sibyl, the, 45, *note.*
Cunegund, S., wife of Henry II., Emperor, 121.
Cush, son of Ham, 18.
Cylon, 48.

Cynegils, King of Wessex, 100; baptized by S. Birinus, *ib.*
Cynric, King of Wessex, 100.
Cyprian, S., 72.
Cyprus, Ptolemy Lathyrus exiled in, 57; his recall from, *ib.*; Richard I. lands in, and takes Isaac, the King, prisoner 145; Prince Edward, going to the Crusade is well received in, 161; Peter I., King of, visits Edward III., 222; takes Alexandria, 224.
Cyprus, Peter, King of, 335.
Cyriacus, Pope, 71.
Cyril, S., of Alexandria, 84.
Cyrophanes introduces idolatry, 21.
Cyrus, the Elder, father of Cambyses, 24, 47.

D.

Dadington, Baldwin, second "Warden" of London, 254.
Dagon, destruction of, 37.
Dagworth, Sir Nicholas, an adherent of Richard II., is imprisoned, 249.
——, Thomas de, defeats Charles de Blois, 212.
Dalingbridge, Edmund, first "Warden" of London, 254.
Dalmatia, Pope Caius born in, 74.
Damascus, 5, 17.
Damasus I., Pope, 80.
Damasus II., Pope, 124.
Damian and Cosmus, (SS.), martyred, 75.
Damianus and Fugatius send into Britain by Pope Eleutherus, 67.
Danes, the, invade England, 109; with the Normans ravage France in the time of Charles le Gros, 111; ravage England and destroy many cities in the time of Ethelred the Unready, from whom they extort much money, 122.
Daniel prophecies, 46; notices of, 47.
Daniel, Capgrave's Commentary on, xiv., 326.
Danube, the, 23.
Darius I., 47, 48.
Darius II., 50.
Darius Codomannus, 52.
Darlington, Louis Beaumont and the Legates surprised at, 182.
——, assaulted by the French, 285; the Lord of Castel slain there, *ib.*
——, the men of Portsmouth and, destroy the fleet sent by Charles VI., 239.
David, the city of, 39.
David anointed by Samuel, 38; his life, 39; his death, *ib.*
David, brother of Llewellyn, is executed at Shrewsbury, 166.
David II., of Scotland, marries Joan, daughter of Edward II., 201; is defeated by Edward Baliol, *ib.*; invades England, and is taken prisoner at Nevill's Cross, 212; is ransomed from prison, 218; visits Edward III., 223.
Deborah, Judge of Israel, 33.
Decius, Emperor, 71.
Deincourt, William, accompanies William la Zouche against the Scots, 212.
Delbora, birth of, 5.
Delphian Sibyl, the, 45.
Demeratus, 49.
Demetrius Soter, King of Syria, 53.
Demosthenes, 51.
Denia, the Count of, is taken at the Battle of Najara, 225.
Denis, S., King John II. of France is buried at, 223.
Denmark, conquered by King Arthur, 87.
——, Eric, King of, *see* Eric IX.
Deodatus, Pope, 95.
Derby, Earl of, Henry, Earl of Lancaster, is made, 204. *See* Henry, Earl of Lancaster.
——, Mary, Countess of, dies, 258.
——, recovered from the Danes by Edmund I., 118.
Despenser, Hugh le, the elder, offence given by Edward II. (at the siege of Berwick) to Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, in reference to, 185; unlawfully obtains possession of some lands in the marches of Wales, 186; great unpopularity of, 187; the Barons assembled at Sherborne endeavour to punish, *ib.*; at St.

Albans demand the banishment of, *ib.*; Edward II. takes the part of, 188; is proclaimed a traitor by Humphrey, Earl of Hereford, *ib.*; after the battle of Boroughbridge, sits in judgment on Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, 190; Sir Andrew Harcla, Earl of Carlisle, opposes himself to, 191; prevents Edward II. from going into France, 194; advises Edward II. to proclaim the Queen and the Princes to be traitors, *ib.*; on Edward's flight is sent to take charge of Bristol, 195; is taken prisoner there by the Queen and hanged, 196.

Despenser, Hugh le, the younger, the Barons demand the banishment of, 187; advises Edward II. to demand soldiers from the shires, 189; prevents the King from going to France, 194; advises the King to proclaim the Queen and Prince traitors, *ib.*; marries the niece of Edward II., 195; the Queen offers two thousand pounds for the head of, *ib.*; enters the sea with the King, 196; is executed at Hereford, *ib.*

——, Hugh le, and others, sent to negotiate peace with France before Clement VI., 211; takes Le Crotoi, 212.

——, Henry le, Bishop of Norwich, distinguished as a warrior in Italy, 226; dispute between the Abbot of St. Albans, and 235; invades Flanders and France, 238; lays siege to Ypres, 239; returns to England, *ib.*

——, Thomas le, one of the accusers of Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, 264; is made Earl of Gloucester, 267.

Deuteronomy, Capgrave's Commentary on, xiv., 326.

Dido founds Carthage, 39.

Dioclesian and Maximinian, Emperors, 74.

Diogenes, the cynic, 50; his interview with Xeniades, 51; and with Alexander the Great, 51.

Dionysius, Pope, 73.

Diophantus, founder of the Lacedæmonians, 22, *note.*

Dioscoros, heresy of, 86.

Disputations, Ordinary, by Capgrave, xviii, 327.

Dominic, S., founder of the Preachers, 143; his death, 150; the Preachers of, come into England and settle at Oxford, *ib.*

Domitian, 63.

Domnus I., Pope, 96.

Domnus II., Pope, 119, *note;* 120, *and note.*

Donatist Heresy, the, 77.

Donatus, S., Bp., 83.

Donatus, the grammarian, 79.

Dorchester, Oxon., Bishop of, *see* Birinus.

Dordrante, *see* Dort.

Dorothy, S. Life of, reference to the, xxviii, xxix, *note* (1).

Dorset, the Earl of, his expedition into France, 313. *See* Beaufort, Thomas.

——, the Marquis of, *see* Beaufort, John.

Dort, visited by the Emperor Sigismund, 315.

Douglas, Earl of, taken prisoner at the battle of Humildon Hill, 280; taken prisoner at Shrewsbury, 283.

Dover, 37, 223; Sir Thomas Trivet, and other adherents of Richard II. are imprisoned at, 249.

Drew, Ralph, *see* Say, William.

Dublin, Richard II. holds a Parliament at, 259.

——, Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, is made Marquis of, 241.

Dunbar (in Scotland), Alexander Neville, Archbishop of York dies at, 249.

Dunfermlyn, the supporters of Edward Baliol land at, 201.

Dunkerque, is taken by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, 238.

Dunstable, legend of a miraculous appearance at, in the time of Henry II., 141.

——, William Morley, of, *see* Morley, William.

Dunstan, Archbishop of Canterbury, 119; his exile by Edwin, *ib.*; his recall by Edgar, 120.

Dunwich, Felix, Bp. of, 100.

Durham, the province of, sold to Hugh Pudsey, Bishop of, by Richard I., 145; Louis Beaumont led to, by the Legates of Pope John XXII., as Bishop, 182; the Scots defeated at Nevill's Cross, near, 212.

Dynasties of Egypt, 24.

Dys, Walter, 244.

E.

Earthquakes, 163, 238.

East Anglia, kingdom of, 110; Kings of, *ib.*; the Danes expelled from, by Edward the Elder, 115.

Ebbe, S., [called S. Edward in the MS.,] Church of, Oxford, 151; settling of the Dominican Friars in the parish of, 150.

Eber, grandson of Arphaxad, 18, 19; his descendants, 18, 20; begets Peleg, 20.

Ecclesiastes, Capgrave's Commentary on, xv, *and note*, 326.

Ecclesiasticus, the book of, 54.

Edessa, Caracalla buried at, 69; taken by the Saracens, 137.

Edgar, called "the Pacific," 120; he recalls Dunstan, *ib.*; and founds many Abbeys, *ib.*; Edward I. claims homage for the King of Scotland through, 172.

Edgitha [Ydanie in the MS.], the daughter of Godwin of Kent, is married to Edward the Confessor, 126; her praises, 128.

Edinburgh, the Lord Moray is taken at, 204.

Edington, William, Bishop of Winchester, persuades Edward III. to make a change in the coinage, 214.

Edmund I., 117; his conquests and death, 118.

Edmund Ironside, 124; his wars with Canute, 125; his death, *ib.*

—— Fitz-Alan, Earl of Arundel, is appointed to judge Thomas of Lancaster, 190.

——, King of East Anglia, put to death by the Danes, 109.

Edmund, of Langley, *see* Cambridge.

—— of Woodstock, son of Edward I., 177; sent to France, 192; is executed at Winchester, 200.

——, Prince (son of Edward III.), is made Earl of Cambridge, 222; is made Duke of York, 241; is appointed heir of Castile in case of failure of issue from Henry III., of Castile, 252; death of Isabella, wife of, 258; holds a Parliament in London, which votes the expenses of Richard II., on application of the Duke of Gloucester, in Ireland, 260; is Regent of the Kingdom at the time of the landing of Henry of Lancaster, 270; is deserted by William Scrope, Earl of Wiltshire, and some others, *ib.*

Edred, son of Athelstan [of Edward I.], 119.

Edric procures the death of Edmund Ironside, 125; he is slain by order of Canute, *ib.*; Edward I. claims homage for the King of Scotland through, 172.

Edward I., King of England, born, 154; baptized by the Legate Otho, *ib.*; and confirmed by Edmund, Archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; receives the Gascon towns from his father, 155; marries Eleanor of Castile, 157; fights for his father at Lewes, 159; is made a hostage for his father, *ib.*; defeats Simon de Montfort at Evesham, *ib.*; assumes the Cross, 160; and accompanies Louis IX. on the Crusade, *ib.*; arrives at Cyprus, 161; proceeds thence to Acre, and relieves the Christians who were besieged there, *ib.*; narrowly escapes being murdered by treachery at Acre, *ib.*; overpowers and kills the traitor, 162; receives the homage of the Barons on his father's death, *ib.*; succeeds to the throne, *ib.*; returns through Rome and Paris to England, 163; enters Aquitaine against Gaston de Bearn, *ib.*; is crowned with his wife at Westminster, *ib.*; suffers from the effects of wounds received in the Holy Land, *ib.*; takes penal measures against the Jews for clipping the King's coin, 164; invades Wales, and takes Llewellyn prisoner, *ib.*; releases him, and gives him the title of "the Prince of Wales," 165; attends in person on the consecration of the new church at Norwich, *ib.*; goes into France to establish his title to his possessions there, *ib.*; destroys the clipped coin, and causes farthings and halfpence to be coined, *ib.*; invades Wales without success, *ib.*; invades Wales again in the following year, 166; sends the head of Llewellyn to London, *ib*; takes David, the brother of Llewellyn, *ib.*; is invited by Philip IV. of France to avenge his father's death on Pedro III., King of Arragon, 167; assumes the Cross, *ib.*; oppresses the Jews, *ib.*; sends ambassadors to the King of France on the complaints of the merchants against the Normans, 170; is summoned to appear before Philip IV., in Paris, *ib.*; but proceeds to France, and takes Bordeaux, 171; receives a letter from John Baliol of Scotland refusing homage, *ib.*; takes Berwick, *ib.*; defeats the Scots at Dunbar, *ib.*; and reduces Baliol to submission, *ib.*; enters into negotiations with France for an exchange of prisoners, *ib.*; refuses to give up Baliol, 172; marries Margaret, sister of Philip IV., *ib.*; receives a letter from Pope Boniface VIII., on behalf of the claims of Scotland, *ib.*, and rejects the Pope's interference, *ib.*; suppresses the rebellion of Sir William Wallace, 173; confines (at Berwick) the Countess of Hereford for the part she took in the coronation of Bruce, 174; knights the Prince Edward, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*

Edward II., King of England, with his wife Isabella, daughter of Philip IV., is crowned, 174; incurs the indignation of the Lords and Clergy on account of Piers Gaveston, *ib.*; is compelled by the Parliament to consent to the wishes of his Barons, 175; holds a second Parliament, *ib.*; in which Magna Charta is confirmed, and Gaveston condemned to exile, 176; contrives the marriage of Gaveston with Margaret de Clare, *ib.*; compelled by the Barons, exiles Gaveston, but soon restores him, *ib.*; Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, follows the King to Newcastle on this matter, 178; the King disputes with his Parliament, but is at last reconciled, to the Barons, 179; visits S. Alban's Abbey, *ib.*; proceeds to Ely, 180; and inspects the relics preserved there, *ib.*; visits Lincoln, York, and Berwick, and is defeated at Stirling, *ib.*; reduces the price of food, *ib.*; spends Easter at Clarendon, 181; holds a Council at London, 183; is reconciled to the Earl of Lancaster for a short time, *ib.*; holds his Christmas at Westminster, *ib.*; deceives the Legates as to his consent to the wishes of the Barons 184; proceeds with an army to York, *ib.*; holds a Parliament at Beverly, *ib.*; lays siege to Berwick, *ib.*; vainly follows the Scots, and concludes a truce with them for two years, 185; visits Northampton 186; defends Hugh Despenser against the Barons, 187, 188; yields to the Barons who had besieged London, 188; revenges himself on the castellan of Leeds Castle, *ib.*; demands soldiers from the shires, 189; collects an army against the Barons, and defeats them at Boroughbridge, *ib.*; invades Scotland, but without success, 190; is summoned to do homage to Charles IV., *ib.*; concludes a thirteen years' truce with Bruce, 191; refuses to obey the summons of the French King, *ib.*; deprives the Bishop of Hereford of his temporal goods, 192; sends ambassadors to the French Court, 192, 193; transfers his French possessions to Prince Edward, 193; who does homage to the King of France, 194; the King flies from London into Wales, 195; refuses to accept the conditions of the Barons, 196; is taken prisoner, and carried to Kenilworth, 196, 197; is deposed, 197; is informed by a deputation of the Barons of his deposition, *ib.*; is imprisoned in

Berkeley Castle, 198; is murdered by Sir John Maltravers, 199.

Edward III., King of England, born, 178; receives some of the English possessions in France from his father, 193; does homage for them to the King of France, 194; marries Philippa of Hainault, *ib.*; accompanies the Queen, his mother, in her invasion of England, 195; is made "Keeper of England," 196; is chosen King, 197; refuses the Crown without his father's consent, *ib.*; is crowned, 198; goes into France to do homage for his possessions, *ib.*; holds a Parliament, in which John of Eltham, and others, are made earls, 199; holds a Parliament at Winchester, *ib.*; and at Nottingham, 200; refuses to assist the friends of Baliol, 201; but at last determines to aid him, *ib.*; besieges Berwick, and defeats the Scots, 202; makes Baliol captain of Berwick, *ib*; holds a Parliament at York, *ib.*; receives the homage of Baliol at Newcastle, 203; invades Scotland, *ib.*; makes a truce with the Scots, *ib.*; holds a Parliament at York, 204; gives the duchy of Cornwall to the Black Prince, *ib.*; gives higher titles to six lords, *ib.*; seeks redress from the French for the burning of Southampton, 205; holds a Parliament at Nottingham, *ib.*; claims the French Crown in right of his mother, *ib.*; his genealogy, 206; he lands in Flanders and invades France, *ib.*; returns to London, 207; holds a Parliament and levies tribute, *ib.*; besieges Bordeaux, *ib.*; defeats the French fleet at Sluys, 208; invades France, and besieges Tournay, 209; concludes a truce, *ib.*; invades Britanny, *ib.*; resists the ambitious claims of Pope Clement VI., 210; in vain negotiates for peace, 211; establishes a "Round Table" at Windsor, *ib.*; again invades France, and takes Caen, *ib.*; wins the battle of Crecy, and invests Calais, 212; takes Calais, and returns to England, 213; surprises Almeric of Pavia, who had betrayed Calais 214; defeats the Spanish fleet off Winchelsea, *ib.*; changes the coinage, *ib.*; makes negotiations with the French for peace, 215; ravages France, and goes against the Scots, who had taken Berwick, 216; again invades France, *ib.*; retakes Berwick, 217; receives from Baliol the resignation of the Scotch Crown, *ib.*; keeps John, King of France, a prisoner in London, *ib.*; invades France, 219; besieges Rheims, *ib.*; appoints William of Wykeham to superintend the works at Windsor, *ib.*; lays siege to Paris, 220; releases King John, *ib.*; attains his fiftieth year, 222; puts a check on purveyance, *ib.*; holds a Parliament at London, wherein certain apparel and food is forbidden to certain persons, *ib.*; entertains the Kings of France, Cyprus, and Scotland, *ib.*; has a dispute with the King of France about some Englishmen who had overrun the country, 224; resumes the title of "King of France," 226; borrows largely of his subjects, *ib.*; sends Sir John Knollys with an army into France, *ib.*; levies heavy taxes, 227; holds a Parliament at Winchester, 228; sends Sir John Hastings to besiege Rochelle, *ib.*; resists the aggressions of the Pope, 229; makes peace with France at Bruges, *ib.*; holds a Parliament at London, 230; yields to the influence of Alice Perrers, 231; dies, 232.

Edward IV., King of England, Dedication of the Chronicle to, 1; compared with Henry IV., 4; Capgrave dedicates "The Chronicle of England" to, xx.

Edward Plantagenet, Earl of Rutland, is present at the conference between Richard II. and Charles VI. at Guines, 262; one of the accusers of Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, 264; is made Duke of Albermarle, 267; accompanies Richard II. into Ireland, 269; returns from Ireland with Richard II. on the landing of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 271; [Duke of York], is dispatched into France, 302; is killed at Agincourt, 312.

Edward the Black Prince, is born, 201; is made Duke of Cornwall, and Earl of Chester, 204; successes of, in France, 217; defeats the French at Poitiers, *ib.*; takes King John II. prisoner, *ib.*; carries him to Bordeaux, and thence to England, *ib.*; invades France with his father, 219; marries Joan of Kent, widow of Sir Thomas Holland, and divorced from William, Earl of Salisbury, 221; assists Pedro IV. of Castile, 225; defeats Henry II. (the Bastard) at Najara, *ib.*; attempt made in Castile to poison, *ib.*; Limoges and other cities revolt from, 227; he returns to England, *ib.*; returns to England, after the revolt of Limoges, 227; marries Isabel, daughter of Peter (the Cruel) of Castile, 228; invades France with John de Montfort, 230; dies, 231.

Edward, son of the Black Prince, is born, 224; dies, *ib.*

Edward the Confessor, 127; relics of, carried before the King at his coronation, 174.

Edward the Elder, son of Alfred the Great, 115; his conquests, *ib.*

Edward the Martyr, 120; is stabbed by order of his step-mother (and buried at Wareham), *ib.*; his remains are translated by her to Shaftesbury, *ib.*; Edward I. claims homage from the King of Scotland through, 172.

Edwin, King of Northumbria, 101.

Edwin, son of Edmund I., 119.

Egbert, "King of the English," 109.

Eglon, King of Moab, 33.

Egypt, Kingdom of, described, 23; conquered by Holofernes, 24; the Kings of, *ib.*

Egyptians, descended from Misraim, 18; idolatry introduced by, 21.

Ehud, Judge of Israel, 33.

Eisengrein, Biographical Works of, 321, *and note.*

Elagabalus, 69.

Elam, son of Shem, 17; his descendants, *ib.*

Elamites, the, 17.

Eleanor, daughter of Henry II., marries Alphonso III., King of Spain, 140.

—— of Castile, Queen of Edward I., 157.

—— of Provence, Queen of Henry III., 154.

——, Queen, divorced from Louis VII., 138; marries Henry II. of England, *ib.*; her bad character, 139; her children by Henry II., 140.

——, sister of Prince Arthur, kept in close confinement by John, 147.

Eleazar, the High Priest in the time of Ptolemy Philadelphus, 54.

Eleutherius, Pope, 67.

Elgiva, Queen of Edmund I., 118.

Eli, the High Priest, 25; his death, 37.

Elias, the coming of, 12, 14.

Elijah, 41; his translation, 42.

Elisha, 41; he receives the mantle of Elijah, 42; translation of his relics to Alexandria, 86.

Ella, King of Mercia, 100.

——, King of Northumbria, 101.

——, King of Sussex, 100.

Elman, William, besieged in Burburgh by Charles VI., 239.

Elssius, Biographical Works of, 321, *and note.*

Eltham, Henry V. keeps his Christmas there, 306.

——, John of, second son of Edward II. is left in charge of the Tower, 195; [called Edmund in the MS.,] is left in charge of the realm in the absence of Edward III., 199; is made Earl of Cornwall, 199; dies, 204.

Ely, death of Alfred son of Ethelred the Unready at, 127; Edward II. inspects the relics of S. Alban at, 180; John Lisle, a Dominican Friar at, complains of "the Lady of Wake," 218; the misfortunes of John, Earl of Pembroke, attributed to his hostility to the church of, 229; legend of miracles at, 252.

Ely, Bishops of, — *see* Grey, William; Hothum, John de.

Emma, "the broche of Normandie," marries Ethelred the Unready, 122; her death, 127.

Emmaus, lusus naturæ at, 82.

Empire, end of the, and change in the arrangement of the Chronicle, 149.

Empire, the, mode of election to, after the death of Otho III., 121.

Englysh, R., MS. Arundel, 20, (Brit. Mus.) written by, xxviii.

Enoch, son of Cain, 5, 8.

Enoch, the town called, built by Cain, 8.

Enoch, son of Jared, 19; birth of, 12; the Apocryphal book of, *ib.*; he begets Methuselah, 13; his translation, 14.

Enos, birth of, 9, 12; death of, 14; the second from Adam, 18.

Eorpwald, King of East Anglia, 100.

Ephesus, S. John dies at, 60; the third General Council held at, 85.

Ephraim, built by Cain, 11.

Ephraim, Mount, 32, 35.

Epiphanius, 79.

Epistles, on the Canonical, by Capgrave, xvi., 326.

Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, visits England, 141; endeavours to persuade Henry II. to go to the Holy Land, *ib.*; their altercation at Dover, *ib.*

Eric IX., King of Denmark and Sweden, marries Philippa, daughter of Henry IV., King of England, 292.

Erkenwin, King of Essex, 100.

Ermenric, King of Kent, 99.

Erpingham, Sir Thomas de, present at the abdication of Richard II., 272; present at the siege of Harfleur, 310.

Erroneous Positions, against, Capgrave's work called, xvii., 327.

Erythræan Sibyl, the, 45.

Esau, birth of, 28.

Esc, King of Kent, 99.

Essex, great murrain among the cattle in, 185.

Essex, Kingdom of, 100; Kings of, *ib.*; the Danes expelled from by Edward the Elder, 115.

Esther, 50, 360.

Eston, Sir Adam, *see* Adam de Eston.

Ethelbald, eldest son of Ethelwulf, 109.

Ethelbert, King of Kent, baptized by S. Augustine, 99.

——, second son of Ethelwulf, 109.

Ethelfleda, death of, 115.

Ethelred, the Unready, 122.

——, third son of Ethelwulf, 109.

Ethelwald, King of Northumbria, 101.

Ethelwold, King of Sussex, converted by S. Birinus, 100.

Ethelwulf succeeds Egbert, 109; his pilgrimage to Rome, *ib.*; he grants the tax called "Romescot" to Pope Leo IV., *ib.*; he marries the daughter of Charles the Bald, *ib.*

Eu, Charles, Count of, taken prisoner at Agincourt, 312.

Eubony, *see* Man, Isle of.

Eucharist, differences on the doctrine of the, 297; Sir John Oldcastle's opinions respecting, 305.

Eugenius I., Pope, 96.

Eugenius II., Pope 107.

Eugenius III., Pope, 137.

Euripides, 49.

Eusebius, Chronicle of, 1; quotation from 25, *and note*; his time, 79.

——, Pope, 76.

Eustace, and his family are martyred, 64.

Eustochium, S., 82.

Eutycianus, Pope, 73.

Evaristus, Bishop of Rome, 64.

Eve, 5.

Evesham, battle of, 159.

Exeter, destroyed by the Danes in the time of Ethelred the Unready, 122; punished for rebellion by William the Conqueror, 129.

——, Thomas, Duke of, *see* Beaufort, Thomas.

——, Bishops of, *see* Grandison, John de; Neville, George; Stafford, Edmund; Stapelton, Walter de.

Exodus, Capgrave's Commentary on, xiv, xv, 326.

Exton, Richard, Mayor of London, warns Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, of the treachery of Michael de la Pole, 243.

Ezekiel, prophecies, 46; notices of, 47.

Ezra, 49.

F.

Fabian, Pope, 71.

Fabian, Leo the Great writes against the heresy of Eutices and, 86.

Fabricii, Codex Pseudepigraphus, reference to, 7, *note.*

Falvesley, John, assists the Abbot of Lewes in driving the French from the Sussex coast, 233.

Faringdon, S William, besieged in Burburgh by Charles VI., 239.

Faulkes de Breaute, *see* Breaute.

Faustulus, discovers Romulus and Remus, 44.

Fekenham, an Austin Friar, takes up the head of Richard, Earl of Arundel, and buries it in the convent of that Order in London, 265.

Felix, Antipope, 79; his death, *ib.*

Felix, Bishop of Dunwich, converts Eorpwald, King of East Anglia, 100.

Felix I., Pope, 73.

Felix II., Pope, 87.

Felix III., Pope, 90.

Ferdinand I., King of Aragon, embraces the cause of the Duke of Orleans, 299; his death, 316.

Feriby, William de, a notary, is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272.

Feversham, King Stephen dies at, 137.

Finan (Bishop of Lindisfarne), baptizes Penda, King of Mercia, 101.

Fires, great, at Boston, 167; at Norwich, 303.

Fitz-Alan, Thomas, Earl of Arundel; *see* Thomas Fitz-Alan.

Fitz-Walter, Walter, accompanies Sir John Knollys into France, 227.

Fitz-William, William, executed, 190.

Flanders, conquered by Arthur, 87; its condition in the time of Charles the Bald, 111; Piers Gaveston exiled into, 176; Clothmakers of, suffered to dwell in England, 205; Edward III., invading France, is favourably received in, 206; placed under an interdict by Pope Benedict XII., 209; King John II. offers to restore it, to Edward III., 219.

Flavius Claudius, 73.

Flemings, the wool trade with the, settled at the Parliament at Nottingham, 205; defeated by the English in a naval battle, 228; capture a barge of Fowey, in Cornwall, 234; are taken and imprisoned, *ib.*

Flint Castle, Richard II. at, 271.

Flisco, Lucas de, 182.

Flood of Noah, the, 2, 15, 16, 17.

Florence, Council of, under Leo IX., 124.

——, Sir Andrew of, *see* Andrew.

Florianus, Emperor, 74.

Food and apparel, regulated by Statute (37 Edw. III.), 222.

Fordham, John de, Bishop of Durham, is forbidden to have intercourse with Richard II., 249.

Formosus, Pope, 112; Pope Stephen VI. the enemy of, *ib.*; Pope John IX. the the friend of, when degraded by Pope John VIII., 113; his bones exhumed and thrown into the sea by Pope Sergius III., *ib.*; they are found by fishers and buried in St. Peter's, *ib.*

Fournier, James, [Benedict XII.,] *see* Cistercians.

Fowey, in Cornwall, the Flemings take a vessel belonging to, 234.

France, 1; peopled by the sons of Gomer, 18; Maximinian's persecutions in, 75; conquered by Arthur, King of Britain, 87; wars of the Emperor Arnulph in, 112; the Empire removed in the time of Louis III. to Italy from, 113, 114; negotiations between Edward I. and Philip, King of, for exchange of prisoners, 171; Piers Gaveston exiled to, 176; Roger Mortimer flies to France, 193; continual attempts to restore peace with, *ib.*; Queen Isabella undertakes to negotiate with the King of, *ib.*; Philip VI., King of, offends Edward III., 205; Edward III. claims the Crown of, in the right of his mother, *ib.*; and invades, 206; the Regency of, refuse to sanction the cession of Aquitaine, &c., proposed by John II., 219; invaded by Edward III., *ib.*; overrun by the English, 224; Edward III. proposes to enter, and stop these irregularities, but is prevented by Charles V., *ib.*; Edward III. resumes the title of King of France, 226; the English under Thomas of Woodstock, Earl of Buckingham, ravage the north of, 235; Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, invades Flanders and, 238; invaded by Henry V., 309.

Francis, S., of Assisi, founder of the Minorites, 144.

Frederic I., Barbarossa, Emperor, 137; 146, *note*.

Frederic II., King of Sicily, oppressed by Otho IV., 143; is chosen Emperor in his room, and crowned by Pope Honorius III., *ib.*; is afterwards excommunicated, *ib.*; and deposed, 149.

French, the, burn Plymouth, 284.

Friars Preachers, instituted by S. Dominic at Toulouse, 143.

Frideswide's, S., at Oxford, Robert, Prior of, 332, 333.

Fugatius and Damianus, sent into Britain by Pope Eleutherus, 67.

Fulbert, S., 121.

Fulgentius, Fabius, his account of the origin of idolatry, 21, 22.

Fulthorpe, Robert, one of the Judges appointed by Richard II. to consider the Commission of Regency, 246.

G.

Gad, the prophet, 39.

Galba, 62.

Galen, 66; his works, *ib.*, *and note.*

Galerius, Emperor, 76.

Gallandius, reference to the "Bibliotheca Veterum Patrum," of Gallandius, 82, *note.*

Galley-halfpence, withdrawn from circulation, 313.

Gallienus, Emperor, 72.

Galloway, Edward III. ravages Scotland as far as, 203.

Gallus and Volusian, Emperors, 72.

Galon, Edmund, a rebel, 237.

Gamme, David, killed at Agincourt, 312.

Gandolphus, Biographical Works of, 322, *and note.*

Gascoigne, William, Chief Justice, takes part in the execution of Archbishop Scrope, 291.

Gascon towns given by Henry III. to the Prince Edward, 155.

Gascony conferred in all its rights on the Prince Edward, 157; promise of its restoration to Henry IV., 300.

Gaston de Bearn, Edward I. proceeds against, 163.

Gauncort, the Lord, present at the siege of Harfleur, 310.

Gaunt, John of, (son of Edward III.,) is born, 208; accompanies his father in the expedition against John II. of France, 216; Earl of Richmond, 219; marries Blanche, daughter of the Duke of Lancaster, *ib.*; thereby inherits the Duchy of Lancaster, *ib.*; enters on this Duchy, 221; is sent by Edward III. into France to claim the Crown, 226; is left in Aquitaine by the Black Prince after the revolt of Limoges, 227; marries Constance, daughter of Peter the Cruel of Castile, 228; invades France, 229; returns to England, *ib.*; sent to Bruges to ratify a treaty between England and France, *ib.*; compels Wiclif to abjure his opinions, 232; is reconciled by

Richard II. to the citizens of London, *ib.*; makes a truce with France, 239; invades Scotland unsuccessfully with Thomas, his brother, Earl of Buckingham, 240; quarrels with Richard II., but is shortly after reconciled to him, 241; invades Spain, 242; takes Brest, *ib.*; returns from Spain, 252; goes into France and concludes a truce for one year, 256; his expenses granted by the Parliament at Winchester, 257; accuses Richard, Earl of Arundel, of rebellion, 258; returns from France, having obtained a four years' truce, *ib.*, death of Constance, wife of, *ib.*; is recalled from Aquitaine, 261; goes to Katherine Swinford, at Lincoln, *ib.*; is present at the renewal of the truce at Calais, 262; his children by Katharine Swinford are legitimized 263; Henry Beaufort, son of, 267; he dies, and is buried at S. Paul's, 268.

Gaveston, Piers, troubles on the recall of, 174; he gives discontent by the privileges conferred on him by Edward II., *ib.*; introduces foreign tilters at Wallingford, 175; a Parliament is summoned against him, *ib.*; at a second Parliament he is exiled, 176; he marries Margaret de Clare, *ib*; Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, demands the punishment of, 177; he goes with the King to Newcastle, 178; thence to Scarborough, where he hides himself, *ib.*; but is taken and executed, *ib.*

Gelasius I. Pope, 68, reference to a decree of, 7, *note.*

Gelasius II., Pope, 128, 132.

Genabum (Orleans), 73.

Genesis, Capgrave's Commentary on, xiii, *and note*; xv., 325.

Généviève, S., of Paris, 86.

Genoa, the Cardinal of, deposed by Pope Urban VI., 241.

Geoffrey Plantagenet, Earl of Anjou, marries the Empress Maud, 134; is unsuccessfully attacked by Stephen, 136; father of Henry II., 38.

Gera, father of Ehud, 33.

Germany, 23.

Gervais and Prothis martyred at Milan, 75.

Gether, son of Shem, 17.

Ghent, John of Gaunt born at, 208; soldiers of, accompany Edward III. in his invasion of France, 209.

Gideon, Judge of Israel, 35.

Giffard, Robert, goes with Aymer de Valence against Bruce, 174.

Gihon, Solomon anointed at, 39.

Gilbert de Fraxineto, first Prior of the Dominicans at Oxford, 150.

—— Earl of Gloucester, patronises the Hermits of S. Austin, 152; is reconciled to Henry III., after the siege of London, 160; marries Joan of Acre, 168; accompanies Prince Edward and Louis IX. to the Holy Land, *ib.*; swears allegiance to the absent Prince Edward on the death of Henry III., 162.

——, Pope, 120.

Gilbert of Sempringham, S., Life of, by Capgrave, xviii, *and note.*

Giles, Doctor, at the request of Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester, writes a book on "the Governauns of Princes," 152.

Gilgal, 32.

Giraldus Cambrensis, a quotation from his "De Instructione Principum," 140, 141, *and note.*

Girard II., Bishop of Suz, 139.

Gladsmuir, Baliol defeats the Scotch army at, 201.

Glastonbury Abbey, founded by Edgar, 120; Edmund Ironside buried at, 125; the body of King Arthur found at, 140; St. Michael's Church, near Glastonbury. thrown down by an earthquake, 164.

Glendwr, Owen, his origin, 277; he rebels against Henry IV., *ib.*; ravages the Marches of England, 278; ravages Herefordshire; defeats Sir Edmund Mortimer, 279; relieves the Castle of Aberystwith, 295; assistance is sent to him from France, 292; Henry IV. prepares to attack him, 290.

Gloucester founded by Claudius Cæsar, 62; Henry III. crowned by Walo at, 149; Edward II. flies to, before Queen Isabella, 195.

Gloucester, Earldom of, conferred on Hugh Audley, 204.

——, Gilbert, Earl of, *see* Gilbert.

——, Humphrey, Duke of, *see* Humphrey.

——, Richard, Earl of, *see* Richard.

——, Robert, Earl of, *see* Robert.

——, Thomas, Earl of, *see* Despenser, Thomas le.

——, Thomas, Duke of, *see* Thomas, Prince.

——, William, the Earl of, King John divorces Hawise, daughter of, 147.

Godwin, Earl of Kent, slays Alfred, son of Ethelred the Unready, 126 ; his treacherous conduct and death, 128.

Golgatha, 5.

Golofin, Sir John, an adherent of Richard II. is imprisoned, 249.

Gomer, son of Japheth, 18.

Gordian, 70.

Gorgonius, S., martyred, 75.

Gospels, Commentary on the, by Capgrave, 326.

Goths, descended from Magog, 18.

"Gower lands," in Wales, disputes about, 186, 187.

Grandison, John de, Bishop of Exeter, and others, are sent by Edward III. to treat with the Pope as to the right to the crown of France, 211.

Grandison, Otho de, accompanies Sir John Knollys into France, 227.

Grather, *see* Brether.

Gratian, Emperor, 81.

Gratian, Biographical Works of, 322, *and note.*

Gravelines is taken by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, 238 ; by whom it is destroyed, 239.

Gravesend, Richard de, Bishop of London, and the Barons at St. Albans, demand the banishment of the Despensers, 187.

Gray, William, Bishop of Ely, xvi, xx.

Greene, Sir Thomas, one of the chief speakers in Parliament on behalf of cancelling all pardons granted in the matter of the Commission of Regency, 265 ; attends a council called by Edmund, Duke of York, on the landing of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 270 ; flies to Bristol, *ib.*

Greeks, descended from Javan, 18.

Gregory the Great, Pope, 93; sends S. Augustine into England, *ib.*

Gregory II., Pope, 101.

Gregory IV., Pope, 108.

Gregory V., Pope, 121 ; Otho III. crowned at Rome by, 120.

Gregory VI., Pope, 124.

Gregory VII. (Hildebrand), Pope, 127.

Gregory VIII., Pope, 142.

Gregory IX., Pope, 151.

Gregory X., Pope, accompanies Prince Edward on the Crusade, 161; confirms the foundation of the Austin Priory at Oxford, 330.

Gregory XI., Pope, 227 ; vainly endeavours to make peace between England and France, 228 ; Edward III. resists the claims of, 229 ; issues a bull against the teaching of Wiclif, 231 ; dies, 233.

Gregory XII., Pope, elected, 294 ; his subsequent misfortunes, *ib.*; Henry IV. renounces his allegiance to him, 296 ; he is deposed by the Council of Pisa, 297, 308.

Gregory, S., the writings of, quotation from, in reference to Constantine the Great, 77, *and note.*

Gregory Nazianzen, S., 81.

Grey, Sir Reginald, de Ruthyn, his dispute with Owen Glendwr, 277.

——, Sir Thomas, present at the abdication of Richard II., 272; conspires against Henry V., 309.

Griffons, the, oppose Richard I. at Messina, and are defeated by him, 145.

Grimbald interprets the vision of Henry I., 135.

Grimsby, Henry of Lancaster lands at Ravenspur, near, 270.

Grosteste, Robert, Bishop of Lincoln, his writings, 153, *and note* ; he goes to Rome to oppose the aggressions of the Pope, 156; his death, *ib.*

Gualo, *see* Walo.

Guesclin, Bertrand de, is taken prisoner at the battle of Najara, 225.

Guines, Richard II. and Charles VI. meet at, 262.

Guildford, massacre of certain Normans at, by the counsel of Godwin, Earl of Kent, 126.

Gurney, Thomas, assists in the murder of Edward II., 199; is taken at Marseilles, and put to death on the voyage home, *ib.*

Gurney, Matthew, accompanies the Earl of Cambridge into Portugal, 236.

Guthred, King of the Danes, baptized, 113.

Guyenne, the Duchy of, promise of its restoration to Henry IV., 300.

——, Duke of, Henry V. created, 274.

——, the English winter there, 302; return home, 303.

Gwendevyn, 62.

Gybbe, William, a Chaplain, formerly possessor of MSS. Bodl. Rawlinson, Poet., 118; xxix, *note.*

Gybbons, Thomas, a collector of historical notes, xviii.

Gynewell, John, Bishop of Lincoln, is commanded by the Pope to avenge the wrongs of the Dominican Friars, 218.

H.

Habakkuk, relics of, discovered and translated, 83.

Hainault, William III. of, Count of Holland, Queen Isabella takes refuge with, 194; assists Edward III. in the invasion of France, 209.

——, Philippa of, is married to Edward III., 194.

Hakeville, the Lord, present at the siege of Harfleur, 311.

Hakewood, Sir John, achievements in Italy of, 226; dies, 258.

Hales, Sir Robert, the King's Treasurer, is killed in Wat Tyler's rebellion, 237.

Hallum, Robert, Bishop of Salisbury, *see* Allum, Robert.

Ham, the Sons of, 18; supposed by Eusebius to have been the same as Zoroaster, 25.

Handlo, Sir John, of Borstall, 329.

——, Sir Richard, 331.

Hannah, mother of Samuel, 38.

Harcla, Sir Andrew, meets the Earl of Lancaster at Boroughbridge, 189; rebels in favour of the Scots, and is executed at London, 191.

Harcourt, [Geoffrey d',] advises Edward III. to land at La Hogue, 211.

Hardeby, Geoffrey, writes against the Archbishop of Armagh, 218.

Harfleur, Henry V. besieges, 310; surrender of, 311; attempt to recover it by the French, 314.

Harnasey, *see* Haringay.

Harold usurps the crown, 128; his treachery to William of Normandy, 129; his death at the battle of Hastings, *ib.*

Haringay Park, near Highgate, 248, *and note.*

Harwich, Queen Isabella lands near, 195.

Hastings, John, Earl of Pembroke, is defeated at Rochelle, 228; is accidentally killed, 253.

Hastings, William the Conqueror lands at, and defeats Harold, 129.

Hawise, daughter of the Earl of Gloucester, is divorced by King John, 147.

Hay, Peter de la, defeats the insurgents near Thirsk, 295.

Hayles, Cistercian Abbey at, founded by Richard, King of the Romans, 156; Henry his son buried at, 161.

Haymo de Hythe, Bishop of Rochester, *see* Hythe, Haymo de.

Hebrews, the, descended from Eber, 18, 19.

Hebron, Adam's penance at, 7; David reigns at, 39.

Hegesippus, 67.

Helena, Constantius marries, 76; translation of the Empress Helena from Rome into France, 108; discovery at Rome by Boniface X. of treasure attributed to, 268.

Helen, rape of, 36.

Hellespontian Sybil, the, 45.

Helman, Sir William, an adherent of Richard II., is imprisoned, 249.

Helys, Robert, defeats the insurgents near Thirsk, 295.

Hengist, 99.

Hennow, *see* Hainault.

"Henricis, De Illustribus," of Capgrave, reference to the, 4, *note;* referred to, x, *and note*, xi; xvii, *and note;* xxi, 326.

Henry I., Emperor, 115.

Henry II., Emperor (the Lame), 121.

Henry III., Emperor (the Black), 125.

Henry IV., Emperor, 127.

Henry V., Emperor, 132; cursed by Pope Calixtus II., *ib.*; marries Maud, daughter of Henry I. of England, 134.

Henry VI., Emperor, 142; crowned by Pope Celestine III., *ib.*

Henry I., King of England, (called Beauclerc,) 132; his accession, *ib.*; he is crowned by Maurice, Bishop of London, 133; marries the daughter of Malcolm of Scotland, *ib.*; his brother, Robert Curthose, claims the crown, *ib.*; he invades France, *ib.*; his children are drowned on his return, *ib.*; he marries Adelais of Louvain, *ib.*; he marries his daughter to the Emperor, Henry V. of Germany, 134; requires the nobles to swear fealty to her at London, *ib.*; requires all knights to cut their hair, *ib.*; is visited with strange visions, *ib.*; goes into Normandy to his daughter, 135; his death, *ib.*

Henry II., King of England, (son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the Empress Maud), is born, 136; is brought to England with his mother by the Earl of Gloucester, *ib.*; is acknowledged by Stephen as the rightful heir, 137; marries Queen Eleanor, 138; is crowned, 139; the story of his descent, *ib.*; his children by Queen Eleanor, 140; by permission of Pope Adrian IV., he invades Ireland, 137; he marries his son Henry to Margaret of France, *ib.*; his quarrel with Becket, 140; he is visited by Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, whom he refuses to accompany to the Holy Land, 141; altercation between him and the Patriarch at Dover, *ib.*; his death, 144.

Henry III., King of England; is crowned in his tenth year, at Gloucester, 149; is opposed by Louis of France, *ib.*; who beseiges Lincoln, but is repulsed by the King's troops, 150; makes peace at Kingston-upon-Thames, *ib.*; is crowned the second time, at Westminster, *ib.*; rebuilds Westminster Abbey *ib.*; resists the claim of Pope Honorius III. to church patronage in England, 151; is invited into France by the Gascons, 152; sanctions the marriage of Isabella, widow of the Earl of Gloucester, with Richard, his brother, *ib*; marries Eleanor of Provence, 154; hears the trial of certain Jews for an outrage at Norwich, *ib.*; narrowly escapes being killed by a madman at Woodstock, *ib.*; gives the Gascon towns to the Prince Edward, 155; introduces a new coinage, *ib.*; assumes the Cross, *ib.*; recalls Simon de Montfort from Bordeaux, 156; consents to the Provisions of Oxford, 158; makes a convention with Louis IX. of France, 159; appeals to Louis IX. against the Barons, *ib.*; besieges Simon de Montfort at Northampton, *ib.*; gives battle to the Barons at Lewes, and is taken prisoner, *ib.*; defeats Simon de Montfort at Evesham, *ib.*; and lays siege to London, 160; is reconciled to Gilbert Earl of Clare, *ib.*; dies, and is buried at Westminster, 162; one of the founders of the Austin Priory at Oxford, 330.

Henry IV., King of England, (*see* Henry, Duke of Lancaster,) succeeds to the throne, 272; is crowned, 273; his issue, *ib.*; makes his son Henry Prince of Wales, Duke of Cornwall, and Earl of Chester, 274; gives the Isle of Man to the Earl of Northumberland, *ib.*; gives the earldom of Richmond to the Earl of Westmoreland, *ib.*; deprives of their higher titles those who had condemned the Duke of Gloucester, *ib.*; conspiracy of the Earls of Kent, Salisbury, and Huntingdon, against, 275; rebellion of Owen Glendwr against, 277; is visited by Manuel II., Palæologus, Emperor of Constantinople, *ib.*; attempt to assassinate him, 278; marriage of his daughter, the Princess Blanch, 279; marches into Wales without success, *ib*; levies heavy taxes, 280; marries Joan of Navarre, *ib.*; at Winchester, 281; the Percies rebel against, *ib.*; he hastens against them, 282; and defeats them near Shrewsbury, 283; proceeds to York, *ib.*; proposes to enter Wales, but wants money, *ib.*; imposes heavy taxes on the people, 285; is reconciled to the Earl of Northumberland and Sir William Clifford, 286; Serle, a conspirator, is brought before him, and afterwards executed, *ib.*; at a Parliament at Coventry, he asks for a great sum of money, 287; the Speaker proposes to rob the Church, but the King yields to the Archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; returns from Wales, 290; proceeds to York, *ib.*; his sickness, 291; pursues the Earl of Northumberland to Berwick, *ib.*; his unsuccessful expedition into Wales, *ib.*; summons a meeting at Worcester, and endeavours to raise money, 292; marries his daughter, Philippa, to Eric of Denmark, *ib.*; heavily taxes the people, 293; visits the North, and quells a rebellion there, 295; withdraws his allegiance from Pope Gregory VII., 296; is appealed to by the Dukes of Orleans and Burgundy, 299; embraces the side of the latter and sends succours to him, 300; the Duke of Orleans negotiates with, *ib.*; and his Lords propose certain conditions to, 301; they seek the alliance of, *ib.*; he joins the party of the Duke of Orleans, 302; his death, and the circumstances attending it, *ib.*; he is buried at Canterbury, 303.

Henry V., King of England, son of Mary, daughter of the Earl of Hereford, 273; is made Prince of Wales, Duke of Cornwall, Earl of Chester, and Duke of Aquitaine, 274; besieges the Castle of Aberystwith in Wales, 295; is repulsed by Owen Glendwr, *ib.*; is present at the execution of a smith for heresy in London, 297; succeeds to the throne, 303; his dealings with Sir John Oldcastle, 304, 305, 306; keeps Christmas at Eltham, 306; his death is planned by Oldcastle, but he escapes, *ib.*; founds three religious houses, 307; sails from Southampton to invade France, 309; conspiracy against, *ib.*; lands in the Pay du Caux, 310; besieges and takes Harfleur, *ib.*; makes Sir Thomas Beaufort governor of Harfleur, 311; marches on Calais, *ib.*; wins the battle of Agincourt, 312; returns to England, *ib.*; receives the Emperor Sigismund at Westminster, 313; sends John, Duke of Bedford, to relieve Harfleur, 314; his negotiations with the Emperor Sigismund, *ib.*; accompanies him as far as Calais on his return, 315; effects a reconciliation between the Emperor and the Duke of Burgundy, *ib.*; conspiracy against him at Kenilworth, 317.

Henry VI., King of England, x., *and note*; the "Liber de Illustribus Henricis" dedicated to, xvii, xx.; he visits Lynn, 371.

Henry Plantagenet [Earl of Derby], opposes De Vere, 245; sails into Prussia, 254; is made Duke of Hereford, 267; [Duke of Lancaster], exiled by Richard II., 268; returns to England, 269; lands at Ravenspur, 270; marches upon Bristol and takes it, *ib.*; follows Richard to Conway, 271; compels him to resign the crown, *ib.*; takes him to the Tower, *ib.*; is present at his resignation of the crown, 272. *See* Henry IV., King of England.

Henry Plantagenet, Earl of Lancaster, has charge of Edward II. at Kenilworth, 196; is made Earl of Derby, 204; is sent to negotiate for peace before Clement VI. at Avignon, 211; takes Bergerac and many other towns in Aquitaine, *ib.*; his daughter marries the Duke of Zealand, 215; he is made Duke of Lancaster, *ib.*; is sent to negotiate for peace with the King of France, *ib.*; accompanies Edward III. in the expedition against John II. of France, 216; John of Gaunt marries Blanche, the daughter of, 219; accompanies Edward III. in the invasion of France, *ib.*

Henry II. (the Bastard), King of Castile, is defeated by the Black Prince at Najara, 225.

Henry III., son of John I., King of Castile, marries Katherine, daughter of John, Duke of Lancaster, and Constance, daughter of Pedro the Cruel, 253.

Henry, son of Henry II., 140; marries Margaret of France, *ib.*

Henry, Prince, afterwards Henry V., created Prince of Wales, &c., 274; his visit to Lynn, 292.

Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, is killed at Viterbo, 161.

Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon, reference to Capgrave's Life of, xxii.

Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, reference to Capgrave's Life of, xxi.

Heraclius, Emperor, 94.

Hercules, his labours, 33.

Hérédia, Jean Fernandès de, Master of the Knights of Rhodes, defeats Morettus, 260.

Hereford, Bishops of, *see* Mascall, Robert; Orleton, Adam de; Trefuant, John.

——, the Countess of (Bohun), crowns Bruce at Scone, 173.

——, Henry, Earl of Derby is made Duke of, 267.

Hereford, Humphrey, Earl of, *see* Humphrey, Earl of Hereford.

——, Prince Edward is proclaimed "Keeper of England" at, 196; Hugh le Despenser (the younger) is executed at, 197.

Herefordshire ravaged by Owen Glendwr, 279.

Hermas Pastor, 66.

Heptarchy, the; names of the various States and their successive Kings, 99; dissolution of, 109; the seven kingdoms united under Edgar, 120.

Hezekiah, King of Judah, 44, 45.

Hieropolis in Phrygia, 61.

Hilarion, S., 79.

Hilary, Pope, 87.

Hilary, S., 79.

Hildebrand, (Gregory VII.,) proceedings of, against simony in France while he was a Cardinal, 127.

Hinguar and Hubba invade England, and put Edmund, King of East Anglia, to death, 109.

Hinnom, the Valley of, 44.

Hogman's Lane, in Lynn, 367.

Holinshed, the Chronicles of, 323, *and note.*

Holland, John, Earl of Huntingdon, *see* John Holland.

Holland, Sir Thomas, husband of Joan of Kent, 221.

Holland, William III., Count of, *see* Hainault.

——, William VI., Count of, visits England, 314.

Holofernes, 24.

Holt, Castle of, in Cheshire, belongs to the Earl of Arundel, 258.

——, John of, one of the Judges appointed by Richard II. to consider the Commission of Regency, 246.

Homer, 38; he records the verses of the Delphian Sibyl, 45.

Homildon Hill, *see* Humeldon Hill.

Honorius, Emperor, 83, 84; his death, 84.

Honorius I., Pope, 95.

Honorius II., Pope, 135.

Honorius III., Pope, confirms the Orders of Hermits of S. Austin, 144; claims Church patronage in England, 151; his death, *ib.*

Honorius IV., Pope, 167, *note.*

Hopman's Way, in Lynn, 367.

Hormisdas, Pope, 89.

Hospitallers, the Master of the Knights, in Rhodes, slain in a battle with Turks, 223.

Host, the consecrated, want of reverence towards, 288.

Hothum, John de, Bishop of Ely, and the Barons at S. Albans, demand the banishment of the Despensers, 187; he meets Queen Isabella at Harwich, 195; keeps Christmas with the Queen at Wallingford, 197.

Hotspur, *see* Percy, Henry [the younger].

Hoveden's Annals, reference to, 140, *note.*

Howen Glendor, *see* Glendwr.

Howell, Keson ap, 196.

Hubba, *see* Hinguar.

Hul, son of Shem, 17; his descendants dwell in Armenia, *ib.*

Humber, the river, 37.

Humeldon Hill, the battle of, 280.

Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, son of Henry IV., 273; his visit to Lynn, 292; accompanies the Emperor Sigismund, 315; mention of, xiii; his gift of certain books to the University of Oxford, xiv, xv.; the Life of, by Capgrave, xviii., 327; Capgrave dedicates many of his works to, xx.

Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, "borne down" by foreign tilters at Wallingford, 175; purchases the "Gower Lands" of Sir William Bruce, 186; sells the same to Roger Mortimer, Earl of March, *ib.*; appeals against Sir Hugh le Despenser, who had taken these lands, to Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, 187; meets the Barons assembled at Sherborne on this matter, *ib.*; publicly in Westminster Hall proclaims Hugh le Despenser to be a traitor, 188; is slain at the battle of Boroughbridge, 189.

Humphrey de Bohum, Earl of Hereford and others, are sent by Edward III into France to claim the Crown, 226.

Hungary, Charobert, King of, Louis X. marries the daughter of, 206.

Huntingdon, 292.

——, Earl of, William Clinton is made, 204.

——, Guischard of Angoulême is made by Richard II. Earl of, 232.

——, John Holland, Earl of, *see* John Holland.

Hurlstone, William, Abbot of Waltham, present at the burial of Richard II., 276.

Huys, the Earl of, embraces the cause of the Orleanists, 299.

Hyginus, Pope, 66.

Hystaspes, Darius son of, 50.

Hythe, Haymo de, ["Haymo at the Heth,"] resigns the bishopric of Rochester, 214.

I.

Iberi, or Spaniards, 18.

Ibzan, Judge of Israel, 35.

Ida, King of Northumbria, 101.

Idolatry, introduction of, 21; by Belus, 24.

Ignatius, S., martyrdom of, 64.

Illyricum, victories of Flavius Claudius in, 73.

Images, origin of, 21; opinion of Fabius Fulgentius about, *ib.*

Imachus, first King of Argos, 28.

India, peopled by the sons of Mash, 18; and by the sons of Joktan, *ib.*; the eastern boundary of Scythia, 23; conquered by Judas Maccabeus and his brethren, 56; S. Thomas martyred in, 61; conquests of Trajan in, 64.

Ingham, Oliver de, is besieged by the French in Bordeaux, 207.

Innocent I., Pope, 84.

Innocent II., Pope, 135.

Innocent III., Pope, 142; his works at Rome, and his writings, *ib.*; places England under an interdict in the time of King John, 148.

Innocent IV., 155; is opposed in his aggressions by Grosteste, Bishop of Lincoln, 156; legend of his death, *ib.*

Innocent V., Pope, 164.

Innocent VI., Pope, 214; dies, 222.

Innocent VII., Pope, his election, 288; dies 293.

Interdict, for seven years, in the reign of John, 148.

Inundations, great, 203, 288.

Ionicum Mare, derivation of the name of, 18.

Ionicus, son of Noah, 20.

Irad, 5, 8.

Ireland, 1; mission of S. Patrick into, 85; Henry II. is permitted by Pope Adrian IV. to invade and take possession of, 137; Edward Bruce invades, 181; Robert de Vere is made Duke of, 244; Thomas Duke of Gloucester is made Duke of, 256; is sent thither by Richard II., *ib.*; settlers from, in England, required (A.D. 1393) to return to their own land, 258; poverty of, 259; Richard II. goes into, *ib.*; Roger Mortimer, Earl of March, is slain in, 268; Richard II. anxious to avenge this murder, goes into, *ib.*; in the following year again goes into, 269; Richard II. returns from, to oppose Henry Duke of Lancaster, 271.

Irenæus, S., 68.

Irish, under Anlaf, defeated by Athelstan, 117.

Isaac, compelled by Ishmael to commit idolatry, 21; birth of, 27.

Isaac, King of Cyprus, taken prisoner by Richard I., 145.

Isabella, daughter of Pedro the Cruel, of Castile, marries Edmund, Earl of Cambridge, 228; dies, 258.

Isabella, daughter of Philip IV. of France, 206; Queen of Edward II., 174; is refused admittance at Leeds Castle, Kent, 188; undertakes to mediate with the French King, 193; refuses to return to England, 194; takes refuge with William of Hainault, *ib.*; marries Prince Edward to Philippa of Hainault, *ib.*; invades England, 195; and marches on London, *ib.*; pursues the King into the West, *ib.*; takes Bristol, 196; enters Wales, and carries the King a prisoner to Kenilworth, *ib.*; her intrigue with Roger Mortimer, 200.

Isabella [MS. Eleanor], daughter of Charles VI., is espoused to Richard II., 263; is sent home into France, 278; the French demand a tribute for her, 285.

Isaiah, 44, 45.

Isaiah, Capgrave's Commentary on, xv., 326.

Isidore, 81; chronology of, 2; extracts from the works of, 34, *and note*; 77, *and note*.

Isis, 28.

Islip, Simon, Archbishop of Canterbury, the English and French lords take their oaths to the treaty for the release of John II., before, 220.

Ismael, introducer of idolatry, 21.

Israel (*i.e.* the Ten Tribes), 20.

——, people of, 19.

——, son of Isaac, 19.

Italians (according to some), descended from Tubal, 18.

Italy, ravaged by Alaric, 83; given by Louis I. to Lothaire, 106; great famine in, in the time of Charles le Gros, 111.

J.

Jabel, 8.

Jacob, son of Isaac, 19; his death, 29.

Jacqueline, Countess of Holland, and widow of the Dauphin John of France, 314.

Jael, wife of Heber the Kenite, 34.
Jagellon, King of Poland, [afterwards Ladislas IV.,] his conversion to Christianity, 298.
Jair, Judge of Israel, 35.
James the Great, S., 60.
James the Less, S., 61.
James I., King of Scotland, taken prisoner on his way into France, 293.
James, Katharine, descended from the Handlos of Borstall, 331.
Japheth, 17; his sons, 18.
Jared, birth of, 11; derivation of name, *ib.*; the fifth from Adam, 12, 191; begets Enoch, *ib.*
Javan, son of Japheth, 18.
Javan [Suffene], son of Japheth, 20.
Jayme II., King of Majorca, flies at Crecy, 212.
Jean (surnamed Sans Peur), Duke of Burgundy, 298; his intended assault upon Calais, how defeated, *ib.*
Jehoaddan, mother of Amaziah, 42.
Jehoiakim, King of Judah, 46.
Jehoida, the High Priest, 41; his long life, 42.
Jehosaphat, King of Judah, reign of, 41.
Jehoshabeth, daughter of Joram, 41.
Jepthah, Judge of Israel, 35.
Jeremiah, prophecies of, 46; his death, 47.
Jericho, taking of, 32.
Jerome, S., Chronicle of, 1; quotations from his works, 28, 70, 131; mentioned, 81; taught grammar by Donatus, 79; his death and age, 84; his appearance in a vision to S. Augustin, *ib.*
Jerusalem, the capital of the Two Tribes, 19; not the Salem over which Melchisedec reigned, 28; David crowned at, 39; S. James is martyred at, 60; S. James, first Bishop of, 61; S. Simon, Bishop of, and martyred in, *ib.*; destruction of, by Titus, 63; devastated by Adrian, 65; victories of Charlemagne at, 105; capture of in the First Crusade, 128; story of pilgrims on their way home from, 284.
Jeshua, the High Priest, 48.
Jesse, the father of David, 39.
Jesus, the son of Sirach, 54.
Jewet Meatless, *see* Meatless.
Jews, great massacre of, in London on the coronation of Richard I., 144; they are accused of outrages at Norwich, 154; accused of clipping money, 164; penal measures against, *ib.*; great oppression of, in 1282, and extortion of money from 167; accused of assisting certain lepers in poisoning wells, are burnt, 186.
Joachim, the Abbot, condemned for heresy, 138; his book called "The Everlasting Gospel," condemned by Pope Alexander IV., 158.
Joan, daughter of Henry II., marries the King of Sicily, 140.
Joan of Acre, daughter of Edward I., marries Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester, 168; is buried at Clare, *ib.*; is found perfect fifty-two years after her burial by Isabel de Burgh, *ib.*
Joan of Kent marries the Black Prince 221.
Joan, Pope, the story of, 110.
Joan of Navarre, Henry IV. marries her at Winchester, 280; her visit to Lynn, 292.
Joash, King of Judah, 41; saved by Jehoshabeth, *ib.*; his reign, 42.
Job, a dweller in the Land of Uz, 17.
John I., Pope, 89.
John II., Pope, 91.
John III., Pope, 92.
John IV., Pope, 95.
John V., Pope, 97.
John VI., Pope, 98.
John VII., Pope, 98.
John VIII., Pope, 111; Formosus, afterwards Pope, degraded by, 112.
John IX., Pope, 113.
John X., Pope, 114.
John XI., Pope, 115, *note.*
John XII., Pope, 116, 122.
John XIII., Pope, 118; his imprisonment and exile, 119; he is restored by Otho the Great, *ib.*
John XIV., Pope, 121, *note.*
John XV., Pope, 121, *note*; 122.

John XVI., Pope, 121, *note*.

John XVII., Pope, 121.

John XIX., Pope, 124.

John XXI. [or XX.], Pope, 164.

John XXII., Pope, 173, 179, 181; endeavours to establish peace between Bruce and Edward II., 182; excommunicates Bruce, and lays the kingdom under an interdict, *ib.*; acts of, 183; refuses to release the Scots from the interdict, 191; dies, and is buried at Avignon, 203.

John XXIII., Pope, his election, 298; deposed from the papacy by the Council of Constance, 308, 309.

John Baptist, S., called a Nazarene, 38.

John, called Posthumous, King of France, 206.

John (called Sans-terre), King of England, born, 140; succeeds his brother Richard, 147; contrives the death of Prince Arthur, and keeps his sister Eleanor in close confinement, *ib.*; divorces Hawise of Gloucester, and marries Isabella [Blanch] of Angoulême, *ib.*; persecutes the monks of Canterbury for accepting Stephen Langton as Archbishop, 147, 148; is excommunicated by Innocent III., and the land placed under an interdict, 148; is received to favour by the Legate Pandulph, *ib.*; dies at Swineshead, *ib.*

John, Count of Alençon, his letter to Henry IV., 300.

John, Duke of Bourbon, his letter to Henry IV., 301.

John, Duke of Bourges and Auvergne son of Charles VI., King of France, his letter to Henry IV., 300.

John, Duke of Britanny, embraces the cause of the Duke of Orleans, 299.

John II. (Duke of Normandy, son of Philip VI.), King of France, 216; makes his son, Charles, Duke of Aquitaine, *ib.*; flies before Edward III., *ib.*; gathers an army at S. Omer to fight with Edward III., *ib.*; is defeated and taken prisoner by the Black Prince at Poitiers, 216; is carried to Bourdeaux, and thence to London, *ib.*; offers to restore Flanders, Picardy, and Aquitaine to Edward III., 219; is ransomed, 220; visits Edward III., 222; dies in the Savoy, 223.

John I., King of Castile, makes peace with the Duke of Lancaster, 252.

John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon, one of the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, 264; is made by Richard II. Duke of Exeter, 267; accompanies Richard II. into Ireland, 269; returns with him on the landing of the Duke of Lancaster, 271; conspires against Henry IV., 275; is beheaded at Plesshy, 276.

John Montacute, Earl of Salisbury, *see* Montacute, John.

John, King of Portugal, his daughter married to the Earl of Arundel, 293.

John of Gaunt, *see* Gaunt, John of.

John of Lancaster, Duke of Bedford, third son of Henry IV., 273; takes part in frustrating the conspiracy against his father, 289; is sent into France, 314.

John of the Times, 135.

John, Prior of Bridlington, his translation, 285.

John, Prior of S. Bartholomew, Smithfield, privileges granted to him and his successors, 297.

John the Divine, S., Evangelist, 60; exiled by Domitian, 63; his return to Ephesus, 64.

Joktan, son of Eber, 18; Prince of the children of Shem, 20; assists in building the Tower of Babel, *ib.*

Jonan, Emperor, 80.

Jonas, raised by Elijah, 41.

Joram, King of Judah, 41.

Jordan, the river, 32.

Josaphat converted by Barlaam, 81.

Joseph, birth of, 29; his death, 30.

Josephus, quotation from, 28.

Joshua, 32.

Joshua, Capgrave's Commentary on, xvi., 326.

Josiah, King of Judah, 46.

Jothan, King of Judah, 43.

Jubal, 8.
Jubanensis, *see* Clement VII.
Judah, faithful to Rehoboam, 20; David of the tribe of, 39.
Judas Iscariot, S. Matthias chosen for, 61.
Judas Maccabeus, 56.
Jude, S., the Apostle, 61; reference to Epistle of, 12.
Judges of Israel:—Othniel, 32; Ehud, 33; Deborah, *ib.*; Gideon, 35; Abimelech, *ib.*; Tholah, *ib.*; Jair, *ib.*; Ibzan, *ib.*; Abdon, 36; Samson, *ib.*
Judges, Capgrave's Commentary on, xvi., 326.
Judges, the, exiled in the matter of the Commission of Regency, are re-called from Ireland by Richard II., 263.
Julian the Apostate, 79, 80.
Julius Cæsar, 57; his conquests in Britain, *ib.*
Julius I. [Lucius], Pope, 79.
Jupiter, his image, 21.
Justin I., Emperor, 89.
Justin II., Emperor, 91.
Justinian I., Emperor, 89; his legal works, 89, 90; his wars, 90.
Justinian II., Emperor, 97; his exile, 98; he recovers the empire, *ib.*; and reigns well, 99.
Justus, martyred, 67.

K.

Katharine (daughter of John, Duke of Lancaster, and Constance of Castile), marries Henry III., King of Castile, 253.
Katharine Swinford, *see* Swinford, Katharine.
Katharine, S., martyred, 75; Capgrave's Life of, xix, xxviii, xxix., 335; the Prologue to, 337–354; Osbern Bokenham's Life of, xix, *and note.*
Keith, William, leader of the Scotch at the siege of Berwick, 202.
Kempe, Sir Robert, of Giffing, xix.
Kenilworth, Edward II. kept a prisoner at, 196; conspiracy against Henry V. at, 317.
Kent, Godwin, Earl of, *see* Godwin.
——, Thomas, Earl of, *see* Thomas.
——, high tide on the coast of, 288.
——, Joan of, marries the Black Prince, 221.
——, Kingdom of, 99; Kings of, *ib.*
——, Roger Mortimer is made Earl of, 199. *See* March, Roger, Earl of.
Kidcaus, 310.
Kirjath-Arba, 11.
Kinderton, the Baron of, taken prisoner at the battle of Shrewsbury, 283; beheaded *ib.*
Kings, Capgrave's Commentary on, xiv, *and note;* xv., 326.
Kingston, William, Chancellor of the University of Oxford, dispute as to the election of, 168.
Kingston-upon-Thames, Odo, Archbishop of Canterbury, crowns Edwin at, 119; peace is made between Henry III. and Louis VIII. at, 150.
Kirman, *see* Carmania.
Knollys, Sir John, is sent to invade France, 226; the lords quarrel with, 227; is accused of treason, *ib.*
——, Sir Robert, accompanies the Earl of Buckingham into Britanny, 235; dies, 294.
Kohath, son of Levi, 30.
Kyme, the Earl of, sent into France by Henry IV., 300.

L.

Labbe, Biographical Works of, 321, *and note.*
Lacedæmonia, 42.
Lacy, Henry, Earl of Lincoln, commends Thomas of Lancaster to Guy of Warwick, 178.
Lagus, title of Egyptian Kings, 24.

La Hogue, Edward III., invades France, and lands at, 211.

Lamech, 5, 8; two men of the name, 14.

Lamech (the father of Noah), 10; birth of, 13, 14; he begets Noah, 15.

La Mote, I., taken by the Earl of Arundel, 250.

Lancaster, Henry, Duke of, *see* Henry, Duke of Lancaster.

——, Henry, Earl of, *see* Henry, Earl of Lancaster.

——, John of, *see* John of Lancaster.

——, Thomas, Earl of, *see* Thomas, Earl of Lancaster.

——, John of Gaunt marries Blanche of, and inherits the Duchy of, 219; enters upon the inheritance, 221.

Lancecrone, a Bohemian woman, married by Robert de Vere, 245.

Lando, Pope, 114.

Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury, 130; his successful struggle with the Archbishop of York for the primacy, *ib.*

Langley, Richard II. keeps Christmas at, 261.

——, Edmund of, *see* Cambridge, Edmund, Earl of.

—— Friers, Richard II. buried there, 276.

Langobards, the, brought into Italy by Narses, 91, 92; Pope Zachary makes peace with, 102.

Langton, John de, Bishop of Chichester, and the Barons at S. Albans, demand the banishment of the Despensers, 187.

——, Stephen, elected Archbishop of Canterbury, 147; returns from Rome, with Pandulph, at the close of the Interdict, 148; crowns Henry II. at Canterbury for the second time, 150; tries a deacon, at a council held at Oseney Abbey, Oxford, 151; dies, 152.

Laodicea, 53.

Laon, legend of miraculous appearance in the sky over the spire at, 260.

Larentia, wife of Faustulus, 44.

Lateran, the palace of the, rebuilt by Pope Clement III., 142.

Latimer, the Lord Chamberlain, Peter de la Mar demands the removal of, 231.

——, Thomas, a Lollard, 245, 260.

Laurence de Sancto Martino, a Lollard, 245.

Laurence, reference to the edition of " The Book of Enoch," by Bp., 12, *note.*

Laurence, S., martyrdom of, 73.

Lausanne, the Duke of, killed at the battle of Agincourt, 312.

Lawne, the priory of, *see* Lesnes.

Leeds Castle, in Kent, Queen Isabella is refused admission to, 188; is besieged and taken by Edward II., *ib.*; mentioned, 304.

Leicester, recovered from the Danes by Edmund I., 118; Austin Friars build a convent at, 157.

——, Edward II. promises the legates that he will grant the Barons their demand at, 184.

——, Simon, Earl of, *see* Montfort, Simon de.

Leland, extract from the Commentaries of, 327.

Lenne, *see* Lynn.

Lenton, the Priory of, co. Nottingham, 200.

Leo the Great, Pope, 85; the invasion of Totila averted by his prayer, *ib.*; he holds the Council of Chalcedon against Eutices, *ib.*

Leo II., Pope, 97.

Leo III., Pope, 106.

Leo IV., Pope, 109.

Leo V., Pope, 113.

Leo VI., Pope, 114.

Leo VII., Pope, 115.

Leo VIII., Pope 116.

Leo IX., Pope, 124, *and note.*

Leo, a false Pope, 98.

Leo I., Emperor, 86.

Leo III., Emperor, 101.

Leo IV., Emperor, 103.

Leontius, Emperor, 98.

Leontius, father of Origen, 68.

Leopold, Count, story of, and Conrad the Salique, 123.

Lepers, certain, and Jews, accused of poisoning wells, are burnt, 186.
Lesnes, the Prior of, *see* Baldok, Walter de.
Letters, introduction of, 31.
Letters to several persons, by Capgrave xviii., 327.
Levi, 30.
Leviticus, Capgrave's Commentary on, xiv, 326.
Lewes, battle of, 159; the Prior of, endeavours to drive away the French invaders, 233; is taken prisoner, *ib.*
Liberius, Pope, 79; schism between Liberius and Felix, *ib.*
Limoges, the Black Prince at, 217; successes of the Black Prince at, 227.
Lincoln, recovered from the Danes by Edmund I., 118; besieged by Louis VIII. in the time of Henry III., 150; Edward II. visits, 180; the Duke of Lancaster marries Katharine Swinford at, 261.
——, John, an adherent of Richard II., is imprisoned at Dover, 249.
——, Henry Lacy, Earl of, *see* Lacy, Henry.
——, Henry de Burghurst, Bishop of, supports Queen Isabella against the King, 195; keeps Christmas with her at Wallingford, 197; dies, 210; story of his appearance after death, *ib.*
——, Oliver Sutton, Bishop of, dispute between the University of Oxford and, 168.
——, John de Bokingham, Bishop of, *see* Bokingham.
——, John Burghill, *see* Burghill.
——, Robert Grosteste, *see* Grosteste, Robert.
——, John Gynewell, *see* Gynewell, John.
——, Hugh Wells, *see* Wells, Hugh.
Lindisfarne, Finan, Bishop of, *see* Finan.
Linus, Bishop of Rome, 62.
——, the musician, 32.
Lionel, Prince, son of Edward III., is born at Antwerp, 207; accompanies his father against John II. of France, 216; is made Duke of Clarence, 222; marries Violante of Milan, dies, and is buried at Pavia, 225.
L'Isle, Warine de, 189.
Lisle, John, a Dominican friar at Ely, complains to the Pope [Innocent VI.] against the oppression of the Lady of Wake, 218.
Lithuanians, Henry, Earl of Derby, enters Prussia, and defeats, 254.
Litster, John, raises a rebellion near Norwich against Richard II., 237.
Llewellyn of Wales, Edward I. makes war against, 164; he is styled "Prince of Wales," 165; marries the daughter of Simon de Montfort, *ib.*; refuses to pay tribute and rebels, *ib.*; is driven by the King into Snowdon, 166; where he is defeated and slain, *ib.*; David, brother of, is executed at Shrewsbury, 166.
Loegria, one of the early divisions of England, 37.
Loegrius, son of Brute, 37.
Logan, Sir Robert, Admiral of the Scotch fleet, taken prisoner and brought to Lynn, 277.
Lokton, John, and others, affix their seal for the judgment against the legality of the Commission of Regency, 247.
Lollards, affix scrolls to the doors of S. Paul's, 260; statutes against them enacted, 277; their conclusions, 280; their proceedings, 303, 304, 307, 309.
Lombard, Peter, writes against the Abbot Joachim, 138; Capgrave on the sentences of, xvii., 327.
Lombards, certain, are imprisoned in the Tower by Edward I., for false dealing, 223.
London, besieged by Henry III., in the war with the Barons, 160; a severe earthquake felt at, 163; many Jews hung (for clipping coin) at, 164; contribute two hundred soldiers to Edward II. against the Scots, 184; besieged by the Barons on the King's refusing to give up the Despensers, 188; great inundation at, 203; Edward III. returns from Antwerp

to, and imprisons the Chancellor, Robert Stratford, Bishop of Chichester, and others, 207 ; the citizens of, accused of conspiring against Edward III., 228 ; great panic at, when Charles VI. threatens to invade England, 243; Richard II. disputes with the citizens of, 254; takes away their Mayor, and appoints a Warden of, *ib.*; the citizens of, are deprived of their charters, 257; Richard II. imprisoned in the Tower of, 271 ; resigns his crown in the Tower of, 272 ; Council at, 296, 303; S. Giles' Fields in, the Lollards assemble there, 307.

London, the Carmelites of, 295.

——, the Priory of S. Bartholomew, Smithfield, privileges granted to it by Pope Alexander V., 297.

London, Bishops of :—

- Robert de Braybroke, *see* Braybroke, Robert de.
- Richard Clifford, *see* Clifford, Richard.
- William Courtenay, *see* Courtenay, William.
- Richard de Gravesend, *see* Gravesend, Richard de.
- Maurice, *see* Maurice.
- Mellitus, *see* Mellitus.

Long, William, his successes at sea, 298; imprisoned in the Tower, 299.

Lopham, Dionysius, a notary, is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272.

Lorraine, Ralph, Duke of, flies at the battle of Crecy, 212.

Losinga, Herbert, Bishop of Norwich, removes the See from Thetford to Norwich, 131; his simony and penitence, *ib.*

Lothaire I., Emperor, 106, 107 ; disputes between him and his brethren, 107, 108 ; he reigns conjointly with Louis II., his son, 108 ; legend of his death, *ib.*

Lothaire II., Emperor, 117.

Lothaire IV., Emperor, 135.

Louis I., le Débonnaire, 106; his patronage of Rabanus Maurus, 107; he is visited by Pope Stephen IV., *ib.*

Louis II., reigns with his father, 108 ; translates the bodies of SS. Urban and Tiburtius to S. Germains, 109.

Louis III., Emperor, 113.

Louis VI., King of France, Henry I. wages war with, 133.

Louis VIII., claims the Crown of England, 149 ; his claims explained, *ib.* ; lays siege to Lincoln, and is repulsed by the King's troops, 150 ; makes peace with Henry III., and returns to France, *ib.*

Louis IX., King of France, taken prisoner, by the Sultan, 155 ; decides against the Barons in favour of Henry III., 159 ; proceeds on the Crusade with Prince Edward, 160 ; and dies there, *ib.*; his genealogy, 206.

Louis X., King of France, 180 ; his wives and children, 206.

Louis, Duke of Orleans, son of Charles V. King of France, is present at the renewal of the truce at Guines, 262 ; disputes between him and the Duke of Burgundy, 299.

Louvain, Robert de Vere dies at, 254.

Lovel, John, Lord, is forbidden to approach Richard II., 249.

Lowe, Bishop of S. Asaph, xiv, xx.

Lowe, John, 332.

Lownde, Alexander, defeats the insurgents near Thirsk, 295.

Lucerne, Pope Urban VI. is besieged in 241.

Lucery, *see* Lucerne.

Lucius Aurelius Verus, Emperor, 67.

Lucius, King of Britain, sends for missionaries to Pope Eleutherus, 67.

Lucius I., Pope, 72.

Lucius II., Pope, 137.

Lucius III., Pope, 142; sends letters to Henry I. by Eraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, exhorting him to go to the Holy Land, 141.

Lucy, S., virgin and martyr, 75.

Lucy, S., widow, 72.

Lucy, Anthony de, seizes Sir Andrew Harcla at Carlisle, and brings him to London to the King, 191.
Lud, son of Shem, 17.
Ludlow, Austin Friars build a convent at, 157.
Luitprand, King of the Lombards, rescues the body of S. Augustin from the Saracens, 101.
Luke, S., translation of, 79.
Luna, Peter de, supported by Ferdinand I., King of Aragon, 316; his wicked conduct, *ib.*
Luna, Peter de, *see* Benedict XIII.
Lundy Island, (between Cornwall and Wales,) seized by William Marsh, 154.
Lybian Sibyl, the, 45.
Lybians, descendants of Phut, 18.
Lycurgus, 42.
Lynn, John Capgrave born at, ix., 353; resides at the Austin Friary at, xi.; is present when the Princess Philippa sails from, xii, *and note*; dies at, xxi., 327, 328; Arrek, priest of S. Pancras, dies at, 336; Convent of, 1; 367–371; the ships of, take some Scotch shipping, 276, 277; Henry IV. remains nine days there, 292; the Princess Philippa embarks from, *ib.*; some children of, stolen by beggars, are carried to London, 316.
Lyons, Forcius, Bishop of, martyred, 67.

M.

Maachah, 40.
Macarius, S., 81.
Macedonia, 36; S. Matthew preaches in, 61; victories of Flavius Claudius in, 73.
Macrinus, 69.
Madai, son of Ham, 18.
Magdeburgh, Otho the Great builds a monastery at, 118.
Magna Charta, is confirmed, 176.
Magog, son of Japheth, 18; father of the Scythians, 23.
Mahalaleel, birth of, 10; the fourth from Adam, 12, 19; his death, 15.
Mahomet, 94.
Maidstone, Richard, Bishop of Hereford, resigns his see, 154.
Majolus, Abbot of Cluni, 115.
Majorca, Jayme II., King of, *see* Jayme.
——, the King of, *see* Pedro IV., King of Aragon.
Malcolm III. of Scotland, does homage to William I., 130.
Malmort, Gerald de, Archbishop of Bordeaux, *see* Bordeaux.
Maltravers, Sir John, has the keeping (alternately with Sir Thomas Berkeley) of Edward II., 198; murders the deposed King, 199.
Malverne, Sir John Oldcastle concealed near, 309.
Mama, mother of Alexander Severus, converted by the preaching of Origen, 70.
Mamert, S., Bp., 86.
Mammael, *see* Mehujael.
Mammeas [Alexander Severus], 69.
Mamre, 11.
Man, the Isle of, invaded by the French, 232; the lordship of, is sold to Sir William Scrope by William Earl of Salisbury, 257; Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, is exiled by Richard II to, 266; granted to the Earl of Northumberland, 274.
Manasseh, King of Judah, 45.
Manichæan heresy, the, 74; condemned at Constantinople, 82.
Manny, Sir Walter, successes of, during the siege of Tournay, 209.
Manual of Christian Doctrine, by Capgrave, xvi., 326.
Manuel II., Emperor of Constantinople, asks help from Henry IV. against the Turks, 277; visits England, *ib.*; returns home, *ib.*

Mar, Peter de la, (the Speaker), remonstrates with Edward III. on the oppressive taxation, 230; imprisoned at Nottingham, by the suggestion of Alice Perrers, but shortly after released, 231.

——, Thomas de la, Abbot of S. Albans, his dispute with Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, 235.

Marcellinus, Pope, 75; legend of his death and burial, *ib.*

Marcellus, Pope, 75.

March, Roger Mortimer is made Earl of, 199; yields to Edward II., and is committed to the Tower, 189; escapes to France, 193; continues there with Queen Isabella, 194; Edward II. offers one thousand pounds for the head of, 195; he is made Earl of Kent, 199; detection of his intrigues with the Queen, 200; he is executed, *ib.*; the charges against him, *ib.*

——, Roger Mortimer, Earl of, accompanies Edward III. against John II. of France, 216.

——, Roger Mortimer, Earl of, is slain by the Irish, 268.

——, Edmund Mortimer, Earl of, accompanies John de Montfort in the invasion of France, 230; his death in Ireland, 238.

——, Edmund Mortimer, Earl of, his sickness at Harfleur, 311.

Marcian, Emperor, 86; his death at Constantinople, *ib.*

Margaret de Clare marries Piers Gaveston, 176.

Margaret, sister of Philip IV. of France, marries Edward I., 172.

—— of France, daughter of Louis VII., marries Prince Henry of England, 140.

—— daughter of Raymond, Count of Provence, marries the King of France, 154.

Mark, S., translation of to Venice, 86.

Markham, John, Justice, is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272.

Mars, father of Romulus, 43.

Marseilles, Thomas Gurney, one of the murderers of Edward II., is taken prisoner at, 199.

Marsh, William, who had seized Lundy Island, supposed to have been the maniac who attempted to kill Henry III. at Woodstock, 154.

Marshal of England, *see* Moubray, Thomas.

Marshall, John, a citizen of London, is executed, 196.

Martin, S., 81.

Martin I., Pope, 95.

Martin II. Pope, 112; Formosus, (afterwards Pope,) who had been degraded by Pope John VIII., restored by, *ib.*

Martin III., Pope, 115.

Martin IV., Pope, 166.

Mary, sister of Archbishop Becket, is made Abbess of Barking, 142.

Mary, wife of King Henry IV., daughter of Humphry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, 273.

Mascall, Robert, Bishop of Hereford, a delegate to the Council of Constance, 308.

Mash, *see* Mer.

Mategrifon, a wooden fort, employed by Richard I. in Sicily, and at the siege of Acre, 145.

Matilda [Maud], wife of William I., 129; her coronation, *ib.*

Matthew, S., the Evangelist, 61.

Matthew, Castle of S., in Britanny, is taken by John de Montfort, 230.

Matthias, S., the Apostle, 61.

Maud, daughter of Malcolm III. of Scotland, marries Henry I., 133; her death, *ib.*

Maud, daughter of Henry I., marries the Emperor Henry V., 134; marries, secondly, Geoffrey Plantagenet, Earl of Anjou, *ib.*; the nobles swear fealty to, *ib.*; she invades England with Robert of Gloucester, 136; and follows Stephen till he acknowledges her son's right to the throne, 137.

Maud, daughter of Henry II., marries (Henry) the Duke of Saxony, 140.
Maudit, Sir Thomas, executed, 190.
Maur, disciple of St. Benet, 91.
Maurice, martyrdom of, 75.
Maurice, Bishop of London, crowns Henry I., 133.
Mauricius, Emperor, 93.
Mauritanians, descendants of Phut, 18.
Mauron, the French are defeated at, 215.
Maurus, the wind called, 221; verses on the great storm, *ib.*
Maxentius, Emperor, 76.
Maximinian and Dioclesian, Emperors, 74.
Maximinus, 70.
Mazaca (Mosaca), a river (and town) in Cappadocia, 80.
Meatless, Jewet, story of, 205.
Medes, descendants of Madai, 18.
Mediterranean, or Great Sea, 23.
Medway, the river, a bridge over, built by Sir Robert Knollys, 295.
Mehujael [Mammael], 5, 8.
Meingre, Jean le, I., 220.
Meingre, Jean le, surnamed Boucicaut, taken prisoner at Agincourt, 312.
Melchiades, Pope, 76.
Melchisedec, 27; his palace, 28, *and note.*
Mellitus, Bishop of London, 100.
Mellon, William de, Archbishop of York, keeps Christmas with Queen Isabella at Wallingford, 197.
Meleyn, the Viscount, 262.
Melun, William de, Archbishop of Sens, is taken prisoner at Poitiers, 217.
Ments, Archbishop of, Chancellor of Germany, on the election of the Emperor after the death of Otho III., 121.
Mepham, Simon de, Archbishop of Canterbury, holds a Council in London, 199.
Mer [Mash], son of Shem, 17.
Mercia, Kingdom of, 100; Kings of, *ib.*; the Danes expelled from by Edward the Elder, 115.
Mercury, 34.
Merewell, Henry de, Bishop of Winchester, crowns Edward II., 174.
Merlin, 165.
Meshech, son of Ham, 18.
Mesopotamia, Valerian's unsuccessful war in, 72.
Messina, the Griffons oppose Richard I. at, 145.
Methodius, reference to, 11, 15.
Methusael, 5, 8.
Methuselah, 19; birth of, 13; his time a disputed point, *ib.*; reference to S. Jerome's works, *ib. and note;* begets Lamech, 14; his death, 17.
Micah, 41; his relics discovered and translated, 83.
Michael, Emperor, 105; he sends the books of S. Denis to Louis I., 106.
Middleburgh (in Zealand), Robert de Vere, takes refuge at, 249; the staple is removed to Calais from, 251.
Milan, Peter of, canonized by Celestine IV., 155.
——, Violante of, marries Prince Lionel, 225.
——, built by Brennus, 360; Theodosius Magnus dies at, 83.
Mildvale, John Wraw, a priest, leads the rebels at, 238.
Milford Haven, French ships arrive there, 292.
Millington, William, the first Provost of King's College, Cambridge, xii.
Minerva, worship of, introduced by Cecrops, 21.
Minorites, the, instituted by S. Francis of Assisi, 144; their Rule defined by Pope Nicholas IV. 167; certain of their Order are hanged on a charge of treason, 279.
Misraim, son of Ham, 18.
Mitford castle, Louis Beaumont imprisoned in, 182.
Mohun, Lady, [Moyne,] is forbidden to see Richard II., 249.
Molenys, Lady, *see* Molines.
Molines, the Lady, is forbidden to see Richard II., 249.
Monothelite heresy, the, 96; condemned in the Sixth General Council at Constantinople, 97.

Montacute, Sir William, sent by Edward Baliol to the Parliament at York, 203; is made Earl of Salisbury, 204.

Montacute, William, Earl of Salisbury, sells the lordship of the Isle of Man to Sir William Scrope, 257.

Montacute, John, Earl of Salisbury, a Lollard, 245, 260; his impious act, 245; one of the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Warwick and Arundel, 264; conspires against Henry IV., 275; his death and character, 276.

Monte Casino, the relics of S. Benet translated from, to Fleury, 96; dispute concerning his relics between the monks of Fleury and, 102.

Montford, John de, Duke of Britanny, the widow of, married to Henry IV., King of England, 281.

Montfort, John de, Edward III. assists him against Charles de Blois, 209; he defeats Charles de Blois at the battle of Auray, 223; is firmly established as Duke of Britanny, *ib.*; invades France with success, but is recalled to England, 230; is assisted by the Earl of Buckingham, 235.

——, Peter de, and others, taken at Northampton, 159.

——, Simon de, Earl of Leicester, is deprived of the office of Seneschal of Bordeaux, 156; delivers up three Castles to the French, 157; at the beginning of the civil war, is besieged by King Henry III. in Northampton, 159; his son is taken prisoner, *ib.*; he defeats the King at the battle of Lewes, and takes him prisoner, *ib.*; is defeated by the King at Evesham, and slain, *ib.*; the daughter of, marries Llewellyn, 165.

——, Simon de, a younger son of the Earl of Leicester, is taken at Northampton, 159.

Monstreworth, Sir John, is in France with Sir Robert Knollys, 227.

More, John, Bishop of Norwich, xx.

Morettus, his battle with the Knights of Rhodes, 260.

Morley, Sir Robert, Keeper of the Tower, present at the condemnation of Sir John Oldcastle, 305.

Morley, William, of Dunstable, a chief follower of Sir John Oldcastle, 307.

Mortevallis, Roger de, Bishop of Salisbury, and the Barons, at St. Albans, demand the banishment of the Despensers, 187.

Mortimer, Edmund, defeated and taken prisoner by Owen Glendwr, 279.

Mortimer, Earl of March, his sons escape from Windsor, 288.

Mortimer, Edmund, finds the head of Llewellyn, 156.

Mortimer, Roger, *see* March.

Moses, 5; his birth, 30; notices of his life, 30, 31; his death, 31.

Mowbray, Sir John, claims the lands of Sir William Bruce, in Wales, 186; is taken prisoner at Boroughbridge, 189; is executed, 190.

Mowbray, Thomas, Earl Marshal of England, is made by Richard II. Earl of Nottingham, 232; his attempted reform of the affairs of the realm, 289; arrested, 290; executed, 291.

Muilla, Jocelyn de, 190.

Mumming at Christmas, 275.

Murrain among cattle, 185.

Music, invention of, 34.

Mutford, Richard, an adherent of Richard II., is imprisoned at Bristol, 249.

Myddleton, Gilbert de, takes Louis Beaumont prisoner at Darlington, 182; for which he is shortly after hung in London, 183.

Mylforth Have, *see* Milford Haven.

Mythology of Fulgentius, reference to, 21; quoted, 22, *and note.*

N.

Naaman, the Syrian, 41.

Nabugodonosor, name given to the elder Cyrus, 24.

Nahor, 19; birth of, 23; he begets Terah, 24.

Najara, the Black Prince defeats Henry (the Bastard) II., of Castile, at, 225.

Naples, Pope Leo IV. composes an orison for those of, fighting against the Saracens, 109; the Emperor Lothaire IV. quells a rebellion at, 135; expedition of the Emperor Henry V. against, 142.

Narcissus, Bishop of Jerusalem, 68.

Narses, 91, 92.

Nathan, the Prophet, 39.

Navarre, Charles II., King of, cedes Cherbourg to the English, 233.

——, Charles III., King of, *see* Charles III., King of France.

Nazarenes, 38.

Nebuchadnezzar carries Judah into captivity, 46.

Nectanebo, King of Egypt, defeated by Darius Ochus, 24.

Neot, S., recommends Alfred the Great to found the University of Oxford, 113.

Neptune, 32.

Nero, 62.

Nerva, 64.

Nestorius is condemned for heresy at Ephesus, 85.

Neville, Alexander de, Archbishop of York, incites Richard II. against the Earls of Arundel, Warwick, Derby, and Nottingham, 245; affixes his seal to the judgment against the legality of the Commission of Regency, 247; dies at Dunbar, in Scotland, 249.

Neville, Ralph, (first Earl of Westmoreland,) is made Earl of Westmoreland by Richard II., 267; joins Henry of Lancaster, 270; is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272; created Earl of Richmond, 274; drives the Earl of Northumberland northwards, 283; defeats the conspiracy against Henry IV., 289, 290.

Neville, George, Bishop of Exeter, Chancellor of the University of Oxford, 333.

Neville, William, a Lollard, 245.

New College, Oxford, Thomas Chaundler, Warden of, 332.

Newcastle-on-Tyne, Edward Baliol does homage to Edward III. at, 203; legend of a shipwright striking blood out of a beam at, 240.

Newgate, Robert Baldock dies in, 197.

Nicheforus, Emperor, 104.

Nicholas I., Pope, 110; curses Lothaire of France for adultery, 111.

Nicholas II., Pope, 126.

Nicholas III., Pope, 164, *and note.*

Nicholas IV., Pope, 167.

Nice, Council of, 77; Council at, against the Iconoclasts, 104.

Nicolas, 79.

Nieuport, in Flanders, is taken by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, 239.

Nile, the river, 34.

Nimrod builds the Tower of Babel, 20; his history, *ib.*

Nineveh, 24; flight of Sennacherib to, 45.

Ninus, 24; Zoroaster conquered by, 25, 26, *and note.*

Noah, flood of, 2, 15, 16, 17; birth of, 13, 15; he makes the ark, 15, 16, *and note*; his descendants, 17, 18, 19; his death, 20.

Noema, 9.

Nordore, the Rood of, Wiclifites preach against the pilgrimage to, 252.

Norfolk, the county of, Capgrave says that he is a native of, 353.

Normandy, Ethelred the Unready flies into, 122; William of, conquers England, 129; goes with Archbishop Stigand into, *ib.*; Henry I. visits his daughter, and dies in, 135; Richard I. invades, and is driven out of, by Philip II., 147; restored with Aquitaine to Henry III. by Louis VIII., 150; Prince Edward does homage to Charles IV. of France for, 194; also after his accession, 199.

Normans, the, and Danes ravage France in the reign of Charles le Gros, 111; peace is restored between the French and the, 112; catalogue of the Dukes of, *ib.*; wars of Arnulph, the Emperor, with, *ib.*; massacre of, at Guildford by the counsel of Godwin, Earl of Kent, 126; they invite Henry III. into Gascony, 152; keep possession of the sea (in 1291,) 168; but are defeated by the English, 169; English merchants complain of the ravages of, 170; they pillage Winchelsea, 219.

Northampton, Simon Montfort besieged by Henry III. in, 159; Parliament held by Richard II. at (the poll tax imposed), 236; insurrectionery writings against Henry V. discovered there, 317.

——, William de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, is made Earl of, [in the list of six creations of Earls at this time, Capgrave omits the Earl of Northampton, and says, "the sext is not now in mende,"] 204.

——, Henry, Earl of, *see* Percy, Henry.

Northburgh, Roger de, Bishop of Coventry, keeps Christmas with Queen Isabella at Wallingford, 197.

Northumbria, ravaged by Sweyn and Anlaf, 122.

——, Kingdom of, 101; Kings of, *ib.*

Norway, conquered by King Arthur, 87.

Norwich, Bishops of:—

——, William de Ayreminne, *see* Ayreminne, William de.

——, William Bateman, *see* Bateman, William.

——, Richard Courtenay, *see* Courtenay, Richard.

——, Henry le Despencer, *see* Despencer, Henry le.

——, Herbert Losinga, *see* Losinga, Herbert.

——, John Salmond, *see* Salmond, John.

——, Alexander Totington, *see* Totington, Alexander.

——, John Wakering, *see* Wakering, John.

Norwich, destroyed by the Danes in the time of Ethelred the Unready, 122; the church at, burnt by the citizens, 142; the Jews are convicted of committing outrages at, 154; Monastery burnt at, 162; the citizens of, accused of conspiracy against Edward III., 228; Pope Urban VI. deposes Sir Adam Eston, Cardinal of S. Cecilia, and monk of, 241; is burnt, 303.

Norwich, see of, removed from Thetford by Herbert Losinga, 131; John de Gray, Bishop of, elected Archbishop of Canterbury, 147; his election annulled, *ib.*

Nothus, 49.

Nottingham, recovered from the Danes by Edmund I., 118; Edward III. holds a Parliament at, 200; the intrigue of Mortimer with Queen Isabella is detected at, *ib.*; Edward III. holds a parliament at, in which leave is granted to Flemish clothworkers to settle in England, 205; Richard II. claims to choose the knights and burgesses in letters from, 246.

——, Thomas Mowbray is made by Richard II. Earl of, 232. *See* Mowbray.

—— Castle, founded by the Conqueror, 129; Sir Simon Burley and other adherents of Richard II. imprisoned in, 249; Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, are indicted at, 264; Peter de la Mar imprisoned in, 231.

Numbers, Capgrave's Commentary on, xiv., 326.

Numerian, 74.

Nun, the father of Joshua, 32.

O.

Ochus, Darius, 24.

Octa, King of Kent, 99.

Octavianus, *see* Augustus.

Odiham, David II. of Scotland, imprisoned in the Castle of, 218.

Odo, S., Abbot of Cluni, death of, 115.

Odo, Archbishop of Canterbury, crowns Edwin, 119.

Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, brother of William the Conqueror, has charge of the Kingdom in William's absence, 129.

Offa, King of East Anglia, 100.

Oil, the holy, given to Thomas Becket, 273.

Oldcastle, Sir John, *see* Cobham, Lord.

Oleron, taken by the Earl of Arundel, 250.

Olimpius, an Arian Bp., death of, 88.

Olone, I. d', taken by the Earl of Arundel, 250.

Olympiads, time reckoned by, 36.

Olympic Games, 36.

Olympus, Mount, 36.

Omer, S., John II. of France collects an army at, against Edward III., 216.

Oriel College, Oxford, MS. at, xvi.

Origen, fame and writings of, 68; his kindness to his mother and brothers, *ib.*; his great celebrity, 69; his works, 70; quotation from S. Jerome respecting him, *ib.*

Orkney, the Earl of, captured, 293.

Orleans, Duke of, *see* Louis, Duke of Orleans.

——, Charles, Duke of, *see* Charles, Duke of.

——, (Genabum), rebuilt by Aurelian, 73.

——, the University of, Henry IV. writes to, respecting unity in the Church, 291.

Orleton, Adam de, Bishop of Hereford, *see* Adam de Orleton.

Orosius, his works, 82, *and note.*

Orpheus, story of, 34.

Orsini, Paul, 294.

Osbern Bokenham, quotation from his Life of S. Katherine, xix.

Oseney Abbey, Oxford, a Council held by Archbishop Langton at, 151; John, Abbot of, 333.

Ostia, Eugenius, Bishop of, 111; Stephen Aubert, Cardinal Bishop of, is made Pope (Innocent VI.), 214.

Othniel, Judge of Israel, 32.

Otho I., Emperor, 117; he is invited by the Cardinals to punish John XII., 116; he deposes Benedict V., and ordains that no Pope should be elected without the consent of the Emperor, 117; he marries the daughter of Athelstan, *ib.*; he is made Emperor, and reigns in Germany, 118.

Otho II., the Bloody, Emperor, 119; his escape from Calabria, 119, 120.

Otho III., Emperor, 120; his death, 121.

Otho IV., Emperor, 143; his oppression of Frederic of Sicily, who overcomes him and is chosen Emperor, *ib.*

Otho, the legate, baptizes Edward I., 154; is robbed and imprisoned on his leaving England, 155.

Ottobon, the legate, confirms the constitutions of Otho, 160; chosen Pope as Adrian IV., 164.

Ovid, 60.

Oxford, John Capgrave at, x, *and note;* John Capgrave, Doctor of Divinity of, x; extract from the registers of the University of, xiii, *note* (²), xiv; Alfred the Great founds the University of, 113; the Black Friars hold their first chapter at, 150; the Dominican Friars settle in the parish of S. Edward [S. Ebbe], *ib.*; a deacon tried by Archbishop Langton, for Jewish errors, 151; Richard Maidstone, Bishop of Hereford, resigns his see, and joins the Minorites at, 154; Bishop Grosteste bequeaths all his books to the Minorites at, 153, *note,* 156; the Provisions of, 158; dispute between the Bishop of Lincoln and the University of, 168; a Pretender claims to be the son of Edward I. at, 185; he is taken and sent to Northampton by the Mayor of, 187; Disturbances at, 216; the citizens of, are laid under an interdict, *ib*; introduction of novel doctrines at, (Wiclif), 218; John Wiclif teaches at, 231; Robert de Vere is defeated by the Duke of Gloucester's men near, 248; New College, founded by William of Wykeham, 288; the University of, refuses to admit Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, to visit, 299; Wadham College in, 329; the Austin Friary at, founded by Sir John Handlo, *ib.*; Thomas Chaundler, Vice-Chancellor of, 332; Proctors of, *ib.*; Mayor of the City of, *ib.*

——, Earl of, *see* Vere, Robert de.

P.

Pafnucius, 79.

Pallas, son of Evander, legend of the discovery of the body of, 125.

Pamphilus, Biographical Works of, 321, *and note.*

Pandion, King of Athens, 32.

Pandulph releases England from the seven years' interdict, 148.

Panormitanes, or Sicilians, 165.

Pantheon, consecration of the, 94.

Paris, the University of, Henry IV. writes to, to promote unity in the Church, 296.

Paris, visited by Edward I. on his return from the Holy Land, 163; fifty-four of the Knights Templars are burned to death by Philip IV. at, 177; besieged by Edward III., 220.

Paschal I., Pope, 107.

Paschal II., Pope, 128.

Patmos, S. John exiled to, 60.

Patrick, S., mission of into Ireland, 85.

Patteshul, Peter, a Lollard, 244.

Paul I., Pope, 103.

Paul, S., the Epistles of, Capgrave's Commentaries on, xvi., 326.

Paul's, S., London, the Lollards affix bills to the doors of, 260.

Paul, S., the Apostle, 60; martyrdom of, 62; translation of the relics of, 72.

Paul, Patriarch of Constantinople, condemned for heresy by Pope Martin I., 95.

Paul and John, (SS.), martyrs, 80.

Paula, S., 82.

Paulinus, Archbishop of York, baptizes Eadwin of Northumbria, 101.

Pavia, built by Brennus, 364; Boethius exiled to, 88; hermits of S. Austin allowed to settle at, 181; Prince Lionel buried at, 225.

——, Almeric of, *see* Almeric of Pavia.

Pay du Caux, Henry V. lands there, 310.

Pay, Henry, burns a portion of the French fleet, 292.

Peckham, John, Archbishop of Canterbury, accompanies Edward I. into the Marches of Wales, 166.

Pedro III., of Aragon, *see* Aragon.

Pedro IV., of Aragon, is sponsor to Richard II., 224.

Pedro the Cruel, flies into Gascony to ask the aid of the Black Prince against Bertrand de Guesclin and others, 225; is poisoned, *ib.*; Constance, daughter of, marries John of Gaunt, 223; Isabel, daughter of, marries Edmund, Earl of Cambridge, *ib.*

Pelagian Heresy, 83.

Pelagius I., Pope, 91.

Pelagius II., Pope, 92.

Peleg, 19, 20; begets Reu, 21.

Pembroke, Aymer, Earl of, *see* Aymer de Valence.

——, John Hastings, Earl of, *see* Hastings, John.

Penance, Sir John Oldcastle's views respecting, 306.

Penda, King of Mercia, baptized by Finan, Bp., 101.

Pennarch, in Brittany, pillaged by the English, 284.

Penshurst, the Manor of, xiii.

Pepin, King of the Franks, anointed by Pope Stephen I., 103.

Percy, Henry, is made by Richard II. Earl of Northumberland, 232; is present at the treaty made by Richard II. and Charles VI. at Guines, 262; rejoins Henry of Lancaster, 270; has a grant of the Isle of Man, 274.

Percy, Thomas, is (with Hugh Calveley) made Admiral of the sea, 233; accompanies the Earl of Buckingham into Brittany, 235; is made Earl of Worcester, 267; is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 272; is restored to his estates, 285; reconciled to Henry IV., 286; his conspiracy against Henry IV., 289; retreats into Scotland, 291; returns from Scotland, and is killed near Thirsk, 295.

Percy, Henry (the younger), Hotspur, (Earl of Northumberland,) 242; relieves Calais, 243; joins Henry of Lancaster, 270; rebels against Henry IV., 281; defeated at Shrewsbury, 282, 283; repulsed by the Earl of Westmorland, 283; engaged in an expedition into France, 314.

Percy, Thomas, Earl of Worcester, rebels against Henry IV., 281; defeated at Shrewsbury, 282, 283; beheaded, 283.

Percy, Henry de, accompanies Aymer de Valence against Bruce, 174.

Periander, 48.

Perigneux (in Guienne), 217.

Pernel, S., 103.

Perrers, Alice, her baneful influence with Edward III., 231; she obtains the imprisonment of Peter de la Mar, *ib.*

Persia, Elamites dwelt in, 17; Kings of, conquer Egypt, 24; S. Matthew martyred in, 61; victories of Gordian in, 70; of Mauricius, 93.

Persian Sibyl, the, 45.

Pertinax, 68.

Pestilence, 213.

Peterborough, Abbey at, founded by Edgar, 120.

Peter Comestor of Troyes, 142.

Peter de la Mar imprisoned by the suggestion of Alice Perrers at, 231.

Peter des Roches, Bishop of Winchester, brings the Friars Preachers into England, 150.

Peter, King of Cyprus, 335.

Peter Leon, [Anacletus], Antipope in the time of Innocent II., 135.

Peter's, S., at Rome, Pope Hyginus buried in, 66; kept by Pope Liberius against the Antipope, Felix, 79; Leo the Great buried in, 86; Pope John I., 89; John III., 93; Severinus, 95; John VII., 98; Paul I., 103; Formosus, 113; Gregory VI., after a miracle, 124.

Peter, S., the Apostle, 60, 61; martyrdom of, 62; translation of the relics of, 72.

Pharaohs, Kings of Egypt, 23, 24.

Phasis, the river, 23.

Philip, brother of Alexander the Great, 53.

Philip I., Emperor, 71.

Philip II., Emperor, 101.

Philip I., of France, accompanies King Richard I. to the Holy Land, 145.

Philip III., of France, all the soldiers of, in Sicily, put to death, 166; he is slain in a battle with Pedro III. of Aragon, 167; his genealogy, 206.

Philip IV., of France, Edward I. complains to, of the Normans, who had spoiled some English merchants, 170; quarrels with Edward I., and summons him to appear at Paris, *ib.*; refuses to make peace, 171; Margaret, sister of, marries Edward I., 172; opposes Pope Boniface as a heretic and schismatic, *ib.*; the French Lords desire the young son to Edward II. to be called after him, 178; he dies, 180; his genealogy, 206.

Philip V., King of France, 206; death of, 190.

Philip VI., King of France, offends Edward III., 205; lays siege to Bordeaux, 207; informed by "a sage fool" of the defeat of his fleet at Sluys, 208; after the siege of Tournay obtains a truce, 209; imitates King Edward III. in establishing a "Round Table" for the Knights, 211; is defeated by Edward III. at Crecy, 212; narrowly escapes being taken prisoner, *ib.*; obtains a truce, 213; futile attempt of Edward III. to establish peace with, 215; death of, 216.

Philip, son of Philip IV., his children, 206.

Philip, S., the Apostle, 61.

Philip, Prince, of France, and his father, John II., are taken by the Black Prince at Poitiers, and carried to London, 217.

Philippa, daughter of King Henry IV., 273; marries Eric IX., King of Denmark, 273, 292.

Philippa, wife of Robert de Vere, is divorced by him, 245.

Phocas, Emperor, 93.

Phœnicia, 18.

Phoroneus, second King of Argos, 29.

Phrygia, S. Philip martyred in, 61.

Phrygian Sibyl, the, 45.

Phut, son of Ham, 18.

Picardy, Edward III., ravages, 211; King John II. offers to restore to Edward III., 219.

Piers Gaveston, *see* Gaveston.

Pilate, Pontius, 60.

Pisa, the Council of, 296.

—— the University of, consulted by Henry IV. respecting ecclesiastical unity, 296.

Pisgah, Moses dies on, 31.

Pits, Biographical Works of, 321, *and note.*

Pittacus, 48.

Pius I., Pope, 66.

Plato, 50; his writings, *ib.*

Plautus, 55.

Plesshy, in Essex, Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, is arrested at, by the command of Richard II., 264; the Earl of Huntingdon beheaded there, 276.

Ploermel, 215.

Plutarch, 64.

Plymouth, burnt by the French, 284.

Pole, Elizabeth de la, descended from the Handlos of Borstall, 331.

Pole, Michael de la, is made Earl of Suffolk, 241; an annual income of one thousand marks is granted to, *ib.*; is accused of treason, 243; tries to make Richard II. dissatisfied with the Earls of Arundel and Nottingham, 244; incites the King against the Earls of Arundel, Warwick, Derby, and Nottingham, 245; accompanies Richard II. and Robert de Vere into Wales, 246; affixes his seal to the judgment against the legality of the Commission of Regency, 247; is openly rebuked by Robert de Braybroke, Bishop of London, *ib.*; flies to France, 249; dies in Paris, 252.

Pole, Michael de la, his death at Harfleur, 311.

Pole, Michael de la, Earl of Suffolk, killed at Agincourt, 312.

Polycarp, comes to Rome, 66; is martyred, 67.

Pompeius, reference to the Chronicle of, 360.

Pontefract, a Knight living at, who was bearing letters from Edward II. to the King of Scotland, against the life of Thomas Earl of Lancaster, 183; the prisoners taken at the battle of Boroughbridge are brought before the King at, 189; blood runs out of the tomb of Thomas, Earl of Lancaster at, 219; John, Duke of Lancaster, quarrels with Richard II., and victuals the castle of, 241; Henry IV. is reconciled to the Earl of Northumberland and Sir William Clifford at, 286.

Pontia (*Ponza*), Pope Silverius exiled and killed in the island called, 91.

Pontianus, Pope, 71; baptizes Philip the Emperor, *ib.*

Portsmouth, the men of Dartmouth and, destroy the fleet sent by Charles VI., 230.

Portugal, Beatrice of, *see* Beatrice.

——, John, King of, *see* John, King of Portugal.

——, expedition of Edward of Langley, Earl of Cambridge, into, 236.

Potentiana, S., martyred, 67.

Poynings, Lady, is forbidden to see Richard II., 249.

Praxedes, S., martyred, 67.

Preachers, General Chapter of the Friars, in London, in the time of Henry III., 159.

Prendergast (Sir John), his successes at sea, 298; takes refuge at Westminster, *ib.*

Prestbury, Thomas de, Abbot of Shrewsbury, negociates before the battle of Shrewsbury, 282.

Priscian, the Grammarian, 90, *and note.*

Priscillian's Cemetery, Pope Marcellus buried in, 76.

Priscillianist heresy, 83.

Probus, 73.

Prometheus, 21.

Prophets, the Twelve Minor, Capgrave's Commentaries on, xv., 326.

Prosper, 87, *and note.*

Provence, Eleanor of, Queen of Henry III., 154.
—— Raymond, Count of, 154.
—— the city of, 71.
Provincial of the Hermits of England, John Capgrave chosen to be, xi.
Psalter, Capgrave's Commentary on the, xv., 326.
Ptolemæus Alexander, 57.
Ptolemæus Auletes, 57.
Ptolemæus Epiphanes, 55.
Ptolemæus Euergetes, 54.
Ptolemæus Euergetes II., 56.
Ptolemæus Lathyrus, 56; his exile, 57.
Ptolemæus Philadelphus, 53, 54.
Ptolemæus Philometer, 55.
Ptolemæus Philopator, 54.
Ptolemæus Physcon, 57.
Ptolemæus Soter, 53.
Ptolemais, old name of Acre, 162.
Ptolemies, the, 24.
Pudsey, Hugh, Bishop of Durham, *see* Durham.
Purveyance, a check is put on, by Edward III., 222.

Q.

Quimper, in Britanny, besieged by De Montfort, 230.
Quintin, S., martyred, 75.

R.

Rabanus Maurus, 107.
Radyngis, *see* Reading.
Rains, heavy, 181, 213.
Ramathaim-zophim, Samuel born at, 38.
Ramsey, the Abbot of, falsely accused of treason, 292.
Ranulf, Earl of Chester, assists Robert of Gloucester and Maude against Stephen, 136.
Ravenna, Council at, 88; death of Pope John I. at, 89.
Ravenspur, Henry of Lancaster lands at, 270.
Raymond compiles the book of Decretals for Pope Gregory IX., 151.
Raymond, Count of Provence, father of Queen Eleanor, 154.
Re, I. de, is taken by Richard, Earl of Arundel, 250.
Reading Abbey founded by Henry I., 134.
Reading, conspirators against Henry IV. proceed thither, 275; insurrectionary writings against Henry V. found there, 317.
Reading, Simon, is executed at Hereford, 197.
Reati, the Cardinal of, deposed by Pope Urban VI., 241.
Rede, Christina, mother of Edmund Rede, 331.
Rede, Edmund, heir of Sir John Handlo, of Borstall, 329, *et seq.*
Redwalk, King of East Anglia, 100.
Regency, Commission of, 246.
Rehoboam, division of the twelve Tribes under, 20; he succeeds his father, 40.
Rennes, in Britanny, 215.
Remigius, S., 89.
Remus, 43.
Reu, 19; birth of 21; he begets Serug, 22.
Reynolds, Walter, (MS. *William,*) Archbishop of Canterbury, sends treasure to Queen Isabella, 195; keeps Christmas with the Queen at Wallingford, 197; crowns [MS. *Walter,*] Edward III. 198.
Rezin, King of Syria, 44.
Rhea, mother of Romulus, 43.
Rheims, Edward III. lays siege to, 219.
Rhine, Charlemagne builds a bridge at Cologne over, 105.
Rhodes, the Knights Hospitallers at, 223; troubles at, 260.
Rich, Edmund, Archbishop of Canterbury, *see* Abyngton, Edmund.
Richard Clifford, Bishop of London, *see* Clifford, Richard.
Richard Fitz-Alan, Earl of Arundel, is sent to France to negotiate for peace, 215;

gains a great naval victory over the French, 243; is opposed by Michael de la Pole, de Vere (Duke of Ireland), and others, 244; opposes Robert de Vere, 245; is made Admiral of the sea, and takes many French islands, 250; is accused by John, Duke of Lancaster, of treason, 258; is arrested by order of Richard II., and imprisoned in the Isle of Wight, 264; is executed, 265; his head is taken away by an Augustine Friar (Fekenham), and he is buried in their convent, *ib.*; remorse of the King for the death of, 266; his body is exhumed to satisfy the King's superstitious dread, *ib.*

Richard Plantagenet, Earl of Cambridge, conspires against Henry V., 309.

Richard Plantagenet, Earl of Cornwall, and King of the Romans, brother of Henry III., 149; marries the widow of the Earl of Gloucester, 152; is condemned to exile, at Oxford, 158; is taken prisoner at the Battle of Lewes, 159; dies, 161.

Richard, Earl of Gloucester, on his father's death, confirms his permission to the Hermits of S. Austin, to build in England, 152.

Richard I., the Fearless, Duke of Normandy, 112.

Richard II., the Good, Duke of Normandy, 112.

Richard I., King of England, (called Cœur de Lion,) born, 140; is crowned, 144; great massacre of Jews in London at his coronation, *ib.*; he raises money for the Crusades, *ib.*; sells Berwick and Roxburgh to the King of Scotland, 145; proceeds with Philip I. of France into the Holy Land, *ib.*; is opposed by the Griffons at Messina, but conquers them, *ib.*; and proceeds to Cyprus, *ib.*; dethrones King Isaac, *ib.*; and imprisons him, 146; takes Acre, *ib.*; offends the Duke of Austria, and is afterwards betrayed by him to the Emperor Henry VI., 146, *and note*; is liberated, 147; proceeds to Normandy against King Philip, and defeats him, *ib.*; is slain at the Castle of Chalus Chabrol, *ib.*; appoints his nephew, Prince Arthur, to be his successor, *ib.*

Richard II., King of England, (son of the Black Prince,) born at Bordeaux, 224; comes to England with his father, 227; is made Earl of Chester and Duke of Cornwall, 231; succeeds to the throne, 232; is crowned, *ib.*; reconciles John of Gaunt and the citizens of London, *ib.*; creates four earls, *ib.*; Charles the Bad, King of Navarre, gives up Cherbourg to, 233; is informed by Pope Urban VI. of the excommunication of Charles V. of France, 234; obtains the grant of a capitation tax from the Parliament, *ib.*; ejects Edmund Bromfield, the Pope's nominee, from Bury S. Edmunds, *ib.*; obtains from the Parliament (at Northampton) the grant of a poll-tax, 236; rebellion of Wat Tyler against, 237; marries Anne of Bohemia, 238; at Newcastle (legend of the shipwright striking blood out of a tree), 240; contention between the Duke of Lancaster and, 241; is reconciled to the Duke of Lancaster, *ib*; confers higher titles on the Earl of Oxford and other Peers, *ib.*; is visited by the King of Armenia, whom he largely assists, 242; sends Henry Percy (Hotspur) against Charles VI. of France, *ib.*; is offended at the degradation of the Earl of Suffolk (Michael de la Pole), and restores to him the Chancellorship, 243; is persuaded by De la Pole and De Vere that the victory of Richard, Earl of Arundel, over the French at Sluys was an unjust aggression, 244; supports De Vere in his misconduct to his wife, 245; takes him into Wales, *ib.*; and to Nottingham Castle, 246; claims to choose the knights of the shires and the burgesses, but is opposed by the Commons, *ib.*; summons certain Judges to consider the Commission of Regency, *ib.*; is confirmed in his authority by them 247; is opposed by the Duke of Gloucester, *ib*; orders from his presence

Robert de Braybroke, Bishop of London, who had reproved De la Pole before him, 248 ; the Duke of Gloucester takes up arms against, *ib*; is supported by De Vere, who is defeated in Oxfordshire, *ib.*; is besieged in London by the Duke of Gloucester, *ib.*; confers with him in the Tower, *ib.*; summons a Parliament, in which some of the Judges, and others, are condemned to imprisonment, 249 ; renews his oath, and receives the oath of allegiance from his Lords, 250 ; holds a Parliament at Cambridge, in which certain Statutes are made as to the bearing of arms, beggars, sports, &c., *ib.*; claims the liberties of the throne, 251 ; makes William of Wykeham his Chancellor, *ib.*; the Duke of Gloucester, being falsely accused, is reconciled to, *ib.* ; concludes a three years' truce with Charles VI. of France, *ib.*; the Earl of Pembroke is killed while jousting before, 253 ; disputes between the citizens of of London and, 254; makes arrangements for renewing the truce with France, 255 ; recalls English beneficed clergy from the Court of Rome, *ib.*; receives a message from Boniface IX. in reference to the Antipope [Clement VII.,] the "*Quare impedit*," "*Præmunire facias*," &c. *ib.* ; temporarily deprives the citizens of London of their charters, 257 ; makes Sir Aubrey de Vere Earl of Oxford, *ib.*; loses Cherbourg, *ib.*; concludes a four years' truce with France, 258 ; requires Irish settlers in England to return to their own land, *ib.*; the poverty of his Exchequer in Ireland, 259 ; visits Ireland, and holds his Parliament at Dublin, *ib.*, represses the Lollards, 260 ; buries the body of De Vere at Cologne, 261 ; recalls the Duke of Lancaster from Aquitaine, *ib.*; is required by Boniface IX. to punish the the Lollards, *ib.*; holds a conference with Charles VI. of France at Calais, 262 ; renews the truce, *ib.*; espouses the French King's daughter, Isabella [Eleanor, MS.], 263 ; recalls the exiled Judges from Ireland, *ib.* ; rumour of his having been chosen Emperor, and consequent grievous taxation, 264; arrests the Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Warwick and Arundel, *ib.*; assigns to be their accusers Edward, Earl of Rutland, and others, *ib.*; anticipates danger, *ib.*; holds a Parliament at London in which are cancelled all the pardons granted in the matter of the Commission of Regency, 265 ; obtains the exile of Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; endeavours to obtain the election of Roger Walden to the primacy, *ib.*; beheads the Earl of Arundel, *ib.* ; his remorse after this deed, 266 ; exiles the Earl of Warwick, *ib.*; commands the Earl of Gloucester to be secretly murdered at Calais, *ib.*; prorogues Parliament till after Christmas, *ib.*; in a Parliament at Shrewsbury obtains certain privileges, *ib.*; erects the county of Chester into a principality, and grants higher titles to several nobles, 267 ; obtains the Pope's sanction for all these proceedings, *ib.*; exiles the Duke of Norfolk, *ib.*; translates John de Bokingham, Bishop of Lincoln to Chester, and gives Lincoln to Sir Henry Beaufort, *ib.*; receives the Pope's ambassadors honourably, but is obliged to dismiss them with their purpose uneffected, 268 ; goes into Ireland to avenge the death of Roger Mortimer, *ib.* ; condemns Henry, Duke of Lancaster, to perpetual exile, *ib.* ; extorts large sums of money from the people, 269 ; visits Ireland, *ib.* ; hearing of the landing of the Duke of Lancaster, returns in haste to England, 271; is compelled to resign the crown, *ib.*; gives himself up to the Duke of Lancaster, *ib.*; formally resigns his crown in Westminster Hall, 272 ; the Earls of Kent, Salisbury, and Huntingdon conspire for his restoration to the crown, 275; dies in Pomfret Castle, 276; conflicting accounts of his death, *ib.* ; his funeral obsequies, *ib.* ; is falsely reported to be alive, 278, 282, 285 ;

Henry IV. vindicates himself respecting the death of, 302.

Richard, Prince, son of Henry I., is drowned, 133.

Richard, Sheriff of Chester, drowned with the sons of Henry I., 133.

Richard, Master of S. John's without the Eastern Gate, at Oxford, 332.

Richmond, Arthur, a claimant of the Earldom of Richmond, taken prisoner at the Battle of Agincourt, 312.

Richmond, John de Dreux, Earl of, taken by the Scots at York, 186; money for his ransom refused by Parliament, 192; sent to treat for peace, into France, 193; is instructed to contrive the death of Queen Isabella and Prince Edward, 194.

——, John of Gaunt, Earl of, 219. *See* Gaunt, John of.

——, Earl of, Ralph Neville, Earl of Westmorland created, 274.

Ripon, John, affixes his seal to the judgment against the legality of the Commission of Regency, 247.

Robert Curthose made Duke of Normandy, 130; challenges the crown on his father's death, *ib.*; meets William Rufus at Hampton, 131; discards the crown of Jerusalem, and returns from the Crusades, 133.

Robert, Earl of Gloucester, assists his sister, the Empress Maud, in her struggle with Stephen, 136.

Robert, first Duke of Normandy, 112.

Robert le Diable, Duke of Normandy, 112.

Robert II., of France, his great piety, 122.

Robert, Archbishop of Dublin, affixes his seal to the judgment against the legality of the Commission of Regency, 247.

Robert, Prior of S. Frideswide, Oxford, 332.

Rochelle, I. de, taken by the Earl of Arundel, 250.

——, siege of, 228; vain attempt of the Earl of Pembroke to relieve, *ib.*

Rochester, a bridge near, built by Sir Robert Knollys, 295; the citation of Sir John Oldcastle affixed there, 304.

——, Bishop of:—Haymo de Hythe, *see* Hythe, Haymo de.

Rokeby, Sir Thomas, defeats the insurgents near Thirsk, 295.

Romans, the, help Ptolemy Epiphanes against Antiochus the Great, 55; they are successful in Greece, 56.

——, Richard, King of the, *see* Richard Plantagenet, Earl of Cornwall.

Romanus, Pope, 112.

Rome, Alba Longa, part of, 37; Mount Aventine in, *ib.*; St. Paul's Gate in, *ib.*; Romulus founder of, *ib.*; Augustus born at, 58; St. Matthew writes his Gospel in, 61; great inundation at, 93; visited by Edward I. on his return from the Holy Land, 163; the Scotch prelates fly to, complaining of Edward Baliol, 202; Richard II. recalls English beneficed clergy from the Court of, 255; Boniface IX. discovers the treasure of the Empress Helena at, 268; with it he restores the Capitol and the Castle Angelo in, *ib.*

"Rome, Guide to the Antiquities of," Fragment of John Capgrave's, xii, xx., 355.

Romulus, 43.

Roos, William de, of Hamlake, is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272.

Rotenstein, Conrad Zolner de, Grand-master of the Knights of the Teutonic Order, assists Henry, Earl of Derby, against Skirgelon, King of Lithuania, 254.

Rottington, in Sussex, the French land near, but are repulsed by the Abbot of Lewes, 233.

Rouen, Peter Roger, Archbishop of Rouen, is elected Pope [Clement VI.], 210.

Rowland and Oliver, Captains of Charlemagne in Spain, 105.

Roxburgh, Castle of, sold to the King of Scotland by Richard I., 145 ; Edward III. spends Christmas at, 203 ; and makes a truce with the Scots, *ib.* ; Edward Baliol resigns Scotland to Edward III. at, 217.

Rushbroke, Thomas, Bishop of Chichester, [Chester, MS.,] is forbidden to have intercourse with Richard II., 249 ; is exiled into Ireland, 250.

Russell, Sir John, attends a Council summoned by Edmund, Duke of York, on the landing of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 270 ; flies to Bristol, *ib.*

Ruth, Capgrave's Commentary on, xiv., 326.

Rutland, Earl of, *see* Arundel.

S.

S. Albans, *see* Albans, S.

S. Cloud, the French defeated at, 300.

S. Dunstan, the festival of, declared to be a double, 303.

S. George, the festival of, declared to be a double, 303.

S. John's, Clerkenwell, set on fire by the rebels (in 1381), 237.

S. Matthew, the Abbey of, near Bilgt in Brittany, ravaged by the English, 284.

S. Omers destroyed, 298.

S. Osith of Chich, *see* Chich.

Sabellian heresy, 69.

Sabina, martyrdom of, 65.

Sabinianus, Pope, 94.

Saint Edmunds Bury, threatened by Sweyn, 122.

Salah, 18, 19.

Salisbury, Bishop of:—Robert Alum, *see* Alum, Robert.

Salisbury, destroyed by the Danes, in the time of Ethelred the Unready, 122 ; Edmund of Abyngton, Treasurer of, is chosen Archbishop of Canterbury, 153; Earldom of, devolves on Thomas of Lancaster on the death of Henry Lacy 177; Edward III. holds a Parliament at, 199; the doctrines of Wiclif spread in the diocese of, 252.

Salisbury, John Montacute, Earl of, *see* Montacute, John.

—— Earl of, Sir William Montacute is made, 204; Joan of Kent divorced from, marries Edward the Black Prince, 221; is sent to Bruges to ratify a treaty of peace between England and France, 229.

——, Sir John, an adherent of Richard II., is imprisoned at Dover, 249.

Salle, Sir Robert, is killed in Wat Tyler's Rebellion, 237.

Salmond, John, Bishop of Norwich, is sent into France by Edward II. to treat with Charles IV., 193.

Salome, 60.

Samaria, 20 ; Elisha dies at, 41.

Samia, one of the ten Sibyls, 45.

Samson, Judge of Israel, 36.

Samuel, 37 ; death of, 38.

Sancerre, Louis de, Marshall of France, is present at the making of the treaty at Guines, 262.

Sanctilogium, the, *see* Angliæ Nova Legenda.

Sapor I., defeats Valerian, 72.

Sapor II., Jovian, a knight with, 80.

Saracens, the, ravage Tuscany, but are defeated by the Lombards and the French 108 ; take Edessa, 137 ; great pestilence among, 213.

Savoy, the, John II. of France, dies in, 223; set on fire by the rebels (in 1381), 237.

Saxons, the, invade Britain, 99.

Saxony, the Duke of, (bearer of the sword,) one of the seven Electors of the Emperor after the death of Otho III., 121.

Say, William, and Ralph Drew, entrusted with the delivery of the gift of books sent to the University of Oxford by Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, xv.

Scarcity in England, 157, 158, 181, 215.

Scholastic Lectures, by Capgrave, xviii., 327.

Scin (or Sheen), *see* Sheen.

Scipio Africanus, 55; he conquers Carthage, *ib.*; his death in exile, 56.

Scone, Robert Bruce crowned at, 173; Edward Baliol is crowned at, 202.

Scotland, James I., King of, *see* James I.

—— given by Brute to Albanatus, 37; invaded by Edward I., 171; Robert Bruce, King of, 174; placed under an interdict by John XXII., 182; invaded unsuccessfully by Edward II., 190; Edward II. makes a truce of thirteen years with, 191; Edward III. invades, 203; resigned by Edward Baliol to Edward III. at Roxburgh, 217; the Duke of Lancaster unsuccessfully invades, 240.

Scots, under Constantine III., defeated at Bamborough by Athelstan, 117; under John Baliol, defeated by Edward I. at Dunbar, 171; ravage the north (in 1314), 181; the northern counties rise to defend themselves against the, (A. D. 1315), 182; in the year after, ravage the northern counties, as far as to York and Lancaster, 184; defeat the Yorkshiremen at the river Swale, 185; the English conclude a truce with the, *ib.*; penetrate to York, and take prisoner John Earl of Richmond, 186; John XXII. refuses to release from the interdict, 191; Edward III. makes a truce with, at Roxburgh, 203; invade England, and are defeated (at Nevill's Cross), 212; take Berwick, 217; are defeated, *ib.*; invade England, 280.

Scotus, John, 109.

Scrope, Henry, conspires against Henry V., 309.

Scrope, Richard, Archbishop of York present at the resignation of the crown by Richard II., 272; his conspiracy, 289; his conference with Ralph Neville, Earl of Westmoreland, *ib.*, 290; beheaded, 291; pilgrimages to the place of his execution forbidden, *ib.*; the Pope cursed those who assented to his death, 293; Henry IV. vindicates himself respecting his death, 302.

Scrope, Sir William, Chamberlain to Richard II., buys the lordship of the Isle of Man of William Montacute, Earl of Salisbury, 257; is one of the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, 264; is made (by Richard II.) Earl of Wiltshire, 267; is summoned by Edmund, Duke of York, to a council, on the landing of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 270; flies to Bristol, *ib.*

Scythia, description of, 22, 23.

Scythians, descended from Magog, 18.

Scythopolis, palace of Melchisedec at, 28, *and note.*

Sebastian, martyred, 75.

Sebastian, (S.), Church of, Pope Stephen I. buried in, 73.

Sebert, King of Essex, converted by Mellitus, first Bishop of London, 100.

Secundus, the silent Philosopher, 65.

Seine, the, Philip VI. breaks down the bridges on, and Edward III. ravages the country along, 211.

Selby, Walter, takes Louis Beaumont prisoner at Darlington, 182.

Seleucia, built by Seleucus, 53.

Seleucus I., 53.

Sennacherib, the host of, destroyed, 45.

Septimius Severus, 68.

Septuagint, Translation, the, 53.

Serapia, martyrdom of, 65.

Sergius I., Pope, 97.

Sergius II., Pope, 109.

Sergius III., Pope, 113.

Sergius IV., Pope, 124.

Sergius, a monk, the Koran attributed to, 94.

Serle, an adherent of Richard II., his history, 286.

Sermons for a Year, by Capgrave, xvii., 327.

Serug, 19; birth of; he begets Nahor, 23.

Seth, birth of, 6, 7; his descendants, 12, 15; his death, 13; the first from Adam, 18.

Seven Sleepers, the, 85.

Severinus, Pope, 95.

Shaftesbury, the remains of Edward the Martyr translated to, 120.
Shamir, Tholah buried in, 35.
Shem, 17; his children, *ib.*; his descent, 19.
Shene (now Richmond), Edward III. dies at, 232.
Shene (or Scin), founded by Henry V., 307.
Shepey, John de, elected Bishop of Rochester on the resignation of Haymo de Hythe, 215.
Shepherds, rising of, in France, 155.
Sherborne, the Barons assemble against Sir Hugh le Despencer at, 187.
Shrewsbury, Austin Friars build a convent at, 157; David, brother of Llewellyn, executed at, 166; Parliament at, 266; Boniface IX. confirms the acts of this Parliament, 267; bloodshed apprehended at, 278.
——, the Abbot of, *see* Prestbury, Thomas de.
——, the battle of, 282, 283.
Sibyls, the, 45.
Sicilians, the, rebel against the French, 166.
Sigeberht I., King of Essex, 100.
Sigeberht II., King of Essex, 100
Sigeberht, King of East Anglia, 100.
Sigismund, the Emperor, visits London, 313; made Knight of the Garter, *ib.*; his offerings at Windsor, *ib.*; verses distributed by him when he leaves England, 314; his negotiations with Henry V., *ib.*; reconciled with the Duke of Burgundy, 315.
Silvius Aventinus, 43.
Simon, de Mepham, Archbishop of Canterbury, holds a Council in London, 199.
Simon Walton, Bishop of Norwich, his Simony, verses on, and translation, 158.
Simon, Cleophas, Bishop of Jerusalem, martyred, 64.
Simon, S., the Apostle, 61.
Simplicius, Pope, 87.
Siricius, Pope, 82.
Sisera, conquered by Deborah, 33.
Sisinnius, Pope, 99.
Sittingborne, the Hermits of S. Austin permitted to build at, 153.
Sixtus I., Bishop of Rome, 65.
Sixtus II., Pope, 72, 73; his martyrdom, 73.
Skirgelon, King of Lithuania, *see* Witolde.
Skirlawe, Walter, Bishop of Durham, accompanies John, Duke of Lancaster, to France, and arranges the truce at Amiens, 256.
Slake, Nicholas, is imprisoned, as an adherent of Richard II., 249.
Sledda, King of Essex, 100.
Sluys, Edward III. wins a great naval victory over the French at, 208; Charles VI. prepares a vast fleet for the invasion of England, and lays at, 243.
Smithfield, execution of a priest there, 277; executions at, for heresy, 297.
Smith's-gate, at Oxford, 330.
Snowdon, Llewellyn defeated by Edward I. in, 166; Owen Glendwr retreats thither, 277.
Socrates, 50.
Sologne, 217.
Solomon, 39; the temple of, 40.
Solon, 48.
Some, Edward III. crosses the, and proceeds to Crecy, 211.
Sons of God, and daughters of men, 15.
Sophia, S., Church of, at Constantinople, 90; Justinian I. buried in, *ib.*
Sophocles, 49.
Soter, 53.
Soter, Pope, 67.
Southampton, is burnt by the French, 205; the navy prepared there, 309.
Spain, S. James preaches in, 60; John, Duke of Lancaster goes into, 242; he returns from, 252; account of his proceedings in, 253.
Spaniards, descended from Tubal, 18; the fleet of, defeated at Winchelsea, 214.

Spelman, Sir Henry, Introduction to Capgrave's Life of S. Katharine by, 335.

Spitigneus, Duke of Bohemia, 115.

Spoleto and Benevento, the Duchies of, given by Charlemagne to the Church, 104.

Spragett, Richard, 332.

Stafford, Edmund, Bishop of Exeter and Chancellor, [called by mistake in the MS. "of Chester,"] holds a council with the Duke of York on the landing of Henry of Lancaster, 270.

Stafford, founded by Ethelfleda, 115.

Stafford, Ralph, sent to negotiate for peace before the Pope (Clement VI. at Avignon), 211; is made Earl of Stafford, 215; accompanies Edward III. against John II. of France, 216; accompanies John de Montfort into France, 230.

Stamford, recovered from the Danes by Edmund I., 118; abbey founded by Edgar at, 120; the truce made at Amiens with Charles VI. is ratified at, 256.

Stapelton, Walter de, Bishop of Exeter, is executed, 196; at a Council held in London by Simon, Archbishop of Canterbury, all concerned in his murder are cursed, 199.

Statius, quotation from, 22, *note.*

Stephen [Aubert], Bishop of Ostia, is chosen Pope (Innocent VI.), 214.

Stephen I., Pope, 73.

Stephen II., Pope. 103.

Stephen III., Pope, 104.

Stephen IV., Pope, 107.

Stephen V., Pope, 112.

Stephen VI., Pope, 112.

Stephen VII., Pope, 114.

Stephen VIII., Pope, 115.

Stephen IX., Pope, 124.

Stephen, S., translation of, 91.

Stephen, King of England, before his accession swears fealty to the Empress Maud, 134; but takes the crown on the death of Henry I., 136; goes into France against Geoffrey Plantagenet, but is unsuccessful, *ib.*; is besieged at Lincoln by Robert of Gloucester, taken, and imprisoned at Bristol, *ib.*; acknowledges, after many conflicts, that Henry was the rightful heir, 137; dies at Feversham, *ib.*

Stigand, Archbishop of Canterbury, accompanies William I. into Normandy, 129; charges brought against him at the Council at Winchester, 130; his deposition, *ib.*

Stirling, Edward II. is defeated at, by Robert Bruce, 180.

Stockton, John, Prior of the Austin Priory at Oxford, 329, 333.

Stoke [Stowe, in Rotul. Parliam.], Thomas, Doctor of Canon Law, is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272.

Storey, Geoffrey, Abbot of Colchester, involved in a conspiracy against Henry IV., 286.

Storey, Richard, endeavours to prejudice Richard II. against the Earls of Arundel and Nottingham, 244; embraces the doctrines of Wiclif, 245, 260.

Storms, 152, 168, 221, 314.

Stratford, John de, Bishop of Winchester, sent by Edward II. to treat with Charles IV., 193; is made Treasurer of England, 196; keeps Christmas with Queen Isabella at Wallingford, 197.

Straw, John, one of the rebels executed in Wat Tyler's rebellion, 237.

Strighul, Edward II. flies from Gloucester to, 195.

Stuteville, the Lord, present at the siege of Harfleur, 310.

Sudbury, Simon of, Archbishop of Canterbury, at the treaty of peace at Bruges, 229; is commanded by the Pope to arrest and try Wiclif, 232; crowns Richard II., *ib.*; is killed in Wat Tyler's rebellion, 237.

Suffene, *see* Javan.

Suffolk, Bishop Grosteste born in, 156.

——, Earl of, Robert Ufford made, 204.

——, Michael, Earl of, *see* Pole.

Surrey, Thomas Holland, Duke of, sentence pronounced against him, 274.

Surrey, John, Earl of Warrenne and, *see* Warenne.
Susanna, the Story of, 48.
Sussex, Kingdom of, 99 ; Kings of, *ib.*
Sussex, the French land on the coast of, 233.
Suthmere, Margeret de, a great benefactor of the Austin Friars at Lynn, 368.
Swale, the Scots defeat the Yorkshire men at the river, 185.
Sweyn, King of Denmark, ravages England, 122; his death, 123.
Swin, in Flanders, 206.
Swinburn, Sir Thomas, destroys certain French ships, 292.
Swineshead, King John dies at, 148.
Swinford, Katharine, concubine of, afterwards married to John, Duke of Lancaster, 261 ; legitimization of the children of, 263.
Swithun, S., translation of, 150.
Sylverius, Pope, 91.
Sylvester, Pope, 78 ; present at the Council of Nice, 77, 78; legend concerning, 78.
Sylvester II., Pope, 121.
Symmachus, 68.
Symmachus, Pope, 88 ; schism between, and Laurentius, *ib.*
Syncellus, 7, *note.*
Syrians, descended from Aram, son of Shem, 17.
Syria, Rezin, King of, 44 ; the Kingdom of, 53.

T.

Talbot, Sir Richard, joins Edward Balliol, 201 ; is taken prisoner, with six other knights, by the Scots, 203 ; is ransomed, 204.
Tamary, Roger, 185.
Tamworth, founded by Ethelfleda, 115.
Tarquinius Priscus, visit of the Sibyl to, 45.
Tartary, the King of, 223.
Templars, the Knights, fifty-four of, burned to death by Philip IV. at Paris, 177 ; charges brought against the Order of, *ib.*
Temple, the, at Jerusalem, restored by Cyrus, 48 ; purified by Judas Maccabæus, 56 ; the vessels of, carried to Rome by Titus, 63 ; unsuccessful attempt of Julian to rebuild, 80.
Temple Bar, London, set on fire by the rebels (in 1381), 237.
Terah, 19 ; son of Nahor, 24 ; begets Abraham, 25.
Terence, 56 ; his epitaph and its translation, *ib.*
Tertullian, 68.
Thaddæus, 61; sent by Christ to Abgarus, King of Edessa, 138.
Thales, 48.
Thames, great overflowing of the, at London, 203.
Theban Legion, the, 75.
Thebes in Bœotia, 32.
Thebes in Egypt, 23.
Thelophorus, Bishop of Rome, 65.
Theobald, Archbishop of Canterbury, crowns Henry II., 139; death of, 140.
Theodore of Canterbury, 96.
Theodore I., Pope, 95.
Theodore II., Pope, 113.
Theodoric, King of the Ostrogoths, conquers Spain, 86.
Theodosius Junior, Emperor, 85.
Theodosius Magnus, Emperor, 82.
Theodosius III., Emperor, 101.
Theological Conclusions, by Capgrave, xvii., 327.
Theophilus of Sicily, 91.
Thetford, destroyed by the Danes in the time of Ethelred the Unready, 122; the see of, removed to Norwich by Herbert Losinga, 131.
Thirning, William, Justice, is present in the Tower at the abdication of Richard II., 272.
Thirsk, the insurgents defeated near, 295.

Tholah, Judge of Israel, 35.

Thomas (Duke of Clarence), son of Henry IV., 273; his visit to Lynn, 292; despatched into France, 302; returns to England, 303; is present at the siege of Harfleur, 310.

Thomas Fitz-Alan, Earl of Arundel, takes part in the death of Archbishop Scrope, 291; marries the natural daughter of the King of Portugal, 293; is sent by Henry IV. to aid the Duke of Burgundy, 300; his sickness at Harfleur, 310.

Thomas Holland, Earl of Kent, one of the accusers of Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, 264; is made Duke of Surrey, 267; returns with Richard II. from Ireland, on the landing of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 271; conspires against Henry IV., 275.

Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, "borne down" by the foreign tilters of Piers Gaveston at Wallingford, 175; demands the banishment of Gaveston, 177; becomes Earl of Leicester, Ferrers, Lincoln, and Salisbury, *ib.*; is bidden by Henry Lacy, Earl of Lincoln, to follow the advice of Guy, Earl of Warwick, 178; follows Edward II. to Newcastle, and demands the exile of Gaveston, *ib.*; besieges him in Scarborough, and delivers him up to death, *ib.*; Pope John XXII. tries to reconcile Edward II. and, 182; the power of, broken, 183; discovery of a conspiracy against, *ib.*; he withdraws offended from the siege of Berwick, 185; is stirred up against Hugh le Despenser by Humphrey, Earl of Hereford, 187; assembles the Barons at Sherborne, and appeals against him to King Edward II., *ib.*; retreats before the royal army, 189; is taken prisoner at Boroughbridge, *ib.*; and executed at Pontefract, 190; execution of one of the household of, *ib.*; blood runs out of his tomb, 219; he is canonized, 253.

Thomas Mowbray, Earl of Nottingham, Earl Marshall, and Richard, Earl of Arundel, gain a naval victory over the French, 244; opposes Robert de Vere, 245, *note;* is present at the renewal of the truce at Guines, near Calais, 262 is arrested at Plesshy by order of Richard II., 264; is sent to Calais, *ib.*; is one of the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, *ib.*; is commanded to murder Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, at Calais, 266; is made Duke of Norfolk, 267; is banished by Richard II., *ib.*

Thomas, Prince, (son of Edward III.,) born at Woodstock, 217: is made Earl of Buckingham by Richard II., 232; is sent to the aid of John de Montfort, into Britanny, 235; ravages the north of France, *ib.*; invades Scotland unsuccessfully, with his brother, John, Duke of Lancaster, 240; is made Duke of Gloucester, 241; Michael de la Pole conspires the death of, 243; determines to punish the profligate Robert de Vere, 245; opposes Richard II. and the influence of De Vere, 247; protests his innocence of treason before Robert de Braybroke, Bishop of London, *ib.*; takes up arms against the King, 248; defeats Robert de Vere, and marches upon London, *ib.*; confers with the King in the Tower, *ib.*; obtains from him promises of redress, 249; Richard II. removes him from his council, 251; he is falsely accused to the King, *ib.*; is sent into Ireland, having been first made Duke of Ireland, 256; the expenses attending his going to France are voted by the Parliament at Westminster, 257; his message to the Parliament convened at London by Edmund, Duke of York, 260; is present at the renewal of the truce at Guines, near Calais, 262; is secretly murdered at Calais, 266; sentence is pronounced against the accusers of, 274.

Thomas, S., the Apostle, 61.

Thrace, Bizantium in, 46.

Thracians, descended from Tiras, 18.

Tiber, the river, 36; Romulus and Remus exposed beside, 43; great overflowing of, 92.
Tiberius, 60.
Tiberius II., Emperor, 92.
Tiberius III., Emperor, 98.
Tiburtina, the Sibyl, 46, 58.
Tiburtius, Valerian, and Urban, bones of, translated to the Church of S. Cecilia at Rome, 107.
Tide, high, near Calais, 288.
Timnath-seres, 32.
Tiras, son of Ham, 18.
Titus, 63.
Tobias, 46.
Toledo, legend of a Jew finding a book relating to Christ at Toleda, 148.
Tophet, 44.
Totila, King of the Ostrogoths, threatens Rome, 85.
Totington, Alexander, Bishop of Norwich, 294; his death, 303.
Toulouse, Henry II. at, 140.
Toulouse, the University of, consulted by Henry IV. respecting ecclesiastical unity, 296.
Tournay, Edward III. besieges, 209.
Trachonitis, 17.
Trajan, 64.
Trefuant or Trevenant, (John), Bishop of Hereford, present at the abdication of Richard II., 272.
Tresilian, Sir Robert, incites Richard II. against the Earls of Arundel, Warwick, Derby, and Nottingham, 245; is appointed by Richard II. to be one of the Judges to consider the Commission of Regency, 246.
Trevenant, John, Bishop of Hereford, *see* Trefuant.
Trêves, Archbishop of, Chancellor of France for the election of the Emperor after the death of Otho III., 121.
Tribes, the Twelve, descended from Eber, 20.
Tripoli, taken in the first Crusade, 128.
Trivet, Sir Thomas, betrays Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, at Ypres, 239; is besieged by Charles VI. in Burburgh, *ib.*; is imprisoned at Dover, 249; falls from his horse near Cambridge, and dies, 251.
Troy, taking of, 36.
Tubal-Cain, 8, 9.
Turks, great victory of the Christians over (in 1364), 223.
Tyes, Henry, executed, 190.
Tyler, Wat, *see* Wat Tyler.
Tynmouth, 240.
Tyrel, Hugh, defends the Castle of the Isle of Man against the French, 232.
Tyrel, Walter, accidentally kills William Rufus in the New Forest, 132.
Tytillus, King of East Anglia, 100.

U.

Unity in the Church, efforts for its promotion by Henry IV., 296.
Urban I., Pope, 70.
Urban II., Pope, 127.
Urban III., Pope, 142.
Urban V., Pope, 222, 335; dies, 227.
Urban VI., Pope (formerly Archbishop of Bari), 233; excommunicates Charles V., 234; tries to force Edmund Bromfield on the monks of Bury, as Abbot, *ib.*; receives the homage of the Emperor of Constantinople, John Palæologus, 235; ordains a fast on the vigil of the nativity of the Blessed Virgin, 238; gives authority to Henry Despencer, Bishop of Norwich, to invade France and Flanders, *ib.*; degrades Sir Adam Eston, Cardinal of S. Cecilia, a monk of Norwich, and six other cardinals, 241; grants plenary remission to all who accompany John, Duke of Lancaster, into Spain, 242; quarrels with Austria, *ib.*; dies, 252.

Uriah, Bathsheba wife of, 39.
Ushant, the island of, is taken by Richard, Earl of Arundel, 250.
Uz, son of Elam [Aram], 17.
Uz, land of, 17.
Uzziah, King of Judah, 43.

V.

Valence, Aymer de, Earl of Pembroke, drives Bruce into the Isles, 174; is "borne down" by the foreign tilters introduced by Gaveston at Wallingford, 175; is appointed to judge Thomas of Lancaster and others, 190; allusion to, 253.
Valens, Emperor, 81.
Valentine, Pope, 107.
Valentinian, Emperor of the East, 85.
—— Emperor of the West, 81.
Valentinus, Emperor, 86.
Valerian, Emperor, 72.
Valerian, husband of S. Cecilia, 70; translation of his relics to the church of S. Cecilia, 107.
Vandals, the, oppress the African Church, 88.
Vannes, in Britanny, taken by Edward III., 210.
Vatican, the, S. Peter martyred in, 62; Popes buried in: — Cletus, 63; Anacletus, 64; Evaristus, *ib.*; Sixtus I., 65; Thelophorus, *ib.*; Soter, 67; Victor I., 68; Marcellinus, 75; translation of the relics of S. Peter to the, 72.
Vendôme, Louis de Bourbon, Count de, taken prisoner at the battle of Agincourt, 312.
Venetians, the, assist the French against Constantinople, 143.
Venice, the Cardinal of, deposed by Pope Urban III., 241.
Vere, Sir Aubrey de, is made Earl of Oxford, 257.
Vere, Robert de, Earl of Oxford, is made Marquis of Dublin, 241; Duke of Ireland, 244; persuades Richard II. that the victory of Richard Earl of Arundel over the French was unjust, 244; shamefully divorces his wife, 245; Richard II. espouses his cause, *ib.*; and takes him into Wales, *ib.*; thence to Nottingham, 246; he affixes his seal to the judgment against the legality of the Commission of Regency, 247; gathers forces in the north, 248; is defeated in Oxfordshire, *ib.*; flies to Middleburgh (in Zealand), 249; dies at Louvain, 254; is buried at Cologne by Richard II., 261; his mother reports that Richard II. is still alive, 285.
Vernon, Sir Richard, is taken prisoner at Shrewsbury, 283; is beheaded, *ib.*
Verona, the eyes of Louis III. put out at, and Berenger, whom he had deposed, restored, 114.
Vespasian, 62, 63.
Via Appia, the cemetery made by Pope Calixtus in the, 69.
Via Aurea, S. Peter martyred in the, 62.
Victor I., Pope, 68.
Victor II., Pope, 124.
Victor III., Pope, 127.
Victore, Hugo de Sancto, flourishes at Paris, 135; reference to his works, 16, *and note*, 154, *and note.*
Vigilius, Pope, 91.
Vilentynge, *see* Woodhouse.
Vincula, Feast of S. Peter ad, instituted, 85.
Violante of Milan, Prince Lionel, Duke of Clarence, marries, 225.
Virgil, 357.
Vitalianus, Pope, 96.
Viterbo, Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, is killed at, 161; Gregory X. elected Pope at, 161.
Viterbo, Godfrey of, reference to the Pantheon of, 360.
Volucian and Gallus, Emperors, 72.
Vossius, Biographical works of, 321, *and note.*

W.

Wadham College, Oxford, built on the site of the Austin Friary, 329.

Wake, Baldwin, taken at the siege of Northampton, 159.

——, the Lady of, *see* Ely.

Wakering, John, Bishop of Norwich, his election, 311.

Wales, given by Brute to Camber, 37; conquered by Edward the Elder, 115; Edward I. invades, 164; drives Llewellyn into Anglesey, with the title of Prince of, 165; and, on his death, takes possession of, 166; disputes among certain Barons in the Marches of, 186; Richard of Bordeaux (II. of England) is made Prince of, 231; Richard II. accompanies Robert de Vere in his flight into, 245; Henry IV. purposes to march into, 283; Henry IV.'s expeditions into, 290, 291.

Walden, Roger, is appointed to succeed Thomas Arundel in the See of Canterbury, but is shortly after rejected, 265; his death, 293.

Walkfare, Sir Robert, pillages S. Alban's, 187.

Wallace, rebellion of William, 173; his execution, *ib.* *See* Errata.

Wallingford, Piers Gaveston introduces foreign tilters at, 175; Sir Maurice Berkeley and others imprisoned in the Castle of, 189; Queen Isabella holds her Christmas at, 197; conspirators against Henry IV. proceed thither, 275.

Wallingford, Richard, the astronomer of S. Albans, dies, 204.

Wallis, William, a monk of Lynn, and Provincial, 370, 371, *note*.

Walo, the Legate, crowns Henry III. at Gloucester, 149; mediates between Henry III. and Louis VIII., 150.

Walsingham, the Wiclifites preach against the pilgrimages to, 252.

Walter, Reynolds, Archbishop of Canterbury, crowns Edward III., 198. *See* Reynolds.

Waltham, the Abbot of, *see* Hurlstone, William.

Walworth, William, Mayor of London, kills Wat Tyler, 237.

Ward, Sir Simon, meets the Earl of Lancaster at Boroughbridge, 189.

Ware, a priest apprehended at, 278.

Warrenne and Surrey, John Plantagenet, Earl, swears allegiance to the absent Prince Edward, on the death of Henry III., 162; is "borne down" by the foreign tilters introduced by Piers Gaveston at Wallingford, 175.

Warwick, founded by Ethelfleda, 115.

——, Guy, Earl of, 178.

——, Thomas, Earl of, *see* Beauchamp, Thomas.

——, Richard Beauchamp, Earl of, a delegate to the Council of Constantinople, 308.

Waterton, Robert, assists to repulse the Earl of Northumberland, 283.

Wat Tyler, rebellion of, 237; he is killed by William Walworth, Mayor of London, 237.

Weather, remarkable inclemency of the, 295.

Welshe, John, name on the fly-leaf of the MS. of "The Chronicle of England" in the Public Library of Cambridge, xxvi, *note* (⁶).

Wells, Hugh, [Hewewelle,] Bishop of Lincoln, death of, 153.

Wenceslas, 116.

Wennever, wife of King Arthur, buried at Glastonbury, 141.

Wessex, kingdom of, 100; Kings of, *ib.*

Westbroom, Robert, a rebel, 237.

Westminster, the Sanctuary at, 298.

——, abbot of, William de Colchester, accompanies Richard II. into Ireland 269; is present in the Tower at the resignation of Richard II., 272; is sent as a delegate to the Council of Constance, 308.

Westminster, Edward the Confessor buried at, 127; the new church at, begun by Henry III., 150, 162; Henry III. marries Eleanor of Provence, at, 154; Henry III. buried in the church of, 162; the heart of Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans, preserved at, 161; the Princess Blanche, daughter of Edward III., is buried at, 209; the Parliament meeting at, ratifies the treaty between Edward III. and the French, 220; Queen Anne of Bohemia, is buried at, 258.

Westminster Hall built by William Rufus, 132; Richard II. reads his resignation in, 272.

Westmoreland, *see* Neville, Ralph.

Westwade, legend of miracles performed at the cross at, 252.

Wharton, *see* "Anglia Sacra."

Wibba [Tinla], King of Mercia, 101.

Wiclif preaches at Oxford, 231; his tenets, *ib.*; is made to abjure them before the Duke of Lancaster, *ib.*; revives the errors of Berenger, 236; dies, 240; the followers of, multiply, 252.

Wight, Isle of, Richard, Earl of Arundel, is arrested by command of Richard II., and imprisoned in the, 264; the French land there, 285; their reception, *ib.*

Wilbey, *see* Willoughby.

Wiltshire, William, Earl of, *see* Scrope.

Wilforth, William, invades Britanny, 284.

William I., Duke of Normandy, 112.

William, Prince, son of Henry I., is drowned on his return from France, 133.

William, de Corbolio, Archbishop of Canterbury, crowns Stephen, 136.

William, a child called, murdered by the Jews at Norwich, 154.

William the Conqueror, (II. of Normandy; I. of England, called the Bastard,) 112; his claim to the English crown, 128; appeals to Pope Alexander II. against Harold, who had seized the throne, 129 s invades England, lands at Hastings, and defeats Harold there, *ib.*; is crowned at Westminster, *ib.*; founds Battle Abbey. *ib.*; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; makes Thomas of Bayeux Archbishop of York 130; enters Scotland, and receives homage from Malcolm III., *ib.*; dies, and is buried at Caen, *ib.*; Edward I. claims the homage of the King of Scotland through, 172.

William II., King of England (called Rufus); his coronation, 130; he confers at Hampton with Robert of Normandy, his elder brother, as to the succession, 131; deceives him by false promises, *ib.*; quarrels with Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; builds Westminster Hall, 132; is shot by Walter Tyrrel in the New Forest, *ib.*

William VI., Count of Holland, visits England, 314.

William de Middelton, Bishop of Norwich, invites Edward I. to the consecration of the new church, 165.

William of Wykeham, *see* Wykeham, William of.

Willoughby, William, Lord, of Eresby, present at the abdication of Richard II., 272.

Wilton destroyed by the Danes in the time of Ethelred the Unready, 122.

Winchelsea, the Spanish fleet is defeated at, 214; the Normans pillage, 219.

Winchelsey, Robert, Archbishop of Canterbury, curses all who uphold Gaveston against the Barons, 175, 176.

Winchester, Edward the Elder, buried at, 115; Edward the Confessor is crowned at, 127; Council at, in which Archbishop Stigand is deposed, 130; a severe earthquake felt at, 163; Edward III. holds a Parliament at, 199; Edmund of Woodstock is executed at, 200; in a Parliament at, (A.D. 1391,) the expenses of John, Duke of Lancaster, and Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, are voted, 257; King Henry IV. married there, 280.

——, Hugh, Earl of, *see* Despenser, Hugh le.

——, Henry Beaufort, Bishop of. *See* Beaufort, Henry.

——, Henry de Merewell, Bishop of, crowns Edward II., 174.

——, William Edington, Bishop of, *see* Edington, William; Peter des Roches, *see* Peter des Roches.

Winchester, College, founded by William of Wykeham, 288.

Windsor, the ringleaders of the rebellion, are imprisoned by Henry III. at, after the siege of London, 160; King Arthur's Round Table restored by King Edward III. at, 211 ; William of Wykeham is appointed to superintend the works at, 219 ; attempt to kill Henry IV. at, 275.

——, William de, assists John de Monfort, 235.

Witolde, conquers Skirgelon, King of Lithuania, and takes his kingdom, 254.

Wolleman, Benedict, a Lollard, hanged at London, 316.

Wood, Anthony à, 322, *and note.*

Woodhouse, [Bica; Vilentynge,] in Shropshire, one of the earliest Convents of the Austin Friars at, 153.

Woodstock, a madman attempts to kill Henry III. at, 154; Prince Thomas of, is born at, 217.

——, Edmund of, Earl of Kent, sent by Edward II. as an ambassador into France, 192 ; accompanies Queen Isabella into England, 195.

Worcester, Earl of, *see* Percy, Thomas.

——, a Council summoned there by Henry IV., 293 ; its deliberations, *ib.*

——, Prior of, a delegate to the Council of Constance, 308.

Wraw, John, the rebellion of, at Bury S. Edmunds, 237 ; is executed, 238.

Wykeham, William of, Bishop of Winchester, is appointed to superintend the works at Windsor, 219 ; is made Chancellor by Richard II., 251 ; his foundations at Winchester and Oxford, 288 ; his death, *ib.*

Wykyn, Humphrey de, a benefactor of the Austin Friars at Lynn, 368.

Wykyn, Robert de, a benefactor of the Austin Friars, 368.

Wynkyn de Worde prints the "Nova Legenda Angliæ," xxi.

Wymondham, legend of miracles performed at, 252.

Wytot, *see* Witolde.

X.

Xeniades, 51, *and note,*

Xenocrates, chastity of, 52.

Xerxes, 49.

Y.

York, castle at, founded by the Conqueror, 129 ; Edward II. visits, 180 ; the Scots penetrate as far as, 181 ; again penetrate to, and take John, Earl of Richmond, prisoner, 186 ; Sir Simon Ward, warden of, 189 ; Edward III. holds a parliament at, 202, 204 ; the Bank, &c. transferred temporarily by Richard II. from London to, 257 ; Henry IV. proceeds thither, 283 ; Henry IV. marches thither, 290 ; the citizens submit to him, *ib.*; Henry IV. visits, 295.

York, Archbishops of :—

——, Aldred, *see* Aldred.

——, Alexander Neville, *see* Neville, Alexander.

——, Paulinus, *see* Paulinus.

——, Richard Scrope, *see* Scrope, Richard.

——, William la Zouche, *see* Zouche, William la.

York, Edmund, Duke of, *see* Cambridge, Prince Edmund.

——, Edward, Duke of, *see* Edward, Earl of Rutland, 302.

Ypres, soldiers of, join the invading army of Edward III., 209 ; is besieged by Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, 239.

Z.

Zacharius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, 94.

Zachary, Pope, 102.

Zadok, anoints Solomon, 39.

Zebedee, 60.

Zedekiah, King of Judah, 46.

Zeno, Emperor, 87.
Zepherinus, Pope, 69.
Zerah, King of Æthiopia, 40.
Zerubbabel, 48.
Zibiah, mother of Joash, 42.
Zillah, 8.
Zipporah, 31.
Zoroaster introduces witchcraft, 25; his origin, *ib.*
Zosimus, Pope, 84.
Zouche, William la, accompanies Isabella, Queen of Edward II., into Wales, 196.
Zouche, William la, Archbishop of York, defeats David II. of Scotland, 212.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.